

C-E

王殿明 编译
杨绮华

汉英文物 考古词汇

A CHINESE-ENGLISH
GLOSSARY
OF
CULTURAL RELICS
AND
ARCHAEOLOGY

紫禁城出版社

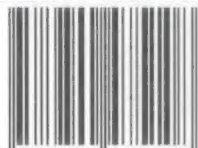
责任编辑 冯印淙
封面设计 郑志标

故宫博物院



紫禁城出版社

ISBN 978-7-80047-510-8



9 787800 475108 >

定价：66.00 元

汉英文物 考古词汇

A CHINESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY OF CULTURAL RELICS AND ARCHAEOLOGY

王殿明 杨绮华 编译

紫 禁 城 出 版 社

图书在版编目 (CIP) 数据

汉英文物考古词汇 / 王殿明, 杨绮华编译. — 北京:
紫禁城出版社, 2005. 10 (2008. 5 重印)

ISBN 978-7-80047-510-8

I. 汉… II. ①王…②杨… III. 文物-考古-
词汇-汉、英 IV. K85-61

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字 (2005) 第 055529 号

汉英文物考古词汇

王殿明 杨绮华 编译

紫禁城出版社出版

(北京景山前街故宫博物院內)

中国农业出版社印刷厂

开本 1/16 字数 280 千 印张 33

2008 年 5 月第一版第二次印刷 印数 2001—3500 册

ISBN 978-7-80047-510-8

定价: 66.00 元

编译者的话

随着对外文化交流活动日益开展，来华旅游参观者日益增多，编译一本汉英对照的文物博物馆考古专业词汇，是翻译工作者、研究人员和广大中外旅游参观者的需要。为满足这方面的要求，我们将 30 余年来在翻译工作实践中收集、积累、钻研和使用并得到社会认可的有关文物博物馆考古专业词汇分类编译成册，以期有助于弘扬祖国的悠久文化，有助于中外同行之间的学术交流，有助于提高中外广大读者对我国文物考古的兴趣。

本书内容的个别部分曾于 1982 年前后在故宫博物院研究室编译的《文博参考资料》（内刊，已停）上陆续刊登，也曾于 1983 年提供给外文出版社出版的《中国考古词汇》（张星联编）选用，均曾收到良好的效果。在资料收集过程中，我们阅读和参考了多种中外出版的书刊和图录（主要参考书目附后），并从中摘选了不少有关的专业用语和词汇，谨此对这些书刊的编著者致以诚挚的谢意。在编译过程中，曾得到故宫博物院领导和各有关专家的支持、鼓励和帮助以及院内有关部门和同志们的协助，在此一并致以衷心的感谢。

脱稿后，承蒙文化部副部长、故宫博物院院长郑欣森先生慨然应允，在百忙中抽出时间，热情洋溢地为本书撰写序言，我们深受感动和鼓舞，特此致以深切的谢意。

由于我们水平有限，本书缺点和错误在所难免，敬希读者予以批评指正。

2005 年 1 月

序 言

文化部副部长 郑欣淼
故宫博物院院长

在故宫的西北隅，坐落着建于清雍正初年的城隍庙，奉紫禁城城隍之神，有正殿，有配殿，亦有山门。远远望去，这组错落有致的建筑物与秀丽高耸的角楼浑为一体，别有风味。城隍庙多年来已是故宫博物院研究室的所在地。研究室的老先生多，他们在这宁静的环境中从事着学术研究工作。王殿明、杨绮华就是其中的两位。《汉英文物考古词汇》一书也是在这里诞生的。

《汉英文物考古词汇》是一本汉英对照的文博专业工具书，共收各类有关专业常用词汇万余条，约20万字，分26个部分。从内容上看，搜罗极广，既有关于文物、考古、博物馆的一般常用词汇，又有青铜器、陶瓷、玉器、书法、古代碑刻、绘画、织绣、漆器、古代家具、古建筑、古陵墓等具有鲜明中国特色的文物的专业词汇；而宫殿园林、明清宫廷、明清职官、六部公用语、宫廷器物等部分，更可使人对以故宫为载体的中国传统文化有多方面的大致了解；最后的全国重点文物保护单位选、世界遗产在中国以及中国历史年表等部分的词汇，相信对读者也有裨益。

本书凝结着编译者几十年的心血。王殿明、杨绮华两位先生解放初期毕业于大学的英文系，在我国对外文化交流部门工作近20年，1972年到故宫博物院从事文博专业的英文笔译工作，至今已30多年。30余年来，通过出国文物展览、院内专馆陈列、各类特展和书刊出版等文字翻译工作的实践，接触并熟悉了故宫博物院及故宫古建筑的专业门类，又通过不断的学习和钻研，收集并掌握了各类文物专业的英文词汇，使故宫博物院汉英文物专业翻译出现了新的局面。他们合作翻译出版的图书和图录有数十种，如《八十年代的博物馆——世界博物馆趋势综览》（紫禁城出版社出版）、《紫禁城的黄昏》（庄士

敦著，紫禁城出版社出版)、大型图录《故宫博物院》(分别由意大利琼蒂出版社、美国纽约哈利·艾布拉姆斯出版社出版)、《故宫文物大典》(故宫和福建、浙江、江西有关出版社联合出版)、《明代吴门绘画》(香港商务印书馆出版)等，在对外宣传中华文化方面收到了较好的效果。在这个坚实的基础上编译的《汉英文物考古词汇》，是一部精雕细磨的作品，是他们长期勤奋努力的结晶。

这本书的出版是十分必要的。随着我国对外文化交流的日益广泛、深入，文化遗产保护领域的合作不断加强，出国与来华的文物展览的日渐增多，编译一本汉英对照的文博考古词汇，是翻译工作者、专业研究人员、大专院校有关专业师生的愿望，更是广大中外旅游参观者的需要。据了解，目前见诸于世的这类书不多，有《汉英考古分类词汇》(黑龙江科技出版社出版)、《汉英商业文物词汇》(北京旅游出版社出版)和《中国考古词汇》(汉英对照，北京外文出版社出版，其中部分资料为王殿明、杨绮华提供)。这些书的词汇各有侧重，如“考古”或“商业”等。这本词汇则文物与考古兼而有之，与上述各书有所不同，且以皇家园林和宫廷文物为其特色，有关部分还附以必要的线图，读者可以一目了然。词典是工具，是桥梁。这本书的出版，将有益于弘扬祖国的文化遗产，有利于中外同行之间的学术交流，也有助于提高广大读者对我国文物考古工作的兴趣和关心。

我到故宫博物院工作不久，曾去城隍庙内的研究室看望过王殿明先生。他提出要加强故宫笔译人才培养的建议我一直记在心里。他感到几十年了，虽然每天忙忙碌碌，但似乎没有做过什么值得述说的事。这使我深受感动。在故宫，有不少像王殿明、杨绮华这样的老先生，把毕生献给了故宫，勤勤恳恳，不计名利，乐在其中，甚至默默无闻。他们是真正的“故宫人”。在他们的作品即将问世时，要我写个序言，我觉得不能推辞，便写了以上的话，表示我的祝贺。也相信在广大读者的关心下，这部书能够精益求精，不断完善。

2004年12月12日

于故宫博物院

目 录

CONTENTS

一	文物考古	
	Archaeology and Cultural Relics	(1)
	人类社会发展阶段 Stages of Social Development	(1)
	古人类学 Paleoanthropology	(1)
	考古学文化 Archaeological Cultures	(3)
	考古发掘 Archaeology and Excavation	(5)
	史前发现物 Prehistoric Finds	(7)
	出土文物选 Selected Excavations	(8)
	文物管理 Administration of Cultural Relics	(10)
二	古墓葬	
	Ancient Tombs	(12)
	一般用语 Terminology	(12)
	陵墓建筑 Buildings of the Mausoleums and Tombs	(14)
	历代帝王陵墓 Imperial Mausoleums and Tombs through the Ages	(15)
	皇陵管理 Imperial Mausoleum Administration	(19)
三	古建筑	
	Ancient Architecture	(20)
	一般用语 Terminology	(20)
	建筑材料 Building Materials	(22)
	建筑物名称 Names of Buildings	(23)
	构架 Structure Frame	(25)
	屋顶与装饰 Roof Forms and Their Decoration (Roof Construction)	(27)
	内外装修 Interior and Exterior Fittings	(30)
	石工 Stonework	(33)
	给水排水 Water Supply and Drainage	(34)
四	宫殿园林	

Palaces and Gardens (36)

故宫 (紫禁城) The Imperial Palace (the Forbidden City) (36)

中路 The Middle Section (36)

内东路 The Inner Eastern Section (39)

外东路 The Outer Eastern Section (40)

内西路 The Inner Western Section (43)

外西路 The Outer Western Section (46)

其他 Others (47)

明清时期北京中轴线 The Central Axis (from south to north) of Beijing during the Ming and Qing Dynasties (48)

三海 The Sea Palaces (50)

南海 Nan Hai (The South Sea) (50)

中海 Zhong Hai (The Middle Sea) (51)

北海 Bei Hai (The North Sea) (51)

颐和园 The Summer Palace (53)

东宫门内 Inside of Dong Gong Men (53)

前山坡东部 The East of the Front Hill Slope (54)

排云门内 Inside of Pai Yun Men (55)

前山坡西部 The West of the Front Hill Slope (56)

后山坡沿 Along the Back Hill Slope (57)

谐趣园内 Inside of Xie Qu Yuan (58)

南湖区域 Places in Nan Hu (59)

湖滨区域 Places along the Lake Shore (59)

圆明园 Old Summer Palace (the Garden of Perfect Brightness) (60)

承德避暑山庄 The Imperial Summer Resort in Chengde (60)

五 明清宫廷

The Imperial Court of the Ming and Qing Dynasties (62)

皇宫 Imperial Palace (62)

皇室 Imperial Family (62)

朝政 Court Administration (66)

典制 Court Regulations (69)

机构 Court Services (76)

朝臣及其他人员	Courtiers and Other Personnel	(79)
在明清宫廷供职的外国人士	Foreigners who Served in the Imperial Court of the Ming and Qing Dynasties	(81)
六 明清职官		
	Official Titles of the Ming and Qing Dynasties	(86)
辅佐皇帝的中枢机构	The Central Administrations for Assisting the Emperor in Governing the Country	(86)
掌管皇族和宫廷事务的机构	The Bodies in Charge of Affairs of the Imperial Family and Impe- rial Palace	(88)
承理国政的行政机构	The Administrative Bodies Taking Full Charge of State Affairs	(90)
司法监察机构	Judicial and Supervisory Bodies	(93)
军事机构	Military Apparatus	(94)
地方行政机构	Provincial Administrations	(95)
官阶	Official Ranks	(97)
科举制度	Imperial Examination System	(99)
七 六部公用语		
	The Terminology of the Six Boards	(102)
吏部	The Board of Civil Appointment	(102)
户部	The Board of Revenue	(104)
礼部	The Board of Rites	(106)
兵部	The Board of War	(109)
刑部	The Board of Punishments	(111)
工部	The Board of Works	(114)
八 青铜器		
	Bronzes	(117)
金属及金工	Metals and Metalcraft	(117)
形制	Shapes	(119)
类别及名称	Classification and Names	(120)
礼器	Ritual Vessels	(120)
乐器	Musical Instruments	(123)
兵器	Weapons (Military Implements)	(124)
车马饰	Chariot and Harness Ornaments	(127)
生产工具	Tools of Production	(127)

度量衡器	Weights and Measures	(127)
杂器	Miscellaneous Articles	(128)
纹饰	Decorations	(129)
铭辞	Inscriptions	(131)
青铜器物选	Selected Works of Bronzes	(132)
古代青铜器样式 (线图)	Shapes of Ancient Bronzes (Line Drawing)	(134)
古代青铜器纹饰 (线图)	Motifs of Ancient Bronze Decoration (Line Drawing)	(138)
九 陶瓷		
Ceramics		(139)
历代名窑	Famous Kilns (yao) through the Ages	(139)
唐代	Tang Dynasty	(139)
宋代	Song Dynasty	(139)
元代	Yuan Dynasty	(140)
明代	Ming Dynasty	(140)
清代	Qing Dynasty	(141)
陶瓷术语	Ceramic Terms	(141)
器物形状	Shapes of Vessels	(147)
器物釉色	Glazes and Colors of Vessels	(152)
器物纹饰	Decorations of Vessels	(157)
陶瓷器物选	Selected Pottery and Porcelain	(163)
典型陶瓷器样式 (线图)	Some Typical Ceramic Shapes (Line Drawing)	(166)
十 玉器		
Jade Ware		(169)
玉石名称	Names of Jades, Gems and Gemstones	(169)
玉石琢工	Lapidary's Craft	(171)
玉器	Jade Ware	(171)
瑞玉和其他玉器样式 (线图)	Some Types of Ritual and Other Jades (Line Drawing)	(174)
十一 书法		
Calligraphy		(175)
文房用具	The Instruments for Writing	(175)
书体	Different Styles of Writing	(177)
八法	The Eight Brush-Strokes	(178)

	品评标准 Standards for Judging Beautiful Writing	(179)
	其他 Others	(180)
	法书精品 Masterpieces of Calligraphy	(181)
十二	古代碑刻	
	Ancient Stone Inscriptions	(184)
十三	绘画	
	Painting	(188)
	材料 Materials	(188)
	画式 Forms of Painting	(190)
	画题 Subjects of Painting	(191)
	画技 Techniques of Painting	(192)
	特技 Special Techniques	(195)
	绘画技法图 Special Techniques	(198)
	着色 Colors	(201)
	印款 Seals and Signatures	(203)
	装裱 Mounting	(204)
	画家评论 Comments on Artists	(206)
	历代名画选 Selected Masterpieces of Painting through the Ages	(209)
十四	织绣	
	Textiles and Embroidery	(218)
	织物 Textiles	(218)
	刺绣 Embroidery	(220)
	纹饰 Decorations	(222)
	古代服饰 Ancient Costumes and Accessories	(225)
	织绣精品选 Selected Works of Embroidery	(235)
十五	漆器	
	Lacquer Ware	(239)
	类别 Classification	(239)
	形制 Shapes	(240)
	纹饰 Decorations	(241)
	胎骨 Bodies	(244)
	工艺 Techniques	(244)
	款识 Reign Mark and Inscription	(246)
	漆器精品选 Selected Works of Lacquer Ware	(247)
十六	古代家具	

Ancient Furniture	(251)
材质 Materials for Making Furniture	(251)
各类家具 Classification	(252)
几、案、桌类 Tables	(252)
座椅类 Chairs and Stools	(253)
床榻类 Beds and Couches	(255)
橱柜类 Cabinets	(256)
屏风及其他 Screens and Others	(257)
纹饰 Decorations	(258)
工艺及其他 Techniques and Others	(260)
古代家具精品选 Selected Works of Furniture	(264)
明代家具 Ming Dynasty (1368 - 1644)	(264)
清代家具 Qing Dynasty (1644 - 1911)	(265)
十七 宫廷器物	
Utensils in the Imperial Court	(267)
珐琅器 Enamel Ware	(267)
工艺 Techniques	(267)
珐琅器精品选 Selected Works of Enamelware	(268)
雕刻品 Carvings	(271)
竹雕 Bamboo Carving	(271)
竹雕精品选 Selected Works of Bamboo Carving	(272)
木雕 Wood Carving	(273)
木雕精品选 Selected Works of Wood Carving	(273)
牙雕、角雕 Ivory Carving, Horn carving	(274)
牙雕精品选 Selected Works of Ivory Carving	(275)
角雕精品选 Selected Works of Horn Carving	(276)
鼻烟壶 Snuff Bottles	(277)
一般用语 Terminology	(277)
鼻烟壶精品选 Selected Works of Snuff Bottles	(278)
金银珠宝 Gold, Silver and Jewellery	(280)
一般用语 Terminology	(280)
金银珠宝精品选 Selected Works of Gold, Silver and Jewellery	(281)
钟表 Decorative Timepieces	(283)
一般用语 Terminology	(283)
钟表精品选 Selected Works of Decorative Timepieces	(286)

	盆景 Potted Landscapes	(287)
	盆景精品选 Selected Works of Potted Landscape	(288)
	如意 Ruyi-sceptre	(290)
	一般用语 Terminology	(290)
	如意精品选 Selected Works of Ruyi-Sceptre	(290)
十八	古玺印	
	Ancient Seals	(292)
	类型 Types of Seals	(292)
	形制 Shapes	(293)
	纽式 Knob Styles	(294)
	印文书体 Styles of Scripts of the Seal	(295)
	印材 Materials for Seal Carving	(297)
	其他 Others	(297)
	清宫玺印选 The Imperial Seals Selected from the Qing Court	(299)
十九	古乐器	
	Ancient Chinese Musical Instruments	(301)
	石乐器 Stone Instruments	(301)
	金乐器 Metal Instruments	(301)
	皮乐器 Skin Instruments	(301)
	弦乐器 Stringed Instruments	(302)
	竹乐器 Bamboo Instruments	(302)
	木乐器 Wooden Instruments	(302)
	泥乐器 Clay Instruments	(303)
	明清宫廷音乐 Court Music of the Ming and Qing Dynasties	(303)
二十	古书籍	
	Ancient Books	(304)
	一般用语 Terminology	(304)
	经、史、子、集 Classics, History, Philoso- phy, Belles-Letters	(306)
	古典文学 Classical Literature	(312)
	文物研究 Studies of Cultural Relics	(315)
二十一	科技文物	
	Cultural Relics of Science and Technology	(320)
	天文 Astronomy	(320)

地理	Geography	(321)
交通	Communication	(322)
火器	Firearms	(322)
度量衡	Weights and Measures	(323)
二十二	宗教	
	Religion	(325)
	佛教 Buddhism	(325)
	教派 Sects	(325)
	神佛称号 Titles of Buddhas and Bodisattvas	(326)
	教义、戒律 Doctrine, Discipline	(331)
	佛经 Buddhist Scripture	(332)
	神职人员 Buddhist Clergy	(334)
	佛寺(堂) Buddhist Temples (Chapels)	(336)
	文物与法器 Cultural Relics and Ritual Implements	(337)
	佛教术语 Buddhist Terminology	(339)
	道教 Taoism	(343)
	教派 Sects	(343)
	道教神仙 Taoist Immortals	(344)
	教义、戒律 Doctrine, Discipline	(346)
	道藏 Taoist Canon	(346)
	道教术语 Taoist Terminology	(347)
二十三	博物馆	
	Museum	(350)
	博物馆学 Museology	(350)
	藏品保管 Preservation of Collections	(351)
	陈列展览 Display and Exhibition	(353)
	宣传教育 Publicity and Education	(355)
	开放管理 Administration of Opening Affairs	(356)
	博物馆机构 Museum Organizations	(359)
二十四	全国重点文物保护单位选	
	Selected Major Historical and Cultural Monuments Under State Protection	(360)
	古建筑及历史纪念建筑物 Ancient and Historical-Memorial Buildings	(360)
	石窟寺(石窟) Buddhist Cave Temples (Grottos)	(365)

石刻及其他	Stone Inscriptions and Others	(367)
古遗址	Ancient Sites	(368)
古墓葬	Ancient Tombs	(372)
近、现代遗址及纪念建筑物	Modern Sites and Memorial Buildings	(375)
二十五 世界遗产在中国		
	World Heritage in China	(380)
自然遗产	Natural Heritage	(380)
文化和自然双重遗产	Cultural and Natural dual Heritage	(380)
文化景观遗产	Cultural Landscape Heritage	(381)
文化遗产	Cultural Heritage	(381)
二十六 中国历史年表		
	A Chronological Table of Chinese Dynasties	(384)
附录 Appendix		(388)
1) 天干地支	The Heavenly Stems and Earthly Branches	(388)
2) 四季月名	The Names of the Lunar Months of Four Seasons	(390)
3) 二十四节气	The Twenty-four Solar Terms	(392)
4) 二十八宿	(The 28 Xiu) Lunar Mansions	(394)
5) 吉祥语	Auspicious Phrases	(395)
6) 吉祥图案	Auspicious Patterns	(401)
主要参考书目 Bibliography		(407)
索引 Index		(409)
编后记 Postscript		(512)

一 文物考古

ARCHAEOLOGY AND CULTURAL RELICS

人类社会发展阶段 STAGES OF SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

石器时代 the Stone Age

旧石器时代 the Old Stone Age; the Paleolithic Age; the Early Stone Age

中石器时代 the Mesolithic Age; the Middle Stone Age

新石器时代 the New Stone Age; the Neolithic Age; the Late Stone Age

铜石并用时代（红铜时代） the Chalcolithic Age; the Copper Age

青铜时代 the Bronze Age

铁器时代 the Iron Age

史前时期 prehistoric times

原始无阶级公社社会 the classless primitive communal society
(or primitive society)

原始氏族时期 the primitive clan period

母系社会 the Matrilineal Society

父系社会 the Patrilineal Society

奴隶社会 the Slave Society

封建社会 the Feudal Society

资本主义社会 the Capitalist Society

社会主义社会 the Socialist Society

古人类学 PALEOANTHROPOLOGY

- 人类学 anthropology
- 人类学家 anthropologist
- 突出的头 (猿) jutting head (ape)
- 古猿 paleopithecus
- 巨猿 gigantopithecus
- 类人猿 anthropoid; ape
- 古人 Homo sapiens
- 智人 Homo sapient sapiens
- 能人 Homo habilis
- 直立人 (猿人) Homo erectus (ape man)
- 新人 Neoanthropus (lived about 40,000 years ago onward, i. e.,
from the time of the late Paleolithic Age)
- 中国猿人 (北京猿人, 北京人) Sinanthropus; Pekinensis;
Peking ape-man; Peking man (lived some 500,000 –
400,000 years ago, whose fossils were found in 1933 in
the deposits of a cave on Dragon Bone Hill near Zhou-
koudian, southwest of Beijing)
- 山顶洞人 Upper Cave Man (lived 20,000 – 10,000 years ago,
whose fossils were found in 1933 in the upper cave on top
of the Dragon Bone Hill at Zhoukoudian near Beijing)
- 元谋人 Yuanmou Man (lived about 1.7 million years ago, whose
traces were found in 1965 in Yuanmou, Yunnan Pro-
vince)
- 蓝田人 Lantian Man (lived about 650,000 years ago, whose fos-
sils were found in 1963 – 1964 in Lantian, Shaanxi Pro-
vince)
- 大荔人 Dali Man (lived about 400,000 – 300,000 years ago,
whose fossils were found in 1978 in Dali, Shaanxi Pro-
vince)
- 丁村人 Dingcun Man (lived in the Paleolithic Age, whose fossils
were found in 1954 at Dingcun Village, Xiangfen Coun-
ty, Shanxi Province)
- 马坝人 Maba Man (lived in the Paleolithic Age, whose fossils
were found in 1958 at Maba Township, Shaoguan,
Guangdong Province)
- 长阳人 Changyang Man (lived in the Paleolithic Age, whose fos-

	sils were found in 1956 in Changyang, Hubei Province)
资阳人	Ziyang Man (lived about 7,000 years ago, whose fossils were found in 1951 in Ziyang County, Sichuan Province)
柳江人	Liujiang Man (lived in the late Paleolithic Age, whose fossils were found in 1958, in Liujiang, Guangxi Zhuang Autonomous Region)
河套人 (鄂尔多斯人)	Hetao Man, Ordos Man (a piece of his thigh bone was found in 1956 in Inner Mongolia; estimated to have lived in the late Pleistocene Period 更新世)
形态区别	morphological differences
体质特点	physical features
头骨	skull
脑量	cranial capacity
颅	cranium
颅顶部	skull cap
眉脊	supraorbital ridge; brow ridge
上颌骨	upper jaw
下颌骨	lower jaw
枕骨	occipital bone
肢骨	limb bones
坐骨	hip bone
牙床	jaw bone
齿冠	tooth crown
牙槽	alveolus
牙尖	cuspid; peak
长牙	tusks
犬齿	canine tooth
门齿	incisors; biting teeth
臼齿	molar

考古学文化

ARCHAEOLOGICAL CULTURES

旧石器文化 Paleolithic culture

新石器文化 Neolithic culture

- 中石器文化 Mesolithic culture
- 细石器文化 Microlithic culture
- 仰韶文化 (彩陶文化) Yangshao culture (painted pottery culture, a Neolithic culture, discovered in 1921 at Yangshao Village, in Mianchi, Henan Province)
- 马家窑文化 Majiayao culture (late Neolithic culture, discovered in 1923 at Majiayao Site, in Lintao, Gansu Province)
- 河套文化 Hetao culture (late Paleolithic culture, discovered in 1922 - 1923 at Hetao Area)
- 辛店文化 Xindian culture (Bronze culture of late primitive society, discovered in 1923 - 1924 at Xindian of Lintao, Gansu Province)
- 寺洼文化 Siwa culture (possibly a primitive culture of the Di and Qing tribes, discovered in 1924 at Siwashan in Lintao, Gansu Province)
- 齐家文化 Qijia culture (a Chalcolithic culture, discovered in 1924 at Qijiaping in Guanghe, Gansu Province)
- 龙山文化 (黑陶文化) Longshan culture (black pottery culture, a late Neolithic culture, discovered in 1928 at Longshan Town in Zhangqiu, Shandong Province)
- 红山文化 Hongshan culture (Neolithic culture, discovered in 1935 at Hongshan in Chifeng, Liaoning Province)
- 良渚文化 Liangzhu culture (Neolithic culture, discovered in 1936 at Liangzhu Town in Yuhang, Zhejiang Province)
- 丁村文化 Dingcun culture (Paleolithic culture, discovered in 1954 at Dingcun, Xiangfen, Shanxi Province)
- 青莲岗文化 Qingliangang culture (Neolithic culture, discovered in 1951 at Qingliangang in Huai'an, Jiangsu Province)
- 二里岗文化 Erligang culture (c. 16th - 11th century B. C., discovered in 1952 at Zhengzhou, Henan Province)
- 屈家岭文化 Qujialing culture (late Neolithic culture, discovered in 1954 at Qujialing in Jingshan, Hubei Province)
- 庙底沟文化 Miaodigou culture (Neolithic culture, discovered in 1957 at Miaodigou in Sanmenxia, Henan Province; included two periods of Yangshao culture and Longshan culture)

- 马家浜文化 Majiabang culture (Neolithic culture, discovered in 1959 at Majiabang in Jiaxing, Zhejiang Province)
- 二里头文化 Erlitou culture (Bronze culture, discovered in 1959 at Erlitou in Yanshi, Henan Province)
- 大汶口文化 Dawenkou culture (predecessor of Longshan culture, discovered in 1959 and 1974 at Dawenkou in Tai'an, Shandong Province)
- 大溪文化 Daxi culture (Neolithic culture, discovered in 1959 at Daxi in Wushan, Sichuan Province)
- 磁山—裴李岗文化 Cishan-Peiligang culture (Neolithic culture, discovered in 1973 at Cishan in Wu'an, Hebei Province, and also in 1977 at Peiligang in Xinzheng, Henan Province)
- 河姆渡文化 Hemudu culture (early Neolithic culture, discovered in 1973 at Hemudu Village in Yuyao, Zhejiang Province)

考古发掘

ARCHAEOLOGY AND EXCAVATION

- 考古学 archaeology
- 考古学家 archaeologist
- 考古工作者 archaeological worker
- 考古队 archaeological team
- 田野考古 field archaeology
- 水文考古 hydrological archaeology
- 考古勘探 archaeological reconnaissance
- 地理位置 location
- 文物线索 clues to cultural relics
- 化石线索 clues to the location of fossils
- 发现 to discover; to find; to uncover; finding; discovery
- 遗址 site (e. g. historical site); ruins (e. g. the Shang ruins); remains (e. g. remains of houses)
- 遗迹 traces; vestiges; historical remains
- 殷墟 Yinxu (site where the remains of the ancient capital of the Yin-Shang dynasty are located); Yin Ruins at Anyang, Henan Province, 14th-11th century B. C.

居住遗址 dwelling site
 灶坑 stove pit
 窖穴 storage pit
 贝丘冢 kitchen-midden; shell-mound
 遗骨 skeletal remains
 人类化石 human fossil
 猿人化石 ape-man fossil
 头骨化石 fossilized skull
 顶骨化石 parietal bone fossil
 化石骨骼 fossil skeleton
 化石层 fossil bed
 堆积层 stratified deposit
 探沟 exploration ditch
 探方 a square or rectangular unit of an exploration ditch
 探针 probe
 地坑探测 earth resistance test
 试掘 trial diggings
 发掘 to excavate; to unearth; excavation
 二次发掘 second season for excavation
 科学地发掘与清理 to be unearthed and dealt with scientifically
 出土文物 excavations; unearthed objects (antiquities or relics)
 整理化石 to dress fossils
 严重破损 badly damaged
 严重残破 in a state of advanced decay
 完整无损 to remain intact
 保存完整 in a good state or condition of preservation; well-preserved
 现已失传 to become extinct
 修整 to retouch; to prepare; to dress
 复原 to be restored as they were originally; restoration
 真标本 original specimens
 实物 real objects
 文字资料 literal data
 极为罕见的遗物 extremely rare relics
 珍贵的历史文物 precious historical relics
 光亮如新 showing its original luster

表现出相当高的工艺水平 revealing a fairly high artistic and technological level

具有重要的科学价值 to be of great scientific value

试释译 tentative interpretation

释文 transcription; decipherment

物化鉴定 physical and chemical experimentation; authentication through physical and chemical tests

放射性碳-14测定 radiocarbon dating (C^{14} tests)

碳-14断代(根据 5430 ± 40 半衰期) C^{14} dates are based on 5730 ± 40 half-life

钾氩法 potassium argon method

花粉分析 pollen analysis

光谱分析 spectrographic analysis

相对年代 relative dates

绝对年代 absolute dates

距今 B. P. (Before Present)

公元前 B. C. (Before Christ)

公元 A. D. (L. Anno Domini) in the year of our Lord

大约(用在年代前) c. (L. circa); about

范围(用在朝代前) r. (range)

左右(用在年代前) a. (around)

史前发现物

PREHISTORIC FINDS

人工制品 artifacts

石器 stone implements (or tools)

旧石器 paleolith; paleolithic implements

新石器 neolith; neolithic implements

细石器 microlith; tiny blade tools

尖状器 pointed implements

刮削器 scrapers

打制石器 chipped stone vessels

砍砸器 choppers; blades

磨制石器 polished stone vessels

石核石器 stone-core tools

砾石石器 pebble tools
 石片石器 stone-flake tools
 投掷石器 sling stone
 烧石 burnt stone
 燧石 flint
 石锄 stone hoe
 石锤 stone hammer
 石斧 stone axe
 石鑿 stone chisel
 石镑 stone adze
 石铲 stone spade
 锤头 mace-head
 矛头 spear-head
 箭头 arrow-head
 石磨棒 stone roller
 石磨盘 stone saddle-quern
 凸(凹)刀 stone tool with convex (concave) blade
 角器 horn tools
 骨器 bone tools
 骨料 tubular bone
 烧骨 burnt bone
 (钻、凿)灼痕 scorched cavities
 骨针 bone needle
 骨笄 bone hairpin
 骨梳 bone comb
 鱼杈头 harpoon head
 甲骨 oracle bone
 甲骨文 (参见 P177)
 龟甲 tortoise shells
 龟兆 cracks on the tortoise shell
 蚌刀 knives made of shells
 牛胛骨 ox shoulder blade
 羊卜骨 sheep scapula crackle

出土文物选

SELECTED EXCAVATIONS

殷墟甲骨文 Oracle bone inscriptions of the Yin Ruins, Shang Dynasty

铁刃铜钺 Bronze battle-axe with iron blade, Shang Dynasty

铜永孟 (内有 124 字铭文) Bronze Yong Yu (jar) inscribed with 124 characters on the inside, Western Zhou Dynasty

淳化大鼎 Largest bronze Ding found at Chunhua, Shaanxi Province (overall height 122 cm, mouth diameter 83 cm, depth of belly 54 cm, height of ears 28.6cm, weight 226 kg), Western Zhou Dynasty

虎噬鹿铜座 Bronze pedestal in the shape of a tiger devouring a fawn, Warring States Period

十五盏猴子铜连灯 Bronze oil lamp with 15 wicks decorated with monkeys, Warring States Period

铜双翼神兽 Bronze two-winged legendary beast, Warring States Period

郢爰 (楚国) Ying Yuan, gold coins, of the State of Chu (China's earliest gold coin, with the characters "Ying Yuan" engraved on a square gold cake)

曾侯乙编钟 Bian Zhong (a chime of bells) of Marquis Yi of the State of Zeng, Warring States Period

越王句践剑 Sword of Gou Jian, Prince of Yue, Warring States Period

长信宫灯 Bronze gilt figure holding an "Eternal Fidelity" palace lamp, Western Han Dynasty

羊形铜灯 Bronze lamp in the form of a ram, Western Han Dynasty

金缕玉衣 Jade clothes sewn with gold thread (one 1.88 m and the other 1.72 m in length, made of more than 2,000 small pieces of jade with tiny holes at the four corners sewn together with fine gold thread), Western Han Dynasty

铜错金博山炉 Bronze Boshan incense burner inlaid with gold, Western Han Dynasty

银雀山竹简 Bamboo strips at Yinqueshan, Linyi, Shandong Province, Western Han Dynasty

彩绘乐舞杂技陶俑 Painted pottery figurines of musicians, dan-

- cers and acrobats, Western Han Dynasty
- 马踏飞燕 Galloping horse (with head raising, tail flying, three hoofs off the ground, right hind hoof on a swallow), Eastern Han Dynasty
- 铜车马 Bronze chariots, horses and warriors, Eastern Han Dynasty
- 绿釉陶堡垒 (模型) Fortress in green glazed pottery, Han Dynasty (a model of fine structure for military defense; five stories high, with towers on each of the four corners, connected by a suspension bridge)
- 鞍囊式舞马衔杯银酒壶 Silver wine pot in the shape of a saddle bag with the design of a dancing horse clenching a cup in its teeth, Tang Dynasty
- 三彩嘶马和黄釉俯首马 A three-colored pottery roaring horse and a yellow-glazed pottery horse bowing its head, Tang Dynasty
- 莲瓣纹金碗 Gold bowl with embossed lotus-petal design, Tang Dynasty
- 嵌金牛首玛瑙杯 Agate cup inlaid with gold in the shape of an ox head, Tang Dynasty
- 秦始皇陵兵马俑 Terracotta figures of warriors and horses from Qinshihuang's mausoleum (the tomb of the First Emperor of the Qin Dynasty)

文物管理

ADMINISTRATION OF CULTURAL RELICS

- 国家文物局 State Bureau of Cultural Relics
- 国家文物委员会 National Committee of Cultural Relics
- 国家文物鉴定委员会 National Commission for Identification of Cultural Relics
- 中国文物学会 Chinese Society of Cultural Relics
- 中国文物保护技术协会 China Association for Preservation Technology of Cultural Relics
- 中国文物交流服务中心 China Service Center for Exchange of Cultural Relics

中国物流通协调中心 China Coordination Center for Circulation of Cultural Relics

文物保护单位管理 Administration of the State Protected Monuments

私人收藏文物管理 Administration of Private Collections of Cultural Relics

考古发掘管理 Administration of Archaeological Excavation

文物出境管理 Administration of Cultural Relics Exportation

历史文化名城保护规划 Plan of Preservation of Historic Cities

文物保护管理暂行条例 Temporary Rules of the Preservation and Administration of Cultural Relics

禁止珍贵文物图书出口暂行办法 Temporary Rules on Prohibition against the Exportation of Precious Cultural Relics and Books (1950)

中国文物法规 Chinese Cultural Relics Legal

中华人民共和国文物保护法 Law on the Preservation of Cultural Relics of the People's Republic of China

关于禁止和防止非法进出口文化财和非法转让其所有权的方法和公约 Convention on the Means of Prohibiting and Preventing the Illicit Import, Export and Transfer of Ownership of Cultural Property (November 1970, Paris)

关于考古发掘的国际原则建议 Recommendation on International Principle Applicable to Archaeological Excavations (December 1956, New Delhi)

保护世界文化和自然遗产公约 Convention for the Protection of World Cultural and Natural Heritage (November 1972, carried by the 17th Plenary Session of UNESCO, Paris)

国际保护中心 International Center for Conservation (ICC, originally set up as ICSPRCP)

国际文物保护与修复研究中心 International Center for the Study of the Preservation and Restoration of Cultural Property (ICSPRCP)

国际历史艺术品保护协会 International Institute for Conservation of Historic and Artistic Works (IICHAW)

世界遗产委员会 Committee for World Heritage (1976)

二 古墓葬

ANCIENT TOMBS

一般用语

TERMINOLOGY

- 坟墓 grave; tomb
陵墓 mausoleum
墓地 cemetery; graveyard; burial ground
墓石 sepulchral stone; tombstone; gravestone; grave stele
墓志 epitaph
墓道 tomb tunnel; tomb passage; path leading to a grave
隧道券 arched passage
墓道天井 shaft of a tomb gallery
台石 ledgers
墓穴 coffin pit; open grave; coffin crypt
墓前室 crypt antechamber
墓室 coffin chamber
前(中、后)室 front (central, rear) chamber
配(耳)室 side chamber; symmetrical side chamber
墓的形制 structure of a tomb
石墓 rock tomb
砖石墓 brick-chambered tomb
木椁墓 wooden-chambered tomb
画像石墓 stone relief tomb
土坑墓 shaft tomb
石棺 stone sarcophagus
金棺银椁 silver outer coffin with gold inner coffin
瓮棺 funerary urn (used as a coffin); ossuary
棺床 platform for a coffin

棺挡板 end panel for a coffin
 棺侧板 side panel for a coffin
 葬俗 burial rites; sepulchral customs
 火葬 cremation burial
 土葬 inhumation burial
 水葬 burial at sea; burial in the sea
 墓主人 occupant of a tomb
 合葬 joint burial; buried together
 陪葬 satellite tomb; "attendant" tomb
 人殉 human sacrifices
 奴隶殉葬墓 tomb with immolated slaves
 奴隶祭祀坑 sacrificial pits of slaves
 车马坑 chariot pit
 窖藏 hoard
 仰卧屈肢葬 flexed burial
 仰卧伸肢葬 extended burial
 殉葬品 sacrificial objects
 随葬品 funeral objects (articles); burial accessories
 明器 funerary objects; objects made for burial with the dead
 镇墓 (辟邪) to ward off evil
 哀册 funerary eulogium; funeral records
 墓俑 tomb figurine (figure)
 木 (泥、陶) 俑 wooden (earthen, pottery) figurine
 釉陶俑 glazed pottery figurine
 陶武士俑 pottery figurine of warrior
 骑兵俑 figures of cavalrymen
 兵马俑 figures of warriors and horses
 古坟、塚 tumulus
 方塚 square barrow
 圆塚 round barrow
 瓢 (长) 塚 long barrow
 坟堆 (宝顶) grave mound
 围墓沟 ditches around a grave
 五花土 mottled earth
 生土 local earth
 红土地层 red loam

白膏泥 white clay

夯土 rammed earth

墓坑夯土层 layer filled with rammed earth in a tomb pit

陵墓建筑

BUILDINGS OF THE MAUSOLEUMS AND TOMBS

宝城 ramparts

方城 wall containing tumulus (same height as rampart)

扶壁 (扶垛) buttress

明楼 soul tower

神道 spirit road (or avenue) leading to a grave

神道碑 tortoise stele; spirit road stele

碑亭 (参见 P184)

石人 stone carvings of human figures

石兽 stone carvings of animals

神畜 mythical creatures

望天吼 Wang Tian Hou (a mythical animal)

麒麟 (独角兽) Qilin; Kylin; unicorn

獬豸 Xiezhi, a mythical animal

掖恩门 Gate of Heavenly Favors

掖恩殿 Hall of Heavenly Favors; Sacrificial Hall

三台石栏杆 triple terraces with marble balustrades

三台阶石雕 triple staircase with carved marble slab

石台五供 altar with five precious objects (two flower vases, two candlesticks and tripod incense burner)

焚帛炉 oven for burning paper and silk offerings; oven for the burning of sacrificial offerings

棂星门 Linteled Star Gate

陵寝门 (三座门) Triple Doorway; Triple Entrance Gate

大红门 Great Red Gate

龙凤门 Dragon and Phoenix Gate

琉璃影壁 ceramic screen

望柱 (指路灯) beacons

华表 ornamental stone pillar

擎天柱 columns supporting the sky

地宫 underground chamber (or crypt)

历代帝王陵墓 IMPERIAL MAUSOLEUMS AND TOMBS THROUGH THE AGES

黄帝陵 Memorial Mausoleum of legendary emperor Huangdi, northwest of Huangling Xian, Shaanxi Province

秦始皇陵和秦陵兵马俑 Qinshihuang's Mausoleum and its terracotta warriors and horses, at Lintong, Shaanxi Province

长陵 (汉高祖刘邦与其妻吕雉合葬墓) Changling Mausoleum at the north bank of the Wei River near Xianyang City, Shaanxi Province, joint burial tomb of the Han emperor Gaozu named Liu Bang (刘邦) and his wife Lu Zhi (吕雉); the former died in 195 B. C., the latter in 180 B. C.

茂陵 (汉武帝刘彻之陵) Maoling Mausoleum at Xingping, Shaanxi Province, tomb of the Han Dynasty emperor Wudi named Liu Che (刘彻); around it are the tombs of Huo Qubing (霍去病) and Wei Qing (卫青)

杜陵 (汉宣帝刘询之陵) Duling Mausoleum at Qujiang Town, Xi'an, Shaanxi Province, tomb of the Han emperor Xuandi named Liu Xun who died in 49 B. C.

昭陵 (唐太宗李世民之陵) Zhaoling Mausoleum at Liquan, Shaanxi Province, tomb of emperor Taizong named Li Shimin (李世民) of the Tang Dynasty

乾陵 (唐高宗李治与其妻武则天合葬墓) Qianling Mausoleum at Qianxian, Shaanxi Province, joint burial tomb of the Tang emperor Gaozong and empress Wu Zetian (武则天)

桥陵 (唐睿宗李旦之陵) Qiaoling Mausoleum, northwest of Pucheng Xian, Shaanxi Province, tomb of Tang Ruizong named Li Dan who died 716

王建墓 (五代前蜀帝王建之墓) Tomb of Wang Jian (847 - 918), the emperor of the Former Shu of the Five Dynasties called "Yong Ling" in history, northwest of San Dong

Qiao (三洞桥), Chengdu, Sichuan Province

宋陵 (北宋皇陵) Mausoleum of the Song Dynasty, at the level ground and the hilly land between the northern foot of the Song Mountains and the Luo River; the area of the mausoleums is about 30km²; seven emperors of the Northern Song and Zhao Hongyin (father of Zhao Kuangyin), the Xuanzu (respectful title conferred on him posthumously) were buried here, popularly known as "seven emperors and eight tombs"

辽陵 (祖陵和庆陵) Mausoleums of the Liao Dynasty, consisting of Zuling (祖陵) and Qingling (庆陵); the former includes the tombs of the emperor Taizu named Yeluabaoji (耶律阿保机), the empress dowager Zhenlie (贞烈) and empress Qitian; the latter includes the tombs of Shengzong, Xingzong and Daozong; all are at Balin Right (or Left) Banner, Inner Mongolian Autonomous Region

西夏陵 (西夏皇陵) Mausoleums of the Western Xia State, at the eastern foot of the Helan Mountains near Yinchuan City, Ningxia Hui Autonomous Region, consisting of 9 imperial tombs and 193 satellite tombs

成吉思汗陵 (元太祖铁木真) Memorial Mausoleum of Genghis Khan, a memorial building used to offer sacrifices to Genghis Khan, to the southeast of Atangxilian Town, Yikinhuluo Banner, Inner Mongolian Autonomous Region; the spirit tablets of Genghis Khan and his wife are worshiped in the mausoleum

明孝陵 (太祖朱元璋之陵, 南京) Xiaoling Mausoleum at Nanjing, tomb of Ming Dynasty emperor Taizu named Zhu Yuanzhang (朱元璋), died in 1398

明十三陵 (北京昌平) Mingling Mausoleums in Changping near Beijing, tombs of the 13 emperors of the Ming Dynasty

长陵 (明成祖文皇帝之陵) Changling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Chengzu (reign title Yongle) named Zhu Di (朱棣), died in 1424

献陵 (明仁宗昭皇帝之陵) Xianling Mausoleum, tomb of Em-

- peror Renzong (reign title Hongxi) named Zhu Gaochi (朱高炽), died in 1425
- 景陵 (明宣宗章皇帝之陵) Jingling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Xuanzong (reign title Xuande) named Zhu Zhanji (朱瞻基), died in 1435
- 裕陵 (明英宗睿皇帝之陵) Yuling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Yingzong (reign title Zhengtong) named Zhu Qizhen (朱祁镇), died in 1464
- 茂陵 (明宪宗纯皇帝之陵) Maoling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Xianzong (reign title Chenghua) named Zhu Jian-shen (朱见深), died in 1487
- 泰陵 (明孝宗敬皇帝之陵) Tailing Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Xiaozong (reign title Hongzhi) named Zhu Youcheng (朱祐樑), died in 1505
- 康陵 (明武宗毅皇帝之陵) Kangling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Wuzong (reign title Zhengde) named Zhu Houzhao (朱厚照), died in 1521
- 永陵 (明世宗肃皇帝之陵) Yongling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Shizong (reign title Jiajing) named Zhu Houcong (朱厚熜), died in 1567
- 昭陵 (明穆宗庄皇帝之陵) Zhaoling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Muzong (reign title Longqing) named Zhu Zaihou (朱载堉), died in 1572
- 定陵 (明神宗显皇帝之陵) Dingling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Shenzong (reign title Wanli) named Zhu Yijun (朱翊钧), died in 1620
- 庆陵 (明光宗贞皇帝之陵) Qingling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Guangzong (reign title Taichang) named Zhu Changluo (朱常洛), died in 1620
- 德陵 (明熹宗哲皇帝之陵) Deling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Xizong (reign title Tianqi) named Zhu Youjiao (朱由校), died in 1627
- 思陵 (明怀宗愍皇帝之陵) Siling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Huaizong (reign title Chongzhen) named Zhu Yujian (朱由检), died in 1644
- 清福陵 (太祖努尔哈赤之陵) Fuling Mausoleum, tomb of the

Qing emperor Taizu Aixinjueluo Nurhachi and his wife Yehenala, eastern suburbs of Shenyang, Liaoning Province

清昭陵 (太宗皇太极之陵) Zhaoling Mausoleum of the Qing Dynasty, north of Shenyang, Liaoning Province; the emperor Taizong named Aixinjueluo Huangtaiji and his wife Berjijite were buried here; also called the Northern Mausoleum

清东陵 (在河北遵化) East Mausoleum of the Qing Dynasty in Zunhua County, Hebei Province; tombs of famous five emperors of the Qing Dynasty; the empress dowagers Cixi and Ci'an also buried here

孝陵 (清世祖章皇帝之陵) Xiaoling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Shizu (reign title Shunzhi) named Aixinjueluo Fulin (福临), buried here in 1663

景陵 (清圣祖仁皇帝之陵) Jingling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Shengzu (reign title Kangxi) named Aixinjueluo Xuanye (玄烨), buried here in 1723

裕陵 (清高宗纯皇帝之陵) Yuling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Gaozong (reign title Qianlong) named Aixinjueluo Hongli (弘历), buried here in 1799

定陵 (清文宗显皇帝之陵) Dingling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Wenzong (reign title Xianfeng) named Aixinjueluo Yizhu (奕訢), buried here in 1865

惠陵 (清穆宗毅皇帝之陵) Huiling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Muzong (reign title Tongzhi) named Aixinjueluo Zaichun (载淳), buried here in 1879

清西陵 (在河北易县) West Mausoleum of the Qing Dynasty in Yixian County, Hebei Province; tombs of four emperors of the Qing Dynasty

泰陵 (清世宗宪皇帝之陵) Tailing Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Shizong (reign title Yongzheng) named Aixinjueluo Yinzhen (胤禛), buried here in 1737

昌陵 (清仁宗睿皇帝之陵) Changling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Renzong (reign title Jiaqing) named Aixinjueluo Yongyan (颙琰), buried here in 1821

慕陵（清宣宗成皇帝之陵） Muling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Xuanzong (reign title Daoguang) named Aixinjueluo Minning (旻宁), buried here in 1852

崇陵（清德宗景皇帝之陵） Chongling Mausoleum, tomb of Emperor Dezong (reign title Guangxu) named Aixinjueluo Zaitian (载湉), buried here in 1909

皇陵管理

IMPERIAL MAUSOLEUM ADMINISTRATION

陵寝驻防 garrison of the Imperial Mausoleum

陵寝总管 supervisor-in-chief of the Imperial Mausoleum Administration

陵寝司工匠 maintenance director at the Imperial Mausoleums

陵寝管理烧造砖瓦官 director of brick-and-tile making for the Imperial Mausoleums

守护陵寝大臣 grand minister for the protection of the Imperial Mausoleums

守陵寝总兵官 regional commander for the protection of the Imperial Mausoleums

守陵太监 eunuch protector of the Imperial Mausoleums

陵寝保护与发掘 protection and excavation of the Imperial Mausoleums

重点保护陵墓 important mausoleums and tombs under state protection

三 古建筑

ANCIENT ARCHITECTURE

一般用语 TERMINOLOGY

- 古建筑 ancient architecture; ancient buildings
建筑师 architect
建筑工程 architectural engineering
建筑设计 architectural design
建筑艺术 the art of architecture
建筑群 architectural complex (group)
建筑风格 (形式) architectural style
民族风格 (形式) national style
整体设计和规划 overall design and planning
正 (立) 视图 elevation
建筑结构 with 装饰 architectural composition and decoration
砖石结构 masonry structure
泥砖结构 adobe structure
木结构 timber structure; construction of wood
夯土结构 rammed structure
礼制 ritual regulations
“三朝五门”制 the system of “the three halls and five gates”
“左祖右社”制 the system of “the imperial ancestral temple at
left and the altars to the gods of earth and grain at right”
堪舆风水之说 geomantic principles
“风水” “wind and water” (Feng Shui); topographical divination
阴阳五行之说 the principles of Yin and Yang and the Five Elements — water, fire, wood, metal, and earth

- 天圆地方 upper round and lower square
- 九九制 nine and its multiples are the most "perfect" numbers of Chinese philosophy and are incorporated into the construction (e. g. number of bays in a building, stone flags paving temples, etc.) of the highest ranking of buildings
- “八卦” “The Eight Diagrams” — Qian (乾, northwest), Kan (坎, north), Gen (艮, northeast), Zhen (震, east), Xun (巽, southeast), Li (离, south), Kun (坤, southwest) and Dui (兑, west)
- 对称原则 principles of symmetry
- 前呼后应 to bring into architectural harmony and unity
- 遥相呼应 to be balanced in position
- 纵横交错 interlocking verticals and horizontals
- 错落有致 in picturesque disorder
- 疏密相间 expensive and tight
- 起伏错落 rising and falling elements
- 曲径通幽 a winding path leads to deep and quiet seclusion
- 空间组合 spatial composition
- 明三暗五 three-sided rectangle
- 明五暗十 (五间两进) occupying an area equal to two rows of five standard rooms
- 面九进五 nine bays (length) along the front by five bays (width) deep
- 三进九院落 divided by three courtyards and nine compounds
- 独特风格 unique style
- 各具特点 each with a character of its own
- 建筑宏伟 grandeur and magnificence of structure
- 庄严肃穆 solemnity
- 形体壮丽 majesty of style
- 布局匀称 symmetrical arrangement
- 金碧辉煌 magnificent; splendid
- 雕梁画栋 vermilion columns and decorated beams; carved beams and painted rafters
- 雕栏玉砌 carved railings and marble stairs (steps)
- 透雕细工 openwork carving
- 红墙绿瓦, 交相映衬 the red walls and green tiles set each other

off beautifully

中国的传统建筑 traditional Chinese architecture

高水平的建筑技术 highly accomplished building technique

载入建筑史册 to be written into the annals of architectural history

古宫殿群 ancient palatial complex

保存完整 to have been preserved intact

保存到现在 to preserve to the present

现存最大的木结构群 the largest group of timber structures extant

现存最大、最宏伟、最完整的古建筑群 the largest, most magnificent and most complete extant group of ancient architecture

最高大的宫殿建筑 the tallest and largest of the palace buildings

著名的宫殿群 famous palace complex

毁建数次 to be destroyed and rebuilt several times

重修 (修复) to restore; to repair

多檐多脊角楼 corner tower with multi-eaved, multi-ridged roof

石雕柱基华表 ornamental pillar with carved stone base

建筑材料

BUILDING MATERIALS

瓦件造型 types of tiles

禽兽瓦件 tiles in the shape of birds and beasts

金瓦 metal tiles

青瓦 black (or gray) tiles

板瓦 flat (or segmental) tiles

筒瓦 barrel tiles; cylindrical tiles

重唇瓦 double-lip tiles

瓦当 tile-end

动物饰件 zoomorphic ornaments

金砖 metal bricks (like metal tiles, they resound when struck)

水磨砖 finely ground bricks

澄浆砖 settled clay bricks (the name was derived from the process of mixing untreated clay with water to form a slur-

- ry and allowing the suspension to settle)
 “停泥城砖” “stopping mud city wall” bricks
 块料 blocks
 大理石板 marble slab
 汉白玉 white marble
 铺路石板 flag stone
 侧石（路边石） curb stone
 太湖石 eroded limestone
 鹅卵石 cobble stone
 琉璃技术 glaze-making technology
 琉璃配料 ingredients of glaze
 制胎挂釉 body-making and glazing
 琉璃构件 glazed members (or objects)
 多种形象的琉璃饰件 different types of glazed ceramic objects
 琉璃灯笼砖 green lantern-shaped bricks
 琉璃砖瓦 glazed bricks and tiles
 琉璃岔角 glazed tile triangular corner relief
 流云双鹤盒子 glazed tile relief of clouds and twin cranes
 鹭鸶卧莲盒子 glazed tile relief of a pair of egrets amongst lotuses
 红土 red clay
 金土 gold clay
 生石灰 quick lime
 熟石灰 slaked lime
 石灰浆 lime white
 石灰砂浆 lime mortar
 夯土垫实 a rammed earth core
 柱础 plinth; post base
 朱漆柱 vermilion column
 地幔金砖 floor paved with bricks
 乾摆灌浆，磨砖对缝 after the laying of the surface bricks, the interstices were filled with mortar, giving the wall a smooth appearance

建筑物名称 NAMES OF BUILDINGS

亭台楼阁 pavilion, kiosk; terrace; tower; belvedere

塔坛堂馆 pagoda (dagoba; tower); altar; hall
 宫殿寺庙 palace; temple
 皇宫 imperial palace
 正(配)殿 main (side) building (hall)
 厢房 wing room; flank
 连檐庑房 running-eaved gallery
 厅室院落 chamber and courtyard
 曲廊 irregular course
 柱(门)廊 colonnade
 廊道 covered way
 阳台 balcony; veranda
 抱厦 covered corridor; portico
 四出抱厦 with a covered corridor around all four sides
 突檐 projecting eaves
 天井(窗) skylight
 卡墙 short wall
 挡土墙(拥壁) retaining wall
 花山头 gablet
 山墙(三角墙) gable
 护墙 parapets
 四面亮山 to present four opposing gablets
 敞轩 open-sided lodge
 水榭 pavilion or bower surrounded by water; water side pavilion
 水阁 pavilion or tower by water
 暖阁 warm chamber (i. e. heated by Kang)
 阁楼 garret
 隔间 partitioned bay
 三开间方亭 a square pavilion with three bays
 形成“凹”字形 to form a three-sided square
 四合院 a typical courtyard with buildings constructed along all
 four walls; traditional one-story courtyard complexes
 半封闭三合院 a semi-closed courtyard
 街门 street entrance
 影壁 screen wall
 正(后)房 main (rear) hall
 露天庭院 open courtyard

皇城墙 imperial city wall
 角楼 (参见 P36)
 阙楼 side tower
 城门楼 gatehouse; gate tower
 腋门 armpit doorway
 瓮城 barbican entrance
 城垣 ramparts
 城垛 (雉堞) battlements
 城池 city walls and moat
 礮礮马道 bridle path
 甬道 (俗称“辇道”) the road for imperial carriage
 牌楼 arch; memorial arch; monument
 华表 (参见 P14)
 护城河 moat (around city wall, an imperial palace or other buildings)
 拱券 span of arch
 净跨 space between two pillars
 朱漆大门 vermilion lacquer gate
 雕花大门 sculptured gate; sculptured door panels
 垂花门 ornamental archway
 九排八十一门钉 eighty-one gilt bronze bosses in rows of nine
 钟楼 bell tower
 鼓楼 drum tower
 城堡 castle
 烽火台 beacon tower

构 架

STRUCTURE FRAME

梁架 timber construction
 系梁 (额枋) tie beam; collar beam
 系杆 (拉杆) tie bar
 梁架结构 roof beam structure
 纵横牵连的构架 the complex interlocking structure
 梁柱结构体系 pillar-and-beam structural system
 直梁 straight beam

月梁 crescent beam
 支梁 strut
 角梁尾 corner cantilever end
 楣 (过梁、框缘) lintel; architrave
 枋心 heart (center) of the beam; central section of an architectural member
 外檐额枋 outer eaves' boards and braces; architraves
 屋檐与托座 eaves and bracketing
 纵系梁 longitudinal tiebeam
 横系梁 transversal tiebeam
 檩 (桁) purlin
 脊檩 ridge purlin
 底檩 inferior purlin
 平檩 intermediate purlin
 上 (前) 平檩 front purlin
 下 (后) 平檩 rear purlin
 主椽 principal (main) rafter
 飞椽 flying rafter
 檐椽 eave-rafter
 椽梢 (头) rafter head (end)
 遮椽板 rafter hiding board
 雀替 (托木) bolster
 支座 support
 镶板 boarding
 螺栓 bolt
 木螺丝 wooden screw
 木钉 wooden nail
 硬木楔 hardwood wedges
 公母榫结合 mortise and tenon joint
 横木 flat cross beam
 飞昂 flying lever
 耍头 nosing head
 双柱桁架 queen truss
 上桁弦 upper chord
 下桁弦 lower chord
 檐口瓦槽 eaves course

- 檐口望板 eaves fascia
- 木柱 wooden column
- 柱头 column capital; top of column
- 罗曼式柱头 (带枕柱头) cushion capital
- 柱基 column (pillar) base; plinth
- 爪柱 shorter column
- 檐柱 peripheral column
- 内柱 hypostyle column
- 梭柱 shuttle-shaped column
- 角柱 corner column
- 柱头铺作 set on column
- 角柱石 corner pier
- 平柱 central bay column
- 斗拱 Dougong, a system of brackets inserted between the top of a column and a crossbeam, supporting the eaves from the columns; block-arm; brackets-and-blocks
- 穿斗 column and tie construction
- 卢斗 cap block
- 散斗 small block
- 华 (花) 拱 flower arms
- “品”字科斗拱 brackets in the shape of the Chinese character “Pin” between crossbeam and ceiling
- 角科斗拱后尾 corner brackets supporting caisson
- 平身科斗拱后尾 brackets resting on beam at base and supporting coffered ceiling lath with tail end of long member and cantilever
- “减柱造”法式 the method of construction called “without pillars”
- 抬梁法 column and strut-beam construction method
- 叠架法 post and lintel method
- 单翘三昂 single corbel bracket units with three cantilever arms
- 无梁殿 vaulted hall

屋顶与装饰

ROOF FORMS AND THEIR DECORATION

(ROOF CONSTRUCTION)

- 屋顶式样 different types of roof shape; styles of roofs
- 正脊 main (top) ridge; horizontal top ridge
- 侧(垂)脊 sloping ridge
- 重(单)檐 double (single)-eave
- 屋脊檐头 ridges of roofs and ends of eaves
- 斜(尖)脊 hip (arris)
- V形檐槽 arris gutter
- 单坡屋顶 pent roof
- 斜脊人字(三角)屋顶 hipped gable roof
- 圆屋顶(穹窿) vault; dome structure
- 卷棚顶 rolled pitched roof
- 圆攒尖顶 conical roof
- 四角攒尖顶 Sijiao Cuanjian, a hipped pavilion roof (four corners gathered to a point roof); four sloping ridges meeting at apex; a roof drawn up to a point
- 四坡式屋顶 hip (hipped) roof
- 四坡复檐屋顶 double-eaved hip roof
- 四坡三角屋顶 hip and gable roof
- 角锥体屋顶(金字塔屋顶) pyramidal roof
- 鞍形屋顶 saddle roof
- 曲线屋顶 curved roof
- 勾连搭式屋顶 continuous joined roofs
- 庑殿顶 Wudian, a pitched roof; "veranda great hall" roof; a hipped roof with one horizontal and four sloping ridges
- 单檐庑殿顶 single-eaved pitched roof; single-eaved great hall roof
- 重檐庑殿顶 double-eaved roof with one horizontal and four sloping ridges (the highest ranking)
- 歇山顶 Xieshan, a saddle roof sitting on the lower half of a hip roof
- 单檐歇山顶 single-eaved hipped roof
- 重檐歇山顶 double-eaved, hipped roof with one horizontal and four sloping ridges; double-eaved roof in the hip and gablet type
- 歇山卷棚式 a hipped and gabled roof with single, long-pointed upturned eave corners

- 硬山顶 Yingshan, a saddle roof without the overhang at the ends
- 悬山顶 Xuanshan, a saddle roof with slight overhangs; pitched roof with overhanging eaves; overhanging mountain roof
- 盪顶(平顶四坡) flat roof of four-slope style; "sea-case roof"; half-hipped, flat-topped roof
- 重檐盪顶殿 flat-roofed, double-eaved hall; a hall with double eaves and a flat-topped hipped roof
- 重檐攒尖顶阙亭 a double-eaved pavilion with roof of four equal sloping ridges
- 天圆地方的重檐攒尖顶多角亭 a pavilion with a conical roof above a many covered double-eaved roof over a stepped square base
- 三开间卷棚歇山式建筑 a three-bay building with a rolled hip and gablet roof
- 歇山式三间四柱九顶建筑 a building having 3 bays, 4 pillars and 9 roofs which are of a Chinese Xieshan style (i. e. one with a main ridge, 4 vertical and 4 propping ridges and 2 or 4 slopes)
- 别致的重檐八角攒顶式结构 a unique structure having a double-eaved roof whose 8 sides converge into a ball end
- 屋顶圆头(宝顶) roof pommel at the apex
- 铜镀金宝顶 gilt bronze roof pommel; gilt spherical ornament at apex
- 琉璃宝顶 glazed ceramic roof pommel
- 渗金宝顶 a gilt Buddhist parasol
- 翼角 upturned roof-corner
- 飞檐 flying-eaved roof
- 举架 pitch and curvature of roof
- 吻兽 zoomorphic ornaments on palace or temple roofs; ceramic roof animals
- 檐角套兽 grasping dragon; hornless dragon-shaped head encasing a corner member
- 乘鸡仙人 immortal riding a hen
- 仙人走兽全景 zoomorphs in series
- 正(大)吻 huge gaping dragon
- 小兽 small creatures

龙吻 dragon snout on both ends of a roof ridge

鸱尾 the tail of a cormorant

龙 (参见 P129)

凤 (参见 P129)

狮子 lion

天马 winged or celestial horse

海马 seahorse

狻猊 (Suan Ni) scaled lion

押鱼 Ya Yu

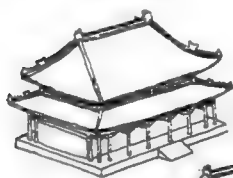
獬豸 (Xie Zhi) the fire-eating animal

斗牛 Dou Niu

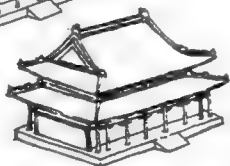
行什 Hang Shi

五种主要屋顶式样

Five main styles of roofing from top: wudian, xieshan, sijiao cuanjian, xuanshan, and yingshan



庑殿顶



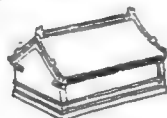
歇山顶



四角攒尖顶



悬山顶



硬山顶

内外装修

INTERIOR AND EXTERIOR FITTINGS

内外檐装饰 decorations on the inner and outer eaves

- 浑金 (彩绘) embossed gold leaf decoration
- 贴金 (彩绘) covered in gold leaf
- 藻头 girdle
- 箍头 encircle
- 旋子 whorl or curl; polychrome painted decoration
- 花心 (旋眼) flower heart or center
- 彩画 decorative painting
- 和玺彩画 polychrome painted decoration in He Xi style (employed in the most important buildings, or served for the highest order of buildings)
- 旋子彩画 Xuan Zi style of decoration (employed in the secondary buildings)
- 苏式彩画 Suzhou style of decoration; the Suzhou-style colored painting (the 3rd order of the three main types of decoration of timber members)
- 龙锦彩画 the dragon-brocade design (using dragon and brocade motives)
- 镶嵌图案 mosaic designs
- 镶嵌天花 (井口天花) coffered ceiling; panels of the coffered ceiling
- 软天花 soft ceiling
- 藻井、天花 caissons and ceilings
- 方井 square pendentive
- 圆井 dome
- 八角井 octagonal drum
- 龙戏珠天花板 coffered ceiling with gilded designs of dragons playing with pearls
- 关黄对刀 swordfight between Guan Yunchang and Huang Zhong (characters from the novel *Romance of the Three Kingdoms*)
- 鹤鹿同春 cranes and deer enjoying the spring time
- 五爪龙 the imperial five-clawed dragon; the highest order of dragons; (because of their powers connected with fire and rain, they were regarded as protectors of man's destiny)
- 鹿 deer (in Taoist mythology, it is the animal capable of searching out the Ling Zhi 灵芝, or fungus of immortality, and is often portrayed with a stylized version of the fungus in

- its mouth; it therefore presents longevity)
- 龙眼宝珠 precious dragon-eye pearl
- 卍字饰 Swastika; Swastica (an auspicious symbol of great antiquity with its crampons usually placed to the right, it was most probably imported along with Buddhist art but may also be associated with the meandering patterns of ancient Chinese applied art)
- 风门 wind shelter door
- 屏门 screen door between inner and outer courtyards
- 实榻门 Shita doors (studded with nine lines of nine bosses; the chased metal plates at top and bottom, decorative escutcheons and ring handles, are also gilt)
- 板门 plank door
- 隔扇门 partition door
- 隔心 the upper part of a partition door, also known as "lattice window"; "trellis"
- 裙板 the lower part of a partition door, also known as "skirt board"; "skirting panel"
- 四抹球纹隔扇门 trellis circle-patterned openwork lattice doors
- 三交六椀菱花隔扇门及帘架 water chestnut-blossom patterned partition door and curtain rails
- 双(三)交四(六)椀菱花隔心 partition showing "double (triple)-crossed four (six) curved water chestnut blossom pattern"
- 菱形格子 rhombic lattice (the lines may cross twice or three times)
- 支摘窗(竖绞链窗) casement window (often with pivoting top)
- 钱文漏窗(扇形窗) coin pattern lattice fanlight
- 什锦窗 windows of various shapes
- 窗花纹 lattice patterns (including lantern frame, cracked ice, coin, the Buddhist swastika and circular patterns)
- 菱花钉 "waterchestnut" trellis pattern lattice work
- 缠枝莲纹花罩 openwork hanging curtain partition with a design of intertwined lotus
- 板壁 board wall

- 博古架 shelves for antiques
- 板门及毗卢罩 door surmounted by elaborately carved canopy with hanging bosses
- 宫门拉手与饰钉 ornamental handles and studs on a ceremonial door
- 铺首 decorative Pu Shou, or gilt escutcheon, in the form of an animal mask (the lower half is usually in the form of a ring hanging from the animals' jaw); archaic decorative escutcheon and ring handles, called Pu Shou or Men Pu, usually in the form of an animal mask
- 照明 (参见 P354)
- 蜡烛灯和灯笼 lamps and lanterns using candles, the single source of lighting
- 取暖 heating
- 火墙 fire wall
- 炕 Kang, a heatable brick bed (hollow platform bed widely used in northern China usually made of bricks and heated from below); hollow brick bed warmed by a fire below
- 炕火口 stoke hole of the Kang ducts
- 烟道出口 smoke flue outlet
- 炭盆 charcoal brazier
- 火炉 lit stove
- 防暑措施 measures to keep off the heat in the summer
- 冬暖夏凉 hot in winter and cold in summer

石 工 STONEWORK

- 石工 (匠) stone mason
- 采石 quarrying stone
- 石方 cubic meter of stone
- 青白石 green-white marble; mugwort marble
- 汉白玉 Han white jade (a kind of white marble)
- 石栏杆 marble balustrades
- 望柱 balusters; balustrade capitals
- 寻杖 railing (or rail)

- 三重台基栏杆 three-tiered terraces with balustrades
- 重台钩栏 double terraces with ornate balustrades
- 须弥座 the Buddhist Mount Sumeru
- 单层须弥座围白石栏杆 a single wide Sumeru terrace surrounded by white marble balustrades
- 龙头（螭首）石雕水注 marble waterspouts carved in the shape of dragon's (hornless dragon's) head
- 龙凤云雕石栏杆 white marble balustrade carved with dragon, phoenix and cloud designs
- 龙云石柱 marble column decorated with winding dragons and clouds in relief
- 云龙阶石 stepping stone carved with clouds and dragons
- 兽面柱头 animal head mounted on pillar
- 白石甬路 walkway paved with white stone
- 雕石御路 imperial way of carved stone slab; dragon pavement
- 奇石玉座 stones of fantastic shapes on white stone stands
- 丹墀、丹陛 Danchi or Danbi, vermilion steps of stone leading up to a palace hall
- 清式抱鼓石 undecorated terminal panel stone

给水排水

WATER SUPPLY AND DRAINAGE

- 桥梁、涵洞 bridges and culverts
- 单拱桥 single-arched bridge
- 平桥 flat bridge
- 单拱结构 single-arched structure
- 地下水道 underground waterways; gully drain
- 泄水槽 drainage gully
- 出（入）口 outlet (inlet)
- 排水干道 major artery of the drainage network
- 券洞（沟眼） arched culvert
- 沟帮（底） bed (bank) of culvert
- 滴水嘴 gargoyle
- 下水道 gully drain
- 钱眼（下水口） coin-shaped drain

集水孔 gully hole

水落管、水槽 gullet

水滴子 water-spout

四 宫殿园林

PALACES AND GARDENS

故宫（紫禁城） THE IMPERIAL PALACE (THE FORBIDDEN CITY)

故宫（紫禁城） The Imperial Palace (known as the Forbidden City; built in 1406 - 1420; covers an area of about 720,000 square meters)

护城河 moat (52 meters wide)

宫墙 palace walls (10 meters high)

角楼 corner tower; turret; watchtower

中路 The Middle Section

午门 Wu Men. Meridian Gate; Noon Gate (main entrance to the Forbidden City; built in 1420 and repaired in 1647; its archway is 8 meters high and 35 meters deep)

五凤楼（午门雁翅楼） Wu Feng Lou. Meridian Gate showing the two wild goose wings extensions, known as the Five Phoenix Tower

金水桥 Marble bridges over the Golden River; Golden River Bridges

太和门 Tai He Men. Gate of Great Harmony (built in 1420 and rebuilt in 1889; stands on a foundation of 3.44 meters high and covers 1300 square meters of floor space)

太和殿（金銮殿） Tai He Dian. Hall of Great Harmony (popularly called "Hall of Golden Bells"; built in 1420 and rebuilt in 1695; 35 meters high with an area of 2377 square meters; the largest and most important building in

the Forbidden City)

太和殿前广场 the vast courtyard in front of the Hall of Great Harmony

中和殿 Zhong He Dian. Hall of Middle Harmony (originally named Hua Gai Dian or Hall of Splendid Canopy 华盖殿; a square building, built in 1420 and rebuilt in 1627)

保和殿 Bao He Dian. Hall of Preserving Harmony (originally called Jin Shen Dian 谨身殿, Hall of Respectful Care and Contentment, or Hall of Practicing Moral Culture; built in 1420 and rebuilt in 1625)

景运门 Jing Yun Men. Gate of Great Fortune; Gate of Prospect and Fortune

隆宗门 Long Zong Men. Gate of Great Ancestors; Gate of Glorifying Forebears

军机处 Jun Ji Chu. Office of the Grand Council of State (with the assistance of the Grand Councillors, the emperor dealt with the military and political affairs)

九卿房 Jiu Qing Fang. House for Nine Degrees of High Officials; the Main Office of the Nine Ministers

懋勤殿 Mao Qin Dian. Hall of Industrious Energy (originally used as a study by the emperor Kangxi, afterwards occupied by those members of the Hanlin Academy who had secretarial duties at court)

乾清门 Qian Qing Men. Gate of Heavenly Purity (built in 1420 and repaired in 1655; the main entrance to inner court)

上书房 Shang Shu Fang. Imperial Reading Room (study for children of the imperial family)

日精门 Ri Jing Men. Gate of Glorious Sun

月华门 Yue Hua Men. Gate of Luminous Moon

乾清宫 Qian Qing Gong. Palace of Heavenly Purity (built in 1420, rebuilt in 1669, and again rebuilt after a fire in 1798; the place where the emperor lived and handled routine affairs from the Ming to early Qing periods; the four large characters on the tablet above the throne written by the first Qing emperor, read "Zheng Da Guang Ming," means the ruler should be open and just, shin-

ing on all things like the sun; yet behind this tablet was a hiding place where the ruler would leave his secret testament designating a successor to the throne — a custom that started in the 18th century with the emperor Yongzheng)

- 批本处 Pi Ben Chu. Office for Receiving Cabinet Documents submitted to the emperor
- 御茶房 Yu Cha Fang. Imperial Tea Hall
- 交泰殿 Jiao Tai Dian. Hall of Union; Hall of Mutual Ease; Hall of Prosperity (built in 1420 and rebuilt in 1655; used for storing 25 imperial seals — four of them in the Manchu language were used before the Qing made Beijing its capital in 1644; the rest are bilingual, Chinese and Manchu, ordered by the Qianlong emperor; also here was placed a clepsydra dating from Qianlong period)
- 景和门 Jing He Men. Gate of Great Pleasure
- 隆福门 Long Fu Men. Gate of Great Happiness
- 坤宁宫 Kun Ning Gong. Palace of Earthly Tranquility (built in 1420 and rebuilt in 1655; used as the bedchamber of the Ming empresses; however, Qing rulers changed it into a place for offering sacrifices to gods)
- 坤宁门 Kun Ning Men. Gate of Earthly Tranquility
- 御花园 Yu Hun Yuan. Imperial Garden (built in the Ming period with an area of over 7,000 square meters)
- 天一门 Tian Yi Men. The First Gate of Heaven
- 钦安殿 Qin An Dian. Hall of Imperial Peace; a Taoist Temple for Imperial Worshipers; Hall of Imperial Tranquility (built in 1420 and rebuilt in 1535; the place where the Ming and Qing emperors offered sacrifices to the Taoist God Xuan Wu 玄武)
- 四神祠 Si Shen Ci. Temple of Four Gods
- 启运门 Qi Yun Men. Gate of Initiating Good Luck
- 千秋亭 Qian Qiu Ting. Thousand-Autumn Pavilion
- 万春亭 Wan Chun Ting. Ten-Thousand-Spring Pavilion; Innumerable Spring Pavilion
- 浮碧亭 Fu Bi Ting. Pavilion of Green Ripples; Pavilion of

- Floating Green (sitting above a pool, balanced symmetrically by the pavilion of Auspicious Clarity)
- 澄瑞亭 Cheng Rui Ting. Pavilion of Auspicious Clarity; Pavilion of Clarity and Excellence
- 绛雪轩 Jiang Xue Xuan. Pavilion of Crimson and White; Pavilion of Crimson Snow Flakes (built in 1420; used by the emperor Qianlong to compose poems with his courtiers)
- 摘藻堂 Chi Zao Tang. Hall of Literary Elegance (kept selections of the Four Libraries)
- 养性斋 Yang Xing Zhai. Study of the Cultivation of Nature (the place where Sir Reginald Johnston gave lessons to Emperor Xuantong)
- 延晖阁 Yan Hui Ge. Pavilion of Prolonged Sunshine; Pavilion for Welcoming Sunlight (built in the Ming Dynasty; this two-story pavilion was the place where the emperors Qianlong, Daoguang and Xianfeng of the Qing Dynasty once composed poems)
- 位育斋 Wei Yu Zhai. Lodge for the Proper Places and Cultivations of Things (built in the Ming Dynasty; the place for Taoist activities in the Palace)
- 堆秀山 Dui Xiu Shan. Rockery Hill; Artificial Hill with Fountains; Hill of Piled Excellence
- 仙家洞 Xian Jia Dong. The Fairies' Home Cave
- 御景亭 Yu Jing Ting. Imperial Pavilion for Distant Views; Imperial Prospect Pavilion; Pavilion of Imperial Views
- 承光门 Cheng Guang Men. Gate of Inheriting Light
- 顺贞门 Shun Zhen Men. Gate of Happiness and Luck; Gate of Pursuit of Truth
- 神武门 Shen Wu Men. Gate of Martial Spirit; Gate of Spiritual Valor; Gate of Divine Prowess (built in 1420; the north gate of the Forbidden City; the tower on this gate was called the Drum Tower in the old days)

内东路 The Inner Eastern Section

- 斋宫 Zhai Gong. Palace of Abstinence; Fasting Palace (built in 1731; the place where the emperor was expected to purify

himself before taking part in a solemn sacrifice)

- 毓庆宫** Yu Qing Gong. Palace of Cultivation of Happiness; Palace of the Bringing-Forth of Blessings (the imperial school-room and private residence of Emperor Jiaqing)
- 奉先殿** Feng Xian Dian. Hall of Worshipping Ancestors; Hall of Offerings to the Ancestors (built in 1654 and rebuilt in 1679; used for reserving the spirit-tablets of imperial ancestors)
- 景仁宫** Jing Ren Gong. Palace of Great Benevolence (or Mercy) (built in the Ming Dynasty and rebuilt in 1655; the residence of empresses and imperial concubines)
- 延禧宫** Yan Xi Gong. Palace of Prolonged Happiness
- 承乾宫** Cheng Qian Gong. Palace of Inheriting Heaven (built in the Ming Dynasty and reconstructed in 1655; where Emperor Shunzhi's concubine Ning Mi once lived)
- 永和宫** Yong He Gong. Palace of Eternal Harmony (built in the Ming Dynasty and rebuilt in the Qing Emperor Kangxi's reign; where Emperor Kangxi's Empress Xiaogong Ren and Emperor Guangxu's beloved concubine Jin Fei once lived)
- 钟粹宫** Zhong Cui Gong. Palace of Gathering Essence (built in the Ming Dynasty and rebuilt in 1655; originally the residential place of the crown prince)
- 景阳宫** Jing Yang Gong. Palace of Great Sunlight (built in the Ming Dynasty and rebuilt in 1686; used to store books)
- 诚肃殿** Cheng Su Dian. Sincere and Respectful Hall
- 梵华楼** Fan Hua Lou. The Buddhist Building (keeps many Buddhist pagodas and statues)
- 玄穹宝殿** Xuan Qiong Bao Dian. Hall of Treasures of the Sky
- 箭亭** Jian Ting. Archery Pavilion (built in 1752)
- 北五所** Five North Residences
- 东三所** Three East Residences

外东路 The Outer Eastern Section

- 锡庆门** Xi Qing Men. Gate of Bestowal of Congratulations
- 九龙壁** Jiu Long Bi. Porcelain Nine-Dragon Screen (3.5 meters

- high and 29.4 meters wide; more beautiful than the screen in Beihai Park)
- 皇极殿 Huang Ji Dian. Hall of Imperial Supremacy; Imperial Zenith Hall (built in 1772 - 1776; the place where Emperor Qianlong intended to hold a ceremony after his abdication in favor of his son)
- 宁寿宫 Ning Shou Gong. Palace of Tranquility and Longevity (built in the Ming Dynasty and rebuilt in 1771; where Emperor Qianlong and Empress Dowager Cixi once lived)
- 延祺门 Yan Qi Men. Gate of Spreading Happiness
- 宁寿宫花园 Ning Shou Gong Garden. (popularly known as the Qianlong Garden; built in 1771 - 1776; 160 meters from north to south and 40 meters from east to west, covers 6400 square meters)
- 养性殿 Yang Xing Dian. Hall of the Cultivation of Character (built in 1772; intended to be the living quarters for the Emperor Qianlong when he retired)
- 遂初堂 Sui Chu Tang. Hall of Active Retirement; Hall of Fulfilment of Long-Cherished Wish
- 褙赏亭 Xi Shang Ting. Pavilion of the Ceremony for Purification; Pavilion for Enjoying the Drinking Festival; Pavilion of Ceremonial Purification (its name alludes to the famous calligrapher Wang Xizhi of the Jin Dynasty, who wrote a piece of calligraphy celebrating the ceremony of this festival in the Orchid Pavilion 兰亭)
- 流杯渠 Liu Bei Qu. Wine-Cup-Floating Stream; Wine Cup Watercourse (in Xi Shang Ting there is a meandering water channel, in which water floating a cup full of wine runs from south to north, along which people would take their seats; whenever the wine cup came to a stop, the person who sat there would have to compose a poem and finish the cup of wine)
- 三友轩 San You Xuan. Three Friends Lodge
- 畅音阁 Chang Yin Ge. Pavilion of Pleasant Sounds; Belvedere of Flowing Music (built in 1776; three-story theater of 20.71 meters high and covers 685.94 square meters of

- floor space; used to display the objects used in theatrical performances)
- 阅是楼 Yue Shi Lou. Building for Seeing Opera; Building for Viewing Performances (two-story theater; where the emperor and empress watched Beijing opera or regional dramas)
- 乐寿堂 Le Shou Tang. Hall of Pleasure and Longevity; Hall of Pleasurable Old Age (built in 1772; originally the place where the Emperor Qianlong had a rest whenever he went sight-seeing in Ning Shou Gong Garden)
- 颐和轩 Yi He Xuan. Pavilion of Well-Nourished Harmony (built in 1772 - 1776; the place where Emperor Qianlong took a rest after he handed over the reins of government)
- 古华轩 Gu Hua Xuan. Pavilion of Old Flowers; Ancient Flowery Porch (so-called because there was an ancient Chinese catalpa tree with very beautiful flowers in front of its gate)
- 承露台 Cheng Lu Tai. Terrace for Embracing the Dew; Terrace of Receiving Dew (on the top of an artificial hill with a cave, in which there is a flight of stone steps leading to the top of the terrace)
- 景福宫 Jing Fu Gong. Palace of Great Blessings (formerly the residential palace of Empress Dowager XiaoHui, the mother of Kangxi)
- 景祺阁 Jing Qi Ge. Pavilion of Great Happiness
- 符望阁 Fu Wang Ge. Pavilion of the Anticipation of Good Fortune; Pavilion for Good Wishes
- 萃赏亭 Cui Shang Ting. Pavilion of Appreciating Lush Scenery
- 耸秀亭 Song Xiu Ting. Beautifully Towering Pavilion
- 碧螺亭 Bi Luo Ting. Green Pavilion
- 太医院 (参见 P93)
- 御药房 (参见 P90)
- 御马廄 Imperial Stable
- 东华门 Dong Hua Men. East Glorious Gate; Eastern Floral Gate
- 文华殿 Wen Hua Dian. Hall of Literary
- 传心殿 Chuan Xin Dian. Hall of Remitting the Mind (a memorial hall to Confucius and other philosophers)

- 主敬殿 Zhu Jing Dian. Hall of Taoist-Master
- 本仁殿 Ben Ren Dian. Hall of Tender Mercy
- 集义殿 Ji Yi Dian. Hall of Gathering Justice
- 文渊阁 Wen Yuan Ge. Pavilion of Literary Profundity; Pavilion of Library (large pavilion containing the rare books printed during the Song and Yuan dynasties)
- 内阁大堂 Nei Ge Da Tang. Great Hall of the Grand Secretariat; Great Hall of Cabinet
- 内阁大库 Nei Ge Da Ku. Great Vault of the Grand Secretariat; Imperial Cabinet Archives
- 红本库 Hong Ben Ku. Endorsed Memorials Archives
- 实录库 Shi Lu Ku. Imperial Archives
- 国史馆 Guo Shi Guan. Hall of National History
- 南书房 Nan Shu Fang. The Office of the Hanlin Secretaries (where the grand secretaries of the Hanlin Academy worked)
- 味余书室 The Study of Lingering Flavors
- 知不足斋 The Studio of Increasing Knowledge
- 迷宫 Labyrinth (so-called because its many twists and turns caused the visitor to become disoriented)
- 珍妃井 Zhen Fei Well (when the Eight-Power Allied Forces forced their way into Beijing in 1900, Zhen Fei, the favorite imperial concubine of the emperor Guangxu, was drowned upon the order of the empress dowager Cixi in this well; the concubine was only 25 years old; her body was retrieved and the well stopped up after the Empress Dowager returned to the Palace from Xi'an in 1901; consequently, it has been known as the Zhen Fei Well)

内西路 The Inner Western Section

- 漱芳斋 Shu Fang Zhai. Lodge of Fresh Fragrance; Study of Pure Rich Fragrance (during the last month of the lunar year, Emperor Qianlong came here to write the character "Fu," or Happiness, for greeting the new year)
- 风雅存 Feng Ya Cun. Preservation of Culture (or Elegance) (a small stage in Shu Fang Zhai; Emperors Qianlong,

Jiaqing and Tongzhi came here often to watch theatrical performances)

重华宫 Chong Hua Gong. Palace of Double Brilliance (Emperor Qianlong lived here while he was still a prince; after becoming emperor, it was used to entertain his courtiers and to compose verses together with them)

崇敬殿 (乐善堂) Chong Jing Dian. Hall of Adoration, or Hall of Pleasure and Good Will (the three characters "Le Shan Tang" on the tablet over the throne in this hall were written by Emperor Qianlong; because of this, it was also called Le Shan Tang)

丽景轩 Li Jing Xuan. Pavilion of Brilliant Prospects; Pavilion of Beautiful Scenery (contains a small stage; Empress Dowager Cixi sat on the imperial bed opposite the stage to enjoy the performances of theatrical troupe at her leisures)

储秀宫 Chu Xiu Gong. Palace of Gathering Excellence; Palace of Empress and Imperial Concubines (built in 1420 and rebuilt in 1655; the empresses and imperial concubines of the Ming and Qing courts lived here; Empress Dowager Cixi once lived here)

体和殿 Ti He Dian. Hall of State Harmony (rebuilt from Chu Xiu Men in 1802; when Empress Dowager Cixi celebrated her fiftieth birthday, a banquet was held here)

翊坤宫 Yi Kun Gong. Palace of Blessings to Mother Earth; Palace of Upholding Earth (built in 1417 and rebuilt in 1655; in the Ming and Qing periods, the empresses and imperial concubines lived here; the empress dowager Cixi had lived here before she became empress)

万安宫 Wan An Gong. Palace of Myriad Peace (original name of Yi Kun Gong)

咸福宫 Xian Fu Gong. Palace of Complete Happiness (where Emperor Jiaqing mourned over the death of his father emperor Qianlong)

永寿宫 Yong Shou Gong. Palace of Eternal Longevity; Palace of Vigorous Old Age (built in Ming Dynasty and rebuilt in 1658; the residence of empress and concubines of the

Ming and Qing dynasties)

- 养心殿** Yang Xin Dian. Hall of Mental Cultivation; Hall of the Cultivation of the Mind (built in 1537 and repaired during the Qing Emperor Yongzheng's reign; in the 200 years from the Yongzheng period to the end of the Qing rule, the emperor mostly lived and handled routine affairs here; the eastern room was where Empress Dowager Cixi took charge of state affairs "behind a screen")
- 三希堂** San Xi Tang. Three Rare Hall; Room of Three Rarities (a private study in which Emperor Qianlong kept three rare pieces of calligraphy— "Sunny Weather after Snow" by Wang Xizhi, "Mid Autumn" by Wang Xianzhi and "Bo Yuan" by Wang Xun, all of which from the Jin Dynasty, or 4th century)
- 雨花阁** Yu Hua Ge. The Rain Flower Pavilion; Pavilion of the Rain of Flowers; Building of Beautiful Rain (built in the Ming Dynasty; a three-story square building where Buddhas were worshiped)
- 体顺堂** Ti Shun Tang. Hall of State Satisfaction (the Provisional residence of the empress while the emperor lived in Yang Xin Dian)
- 倦勤斋** Juan Qin Zhai. Lodge for Retired Life; Study of Peaceful Old Age (built in 1772; a resting and recreational place; its name means that one still diligently strives in advanced years)
- 长春宫** Chang Chun Gong. Palace of Long-Spring-Time; Palace of Eternal Spring (built in 1420; rebuilt in 1683; the empresses and concubines of the Ming and Qing periods used this palace as their bedchamber; Empress Dowager Cixi also once lived here)
- 体元殿** Ti Yuan Dian. Hall of State Unity (built on the site of former rear hall of Tai Ji Dian 太极殿 in 1810; Empress Dowager Cixi once lived here)
- 太极殿** Tai Ji Dian. Hall of Great Supremacy; Hall of the Ultimate Principle (built in 1420 and rebuilt in 1683; also where the empresses and imperial concubines of the Ming

and Qing periods lived)

启祥宫 (未央宫) Qi Xing Gong, Wei Yang Gong. Palace of Initiating Auspiciousness; Palace of Blessings; Palace of Infinity (another name for Tai Ji Dian 太极殿)

外西路 The Outer Western Section

慈宁宫 Ci Ning Gong. Palace of Compassion and Tranquility (built in 1653 to celebrate the birthday of Emperor Shunzhi's mother; also the palace of the Empress Dowager Ci'an during the co-regency)

慈宁宫花园 Ci Ning Gong Garden

英华殿 Ying Hua Dian. Hall of Luxuriant Beauty; Hall of Exuberance (built in Ming Dynasty to worship Gods of Lamaist religion)

建福宫 Jian Fu Gong. Palace of Establishing Happiness

建福宫花园 Jian Fu Gong Garden

寿康宫 Shou Kang Gong. Palace of Longevity and Well-Being; Palace of Longevity and Health

寿安宫 Shou An Gong. Palace of Tranquil Old Age

图书馆 Library

大佛堂 Da Fo Tang. Hall of Worshipping the Great Buddha

宝相楼 Bao Xiang Lou. Building for Images of Buddhas; Building of Buddha's Features (two-story building, repaired in 1930; keeps a great number of Buddhas with their names inscribed on the stands)

咸若馆 Xian Ruo Guan. Hall of All Peace; Temple for Worshipping Buddha (a temple where Buddhas were worshiped and where many kinds of sutras are kept)

临溪亭 Lin Xi Ting. Pavilion over a Pond; Pavilion on the Brink of the Brook

吉云楼 Ji Yun Lou. Building of Auspicious Clouds

内务府 Nei Wu Fu. Imperial Household Department (an administrative organization responsible for serving the personal needs of the emperor, his immediate family and his intimate attendants in the private residential quarters of the imperial palace)

- 造办处 Zao Ban Chu. Workshops of the Imperial Household Department
- 南薰殿 Nan Xun Dian. Hall of the Southern Fragrance (kept the portraits of emperors of former dynasties)
- 御书处 Yu Shu Chu. Department of Imperial Calligraphy
- 西华门 Xi Hua Men. West Glorious Gate; Western Floral Gate
- 武英殿 Wu Ying Dian. Hall of Military Prowess (a palace building most noted for housing the Imperial Printing Office 修书处)
- 浴德堂 Yu De Tang. Hall for Cultivating Virtue
- 凝道殿 Ning Dao Dian. Hall of Moral Concentration
- 焕章殿 Huan Zhang Dian. Hall of Brilliant Writings
- 宝蕴楼 Bao Yun Lou. Building for Accumulation of Treasures
- 咸安宫 Xian An Gong. Palace of All Peace
- 城隍庙 Cheng Huang Miao. Temple to the City God; Temple to the Guardian Spirit of the City
- 筒子河 The Tube River
- 断虹桥 Rainbow-Cutting Bridge
- 社稷江山金殿 Bronze Hall to the Gods of the Grain and the Land

其他 Others

- 乐寿堂西廊法帖 inscribed stone tablets mounted in the wall of the west gallery of Le Shou Tang
- 长春宫院内的《红楼梦》壁画 mural depicting scenes from Hong Lou Meng, or Dream of the Red Chamber, on the surrounding corridor in the courtyard of Chang Chun Gong
- 乾清门两侧的八字照壁 a “funnel-like” arrangement of two walls leading to Qian Qing Men
- 遵义门内的琉璃照壁 a huge screen wall covered with glazed tiles inside Zun Yi Men
- 养心殿内的“中正仁和”匾 a tablet with the inscription of four Chinese characters “Zhong Zheng Ren He” (just and benevolent) in the Hall of Cultivating Mind
- 交泰殿内的铜壶滴漏 clepsydra (water clock) in the Hall of Union (a time piece in ancient China made in 1745)
- 养心殿内的“勤政亲贤”匾 a tablet with the inscription of four

Chinese characters “Qin Zheng Qin Xian” (meaning be diligent in state affairs and close to the able worthy)

保和殿后的云龙阶石 pavement stone carved with clouds and dragons behind Bao He Dian

须弥台 sumeru dais

石子路 mosaic pavement; intricate mosaic of cobble path

下马石 (碑) dismounting stone (or stele) (means “dismount from horseback here”)

合欢树 two trees whose branches interlock (or join) together

诸葛亮斗石 a stone with the image of “Zhuge Liang paying his respects to the meteorites of the Big Dipper”

奇石玉座 (参见 P34)

日晷 sun dial (time piece invented in China at very early times)

嘉量 Jia Liang (a standard measure in China's feudal society)

铜锅 bronze vat

铜贝赑 bronze tortoise (known as Bei Xi)

铜鹤 bronze crane

铜炉 bronze censer

铜狮子 bronze lion

驯象 tame elephant

焚帛炉 (参见 P14)

明清时期北京中轴线

The Central Axis (from South to North) of Beijing During the Ming and Qing Dynasties

永定门 Gate of Eternal Settlement

正阳门 Due South Gate (more commonly called Front Gate)

大明门 Great Ming Gate (called Great Qing Gate in the Qing Dynasty)

天安门 (参见 P378)

端门 Gate of Uprightness

午门 (参见 P36)

太和门 (参见 P36)

前三殿 Three Front Halls

乾清门 Gate of Heavenly Purity

后三宫 Three Rear Palaces

坤宁门 (参见 P38)
钦安殿 (参见 P38)
神武门 (参见 P39)
景山 Scenic Mountain (Hill)
鼓楼 (参见 P25)
钟楼 (参见 P25)

北京城中轴线及两侧建筑

APPENDED: Flanking the north-south axis are two huge architectural complexes at the south: the Altar of Temple of Heaven (天坛) on the east, and the Altar of Agriculture (先农坛) on the west. Two more important architectural complexes at the center are: the Imperial Ancestral Temple (太庙) on the east, and the Altar to the God of Land and Grain (社稷坛) on the west.

天坛 (参见 P360)

祈年殿 Qi Nian Dian. Hall of Praying for a Good Harvest

圜丘 Huan Qiu. Altar of Heaven

皇穹宇 Huang Qiong Yu. Imperial Vault of Heaven

丹陛桥 Dan Bi Qiao. Red Stairway Bridge

长廊 Chang Lang. The Long Walkway

宰牲亭 Zai Sheng Ting. Animal Slaughter Pavilion

双环亭 Shuang Huan Ting. Double Circle Pavilion

斋宫 (参见 P39)

回音壁 Hui Yin Bi. Echo Wall (so-called because a whispered sound made on one side of it is audible on the other)

三音石 San Yin Shi. Triple Sounding Stone (clapping while standing on the stone will cause the stone to resonate, giving back a triple echo)

先农坛 The Altar of Agriculture

太庙 (参见 P360)

享殿 Xing Dian. Hall for Worship of Ancestors

寝殿 Qin Dian. Hall for Worship of Imperial Ancestral Tablets

桃园 Tiao Miao. Temple for Worship of Remote Imperial Ancestors' Tablets

戟门 Ji Men. Halberd Gate
 戟门桥 Ji Men Qiao. Halberd Gate Bridges
 琉璃门 Liu Li Men. Glazed Gate
 井亭 Jing Ting. Well Pavilion
 燎炉 Liao Lu. Oven for burning sacrificial offerings
 社稷坛 (参见 P360)

三 海 THE SEA PALACES

(Divided into three different sections: Nan Hai, or the South Sea, Zhong Hai, or the Middle Sea, and Bei Hai, or the North Sea)

南海 Nan Hai (The South Sea)

太液池 Tai Ye Chi. The Pool of Great Secretion; The Great Liquid Pool
 瀛台 Ying Tai. The Ocean Terrace
 迎薰亭 Ying Xun Ting. Pavilion of Great Fragrance
 翔鸾阁 Xiang Luan Ge. Pavilion of the Soaring Phoenix
 涵元门 (殿) Han Yuan Men or Dian. Gate (Hall) of Magnanimous Origins
 景星殿 Jing Xing Dian. Hall of the Clear Star
 藻韵楼 Zao Yun Lou. House of Sweet Melodies
 绮思楼 Qi Si Lou. House of Secret Thoughts
 香宸殿 Xiang Yi Dian. Hall of the Fragrant Screen
 春明楼 Chun Ming Lou. Bright Spring House
 湛虚楼 Zhan Xu Lou. House of Placid Leisure
 补桐书屋 Bu Tong Shu Wu. Library of the Added Paint-tree
 遂安室 Sui An Shi. Chamber of Heart's Ease
 待月轩 Dai Yue Xuan. Kiosk for Awaiting the Moon
 镜光亭 Jing Guang Ting. Pavilion of Mirror of Light
 鲋鱼亭 Ren Yu Ting. Pavilion for Feeding Fish
 八音克谐 Ba Yin Ke Xie. Eight Notes Compelling Harmony (a terrace commonly called)
 长春书室 Chang Chun Shu Shi. Library of the Everlasting Spring
 漱芳润 Shu Fang Run. Pure Rich Fragrance (a little chamber)

- 怀抱爽 Huai Bao Shuang. Pleasure Embracing Pavilion (a pavilion close to the water)
 宝月楼 Bao Yue Lou. House of the Precious Moon
 垂虹亭 Chui Hong Ting. The Hanging Rainbow (a pavilion)
 俯清泚 Fu Qing Ci. Condescending Pure Stream (a pavilion)
 云绘楼 Yun Hui Lou. Tower of Cloud Pictures
 荷风薰露 He Feng Xun Lu. Lotus Breeze and Scented Dew (a pavilion)
 崇雅殿 Chong Ya Dian. Cultivate Elegance Hall
 静憩轩 Jing Qi Xuan. Chamber of Quiet Rest
 怀远斋 Huai Yuan Zhai. Study of Reflections on Remote Matters
 纯一斋 Chun Yi Zhai. Study of Singleness of Heart
 春耦斋 Chun Ou Zhai. Study of the Spring Companion
 听鸿楼 Ting Hong Lou. Building for Listening to the Swan
 植秀轩 Zhi Xiu Xuan. Establish Culture Porch
 虚白室 Xu Bai Shi. Pure Mind Chamber
 爱翠楼 Ai Cui Lou. Love of Green Trees Building; Love of the Green Thicket Tower
 佛亭 Fo Ting. Buddha Pavilion (popularly known as Great Round Mirror)
 延庆楼 Yan Qing Lou. Inviting Good Luck Pavilion
 金鳌玉玃桥 Jin Ao Yu Dong Qiao. Bridge of the Golden Sea Monster and the Jade Rainbow Trout

中海 Zhong Hai (The Middle Sea)

- 紫光阁 Zi Guang Ge. Palace of Purple Glory
 武成殿 Wu Cheng Dian. Hall of Military Officers
 时应宫 Shi Ying Gong. Palaces of Seasonable Times
 万善殿 Wan Shan Dian. Hall of Innumerable Virtues
 千圣殿 Qian Sheng Dian. Hall of a Thousand Saints
 水云榭 Shui Yun Xie. The Water Cloud Kiosk
 太液秋风 Tai Ye Qiu Feng. The Autumn Wind over the Tai Ye Pool

北海 Bei Hai (The North Sea)

- 堆云积翠桥 Dui Yun Ji Cui Qiao. Bridge of Massed Clouds and

the Kingfisher Blue

白塔 Bai Ta. White Dagoba (usually so-called because of its Indian shape)

五龙亭 Wu Long Ting. The Five-Dragon Pavilion; Five-Pavilion Bridge (in the shape of an undulating dragon)

承光殿 Cheng Guang Dian. Hall of the Reception of Glory; Receiving Light Hall

白石佛 The Alabaster Buddha

永安寺 Yong An Si. Temple of Eternal Peace

普安殿 Pu An Dian. Hall of Universal Peace

善因殿 Shan Yin Dian. Hall of Beneficent Cause

悦心殿 Yue Xin Dian. Hall of Joyful Heart

静心斋 Jing Xin Zhai. Lodge of the Quiet Heart

法轮殿 Fa Lun Dian. Hall of Wheel of the Law

庆霄楼 Qing Xiao Lou. Building of Felicitous Skies

蟠青室 Pan Qing Shi. The Green Bowers

琳光殿 Lin Guang Dian. Hall of Sparkling Brightness

妙髻云峰 Miao Quan Yun Feng. The Peak with Wonderful Cloud Wreath

甘露殿 Gan Lu Dian. Hall of Sweet Dew

阅古楼 Yue Gu Lou. Building of the Review of Antiquities; Chamber for Reading Classics

三希堂 (参见 P45)

游廊 You Lang. Floating Gallery

写妙石室 Xie Miao Shi Shi. Stone-Chamber for Writing Wonders

盘风精舍 Pan Feng Jing She. Pure House of the Winding Wind

嵌岩室 Qian Yan Shi. Lofty Cliff Room

环璧楼 Huan Bi Lou. Precious and Round Building

见春亭 Jian Chun Ting. Pavilion for Contemplating the Spring

漪晴楼 Yi Qing Lou. Building of Rippling Brightness; Tower at Edge of Clear Waters

分凉台 Fen Liang Tai. Pavilion of Diffused Coolness; Pavilion of Pleasing Coolness

远帆阁 Yuan Fan Ge. Far Sail Pavilion; Tower of Far-Off Sails; Pavilion of the Distant Sails

- 紫翠房 Zi Cui Fang. Purple and Green House
 碧照楼 Bi Zhao Lou. Tower of Blue Reflection
 承露盘 Cheng Lu Pan. Gathering Dew Dish
 小西天 Xiao Xi Tian. Small Western Heaven; Small Western Paradise
 大西天 Da Xi Tian. Great Western Heaven; Great Western Paradise
 极乐世界 Ji Le Shi Jie. The World of Great Happiness (the hall with the mountain of the Gods was called Ji Le Shi Jie); The Temple of Pure Land
 万佛楼 Wan Fo Lou. Tower of Innumerable Buddhas
 枕峦廊 Zhen Luan Lang. The Gallery Resting on Stones
 沁泉廊 Qin Quan Lang. The Penetrating Spring-Water Gallery
 北垂亭 Bei Chui Ting. The Low North Pavilion
 叠翠楼 Die Cui Lou. Building of Climbing Jungle
 庵画轩 An Hua Xuan. The Porch of Rare Paintings
 先蚕坛 Xian Can Tan. Altar of Silk Culture; Altar of Silkworms
 亲蚕殿 Qin Can Dian. The Imperial Sericulture Hall
 浴蚕池 Yu Can Chi. The Pool for Washing Silkworms
 福昌殿 Fu Chang Dian. Hall of Shining Happiness
 琼华岛 Qiong Hua Dao. Resplendent Jade Island
 琼岛春阴碑 A stele with inscription Qiong Dao Chun Yin (Beautiful Island of the Hidden Treasures of Spring)
 须弥春牌楼 Pai Lou with inscription Xu Mi Chun (The Spring of Sumeru)
 华严清界 Hua Yan Qing Jie. The Pure Territory of Avatamsaka
 团城 Tuan Cheng. The Round Castle (or City)

颐和园

THE SUMMER PALACE

东宫门内 Inside of Dong Gong Men

- 东宫门 Dong Gong Men. The East Palace Gate
 仁寿殿 Ren Shou Dian. Palace (or Hall) of Benevolence and Longevity
 勤政殿 Qin Zheng Dian. Palace (or Hall) of Diligence to Poli-

tics

- 大圆宝镜 Da Yuan Bao Jing. Great Round Precious Mirror
德和园 De He Yuan. Garden of Cordiality of Virtue; Garden of
Harmony and Virtue
怡春堂 Yi Chun Tang. Hall of Delightful Spring
颐乐殿 Yi Le Dian. Palace of Centenary Happiness; Hall of
Pleasant Smiles
谐趣园 Xie Qu Yuan. Garden of Harmonious Delight; Garden of
Harmonizing the Pleasure
玉兰堂 Yu Lan Tang. Hall of Jade Billows; Hall of the Waters
of Rippling Jade
灵芬室 Ling Fen Shi. Chamber of Spiritual Fragrance
藕香榭 Ou Xiang Xie. Pavilion of Nelumbo Perfume
静宜园 Jing Yi Yuan. Garden of Compatibility with Quiescence
宜芸馆 Yi Yun Guan. Lodge of Propriety of Weeding
夕佳楼 Xi Jia Lou. Chamber of Evening Beauty
乐寿堂 (参见 P42)
青芝岫 Qing Zhi Xiu. Cavernous Cliff with Blue Branching Bole-
tus
水木自亲 Shui Mu Zi Qin. The Nature Intimacy of Water and
Trees
邀月门 Yao Yue Men. Gate of Inviting the Moon; Inviting Moon
Gate
长廊 Chang Lang. Long Gallery (or Corridor)
石丈亭 Shi Zhang Ting. Pavilion of Mr. Stone
留佳亭 Liu Jia Ting. Pavilion of Nice to Stay
对鸥舫 Dui Ou Fang. Barge for Facing the Gull
寄澜亭 Ji Lan Ting. Pavilion of Wandering Waves
秋水亭 Qiu Shui Ting. Pavilion of Autumn Water
鱼藻轩 Yu Zao Xuan. Pavilion of Fish and Aquatic Grass
清遥亭 Qing Yao Ting. Pavilion of Limpidity and Remoteness

前山坡东部 The East of the Front Hill Slope

- 含新亭 Han Xin Ting. Pavilion of Enclosing the New
畅春园 Chang Chun Yuan. Garden of Exhilarating Spring
翠岫 Cui Xiu. Verdant Cavernous Cliff

- 自在庄 Zi Zai Zhuang. Farmstead of Ease
 养云轩 Yang Yun Xuan. Pavilion for Keeping the Clouds
 福荫轩 Fu Yin Xuan. Pavilion of Blessed Shelter
 餐秀亭 Can Xiu Ting. Pavilion for Partaking the Beautiful
 燕台大观 Yan Tai Da Guan. Grand View of Yan Tai
 无尽意轩 Wu Jin Yi Xuan. Pavilion of the Inexhaustibility of Ideas
 圆朗斋 Yuan Lang Zhai. Study of Perfect Brightness
 瞰碧台 Kan Bi Tai. Terrace for Watching the Verdure
 写秋轩 Xie Qiu Xuan. Pavilion for Sketching the Autumn
 寻云亭 Xun Yun Ting. Arbor for Investigating Clouds
 重翠亭 Chong Cui Ting. Arbor of Piling Up Green
 千峰彩翠 Qian Feng Cai Cui. The Beautiful Green of a Thousand Peaks
 国花台 Guo Hua Tai. Terrace of the National Flower
 介寿台 Jie Shou Tai. Hall for Cherishing Great Age
 慈福楼 Ci Fu Lou. Upper Chamber of Maternal Happiness

排云门内 Inside of Pai Yun Men

- 排云门 Pai Yun Men. Gate of Pushing the Clouds
 星拱瑶枢 Xing Gong Yao Shu. Stars Bowing the Jade Center
 (Imperial Court)
 云辉玉宇 Yun Hui Yu Yu. Clouds Brighten the Heavenly Canopy
 排云殿 Pai Yun Dian. Hall of Pushing the Clouds; Hall of Dispelling Clouds
 大雄宝殿 Da Xiong Bao Dian. Precious Hall of the Great Hero
 多宝殿 Duo Bao Dian. Hall of Multiple Values
 佛香阁 Fo Xiang Ge. Belvedere of Buddha's Fragrance; Buddha Fragrance Pagoda
 智慧海 Zhi Hui Hai. Sea of Wisdom; Temple of the Sea of Wisdom
 宝云阁 Bao Yun Ge. Belvedere of the Precious Clouds
 德辉殿 De Hui Dian. Hall of the Glory of Virtue
 云外天香 Yun Wai Tian Xiang. Heavenly Fragrance Beyond the Clouds

导养正性 Dao Yang Zheng Xing. Guidance to the Cultivation of
Proper Disposition

转轮藏 Zhuan Lun Zang. Revolving Book Shelves; Revolving
Archive

铜亭 Tong Ting. Bronze Pavilion

五方阁 Wu Fang Ge. Belvedere of Five Cardinal Points

前山坡西部 The West of the Front Hill Slope

清华轩 Qing Hua Xuan. Pavilion of Limpidity and Splendour

安乐窝 An Le Wo. Retreat of Peace and Comfort

绿畦亭 Lu Qi Ting. Arbor of the Verdant Garden

云松巢 Yun Song Chao. Nest of Cloud-Touching Pines

山色湖光共一楼 Shan Se Hu Guang Gong Yi Lou. Storied
Chamber Shared Between the Variegated Hill and the
Bright Lake

澄辉阁 Cheng Hui Ge. Belvedere of Transparent Refulgence

听鹈馆 Ting Li Guan. Salon for Hearing the Oriole

凤翔云应 Feng Xiang Yun Ying. The Cloud Answers While the
Phoenix Hovers

来云依日 Lai Yun Yi Ri. Approaching Clouds Cling to the Sun

蕴古室 Yun Gu Shi. Chamber for Collecting Antiques

画中游 Hua Zhong You. Arbor of Traveling in a Picture

湖山真意 Hu Shan Zhen Yi. True Spirits of the Hill over the
Lake

清音山馆 Qing Yin Shan Guan. Salon of Harmonious Sound

清宴舫 Qing Yan Fang. Barge of Quiet Banquet

石舫 Shi Fang. Marble Boat

临河殿 Lin He Dian. Hall Overlooking the River

延清赏楼 Yan Qing Shang Lou. Upper Chamber for Extending
Unsullied Rejoicing

穿堂殿 Chuan Tang Dian. Passage Hall Palace

斜门殿 Xie Men Dian. Slanting-Doored Palace

小有天 Xiao You Tian. Having a Small Heaven

澄怀阁 Cheng Huai Ge. Belvedere for Purifying the Heart

水周堂 Shui Zhou Tang. Hall of Water Environment

迎旭楼 Ying Xu Lou. Chamber for Welcoming the Rising Sun

- 荇桥 Xing Qiao. Bridge of the Golden Lotus
 五圣寺 Wu Sheng Si. Shrine of Five Divines (the gods of “five grains”)
 德兴殿 De Xing Dian. Hall of Successful Virtue
 玉泉山 Yu Quan Shan. Hill of the Jade Fountain
 西宫门 Xi Gong Men. West Palace Gate

后山坡沿 Along the Back Hill Slope

- 绮望轩 Qi Wang Xuan. Pavilion for Observing the Silky Green
 味闲斋 Wei Xian Zhai. Study of Relishing Indolence
 构虚轩 Gou Xu Xuan. Pavilion of Reaching up to the Firmament
 会芳堂 Hui Fang Tang. Hall for the Assembly of Fragrance
 嘉荫轩 Jia Yin Xuan. Pavilion of Fine Shade
 赅春园 Gai Chun Yuan. Garden of Presenting Spring
 清可轩 Qing Ke Xuan. Pavilion of Tolerable Purity
 袖岚书室 Xiu Lan Shu Shi. Library for Pocketing Mountain Mist
 云会寺 Yun Hui Si. Monastery of the Assembly of Clouds
 香海真源 Xiang Hai Zhen Yuan. True Source of the Fragrant Sea
 无量殿 Wu Liang Dian. Hall of Unlimited Number
 吉祥云 Ji Xiang Yun. Cloud of Good Omen
 众香界 Zhong Xiang Jie. World of an Abundance of Fragrance
 祇树林 Zhi Shu Lin. “Jeta-Vana”, or “Sacred Woods”
 香岩宗印之阁 Xiang Yan Zong Yin Zhi Ge. Belvedere of Scented Cliff and Buddha’s Seal
 须弥灵境 Xu Mi Ling Jing. Sacred Land of Sumeru (Great Back Temple)
 妙觉寺 Miao Jue Si. Monastery of Fine Intelligence
 苏州街 Su Zhou Jie. Suzhou Street; Street of Suzhou
 花承阁 Hua Cheng Ge. Belvedere of Flower Plinth
 多宝佛塔颂 Duo Bao Fo Ta Song. Eulogy of the Very Precious Buddhistic Pagoda
 善观寺 Shan Guan Si. Temple of the Manifestation of Goodness
 荟亭 Hui Ting. Arbor of the Floating Cloud
 双亭 Shuang Ting. Double Arbor
 景福阁 Jing Fu Ge. Belvedere of Great Happiness

昙花阁	Tan Hua Ge. Belvedere of Broad-Leaved Epiphyllum
益寿堂	Yi Shou Tang. Hall of Increasing Age
如意庄	Ru Yi Zhuang. As-You-Wish Farmstead
乐农轩	Le Nong Xuan. Pavilion of Pleasure in Agriculture
永寿斋	Yong Shou Zhai. Study of Eternal Age
平安室	Ping An Shi. Chamber of Peace
澹宁堂	Dan Ning Tang. Hall of Placidness and Repose
随安室	Sui An Shi. Chamber of Ease Anywhere
延绿轩	Yan Lu Xuan. Pavilion of Beckoning to the Verdure
云会轩	Yun Hui Xuan. Pavilion of Meeting the Clouds
眺远斋	Tiao Yuan Zhai. Study of Gazing Afar

谐趣园内 Inside of Xie Qu Yuan

谐趣园	(参见 P54)
涵远堂	Han Yuan Tang. Hall of Submerging Vast Distance
墨妙轩	Mo Miao Xuan. Pavilion of Literary Skill
湛清轩	Zhan Qing Xuan. Pavilion of Serene Limpidity
知春堂	Zhi Chun Tang. Hall of Perceiving Spring
载时堂	Zai Shi Tang. Hall of Knowing the Time
瞩新楼	Zhu Xin Lou. Upper Story for Gazing at the Freshness
就云楼	Jiu Yun Lou. Upper Chamber of Approaching to the Clouds
玉琴峡	Yu Qin Xia. The Gorge of the Jade Lute
澄爽斋	Cheng Shuang Zhai. Library of Delightful Limpidity
澹碧斋	Dan Bi Zhai. Study of Green Ripples
饮绿亭	Yin Lu Ting. Arbor of Drinking in the Green
水乐亭	Shui Le Ting. Arbor of Aquatic Happiness
洗秋亭	Xi Qiu Ting. Arbor of Cleaning Autumn
知鱼桥	(参见 P60)
寻诗径	Xun Shi Jing. Path for Seeking Poetic Inspiration
霁清轩	Ji Qing Xuan. Pavilion of the Purenness of a Clearing Sky
酪膳房	Lao Shan Fang. Room of the Delicacy of Cream
赤城霞起	Chi Cheng Xia Qi. Ruddy Haze Rises from Chicheng
紫气东来	Zi Qi Dong Lai. Purple Vapor Approaches from the East

南湖区域 Places in Nan Hu

南湖 Nan Hu. Southern Part of the Lake

广润良雨寺 Guang Run Liang Yu Si. Temple of Extensive Moisture and Efficacious Rain

灵岩霞蔚 Ling Yan Xia Wei. Sudden Rise of Red Vapors from Ling Yan Mountain

泽普如春 Ze Pu Ru Chun. Spring-Like Universality of Moisture

鉴远堂 Jian Yuan Tang. Hall of Reflecting Light From Afar

德音维馨 De Yin Wei Xin. Virtuous Enunciation Alone is the Best Incense

澹会轩 Dan Hui Xuan. Pavilion of Meeting of Ripples

月波楼 Yue Bo Lou. Upper Chamber of Bright Moon-Light

云香阁 Yun Xiang Ge. Belvedere of Fragrant Clouds

涵虚堂 Han Xu Tang. Hall of Reaching to the Firmament

望蟾阁 Wang Chan Ge. Belvedere of Observing the Moon

黄鹤楼 Huang He Lou. Tower of the Yellow Crane

岚翠间 Lan Cui Jian. Amidst Green Mountain Mist

湖滨区域 Places along the Lake Shore

耶律楚材墓 Ye Lü Chu Cai Mu. Grave of Ye Lü Chu Cai

文昌阁 Wen Chang Ge. Belvedere of Wen Chang (God of Literature)

铜牛 Bronze Ox

廓如亭 Guo Ru Ting. Arbor of Unlimited Expanse

凤凰墩 Mound of Phoenix

皇甫墩 Mound of Huang Pu

草鉴堂 Cao Jian Tang. Hall of the Reflection of Aquatic Grass

畅观楼 Chang Guan Lou. Hall of Comprehensive View

治镜阁 Zhi Jing Ge. Belvedere of Fixing the Mirror

得沧州趣 Attaining the Attraction of Cangzhou

仰视俯察 To Look Up and to Gaze Down

湖滨各桥 Bridges on the Lake Shore

万字河 Wan Zi He. Swastika River

半壁桥 Ban Bi Qiao. Bridge of the Half Wall

界湖桥 Jie Hu Qiao. Bridge of Bordering on the Lake

廊风桥 Bin Feng Qiao. Bridge of the Custom of Bin

- 桑苧桥 Sang Zhu Qiao. Bridge of Mulberry and Mettle-hemp
 玉带桥 Yu Dai Qiao. Bridge of the Jade Belt (Camel Hump)
 穹桥 Qiong Qiao. Bridge of the Heavenly Canopy
 绣绮桥 Xiu Qi Qiao. Bridge of Embroidered Ripples
 镜桥 Jing Qiao. Bridge of Mirror
 练桥 Lian Qiao. Bridge of Silk Cloth
 柳桥 Liu Qiao. Willow Bridge
 罗锅桥 Luo Guo Qiao. Humpbacked Bridge
 长桥 Chang Qiao. Long Bridge
 知鱼桥 Zhi Yu Qiao. Understanding Fish Bridge
 万寿山 Wan Shou Shan. Longevity Hill
 昆明湖 Kun Ming Hu. Kun Ming Lake
 南湖岛 Nan Hu Dao. South Lake Island
 龙王庙 Long Wang Miao. Dragon King Temple

圆明园 Old Summer Palace
(The Garden of Perfect Brightness)

- 清漪园 Qing Yi Yuan. Garden of Limpid Ripples
 畅春园 (参见 P54)
 谐奇趣 Xie Qi Qu. Palace of the Delights of Harmony
 蓄水楼 Xu Shui Lou. House for Collecting the Water; Water Pavilion Containing the Hydraulic Machine
 海宴堂 Hai Yan Tang. Hall of the Calm Sea
 远瀛观 Yuan Ying Guan. Palace of the Immense Ocean; Far Sea View
 大水法 Da Shui Fa. The Great Jet D'eau; Waterworks
 养雀笼 Yang Que Long. House for Feeding Birds; Aviary
 方外观 Fang Wai Guan. The Square-Looking House
 观水法 Guan Shi Fa. Looking at the Spring Waters
 大泊湖 Da Bo Hu. Great Marshy Lake

承德避暑山庄
THE SUMMER RESORT OF CHENGDE

- 避暑山庄 Bi Shu Shan Zhuang. The Mountain Hamlet for the
 Escape from the Summer Heat

澹泊敬诚殿 Dan Bo Jing Cheng Dian. Hall of Frugality and Calm

正宫 Zheng Gong. The Main Palace

内午门 Nei Wu Men. The Inner Meridian Gate

松鹤斋 Song He Zhai. Pine and Crane Hall

热河泉 Re He Quan. Warm River Spring

烟雨楼 Yan Yu Lou. Hall of Mists and Rain

金山 Jin Shan. Golden Mountain

上帝楼 Shang Di Lou. Tower of God (Main Building of Jin Shan)

水心榭 Shui Xin Xie. Pavilion in the Heart of the Water

环碧 Huan Bi. Surrounded by Azure

采菱渡 Cai Ling Du. Ford of Gathering Waternuts

外八庙 Wai Ba Miao. Eight Outer Temples

普仁寺 Pu Ren Si. Temple of Universal Sincerity

普陀宗乘庙 Pu Tuo Zong Cheng Miao. Temple of the Potala

须弥福寿之庙 (参见 P364)

普宁寺 Pu Ning Si. Temple of Universal Peace

殊贤寺 Shu Xian Si. Temple of the Image of Manjust

普乐寺 Pu Le Si. Temple of Universal Happiness

安远寺 An Yuan Si. Temple of Distant Peace

旭光殿 Xu Guang Dian. Dawn Light Hall

五 明清宫廷

THE IMPERIAL COURT OF THE MING AND QING DYNASTIES

皇 宫

IMPERIAL PALACE

- 大内 the Great Within; the imperial palace
内廷 the inner court
外廷 the outer court
前朝后寝 the front for state affairs, the rear for imperial rest
金銮殿 the throne hall; the emperor's audience hall; the main hall of the imperial palace
宫禁 forbidden grounds where the emperor lived
宫闱 palace chamber
禁城 the Forbidden City
皇城 the imperial city
内城 the inner city
外城 the outer city
京城 the capital of the empire
盛京 Shengjing, the former Manchu capital (in today's Shenyang, Liaoning Province)
行宫 imperial palace for an emperor's short stays away from the capital
离宫 the imperial abode on tour; a temporary abode for an emperor on progresses

皇 室

IMPERIAL FAMILY

- 皇室成员 members of the imperial family
- 皇族（皇室） imperial clan; imperial kinsmen; people of imperial lineage
- 皇统 imperial lineage
- 皇室家谱 the genealogical table of the imperial family
- 皇祖 imperial ancestors before the founder of the dynasty
- 高祖 the eminent founder
- 世祖 the epochal founder
- 皇高祖考 deceased imperial great-great-grandfather
- 皇曾祖考 deceased imperial great-grandfather
- 皇祖考 deceased imperial grandfather
- 皇祖妣 deceased imperial grandmother
- 皇考 deceased imperial father
- 皇妣 deceased imperial mother
- 太皇太上皇 grand super-emperor
- 太皇太后 grand empress dowager
- 太上皇 emperor emeritus; super-emperor
- 皇太后 empress dowager
- 皇贵太妃 imperial dowager consort of the first rank below the empress dowager
- 皇太妃 imperial dowager secondary-consort
- 皇伯（叔） imperial uncle (an unofficial reference to an older or younger brother of a reigning emperor's father)
- 老祖宗 the venerable ancestor
- 老佛爷 the venerable Buddha
- 皇帝 emperor
- 天子 the Son of Heaven, a designation of the emperor
- 万岁爷 the emperor; the lord of a myriad of years
- 皇上 the emperor; the throne; the reigning sovereign; Your Majesty or His Majesty
- 陛下 Your Majesty; His or Her Majesty
- 在位皇帝 the reigning emperor
- 逊帝 the abdicated emperor
- 大行皇帝 the late emperor
- 嗣皇帝 heir apparent to the throne
- 皇太子（皇储） crown prince; heir apparent; prince designat-

ed to the throne

东宫 the crown prince or his residence

爵位 noble status; title of nobility

亲王 imperial prince (a designation conferred on all sons of each reigning emperor other than the heir apparent, who was normally the eldest)

礼亲王 Ceremonious Prince

肃亲王 Majestic Prince

恭亲王 Reverential Prince

郡王 commandery prince (a rank of the nobility next to imperial prince)

王爷 address of prince, Your Imperial Highness; a nobleman

贝勒 Beile (a Manchu term, the 3rd rank of the nobility below the imperial prince and commandery prince; awarded only to Manchu and Mongols in direct imperial descent as sons other than heirs of commandery princes)

贝子 Beizi (a Manchu term, the 4th rank of the nobility)

公 duke

镇国公 Defender Duke

额駙 (驸马) husband of a princess; princess consort; husband of an emperor's daughter or sister; husband of a noblewoman of imperial descent

世子 heir, the formal designation of the eldest son by the principal wife of the imperial prince

郡王世子 heir of commandery prince

嫡子 legitimate son

皇嫡长孙 the eldest son of the heir apparent

皇太孙 imperial grandson-heir; imperial grandson successor

铁帽子王 Iron-Helmet Prince; Iron-Capped Prince

黄带子 (wearers of) yellow girdles; imperial clansmen (the official designation of all male descendants of the founding emperor)

皇亲国戚 relatives of the emperor

外戚 family relatives of the empress; relatives of rulers by marriage

国丈 the emperor's father-in-law

- 国舅 the emperor's maternal uncle or brother-in-law
- 爱新觉罗氏 Aixinjueluo (surname of Manchu imperial family meaning a golden race; of an early progenitor of the Manchu emperors)
- 后妃 the empress and maids of different ranks
- 皇后 empress
- 皇贵妃 imperial honored consort; imperial honorable concubine; highest-ranking imperial concubine
- 贵妃 honorable concubine; honored consort; imperial concubine of the 2nd rank
- 妃 imperial concubine; consort-in-ordinary; imperial concubine of the 3rd rank
- 嫔 a court lady; concubine; imperial concubine of the 4th rank
- 贵人 worthy lady; honorable person; imperial concubine of the 5th rank
- 常在 lady-in-waiting; categorical designation of one low-status group of palace women, ranking below worthy ladies
- 答应 responder; one of many titles designating palace woman; considered eligible for promotion into the ranks of consorts
- 嗣女 heiress apparent
- 女皇储 crown princess
- 皇女 (公主) imperial princess
- 长公主 grand (or senior) princess
- 固伦公主 imperial princess of the first degree, noble designation of imperial daughters borne by the official empress
- 和硕公主 imperial princess, specifying one borne by a secondary wife or concubine rather than by the empress
- 储妃 wife of the heir apparent
- 福晋 dame-consort; princess consort (principal wife of an imperial prince or a commandery prince)
- 侧福晋 princely lady (secondary wife of an imperial prince or a commandery prince)
- 郡主 commandery princess
- 郡君 commandery mistress (granted to daughters of Beile and those of secondary wives or concubines of imperial princes)

格格 imperial clanswoman (general reference to any daughter of a male noble descended from a emperor through no more than six generations)

和硕格格 unofficial reference to a commandery princess

多罗格格 unofficial reference to a district princess or a commandery mistress

朝 政

COURT ADMINISTRATION

朝 (朝代) dynasty; a dynastic period; an emperor's reign

建朝 the founding of a dynasty

定鼎 (定都) to pick a city as the capital after uniting the empire; choose a site for the capital

政权更迭 regime change

改朝换代 dynastic changes

国朝 our dynasty (a common reference to the current reign dynasty)

帝制 autocratic monarchy; monarchy

皇天后土 the heaven and the earth

国号 dynasty title

帝号 title of the emperor

年号 reign title; year title

即位号为 to ascend the throne under a certain reign title

庙号 temple title

尊号 title of dignity

徽号 title of honor

谥号 posthumous title; name after death

称帝 proclaim oneself emperor

帝位、皇权 the imperial throne; the imperial power or authority

政权 regime; state power

执政 assume the reins of government

即位、登极 come to (ascend, mount) the throne; to enthrone

加冕典礼 coronation

即位诏书 rescript on occasion to the throne

在位 reign; be on the throne

退位诏书 document of abdication; the abdication edict
 退位、逊位 to abdicate; to vacate the throne
 辞位 to retire from the throne; lay down the sceptre
 让位于 to abdicate the throne in favor of
 传位于 to resign the throne to
 继位、嗣位 to succeed to the throne
 皇位继承人 heir to the throne
 “正大光明”匾 a horizontal board inscribed with characters
 “Zheng Da Guang Ming” (upright, grand, light and
 shine, meaning the ruler should be open and just, shin-
 ing on all things like a sun; upright and aboveboard)
 建储匣 box for testament on succession to the Qing throne
 立储 to designate as the crown prince; to appoint an heir
 立储密旨 secret testament on succession to the throne; secret
 testament designating a successor to the throne
 储位之争 to scramble for the position of crown prince
 摄政 regency
 共同摄政 co-regency
 摄政者 regent
 摄政王 the prince regent
 女摄政王 the princess regent
 皇父摄政王 imperial father regent
 皇叔父摄政王 imperial uncle regent
 皇太后临朝 empress dowager regent (empress dowager partici-
 pating in court audience)
 撤出摄政 resign regency
 退出摄政 withdrawal from regency
 放弃摄政 relinquish regency
 重新摄政 reassume the regency
 参议朝政 participant in deliberation about court policy
 参预政事 participant in determining government matters
 辅佐 assist a ruler in governing a country
 四大臣辅政 the assistance of four ministers in governing the
 country
 不理朝政 pay no attention to court administration
 勤政亲贤 be diligent in state affairs and be close to the able and

worthy

御前 in the presence of the emperor

御前会议 a conference in which the emperor takes part

听政 (of a monarch or regent) hold court; to supervise administration; to administer affairs of state

御门听政 the emperor listened to briefings from the high officials at a gate of the imperial palace; the emperor used a gate as a place to listen to memorials and issue proclamations; a gate served as a place for the emperor to listen to administrative reports from the high officials

垂帘听政 taking charge of state affairs behind a screen; administer the government with a suspended curtain; lowering the screen and attending to state business; conceal oneself behind a screen to listen to state affairs; administer state affairs behind a bamboo screen

启帘归政 hand over to someone the reins of government; remove the screen and give back the reins of government to the emperor

训政 political tutelage; participation in political affairs by the abdicated emperor or the empress dowager

训政时期 the period of the political tutelage

亲政 the emperor assuming the reins of government in his own person; assume in person the imperial duties and prerogatives; take over the administration (or government) from a coming-of-age regent

亲政诏书 edict of an emperor on assuming the reins of government

皇帝复位 to be restored to the throne; the reinstatement of the emperor; to restore the emperor to the full exercise of his imperial authority

重新掌权 resume the powers

掌握大权 wield the sceptre

有实权的皇帝 the actual reigning emperor

无实权的皇帝 titular emperor; an emperor only in name

失去帝位 lose one's throne

废黜 to dethrone; dethronement

- 逼宫 to coup against the emperor
 政变 coup d'etat
 宫廷政变 palace coup
 篡位 usurp the throne; seize the throne (sceptre)
 戊戌变法 the Reform Movement of 1898
 辛亥革命 the Revolution of 1911
 丁巳复辟 the Restoration of 1917
 逊清皇室 the abdicated Qing Imperial House
 清室善后委员会 Commission for the Custody of the Property of
 the Qing Imperial House
 清室优待条例 Articles of Favorable Treatment for the Qing Imper-
 ial House
 遗老 the surviving adherent of a former dynasty
 清代遗老 the surviving adherent of the Qing Dynasty
 明裔 descendant of the Ming imperial house

典 制

COURT REGULATIONS

- 典章 (典制) traditional institutions; decrees and regulations
 朝纲 (朝章) rules of the imperial court
 宫廷制度 palace system
 皇朝家法 dynastic house-law
 皇朝惯例和祖制 dynastic usage and precedent
 宫廷常规和习俗 the routine and conventions of the court
 宫廷礼仪 court etiquette; ceremonies of the court; the etiquette
 of the imperial palace
 朝仪 the proprieties for audience with the emperor; procedure at
 audiences
 临朝 hold court audience
 升殿 (升座) ascend the imperial throne
 降座 descend from the throne
 上朝 (of the emperor) hold court; (of the official) go to the
 imperial court; go to court duty
 退朝 the audience breaks up; declare the audience over
 早朝 a morning court held by the emperor; (of the emperor) at-

- tend the imperial court session in the early morning
- 朝会 imperial assembly
- 朝班 (朝列) the assemblage of courtiers at the imperial court
- 朝房 waiting-room
- 等候上朝 awaiting audiences
- 朝见 (觐见) to be received in audience by the emperor; to have an audience with the emperor; to be presented at the imperial court
- 传唤朝见 summoned to audience
- 呈奏折求见 submit a memorial asking for an audience with the emperor
- 秘密觐见 secret interview
- 召见 to grant somebody an audience; to be admitted (or received) in audience
- 引见 to present a person to the emperor, or a high official, etc.
- 宣诏 have the imperial decree read publicly
- 受贺 the emperor received obeisance from his courtiers and attendants
- 叩头 (叩拜) kowtow
- 朝拜 to prostrate oneself before the emperor; to pay ones respects to the emperor
- 三跪九叩礼 to kneel three times with the head touching the ground nine times; to make obeisance in the form of prostrating oneself before the emperor three times and kowtowing nine times; to perform the ceremony of the threefold kneeling and the ninefold prostration
- 三呼万岁 give three cheers of long life
- 叩谢 to kowtow in thanks; offer earnest thanks
- 谢恩 to offer thanks for the imperial bounty; rendering thanks for the imperial benevolence; to give formal thanks to the audiences
- 奏折制度 palace memorial system; routine system
- 奏疏 (奏折) palace memorial
- 题本 (题奏) routine memorial; special confidential memorial
- 密折 secret memorial
- 内折 capital memorial

- 外折 provincial memorial
- 正折 covering memorial
- 议复奏折 memorial of discussion and recommendation
- 奏片 grand council memoranda submitted to the emperor
- 条陈 memorial presenting opinions on a variety of topics
- 附件 enclosures
- 附（夹）片 supplementary memorials
- 谕（旨） decree; edict
- 圣旨（诏） imperial edict or decree
- 特谕 special edict or decree
- 御旨 imperial rescript
- 诏书 imperial decree or edict
- 诏令 a proclamation by the emperor; imperial decree or edict
- 谕告（谕示） imperial instructions
- 内批 inner court instructions
- 批 rescript, written at the end of a memorial
- 旁 marginalia, written in the interstices
- 上谕 registry of imperial instructions
- 朱谕 vermilion edict or decree
- 圣训 imperial injunctions
- 朱圈 vermilion circles
- 朱点 vermilion dots
- 朱批 imperial rescript; the emperor's comments in vermilion ink
- 留中 retained in the emperor's private apartments
- 留览 retained for reading
- 御览 imperial glance; seen (or read) by the emperor
- 御批 comments made by the emperor
- 御札 instructions (or orders) issued by the emperor
- 御笔 imperial handwriting; imperial autograph; writings by the emperor
- 御制 made by the emperor or by imperial order; poems and writings authored by the emperor; vessels produced in the imperial kiln
- 钦定 approved by the emperor; endorsed or authorized by the emperor; (said of books, etc.) compiled and published by imperial orders; compiled or edited by the emperor's

- order
- 钦命 imperial order; ordered by the emperor
- 钦点 designated by the emperor as members of the Imperial Academy
- 钦颁 awarded by the emperor
- 钦赐 granted or bestowed by the emperor; imperial gifts
- 钦此 an expression making the end of imperial orders; formula concluding edict; such are the imperial commands
- 临终遗诏 testamentary edict; a valedictory edict; instructions or decrees of a dying emperor
- 奉旨 instructions received
- 起居注 Imperial Diary
- 黄档 Imperial Genealogical Records
- 黄册 Yellow Books
- 黄绫本 Yellow Silk Edition
- 贴黄 Yellow Summary
- 红档 Vermilion Documents
- 红本 Originals; Red Books
- 红绫本 Red Silk Edition
- 满档 Manchu Archives
- 满本 Manchu Documents
- 宫中档 Palace Archives
- 月折档 Monthly Record Book of Palace Memorials
- 军机档 Grand Council Archives; Great Council Reference Collection
- 宫门抄 court gazette
- 揭贴 information copies
- 票拟 draft rescripts
- 军营文报 the military post packet
- 急件 (急办) urgent; a matter of great urgency
- 火票 transmission passes
- 廷寄 court dispatches
- 册封 to confer a title upon; to invest with rank; to confer titles of nobility on
- 册命 formal order, especially in conferring honor
- 册立皇后 to crown an empress; the coronation of an empress;

- the creation of an empress
- 立……为后 elevated somebody to the dignity of empress
- 金宝 gold seal
- 金册 gold album or Imperial Letter Patent
- 玉册 jade album
- 诰 to grant; to confer; to bestow
- 诰封 the conferment of honorary titles by an imperial mandate; to bestow a title upon (the wife, living parents, or other relatives of an official)
- 诰封三代 to grant titles of honor for three generations
- 诰命 an emperor's order of conferment of titles; an imperial mandate
- 有封号的贵妇 (命妇) a mandated woman; a titled lady
- 诰授 to bestow titles upon officials
- 诰赠 to bestow titles upon officials posthumously
- 敕令 a decree from the throne
- 诰敕 a decree of conferment of titles upon officials above the fifth grade
- 诏敕 imperial rescript
- 封相 appoint prime minister
- 封侯 create feudal lords
- 封爵 confer a degree of nobility on someone
- 封拜 appoint someone to an office
- 封赠 grant posthumous honor
- 封荫 (参见 P104)
- 世袭 hereditary
- 世袭罔替 perpetual inheritance, a term referring to titles of nobility that were awarded without any limit to the number of generations through which they could be inherited
- 世袭……品 holding hereditary rank as
- 世袭号 hereditary title
- 无世袭爵位 non-hereditary status
- 赏赐 to reward; to bestow; to grant; to be bestowed (honor, gifts) by the emperor; bestowal of gifts; gifts or money given as a reward

赏紫禁城坐轿 to be granted the right to ride a sedan-chair within
the Forbidden City

赏乘二人肩舆进宫 to be granted the right to enter the Forbidden
City in a two-bearer chair

赏紫禁城骑马 to be granted the right to ride on horseback within
the Forbidden City

下马碑 (石) a dismounting stele (or stone)

赐 bestow; confer; to bestow or confer upon; to grant (e. g.
approval)

御赐 to be bestowed by the emperor

钦赐 to be granted or bestowed by the emperor (for meritorious
service)

赐恩 to bestow favors

赐爵 to confer a title of nobility

赐宴 to be invited to dine with the emperor

赐谥 to have an honorary title conferred posthumously.

赐奠 (said of the emperor, especially in the Qing Dynasty) to
personally offer condolences or to pay last tribute to the
deceased

贬黜 to demote

贬谪 banish from the court; relegate

贬为庶民 be degraded to common status

大典 grand ceremony (the most solemn activity at the imperial
court)

登极大典 grand ceremony of enthronement

庆典 celebration; a ceremony to celebrate

万寿节庆典 celebration of the Wanshou Festival (the Qing
emperor's birthday)

千秋节庆典 celebration of Qianqiu Festival (the Qing empress'
birthday)

圣寿节庆典 celebration of Shengshou Festival (the Qing empress
dowager's birthday)

朝贺 court congratulations

祝寿 birthday celebration

寿宴 birthday banquet

寿礼 birthday gifts

- 大婚 imperial wedding; imperial nuptial; imperial bridal
 议婚选后 selection of the bride
 择吉日 select an auspicious day for the imperial wedding
 备订婚宝、册、礼物 preparation of the betrothal document and gifts
 纳彩礼 Na Cai Li, the betrothal presents; sending of the betrothal gifts
 大征礼 Da Zheng Li, the marriage contract rites; rites of the Great Proof or Marriage Contract
 册立皇后礼 coronate the bride to be the empress in her home with an envoy holding the imperial symbol
 奉迎皇后礼 to escort the bride to the imperial palace
 合卺礼 rite of the drinking of the nuptial cup; pledge the wedding cup
 进合卺宴 partaking of the wedding feast
 祀典 sacrificial rites
 祭祀 to offer a sacrifice to; to worship
 祭典 sacrificial services or ceremonies
 大祀 the Great Sacrifices
 祭天 to offer a sacrifice to Heaven; to worship Heaven; annual services of offering sacrifices to Heaven
 祭圜丘 Heaven-worshipping ceremony
 祭地 to offer a sacrifice to earth; annual services of offering sacrifices to earth
 祭太庙 to offer a sacrifice to the imperial ancestors
 祭社稷 to offer sacrifices to the Gods of Land and Grains
 中祀 the Medium Sacrifices
 祭先农 to offer a sacrifice to the patron god of Agriculture
 祭先蚕 to offer a sacrifice to the patron god of Silk Weaving
 祭历代帝王庙 to offer sacrifices to the Temple of Emperors through the Ages
 群祀 the Small Sacrifices
 祭火神 to offer a sacrifice to the God of Fire
 祭城隍 to offer a sacrifice to the Guardian Spirit of the City
 祭先医 to offer a sacrifice to the patron God of Medicine
 祭……王祠 to offer sacrifices to the Temples to Great Man

- 祭祀供品 *sacrificial offerings*
- 奉安 *the burial service of the emperor or empress; the last ceremony of sepulchre of the emperor or empress*
- 礼制文物 *cultural relics for ceremony and propriety*
- 仪仗 *imperial insignias*
- 卤簿 *Lubu, emperor's honor guard; escort carriage*
- 卤簿仪仗 *insignia carried before the emperor by the imperial guard of honor; protocol in imperial procession*
- 大驾卤簿 *Dajia Lubu used by the emperor for offering sacrifices to Heaven*
- 法驾卤簿 *Fajia Lubu used by the emperor for grand ceremony*
- 銮驾卤簿 (参见 P303)
- 骑驾卤簿 *Qijia Lubu used by the emperor for inspection tour to other parts of the country*
- 仪驾 *a honor guard used by the empress and empress dowager*
- 仪仗 *a honor guard used by the honorable concubine*
- 彩仗 *a honor guard used by the imperial concubine*
- 辇 (步辇) *imperial carriage; a hand-drawn carriage; imperial carriage pulled by attendants*
- 轿 (舆) *sedan chair; palanquin or palankeen borne on shoulders of four, six or sixteen bearers*
- 凤舆 *Phoenix sedan chair (the Feng is a mythical creature which is supposed to be queen of birds, and symbolizes happiness and good fortune)*
- 大喜轿 *the great bridal sedan chair*
- 银顶黄缎轿 *sedan chair covered with yellow satin and crowned by a silver knob*
- 华盖 *canop; richly-embroidered state-umbrella*
- 直柄盖 *straight handled canopy*
- 提炉 *portable censer*

机 构

COURT SERVICES

内阁 (参见 P86)

- 内阁大库 Storage Room of the Grand Secretariat
- 军机处 (参见 P37)
- 奏事处 (参见 P87)
- 内奏事处 the Inner Chancery of Memorials to the Throne
- 议政处 (参见 P86)
- 批本处 (参见 P87)
- 奉上谕事件处 Office for Distribution of Imperial Pronouncement
- 内务府 (参见 P46)
- 宗人府 (参见 P88)
- 玉牒所 Unofficial Reference to the Court of the Imperial Clan
- 升平署 Bureau of Drama (Theater) of the Qing Court; Court Theatrical Office
- 奉宸苑 Department of Imperial Gardens
- 五经萃室 Room of the Five Classics
- 御书房 Imperial Study
- 南书房 Southern Study
- 上书房 Schoolroom of the Imperial Princes
- 御书处 Imperial Library (the emperor's personal study and file room in the palace)
- 国史馆 State History Office
- 皇史宬 (参见 P360)
- 方略馆 Military Archives Office; Imperial Geographical Bureau
- 满档房 Manchu Archives
- 满本房 Manchu Documents Section (in the Grand Secretariat; in charge of translating Chinese documents into Manchu); Manchu Copying Office
- 黄档房 Imperial Genealogy Section (in the Court of the Imperial Clan); Genealogical Record Office
- 红本库 Red Memorial Vault
- 内国史院 Palace Historiographic Academy
- 内秘书院 Palace Secretariat Academy
- 内弘文院 Palace Academy for the Advancement of Literature
- 起居注馆 (参见 P92)
- 掌仪司 Office of Palace Ceremonial
- 修内司 Department for Palace Maintenance

敬事房	Office for Administering Eunuchs
宫殿监	(参见 P90)
十二监	Twelve Directorates (collective reference to major units in which palace eunuchs were organized, each headed by eunuch director)
内官监	Directorate of Palace Eunuch
御用监	(参见 P90)
司设监	Directorate for Imperial Regalia
御马监	(参见 P89)
神宫监	Directorate for Imperial Temples
尚膳监	Directorate for Palace Delicacies
尚宝监	(参见 P90)
印绶监	Directorate for Credentials
直殿监	Directorate for Palace Maintenance
尚衣监	Directorate for Imperial Apparel
都知监	Directorate for Intimate Attendance
司礼监	Directorate of Ceremonial
造办处	Workshops of the Imperial Court; Palace Atelier; Imperial Palace Manufactory; Office of Manufacture
作钟处	Clock-Making Atelier
刻书处	Atelier for Block-Printing Books
修书处	Imperial Printing Office
作	Zuo or distinct workshop
牙作	Imperial Ivory Workshop
珐琅作	(参见 P268)
古董房	House for Antiques
四执库	House for Imperial Wardrobe
銮仪卫	(参见 P89)
銮驾内库	Imperial Carriage Storehouse
银库	Silver Vault
皮库	Hides Storehouse
缎库	Silk Storehouse
衣库	Clothing Storehouse
瓷库	Porcelain Storehouse
茶库	Tea Storehouse
御茶膳房	(参见 P89)

御膳房	Imperial Main Kitchen
饽饽房	Imperial Bakery
御茶房	Imperial Tea Kitchen
御药房	(参见 P90)
寿药房	pharmacy served for the empress and imperial concubines
吉安所	a ceremonial building belonging to the imperial family
宗庙	Ancestral Temple
佛堂	(参见 P336)
神房	Shamanism office

朝臣及其他人员 COURTIERS AND OTHER PERSONNEL

臣 (大臣向皇帝自称)	Your Majesty's Servant
朝臣	courtier
大臣	great vassal; grand minister
重臣	high official
功臣	meritorious official
宠臣	favorite official
顾命大臣 (辅佐大臣)	assistant minister
中堂	Zhong Tang, the usual designation of grand councillor
军机大臣	grand councillor; grand minister of state
军机行走	probationary grand minister of state
军机章京	secretary in the Council of State (civil); adjutant in the Council of State (military)
宫廷大臣	chamberlain (of the Household)
内侍	court-chamberlain
内大臣	grand minister of the Imperial Household Department
总管内务府大臣	(参见 P88)
御前大臣	(参见 P87)
御前侍卫	palace guardsmen; imperial guard in waiting
御前行走	(参见 P87)
御前太监	eunuch of the presence
随朝伴官	escort for court audience
领侍卫内大臣	grand minister of the palace commanding the im-

	perial bodyguard
三公	the Three Dukes
太师	the Grand Preceptor
太傅	the Grand Mentor
太保	the Grand Guardian
三孤	the Three Solitaries
少师	the Junior Preceptor
少傅	the Junior Mentor
少保	the Junior Guardian
太子太保	Grand Guardian of the heir-apparent
太子少保	Junior Guardian of the heir-apparent
帝师	imperial tutor
太傅	grand tutor
伴读	fellow-student; companion-reader
侍读	reader-in-waiting
侍读学士	academic reader-in-waiting
典籍	archivist
总管	supervisors-in-chief
八旗总管大臣	(参见 P95)
议政五大臣	(参见 P86)
理事十大臣	the ten grand ministers administering affairs
议政处王大臣	princes and grand ministers of the Deliberative Council
钦差大臣	imperial envoy; imperial commissioner
宗人令	director of the court of the imperial clan
宗人府府丞	vice director of the imperial clan court
宗人	assistant director of the court of the imperial clan
宗伯	chief minister of the court of imperial sacrifices
起居注官	a court official in charge of recording the emperor's daily activities and pronouncements
奏事官	(参见 P87)
内廷供奉	palace attendant (supplier)
内廷待诏	palace editorial assistant
内监管理	eunuch manager
宫廷太监	court eunuch
御前太监	eunuch of the presence who had the honor of serving

- the emperor himself
- 敬事房总管太监 eunuch supervisor-in-chief
- 敬事房首领太监 eunuch commission-in-chief
- 各宫殿总管太监 chief eunuch
- 各宫殿首领太监 head eunuch
- 南书房行走 the official serving in the Southern Study
- 内廷行走 a part-time official serving in the inner court; official in attendance in the inner court
- 奴才 slave; Your Majesty's slave
- 包衣 bondservant
- 皇包衣 imperial bondservant
- 王包衣 bondservant of princes
- 包衣昂邦 commandant of bondservants
- 包衣参领 regimental commander of bondservants
- 包衣佐领 company commander of bondservants
- 宫娥 (宫女) female court attendant; maid servant; a maid in the imperial palace; maid of honor
- 嫔御 female retinue at court
- 秀女 a young girl for the emperor's harem; selected beauty for the imperial harem
- 选秀女 to select beautiful girls for the imperial harem
- 选侍 to select girls as maids in the imperial palace
- 女官 palace woman
- 命妇 lady of rank; wife of the courtier; a lady who was given a title or rank by the emperor

在明清宫廷供职的外国人士

FOREIGNERS WHO SERVED IN THE IMPERIAL COURT OF THE MING AND QING DYNASTIES

- 庞迪我 (字顺阳, 今译雅克·德·潘托哈) Jacques de Pantoja (1571 - 1618), Spanish Jesuit, came to China in 1601, appointed to revise the calendar in 1611 by the Ming government
- 毕方济 (字今梁, 今译弗朗索瓦·桑比亚西) Francois Sambiasi (1582 - 1649), Italian Jesuit, came to Beijing in

1613, once assisted the study of the astronomical calendar

邓玉函 (字涵璞, 今译扬·特伦茨) Jean Terrenz (1576 - 1630), German Jesuit, came to China in 1621, then summoned to Beijing to be in charge of revising the calendar

汤若望 (字道未, 今译让·亚当·沙尔·冯·贝尔) Johann Adam Schall von Bell (1591 - 1666), German Jesuit, came to China in 1622, had a good command of astronomy, enjoyed the trust of the Ming emperor Chongzhen; in collaboration with Italian Jesuit Jacques Rho, he wrote and completed the book "Chongzhen Calendar"

罗雅各 (字味诏, 今译亚克·罗) Jacques Rho (1590 - 1638); Italian Jesuit, came to China in 1622; he first did missionary work in Shanxi Province, then was called to Beijing to assist Johann Adam Schall von Bell in compiling the "Chongzhen Calendar"

南怀仁 (字敦白, 今译费迪南·韦比埃) Ferdinand Verbiest (1623 - 1688), Belgian Jesuit, came to Macao in 1658, arrived in Beijing in 1660 at the invitation of the Qing emperor Shunzhi; received instructions from Emperor Kangxi to be the director of the Directorate of Astronomy in 1669; Kangxi once studied geometry, astronomy and the calendar system with him

闵明我 (字德先, 今译菲利普·玛丽·格里马尔迪) Philippe Marie Grimaldi (1639 - 1712), Italian Jesuit, came to Macao in 1669, then arrived in Beijing in 1671 on the call of Emperor Kangxi; appointed to take over the Directorate of Astronomy from Ferdinand Verbiest

徐日升 (字寅公, 今译托玛斯·佩雷拉) Thomas Pereira (1645 - 1708), Portuguese Jesuit, came to China in 1672; once was Kangxi's teacher of music and held the post of Director of the Directorate of Astronomy in the Qing court of Emperor Kangxi's reign

白晋 (字明远, 今译若阿基姆·布韦) Joachim Bouvet (1656 - 1730), French Jesuit, sent to China in 1685 by

King Louis XIV; served as the emperor Kangxi's teacher of mathematics, together with French Jesuit Jean Francois Gerbillon

张诚 (字实斋, 今译让·弗朗索瓦·热比隆) Jean Francois Gerbillon (1654 - 1707), French Jesuit, came to China in 1687; when China and Russia signed the Nerchinsk Treaty in 1689, he and Thomas Pereira were appointed as interpreters for Chinese delegates

雷孝思 (字永维, 今译让·巴蒂斯特·雷吉斯) Jean Baptiste Régis (1663 - 1738), French Jesuit, came to China in 1698; drew the map of China in 1708, together with Jesuits Joachim Bouvet and Perlus Pierre Jartoux, on the order of Emperor Kangxi

冯秉正 (字端友, 今译约瑟夫·弗朗索瓦·玛丽·安娜·德·穆瓦里亚克·德梅拉) Joseph Francois Mario Anne de Moyriac de Mailla (1669 - 1748), French Jesuit, came to China in 1702; gave assistance to J. B. Regis and others in surveying and drawing the provincial maps of China, winning praise from Emperor Kangxi

马国贤 (今译马泰奥·里帕) Matheo Ripa (1682 - 1745), Italian priest, came to China in 1710, a court painter in Emperor Kangxi's reign

郎世宁 (字若瑟, 今译朱塞佩·卡斯蒂廖内) Giuseppe Castiglione (1688 - 1766), Italian Jesuit, came to China in 1715; served as a court painter under the reigns of Emperors Kangxi, Yongzheng and Qianlong; once given the rank of the third official grade; was celebrated for his horse-painting.

戴进贤 (字嘉宾, 今译伊格纳什·克格勒) Ignace Kögler (1680 - 1746), German Jesuit, came to Beijing in 1717, in charge of the Directorate of Astronomy for 29 years; appointed in 1731 by Emperor Yongzheng to be the vice-director of the Board of Rites

刘松龄 (字乔年, 今译奥古斯廷·德·哈勒施泰因) Augustin de Hallerstein (1703 - 1774), Austrian Jesuit, came to Beijing in 1735; in office in the Directorate of Astronomy

- for 30 years, enjoying the trust of Emperor Qianlong
- 王致诚 (今译让·德尼·阿蒂雷) Jean Denis Attiret (1702 - 1768), French Jesuit, came to China in 1738; served in the Qing court as a painter and participated in the design and construction of the Western Building in Yuan Ming Yuan, being in Emperor Qianlong's graces
- 傅作霖 (今译费利克斯·达·罗查) Felix da Rocha (1713 - 1781), Portuguese Jesuit, came to Beijing in 1738; served in the Directorate of Astronomy for 28 years, being appointed to the position of vice-director and director successively
- 汤执中 (字精一, 今译皮埃尔·德·安卡维尔) Pierre de Incarville (1706 - 1757), French Jesuit, came to China in 1740; selected in 1753 to be in charge of horticulture in the Qing court
- 蒋友仁 (号德翊, 今译米歇尔·伯努瓦) Michel Benoit (1715 - 1774), French Jesuit, came to China in 1744; once took part in the design of some buildings of Yuan Ming Yuan
- 艾启蒙 (字醒安, 今译伊格内修斯·西克尔塔特) Ignatius Sickeltart (1708 - 1780), came to China in 1745 from Bohemia (belongs to the Czech now), served the Qing court as a painter; drew many large-sized paintings of actual events together with Jesuits Giuseppe Castiglione and Jean Denis Attiret; given a handsome reward from the emperor on his 70th birthday
- 钱德明 (字若瑟, 今译让·约瑟夫·玛丽·阿米奥) Jean Joseph Marie Amiot (1718 - 1793), French Jesuit, came to Beijing in 1751, was well versed in Manchu and Chinese languages, so she enjoyed the trust of Emperor Qianlong
- 潘廷章 (今译约瑟夫·潘奇) Joseph Panzi (? - 1812), Italian missionary, came to China in 1771, served in the Qing court as a painter; once drew some portraits of Emperor Qianlong
- 贺清泰 (今译路易斯·德·普瓦洛) Louis de Poirot (1735

- 1814), French, later went to Italy, came to China in 1770, served as a painter in the Imperial Court.

罗广祥 (今译尼古拉·约瑟夫·罗) Nicolas Joseph Raux (1754 - 1801), French Lazarist, arrived in Beijing in 1785, served the Qing court as a translator; sent to be the first French man in charge of the Directorate of Astronomy

巴茂正 (今译夏尔·帕里斯) Charles Paris (1738 - 1804), French Lazarist, came to Beijing in 1785, served in the Imperial Household Department of the Qing court as a watch-and-clock repairer

柯姑娘 (卡尔小姐) (今译凯瑟琳·奥古斯塔·卡尔) Katherine Augusta Carl (1858 - 1938), American painter, came to China in 1903; drew a portrait of Empress Dowager Cixi; wrote a book "With the Empress Dowager of China"

庄士敦 (今译雷金纳德·弗莱明·约翰斯顿) Sir Reginald Fleming Johnston (1874 - 1938), successively held the posts of official of Hong Kong government and of the senior officer of Weihaiwei government office; was invited in 1918 to act as a teacher of English for Emperor Puyi of the Qing Dynasty; wrote a book entitled "Twilight in the Forbidden City"

六 明清职官

OFFICIAL TITLES OF THE MING AND QING DYNASTIES

辅佐皇帝的中枢机构

THE CENTRAL ADMINISTRATIONS FOR ASSISTING THE EMPEROR IN GOVERNING THE COUNTRY

议政处 Yi Zheng Chu. The Deliberative Council; Deliberative
Council on Government

议政王 Prince of the Deliberative Council

议政五大臣 Five Grand Ministers of the Deliberative Council

内阁 Nei Ge. The Grand Secretariat

内阁大学士 Grand Secretary of the Grand Secretariat

内阁协办大学士 Assistant Grand Secretary of the Grand Secre-
tariat

内阁学士 Academician (Chancellor) of the Grand Secretariat

内阁侍读 Grand Secretariat Reader-in-waiting; Assistant Read-
er-in-waiting in the Grand Secretariat

内阁侍读学士 Grand Secretariat Academician Reader-in-waiting;
Reader in the Grand Secretariat

内阁中书 Secretaries in the Grand Secretariat

内阁典籍 Certification Clerk in the Grand Secretariat

内阁总理大臣 Grand Minister of the Grand Secretariat

军机处 (参见 P37)

军机大臣 (大军机、枢臣) Grand Minister of State; Grand
Councillor

军机章京 (小军机、枢曹) Assistant Grand Councillor; Sec-

- retary in the Grand Council of State
- 军机行走 (参见 P79)
- 内翻书房 Nei Fan Shu Fang. Sino-Manchu Translation Office;
Manchu-Chinese Translation Office; Inner House for
Translation
- 方略馆 Fang Lue Guan. Military Archives Office; Military Ar-
chives
- 通政使司 Tong Zheng Shi Si. Office of Transmission; Transmis-
sion Office
- 通政使 Commissioner in the Transmission Office
- 通政副使 Vice (Deputy) Commissioner in the Transmission Of-
fice
- 通政参议 Assistant Commissioner in the Transmission Office
- 通政给事中 Supervising Secretary in the Transmission Office
- 通政知事 Archivist in the Transmission Office
- 通政经历 Sub-Archivist in the Transmission Office
- 奏事处 Zou Shi Chu. Office for Provincial Memorials; Chancery
of Memorials (to the Emperor)
- 御前大臣 Grand Minister in Attendance; Imperial Vassal of the
Presence
- 御前行走 Imperial Attendant
- 御前侍卫 (参见 P79)
- 奏事官 Memorial Processors; Chancellors of Memorials (to the
Emperor)
- 批本处 Pi Ben Chu. Endorsement-Copy Office
- 稽察钦奉上谕事件处 Ji Cha Qin Feng Shang Yu Shi Jian
Chu. Office for Distribution of Imperial Pronounce-
ments; Office for Supervising the Affairs Received
from His Majesty; Chancery for the Publication of Im-
perial Edicts
- 稽察员 Inspector
- 中书科 Zhong Shu Ke. Central Drafting Office; Imperial Patent
Office
- 中书科中书 Secretary of the Central Drafting Office
- 中书舍人 Secretariat Drafter

掌管皇族和宫廷事务的机构
THE BODIES IN CHARGE OF AFFAIRS OF THE
IMPERIAL FAMILY AND IMPERIAL PALACE

宗人府 Zong Ren Fu. The Imperial Clan Court; Court of the Imperial Clan

宗人令（正卿） Director of the Court of the Imperial Clan

宗人（正丞） Assistant Director of the Court of the Imperial Clan

宗人府理事官 Administrator of the Court of the Imperial Clan

宗人府主事 Secretary of the Court of the Imperial Clan

詹事府 Zhan Shi Fu. Household Administration of the Heir Apparent; Imperial Supervisorate of Instruction

詹事 Chief Supervisor of Instruction

少詹事 Head of the Household Administration of the Heir Apparent; Supervisor of the Household; Supervisor of Instruction

左春坊庶子 Left (Senior) Mentor of the Secretariat of the Heir Apparent

右春坊庶子 Right (Junior) Mentor of the Secretariat of the Heir Apparent

左春坊中允 Left (Senior) Secretary of the Secretariat of the Heir Apparent

右春坊中允 Right (Junior) Secretary of the Secretariat of the Heir Apparent

左春坊赞善 Left (Senior) Assistant Secretary of the Secretariat of the Heir Apparent

右春坊赞善 Right (Junior) Assistant Secretary of the Secretariat of the Heir Apparent

司经局洗马 Librarian of the Editorial Service of the Heir Apparent

内务府（参见 P46）

总管内务府大臣 Grand Minister Supervisor of the Imperial Household Department

武备院 Wu Bei Yuan. Court of Imperial Armaments; Office of

the Armaments and Military Provisions

- 武备院卿 Chief Minister of the Court of Imperial Armaments
武备院郎中 Director of the Court of Imperial Armaments
武备院员外郎 Vice Director of the Court of Imperial Armaments
武备院笔帖式 Clerk of the Court of Imperial Armaments
奉宸苑 Feng Chen Yuan. Imperial Parks Administration; Department of the Imperial Gardens; Bureau of Imperial Gardens and Hunting Parks
上林苑 Imperial Forest Park
上駟院 Shang Si Yuan. Palace Stud; Imperial Stud
御马监 Directorate of the Imperial Horses
广储司 Guang Chu Si. Storage Office; Department of the Privy Purse
会计司 Kuai Ji Si. Office of Palace Accounts
掌仪司 Zhang Yi Si. Office of Palace Ceremonial
都虞司 Du Yu Si. Office of the Imperial Hunt
慎刑司 Shen Xing Si. Office of Palace Justice
营造司 Ying Zao Si. Office of Palace Construction
庆丰司 Qing Feng Si. Office of Imperial Pasturages
戈戟司 Ge Ji Si. Spears Office
升平署 (南府) Sheng Ping Shu. Court Theatrical Office; Bureau of Drama
御茶膳房 Yu Cha Shan Fang. Palace Larder; Imperial Tea-and-Dining Office; Imperial Buttery
尚膳 Meal Servers
尚茶 Tea Servers
礼仪监 Li Yi Jian. Directorate of Ceremonial Propriety
养心殿造办处 Yang Xin Dian Zao Ban Chu. Workshops of the Hall of Mental Cultivation
銮仪卫 Luan Yi Wei. Imperial Procession Guard; Department of Imperial Chariots and Processional Regalia; Imperial Equipage Department
掌卫事大臣 Grand Minister in Command of the Guard
銮仪使 Commissioner of the Imperial Procession Guard
銮舆司 Luan Yu Si. Carriage Office
驯马司 Xun Ma Si. Horse-training Office

锦衣卫 Jin Yi Wei. Imperial Bodyguard
 旗手卫 Qi Shou Wei. Standard-Bearer Guard
 侍卫处 Shi Wei Chu. Department of Imperial Bodyguard
 侍卫 Imperial Guard; Imperial Guardsman
 领侍卫府 Ling Shi Wei Fu. Headquarters of the Imperial Bodyguard
 领侍卫内大臣 Grand Minister of the Imperial Household Department concurrently controlling the Imperial Guardsmen
 后扈大臣 Grand Minister of the Rear Watch
 侍卫班领 Imperial Guard Duty Group Commander
 蓝翎侍卫 Junior Guardsman (wearing blue feathers)
 蓝翎总承 Junior Guardsman-gamekeeper
 尚虞备用处 Shang Yu Bei Yong Chu. Department for Emperor's Fishing and Hunting
 虎枪营 Hu Qiang Ying. Tiger-hunting Brigade; Imperial Guard Corps against Tigers and Leopards
 虎枪长 Chief Tiger Hunter
 善扑营 Shan Pu Ying. The Corps of Horsemanship, Archery and Wrestle
 宫殿监 Gong Dian Jian. Directorate of Palace Domestic Service; A Eunuch Agency
 总管太监 Eunuch Supervisors-in-Chief
 首领太监 Eunuch Director
 督领侍 Supervising Attendant (Eunuch Head)
 御药房 Yu Yao Fang. Imperial Dispensary
 御书处 (参见 P77)
 御用监 Yu Yong Jian. Directorate for Imperial Accouterments
 尚宝监 Shang Bao Jian. Directorate of Palace Seals

承理国政的行政机构

THE ADMINISTRATIVE BODIES TAKING FULL CHARGE OF STATE AFFAIRS

吏部 Li Bu. Ministry of Personnel; Board of Civil Officials
 俸饷处 Feng Xiang Chu. Office for Issue of Salaries and Supplies
 户部 Hu Bu. Ministry (Board) of Revenue

礼部 Li Bu. Ministry (Board) of Rites (Ceremonies)
 工部 Gong Bu. Ministry (Board) of Works
 宝源局 Bao Yuan Ju. Metropolitan Coinage Service; Coinage Office
 六部尚书 President in any of the Six Boards (Ministries)
 六部左侍郎 Senior Vice-President in any of the Six Boards (Ministries)
 六部右侍郎 Junior Vice-President in any of the Six Boards (Ministries)
 部院郎中 Department Director in any of the Six Boards (Ministries)
 部院员外郎 Assistant Department Director in any of the Six Boards (or Ministries)
 部院主事 Secretary in any of the Six Boards (Ministries)
 部院笔贴式 Clerk in any of the Six Boards (Ministries)
 太常寺 Tai Chang Si. Court of Sacrificial Worship; Court of Imperial Sacrifices
 太常寺卿 Director of the Court of Imperial Sacrifices
 太常寺少卿 Sub-Director of the Court of Imperial Sacrifices; Assistant of the Court of Imperial Sacrifices
 太常寺寺丞 Secretary of the Court of Imperial Sacrifices
 太常寺博士 Learned Doctor of the Court of Imperial Sacrifices
 光禄寺 Guang Lu Si. Court of Imperial Entertainments; Imperial Banqueting Court
 光禄寺卿 Director of the Imperial Banqueting Court
 光禄寺少卿 Sub-Director of the Imperial Banqueting Court
 鸿臚寺 Hong Lu Si. Court of State Ceremonial
 鸿臚寺卿 Director of the Court of State Ceremonial
 鸿臚寺少卿 Sub-Director of the Court of State Ceremonial
 行人寺 Xing Ren Si. Office in Charge of Traveling Envoys
 行人寺行人 Secretary of the Office in Charge of Traveling Envoys
 国子监 Guo Zi Jian. Imperial Academy of Learning; Imperial College; Directorate of Education; Hall of Classics
 国子监监事 Chief Proctor in the Imperial Academy of Learning
 国子监祭酒 Libationer in the Imperial Academy of Learning
 国子监司业 Tutor in the Imperial Academy of Learning

- 国子监博士 Learned Doctor of the Imperial Academy of Learning
- 国子监助教 Assistant Teacher of the Imperial Academy of Learning
- 国子监学正 Director of Studies of the Imperial Academy of Learning
- 国子监学录 Sub-Registrar of the Imperial Academy of Learning
- 国子监典簿 Archivist in the Imperial Academy of Learning
- 国子监典籍 Sub-Archivist in the Imperial Academy of Learning
- 国子监监生 (太学生) Student of the Imperial Academy of Learning
- 国子监贡生 Tribute Student to the Imperial Academy of Learning
- 钦天监 Qin Tian Jian. Directorate (Bureau) of Astronomy; Imperial Board of Astronomy
- 钦天监监丞 Director of the Directorate of Astronomy
- 翰林院 Han Lin Yuan. Hanlin Academy; National Academy
- 翰林学士 Hanlin Academician
- 翰林院掌院学士 Chancellor of the Hanlin Academy
- 翰林院侍读学士 Reader in the Hanlin Academy
- 翰林院侍讲学士 Expositor in the Hanlin Academy
- 翰林院侍读 Sub-reader in the Hanlin Academy
- 翰林院侍讲 Sub-expositor in the Hanlin Academy
- 翰林院修撰 First-class Hanlin Compiler
- 翰林院编修 Second-class Hanlin Compiler
- 翰林院检讨 Corrector in the Hanlin Academy
- 翰林院典簿 Senior Archivist in the Hanlin Academy
- 翰林院孔目 Junior Archivist in the Hanlin Academy
- 翰林院待诏 Compiling Assistant in the Hanlin Academy
- 翰林院庶常馆 Han Lin Yuan Shu Chang Guan. Institute of Advanced Study in the Hanlin Academy; Department for Shu Chang Ji Shi with high grades
- 庶常吉士 Hanlin Bachelor
- 起居注馆 Qi Ju Zhu Guan. Imperial Diary Office (a subsection of the Hanlin Academy)
- 起居注 (参见 P72)
- 起居注官 Official in charge of the emperor's activities
- 国史馆 Guo Shi Guan. Historiography Institute; Department

(Office) of Dynastic History

太医院 Tai Yi Yuan. Imperial Academy of Medicine; Imperial Medical Department

太医 Palace (Imperial) Physician

太医院吏目 Medical Secretary of the Imperial Academy of Medicine

太医院院使 Commissioner of the Imperial Academy of Medicine

太医院院判 Vice Commissioner of the Imperial Academy of Medicine

理藩院 Li Fan Yuan. Court of Colonial Affairs

理刑司 Li Xing Si. Judicial Bureau

柔远司 Rou Yuan Si. Outer Mongolian Reception Bureau

徠远司 Lai Yuan Si. Eastern Turkestan Bureau

俸档房 Feng Dang Fang. Stipends Office

司法监察机构

JUDICIAL AND SUPERVISORY BODIES

刑部 Xing Bu. Board (Bureau, Ministry) of Justice

大理寺 Da Li Si. Court of Judicial Review; Court of Judicature and Revision; Grand Court of Revision

大理寺卿 Director of the Court of Judicial Review

大理寺少卿 Sub-Director of the Court of Judicial Review

大理寺左(右)寺丞 Senior (Junior) Secretary in the Court of Judicial Review

大理寺左(右)评事 Senior (Junior) Assistant of the Court of Judicial Review

都察院 Du Cha Yuan. Court of Censors; Chief Surveillance Office; Censorate

都察院左都御史 Chief Censor; Censor-in-Chief

都察院左副都御史 Deputy Chief Censor; Vice (Deputy) Censor-in-Chief

都察院监察都御史 Chief Investigating Censor; Circuit Censor

都察院监察御史 Investigating Censor

六科掌印给事中 Senior Supervising Secretary in one of the Six Sections of the Office for Scrutiny of Metropolitan Officials

六科给事中 Supervising Secretary in one of the Six Sections of

the Office for Scrutiny of Metropolitan Officials

御史台 Yu Shi Tai. Censorate; Censorial Agency

御史大夫 Chief Censor; Censor-in-chief

御史中丞 Deputy Censor-in-chief

侍御史 Palace Censor

都御史 Chief Censor in the Capital

监御史 Surveillance Censor

律例馆 Codification Office

军事机构

MILITARY APPARATUS

兵部 Bing Bu. Ministry (Board) of War

尚书 Minister

侍郎 Vice Minister

司务厅 Si Wu Ting. General Service Office

司务 Office Manager

车驾司 Che Jia Si. Bureau of Communications

职方司 Zhi Fang Si. Bureau of Operations

武选司 Wu Xuan Si. Bureau of Military Appointments

武库司 Wu Ku Si. Bureau of Provisions

武库司郎中 Director of the Bureau of Provisions

武库司员外郎 Vice-Director of the Bureau of Provisions

旗 Qi. Banner (the core of hereditary soldiers in the imperial Qing military organization)

八旗 Eight Banners, collective reference to the system of social-political-military organization of the Manchu people, gradually extended to include eight Mongol and Chinese Banners, making a total of 24 tribe-like Banners of hereditary troops garrisoned along the frontiers and at strategic places throughout the country.

八旗制 The Eight-Banner System of Manchu Military Structure; Eight-Banner Organization

上三旗 Three Imperial (Superior) Banners

正黄旗 Plain Yellow Banner

镶黄旗 Bordered Yellow Banner

正白旗	Plain White Banner
下五旗	Five Common (Lesser) Banners
正红旗	Plain Red Banner
镶红旗	Bordered Red Banner
镶白旗	Bordered White Banner
正蓝旗	Plain Blue Banner
镶蓝旗	Bordered Blue Banner
三旗包衣统领	Commander-general of the Bondservants of the Three Banners
三旗侍卫	Imperial Guardsmen of the Three Banners
三旗宗室侍卫	Imperial Clansmen of the Three Banners
八旗总管大臣	Grand Ministers Commanding the Eight Banners
八旗公	Duke of the Eight Banners
京旗	Metropolitan Bannermen
驻防	Provincial Bannermen; Banners stationed throughout the empire
绿营	Lü Ying. Green Standards; Green Standard Forces
前锋营	Qian Feng Ying. Vanguard Brigade; Imperial Guards Encampment
内前锋营	Nei Qian Feng Ying. Palace Vanguard Brigade
护军营	Hu Jun Ying. Guards Brigade (Division); Forbidden City Garrison
火器营 (神机营)	Huo Qi Ying. Firearms Brigade; Artillery and Musketry Division
健锐营	Jian Rui Ying. Scouting Brigade
骁骑营	Xiao Qi Ying. Cavalry Brigade
都统	Commander-in-chief; Lieutenant-general
副都统	Vice Commander-in-Chief
参领	Regimental Commander
佐领	Assistant Commander
总兵	Regional Commander; Brigade General
统领	Commander-General
副将	Regional Vice Commander

地方行政机构

PROVINCIAL ADMINISTRATIONS

省 Sheng. Province
 总督 Governor-General
 提督 Provincial Military Commander
 巡抚 Grand Coordinator (Ming Dynasty); Governor (Qing Dynasty)
 提督军务 Military Superintendent
 提督学政 Provincial Education Commissioner
 提督学道 Education Intendant Circuit
 提督学使者 Education-Supervising Commissioner
 督抚 Civil and Military Governors
 巡按 Provincial Censor
 布政使司 Bu Zheng Shi Si. Provincial Administration Commission
 布政使 Provincial Administration Commissioner; Lieutenant Governor; Commissioner of Finance
 参政 Administration Vice Commissioner
 参议 Assistant Administration Commissioner
 布政使经历 Secretary in the Lieutenant Governor's Office
 按察使司 An Cha Shi Si. Surveillance Commission
 按察使 Surveillance Commissioner; Commissioner of Justice
 按察使经历 Secretary in the Office of Surveillance Commissioner
 提刑按察使 Judicial Commissioner
 按察副使 Surveillance Vice Commissioner
 按察金使 Assistant Surveillance Commissioner
 都指挥使司 Du Zhi Hui Shi Si. Regional Military Commission
 都指挥使 Regional Military Commissioner
 道 Dao. Circuit; administrative district
 道台 (巡道) Circuit Intendant; Magistrate of Dao
 府 Fu Prefecture
 知府、府尹 Prefect
 府丞 Vice-Prefect
 同知 First-class Sub-Prefect
 厅 Ting. Subprefecture
 同知 Subprefectural Magistrate; Vice Magistrate
 通判 Second-class Sub-Prefect
 府经历 Prefectural Secretary
 州 Zhou. Subprefecture (Ming Dynasty); Department (Qing Dynasty)

知州 Department Magistrate
 州同 First-class Assistant Department Magistrate; Department
 Vice Magistrate
 州判 Second-class Assistant Department Magistrate
 县 Xian. District
 知县 (县令) District Magistrate
 县丞 Assistant District Magistrate
 府儒学教授 Prefectural Director of Studies
 州儒学学正 Departmental Director of Studies
 县儒学教谕 District Director of Studies
 州 (县) 训导 Department (or District) Sub-director of Studies
 县主簿 District Registrar
 盐运使 Salt Controller
 运同 Assistant Salt Controller
 粮道 Grain Intendant
 漕运总督 (参见 P105)
 漕运使 Transport Commissioner
 河道总督 Director-General of the Grand Canal

官 阶 OFFICIAL RANKS

等级制 a system of gradations
 品 rank
 等 (级) grade; class; degree
 正 upper
 从 lower
 官 officials with rank status
 吏 unranked subofficials; lesser functionaries
 九品等级制 The System of Nine Ranks; Nine Ranks System
 上上 upper-upper
 上中 upper-middle
 上下 upper-lower
 中上 middle-upper
 中中 middle-middle
 中下 middle-lower

下上 lower-upper

下中 lower-middle

下下 lower-lower

正一品 1A (rank 1, upper class)

从一品 1B (rank 1, lower class)

正二品 2A (rank 2, upper class)

从二品 2B (rank 2, lower class)

正三品 3A (rank 3, upper class)

从三品 3B (rank 3, lower class)

正四品 4A (rank 4, upper class)

从四品 4B (rank 4, lower class)

正五品 5A (rank 5, upper class)

从五品 5B (rank 5, lower class)

正六品 6A (rank 6, upper class)

从六品 6B (rank 6, lower class)

正七品 7A (rank 7, upper class)

从七品 7B (rank 7, lower class)

正八品 8A (rank 8, upper class)

从八品 8B (rank 8, lower class)

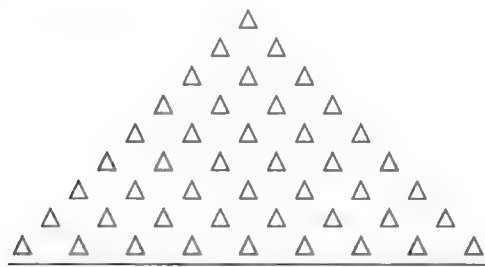
正九品 9A (rank 9, upper class)

从九品 9B (rank 9, lower class)

一至九品文武官员 Civil (military) official of the (first, second, through ninth) grade

当朝一品 the highest court official

品级山 a Rank marker (as follows):



顶戴 (顶子) Rank button, an insignia of rank worn atop an official's headgear, ranking from a ruby (rank 1) down to a silver-plated button (rank 9)

未入流 outside the current; not get official status

头品顶戴 The highest of nine official grades; Button of the First Rank

花翎顶戴 Ruby and coral buttons and peacock feathers on official's hat

科举制度

IMPERIAL EXAMINATION SYSTEM

科举 examinations for master's and doctor's degree; recruitment by examination

童试 (州试) Tong Shi, Zhou Shi. Prefectural Examination (held at prefectures for the first or master's degree of Xiucai 秀才, or Cultivated Talent)

乡试 (省试) Xiang Shi, Sheng Shi. Provincial Examination; Triennial Examination (held at the provincial capitals for the second or master's degree of Juren 举人, or Provincial Graduates, who were eligible for minor appointments or for participation in subsequent Metropolitan Examination at the dynastic capital)

会试 (京试) Hui Shi, Jing Shi. Metropolitan Examination; Unified (Joint) Examination (held in the capital of Beijing for the third or master's degree of Jinshi 进士, or Metropolitan Graduates, normally followed by a confirmatory Palace Examination presided over by the Emperor or his surrogate)

殿试 (廷试) Dian Shi, Ting Shi. Palace Examination; Imperial Examination (the final stage in any sequence of civil service recruitment examinations, normally a one-day examination that confirmed and listed in order of excellence all passers of the metropolitan examination)

科甲 Examination Graduates (refers to Provincial Graduate 举人 and Metropolitan Graduate 进士 in the civil service recruitment examination sequence)

科甲出身 Official by Examination (signifies that one had entered the civil service with status as either a Provincial Graduate 举人 or a Metropolitan Graduate 进士)

阅卷大臣 Grand Minister Examiner

登第 success in examination of graduates for the Hanlin Academy

及第 to obtain a degree

特赐第 specially granted degree

下第 failure to obtain a degree

秀才 Xiu Cai. Cultivated Talent (the lowest or first degree conferred upon successful candidates who were qualified to participate in Provincial Examinations in the civil service recruitment examination sequence)

生员 (儒学) Sheng Yuan, Ru Xue. Government Student (another name for Xiucai)

解元 Jie Yuan. Provincial Graduate with Highest Honors (the top candidate of the civil service examination held on the provincial level)

贡士 Gong Shi. Successful Candidates of Metropolitan Examination

会元 Hui Yuan. Principal Graduate (the man whose name stood first on the pass list issued after a Metropolitan Examination in the civil service examination sequence)

举人 Ju Ren. Provincial Graduate; Elevated Men (a second degree graduate or a successful candidate in the Provincial Examination)

进士 Jin Shi. Metropolitan Graduate; Presented Scholar (a third degree graduate or a successful candidate in the national civil examination held at the imperial capital)

进士及第 Jin Shi Ji Di. Metropolitan Graduate with Honors (in the first category of successful candidates)

进士出身 Jin Shi Chu Shen. Regular Metropolitan Graduate (in the second category of successful candidates)

同进士出身 Tong Jin Shi Chu Shen. Associate Metropolitan Graduate (in the third category of successful candidates)

状元 Zhuang Yuan. Principal Graduate (who stood first on the list of passers of the Palace Examination; the No. 1 Graduate of the Palace Examination)

榜眼 Bang Yan. Second Graduate (the No. 2 Graduate of the Palace Examination)

- 探花 Tan Hua. Third Graduate (the No. 3 Graduate of the Palace Examination)
- 传胪 Chuan Lu. List Leader (designation of those Metropolitan Graduates whose names headed the lists of the second and third group of passers in the Palace Examination)
- 三元 San Yuan. Triple First (quasi-official reference to the extremely rare man who stood first on the pass lists of each of three levels of civil service recruitment examinations)
- 翰林院 (参见 P92)
- 翰林学士 (参见 P92)
- 儒学 Confucian School
- 贡生 Gong Sheng. Tribute Student; Student of the Imperial College
- 太学 National University
- 监生 Jian Sheng. National University Student
- 优监生 National University student for excellence
- 拔贡生 Tribute Student for Preeminence
- 博学鸿词 Erudite Literatus
- 博学鸿儒 Erudite Scholasticus

七 六部公用语

THE TERMINOLOGY OF THE SIX BOARDS

吏 部

THE BOARD OF CIVIL APPOINTMENT

选任	appointment
大选	regular appointment
保举	recommendation
候选	awaiting appointment
补缺	waiting to fill a specific office
铨衡	just selection
陞用	promotion
调迁	transfer
员缺	vacancy
内陞	promotion to the capital
外转	reassignment to the provinces
考选	appointment by examination
拣选	appointment by selection
职衔	rank and title
加衔	nominal rank
加级	additional grade
到任	arrival at the post
任所	seat of office
受事	assume office
回署	return to office
现任	current post
优任	better position
原任	former post

新任	new incumbent
前任	former incumbent
接任	taking charge of a post
交代	handing over
交盘	delivery of inventory
经管	directly in charge
署理	acting
接署	take charge as acting (official)
一等称职	first class; fully competent for the office
二等勤职	second class; diligent in office
三等平职	third class; equal to the office
考课	investigation of official performance on duty
奉裁改调	abolition of post and transfer (of incumbent)
略加陞用	slight promotion to a suitable official post
引见	(参见 P70)
陛见	imperial audience
京察	metropolitan inspection
届期	at the designated time
举劾	recommendation and impeachment
黜罢	demotions and dismissals
劝惩	exhortation and warning
事迹	biographical facts
劣迹	bad deeds
参革	dismissal after impeachment
参罚	penalty for the impeachment
逐斥	dismissal with reprimand
革职	dismissal from office
拿问	arrest for questioning
摘印	surrender of seal
离任	departure from the post
解任	relieved of duty
降级	lowering of rank
卸事	handing over the office
降调	demotion and transfer
留任	retained at post
住俸	withholding of salary

- 降俸 reduction of salary
- 除俸 elimination of salary
- 降俸二级 reduction of salary by two classes
- 回避 avoidance
- 休致 retirement
- 归农 retire to the farm
- 原官致仕 retire with the original official title
- 告病乞休 request for retirement due to ill health
- 闻讣 receiving news of death
- 服闋 completion of mourning period
- 归葬 on leave for parents' interment
- 省亲 visiting parents
- 上司 superior
- 同僚 colleagues
- 流内官 ranked officials; officials within the ranks
- 流外官 unranked officials (unclassified officials)
- 杂职 minor posts
- 正途出身 holder of regular graduate ranks
- 检选举人 selected provincial graduates
- 教习贡生 teaching senior licentiates
- 么磨小吏 insignificant minor official
- 文凭 certificate
- 品级考 rank and class reference
- 委牌 assignment tablet
- 封荫 awards made because of the merits of one's ancestors or descendants
- 呈赐 presenting local products to the emperor, imperial gifts bestowed on local officials
- 缴批 returning rescripted palace memorials and corrected edicts to Beijing for storage

户 部

THE BOARD OF REVENUE

- 地丁钱粮 land-poll tax funds
- 正项钱粮 principal tax funds

杂项钱粮 miscellaneous tax funds
 衙役工食 office runners' food and wage costs
 俸工银两 salaries and wages
 关税 customs duties
 行税 business tax
 租税 tax on rentals
 典税 pawn-broker's tax
 经费银 administrative expenditures fund
 俸薪银 stipend and salary fund
 铺垫银 pad and cushion fund
 路费银 travel fund
 科敛 tax allocation and collection
 入己 to one's pocket (government funds)
 挪移 to shift (funds)
 亏空 deficit
 出纳 outlay and income
 拨补 transfer for replenishments
 衰益 to maintain balance
 垫赔 to restore with advanced (funds)
 抗粮 resistance to taxation
 乐纳 happy payment
 豁免 tax remission
 正供稻米 court rice
 孤贫口粮 poor relief rations
 斛石斗升 The Hu, Dan, Peck and Pint
 合勺抄撮 One-tenth, one-hundredth, one-thousandth of a pint
 and one pinch
 平糶 sale of government grain at low price
 出陈易新 to sell the old in exchange for new (rice)
 存七粃三 store seven parts and sell three
 漕运总督 director-general of grain transport
 运官 transport officials
 领运 (official) in charge of transport
 押运 (grain) transport escort officials
 土司 tribal authorities
 土舍 tribal leader(s)

土目	tribal head
土民	native people
客民	temporary residents
平民	common people
花民	lower classes (or castes)
流寓	temporary residence
壮丁	able-bodied men
屯丁	agricultural settlers
正丁	men of the family
户丁	men of the clan (men of the household)
成丁	adult male
舍丁	house men
闲丁	non-quota men
脱漏户口	missing census counts
户由执照	license for change of residence
肥田	fertile land
瘠田	poor land
淤田	alluvial land
涂田	mud land
熟地	mature land
荒地	unused land
卤地	brine land (or salt land)
海滩淤沙地	sandy alluvial land on the coast
凋残瘠薄地	devastated, poor land
耕九余三之谷	three years' surplus grain out of nine years of cultivation
青黄不接之候	the season of pre-harvest food shortages

礼 部

THE BOARD OF RITES

大祀	great sacrifices (the great sacrifice to Heaven at the Round Altar 圜丘 in the Temple of Heaven 天坛; the great sacrifice to Earth at the Square Pond 方泽 in the Temple of Earth 地坛)
中祀	superior sacrifices (the superior sacrifices at the Altar of

- Earth and Grain 社稷坛, the Altar of the Planet Jupiter
 太岁, and the Temples of Confucius and of Guandi 孔庙
 和关帝庙)
- 庙享 offerings at the Imperial Ancestral Temple or Great Temple
 (太庙)
- 致斋 major fast
- 斋戒 fasting and purification
- 散斋 minor fast (major fast is observed for a Great Sacrifice,
 while Minor fast for a superior sacrifice)
- 陪祭 (to serve as) associates in sacrifice
- 陪祀 (to serve as) associates in worship
- 助祭 (to serve as) sacrificial assistants
- 祭仪 sacrificial offerings; sacrificial ceremonies
- 祭文 sacrificial ode or prayer
- 饗荐 food offering
- 案衣 altar drape
- 元宵 first night of full moon
- 除夕 New Year's Eve
- 元旦令节 fair festival of New Year's Day
- 灯节 Lantern Festival
- 万寿圣节 ten-thousand-year imperial birthdays (the birthdays of
 the retired emperor, the empress dowager, and the em-
 peror are all termed "ten-thousand-year imperial birth-
 days")
- 千秋令节 one-thousand-year imperial birthday (the birthdays of
 the empress and heir apparent are referred to as "one-
 thousand-year imperial birthdays")
- 庆贺表笺 congratulatory memorials and messages (to be present-
 ed to the empress dowager or emperor was called a memo-
 rial, to the empress or heir apparent, a message)
- 巨典礼成 completion of grand ceremony
- 尊号 honorific titles (in the case of the retired emperor and the
 empress)
- 徽号 special titles (in the case of the empress dowager)
- 尊谥 posthumous honors (all the honorific titles and the special
 titles given after death are termed posthumous honors)

举手加额 the forehead salute

大行皇太后尊谥 Posthumous honors of the late Empress Dowager
(“Da Xing” means having departed without return i. e. ,
dead; before posthumous honors can be definitely fixed
after the passing of the empress dowager of the emperor)

初祭 first sacrifice

大祭 grand sacrifice

启奠 removal libation

朝覲 an audience (with the emperor)

朝贡 an audience and presentation of tribute

赐宴 court banquets; banquets granted by the emperor

品尝御膳 testing of the emperor's food

乘舆服御物 imperial wardrobe and articles of daily use

卤簿大驾 (全副执事) full regalia and grand equipage
(known as “the full set of equipments”)

织金朝衣 audience robe of gold-wedged brocade (with patterns
woven in gold thread)

历代陵寝 imperial mausoleums of past dynasties

忠臣烈士 loyal ministers and patriots

古圣先贤 ancient sages and past worthies

孝子顺孙 filial son, submissive grandson

义夫节妇 faithful husband, chaste wife

烈妇 virtuous woman

烈女 virtuous girl

旌表 public commendation

建坊 to erect an honorary arch

一甲赐进士及第 the degree of first class Metropolitan Graduate is
granted to (successful candidates of) the first rank
(which consists of three places, i. e. Zhuang Yuan 状元, Bang Yan 榜眼 and Tan Hua 探花)

二甲赐进士出身 the degree of second class Metropolitan Graduate
is granted to (successful candidates of) the second
rank (which had no fixed number of places; the candi-
date winning the highest places was known as Chuan Lu
传胪, while all who passed the examination received the
degree of second class Metropolitan Graduate)

乡试外帘五所官 officials of the five bureaus of the outer section
at provincial examination

三甲赐同进士出身 the degree of third class Metropolitan Graduate
is graduated to (successful candidates of) the third
rank

三场体格 literary forms for the three sittings (or parts) of an ex-
amination (in the provincial and metropolitan examina-
tions, the first sitting consisted of three essays on the
Four Books 四书; the second, Five Classics 五经; and
the third sitting, two discourses on the formulation of po-
licies; each type of writing had its own form to be fol-
lowed)

经书七义 the seven purports of the classics

会试举人 metropolitan examination candidature; provincial grad-
uates at the metropolitan examination

拔贡 imperial student by special selection

会试 metropolitan examination

殿试 Palace examination

科举 public examinations; public examination system

贡院 examination compound; the examination hall

道考 circuit examination

院考 chancellor's examination

科甲 advanced degrees

兵 部

THE BOARD OF WAR

将材 having the ability to be a general

统辖 in command of

整饬营伍 putting the camp in order

和辑兵民 bringing about harmony between troops and civilians

边疆 frontier

腹里 the interior

隘口 narrow pass

海疆 coastal frontier

缘边关塞 frontier passes and forts

滨海要汛	strategic coastal military district
堤备不严	security measures are lax
失误军机	missing a military opportunity
越出界石	to overstep the boundary markers
私渡关津	illegally passing customs stations
军机重务	important military matter
事出不测	unexpected occurrence
立有战功	having won merit in battle
警跸	security guard
警备严密	strict security measures
号令森严	the orders are inviolable and strict
关防提督	guarding and commanding
团练	training of militia
点视	inspection by roll call
剿抚	to extirpate and to pacify
鏖战	to battle fiercely
活捉	to capture alive
逡巡	to shrink back
猖乱	creating violence
跋扈	to tyrannize; tyrannous
驰驱	to gallop
瞭望	look-out
关堡	pall and fort
墩台	signal mounds; watch towers
王命旗牌	imperial command flags and plaques
令旗令箭	command flags, command arrows
鹿角傍牌	cavalry traps, side barricades
云梯牌钹	scaling ladder, shield, and scaling hook
弓弩药箭	cross-bow, poisoned arrow
大刀长枪	broad sword, long spear
麦穗流星	three-headed flail
号带火筒	command streamer, flare gun
帐房铍锅	tent, cauldron
红衣鸟枪	red-coat's musket
胖袄棉甲	fat jacket, floss vest
皮铁盔甲	leather or iron helmet and armor

纛旗	marshal's banner
高招旗	direction pennant
杂色旗	multi-colored flag
邮符	postal credentials
火牌火票	express tag, express ticket
勘合	tallies
驿递	via the (military) post
马站	horse post
马头	chief groom
马夫	grooms
驿夫	post station men
递回	extradition
轻骑减从	to travel light with reduced retinue
驰驿就道	to travel via the post road
考试武举	to take the provincial military examinations
马步箭	mounted and dismounted archery
舞刀	sword play
作策论	writing a discourse on policy

刑 部

THE BOARD OF PUNISHMENTS

原告	plaintiff
被告	dependant
干证	witness
两造	both parties
首告	accuser
讦告	disrespectfully preferring charges against
投首	turning oneself in
抱告	to bring a suit by proxy
刁讼	cunning litigant
诬告	false accusation; groundless accusation
顶名代告	to accuse under assumed name
仇报	to draw in owing to personal enmity
飞冤驾害	to bring untrue charges and frame (the innocent)
教唆陷害	instigating disaster (for others)

波及无辜	innocent bystander being drawn into (a legal dispute)
诬轻为重	imposing a heavy (sentence) for a minor (crime)
诬良为盗	to charge a good citizen with robbery
株连受累	being implicated in trouble
申诉冤枉	pleading for (redress of) grievance
自认不讳	self-confessed without equivocation
坚供不移	unchangeable testimony
投供	reporting one's presence
亲供	personally penned report
俯首自招	confessing with bowed head
情愿抵偿	willing to forfeit; willing to pay the penalty
伤证俱确	full evidence of both the wound and witness(es)
犯罪待对	the criminal awaiting confrontation
任其哓哓	to permit wrangling
巧说谎供	evasive testimony, false testimony
赃证明确	loot and witness are clear and indisputable
赃经主认	loot identified by owner
起认赃物	retrieve and identify stolen goods
朝审	court assizes (or trials)
历审	successive interrogation
审供	to interrogate for evidence
援赦	amnesty granted in conformity with precedent
赦前(后)	pre-amnesty (post-amnesty)
缓决	execution suspended; suspension of execution
成招	confession obtained
全招	complete confession
三覆奏	thrice to reconsider and memorialize
两议具奏	to memorialize on the two alternatives
御笔勾除	crossed off with the imperial brush
减等发落	to be disposed of with reduced (penalty)
重杖	heavy flogging
笞五十	(sentenced to) fifty lashes
枷号一个月	to wear the cangue for one month
刺字	tattoo
杂犯死罪	secondary criminals rating the death penalty
并赃治罪	punished for the total sum of loot

自首免罪 penalty waived of one who turns himself in
 发配 deportations to frontier areas
 发边外为民 to be exiled beyond the Wall as civilians
 远戍难宽 no clemency for the sentence of remote garrison duty
 绊首 strangulation
 斩罪 decapitation
 戮尸 beheading of corpse
 发烟瘴充军 be exiled to serve military duty in a malarious area
 立决正法 to be immediately executed in conformation with the law
 枭首示众 beheading and exhibition
 酷(极、惨)刑 harsh(extreme, cruel) punishment(or torture)
 手扭 handcuffs
 脑箍 head band
 脚镣 foot fetters
 冤陷在狱 jailed on a false charge
 毙监免议 cancellation of trial of one who has died in prison
 淹禁致死 death due to long imprisonment
 反狱在逃 has revolted and escaped from prison
 越狱脱逃 escaping from prison
 惧罪潜逃 fleeing for fear of punishment
 疏纵脱逃 escape resulting from carelessness
 勒限严缉 to conduct a thorough search within a given time limit
 缉获 captured after a search
 故杀 killing with an intent to kill
 谋杀 murder by conspiracy
 主谋 to instigate (or incite)
 戏杀 manslaughter resulting from joking
 鸩杀 murder by poison
 自刎 cutting one's own throat
 自缢 hanging oneself
 自尽 suicide
 误杀 killing by mistake
 过失杀 killing by accident
 通奸 adultery
 和奸 adultery by mutual consent

强奸	rape
刁奸	seduction
轮奸	to rape by turns
鸡奸	sodomy
奸久情密	close attachment arising out of a long liaison
遂谋杀夫	thereupon have murdered the husband
弃毁死尸	to abandon and destroy a corpse
抛撒死尸	to scatter corpses
尽髡去发	cutting off the hair completely
犯人	criminal
重犯	major criminal
首犯	ringleader, principal criminal
为从	accomplice; abetter
盗犯	larcenist
元谋	instigator
首盗	robber chief
伙盗	robber band
窃盗	thief
掏摸	burglary
越墙	over the walls
撞门	battering the door
撬门	forcing the door
入室	into the rooms
捆打	to tie and beat up
火烤	roasting with fire
油烧	scalding with oil
拷打	inquisition with beating
刀扎	stabbing
略卖	to seize and sell
拐骗	to kidnap through deception
引诱逃走	to lure and flee
诱逼转卖	(to kidnap by) inducement or coercion, and to sell
以图灭口	in order to eliminate witnesses

工 部

THE BOARD OF WORKS

河工	river conservancy; river works
修筑	to construct
垒砌	to build with masonry
修浚	to dredge
宣泄	to flush out
越开	to bypass
下埽	lower embankment
加帮	extra bulwark
裹头	source enclosure
合龙门	closing the "dragon's gate"
越坝	a spanning dam or weir
遥堤	distant dyke
大墩	great mounds
拦河坝	mid-channel dam
滚(挑、减)水坝	diversion (deflection, detention) dam
越河	alluvial river
涵洞	reservoir; culvert
春(伏、秋)汛	spring (summer, autumn) floods
冲决	breached by flood
坍塌	to collapse
断流	to halt the stream
房屋建造	the construction of buildings
上梁	to place the beams in position
竖柱	to erect the posts (or pillars)
码礅	to build the pillar bases
翻造	to remodel
灌浆	to seal with liquid mortar
勾抿	plastering
曰至	the four boundaries
三座洞门	triple-arch gate
斗拱	brackets
斜山	sloping walls
黄花竹	yellow-spotted bamboo
熏竹	smoked bamboo
淘金	gold washing
采木	purchase of lumber

杉槁	slim firs
架木	frame lumber
砖工	brickwork; masonry
验收	to inspect and terminate a public works project

八 青铜器

BRONZES

金属及金工

METALS AND METALCRAFT

五金 The Five Metals

黄金 gold

白银 silver

赤（红、紫）铜 copper

黄铜 brass

青铜 bronze

铁 iron

锡 tin

锡镴 pewter

合金 alloy

铜锈 patina

铜绿 verdignis

铁锈（参见 P155）

铸铜技术 technique of bronze casting

矿石 ore

蓝铜矿（石青） azurite; blue malachite

黄铜矿 chalcopyrite

辉铜矿 chalcocite

斑铜矿 bornite

坩埚（将军盔） crucible; an open-mouthed vessel for smelting
the ore, also known as “general’s helmet”

熔化 to melt (ore)

冶炼 to smelt

浇铸 to cast

锻炼 to forge
 陶范 pottery molds (for casting bronze)
 型范 sectional molds
 母范 master mold
 合范 composite molds
 泥模 clay model
 失蜡法 cire-perdue; lost-wax method
 浇铸法 method of casting with sectional molds
 分铸法 separate casting method
 铸造 foundry
 铸件 foundry goods
 主体 main body
 部件 minor parts
 装配 to assemble; to match
 铜器镶嵌技术 technique of embellishing bronzes with inlays
 镶嵌 (参见 P171)
 镶嵌 to inlay; to encrust with metal or gems
 镶嵌细工 marquetry; inlaid work
 镀 to overlay; to plate; to gild
 镀(鍍)金(银) to gold (silver) plate; to be gilt with gold
 (silver)
 错金(银) to inlay with gold (silver)
 戗金 with inlay of gold; with gold relief
 描金 (参见 P245)
 贴金 (参见 P268)
 抹金 (参见 P158)
 嵌花 applique
 贴花 (参见 P158)
 鑲花 (参见 P267)
 敲出品 repoussé
 镂空 openwork; fretwork
 十字形镂空 cruciform opening
 圆穿 holes
 长孔 slots
 金银丝细工 filigree work
 嵌螺钿 (参见 P245)

掐丝 filigree; wire inlay

形 制 SHAPES

体、腹 body; belly (to receive food, wine or water)

(深、中、浅) 腹 (deep, medium, shallow) belly (body)

盖 lid; cover (to keep the contents warm and tight within the vessel)

(半、浅凹、深凹) 盖 (flat, slightly concave, in the shape of a cup) lid

盖捏手 lid knob (stands on the top of the lid for the purpose of picking up the lid)

缘(唇) rim (the lower edge surrounding the mouth)

反唇 spreading rim

口 mouth (to let out the contents of the vessel)

侈口 trumpet mouth; wide flared mouth (whose diameter is greater than that of the body)

敛口 contracted mouth (whose diameter is much smaller than that of the body)

中口 medium mouth (whose diameter is nearly the same as that of the body)

项、颈 neck (between the body and the mouth)

束颈 contracted neck

耳 ears (two handles on both sides of the vessel)

立(直)耳 vertical ears; upright handles (on the rim of a vessel)

侧(附)耳 side ears (on the sides of the body in the shape of crescents)

环耳 ring ears (big rings hanging down from a nose or an animal head)

圈耳 loop ears (attached to both sides of the body)

提梁 swing-handle; loop handle (in the form of a bridge as on the You 缶)

联环 chain-handle (to fasten the lid and to serve the purpose of hanging when being heated)

- 柄、拊 rod-handle; hilt (appears on spoons and knives; a long rod, sometimes carved)
- 鑿 single ear
- 嘴 spout (to pour out liquid)
- 喙 tube-spout (in the shape of a projecting tube, as seen on big and deep wine vessels with lid)
- 流 peaked spout; slanting spout (being the projecting part of the brim of mouth)
- 足 legs (to support and to leave the vessel space for heating)
- 实足 solid legs (in the shape of cylinders like those on the Ding 鼎)
- 款足 hollow legs (facilitate the boiling of the liquid content)
- 小足 small legs (of various forms: some are slender, some take the form of animals, some are small rings; appear not only under the bottom or the base but also on covers)
- 圈足 medium base; circular base; ring foot (originally a separate supporter for standing vessels with no legs, it was later cast together with the bottom as part of the whole vessel)
- 敛底 contracted base (has no surrounding rim under the bottom, and supports itself by a contracted bottom)
- 短而粗 dumpy
- 长而细 long and slender

类别及名称

CLASSIFICATION AND NAMES

礼器 Ritual Vessels

炊器 (烹饪器) Cooking Vessels

- 鼎 Ding (tripod for cooking meat and cereals; its body may be round or rectangular with three or four solid legs; it may or may not have a lid)
- 鬲 Li (cauldron for cooking meat and cereals, similar to tripod but with hollow legs; Li are generally round, a few are rectangular; some have ears, but most have none)

- 甗 Yan (steamer for vegetables and cereals with round body on three legs, a few with rectangular body on four legs)
- 甑 Zeng (colander; the upper part of a Yan)
- 簋 An (a vessel for storing seasoned food; a cover of a tripod)
- 鬲 Xun (a kind of boiler; a round kettle)
- 釜 Fu (a cauldron, usually with a cover, two handles and three feet)
- 釜 Mou (a kind of kettle)
- 镬、镛 Ge、Gao (a kind of stove)
- 刀 Dao (knife, kitchen knives)
- 俎 Zu (chopping blocks for carving meat)

食器 (盛器) Food Containers

- 簠 Gui (a bowl with or without cover and ears, used as a container for grain and other foodstuffs; usually round, rectangular ones are rare)
- 簋 Fu (a rectangular covered dish with straight sloping sides, used as a container for cooked cereals; the lid is similar to the main body)
- 簠 (簠簋) Xu, Xugui (a rectangular round-cornered vessel with a lid; has the same utility as a Gui and is actually a variant of the latter)
- 敦 Dui (a round or oval, covered vessel for holding cereals; popularly termed "Watermelon Ding")
- 豆、琦 Dou, Qi (a high-stemmed shallow saucer with cover on a round base, used for keeping minced meat; a rectangular Dou was called a Qi)
- 铺、筲 Pu, Bian (a compressed version of Dou, used to keep preserved fruits or meat)
- 卢 Lu (a shallow rectangular tray)
- 匕 Bi (a spoon with shallow elliptical bowl for serving meat and other solids)

酒器 Wine Vessels

- 煮酒器 vessels for heating wine
- 爵 (雀) Jue, Que (goblet, a tripod cup with projecting lip;

- most Jue have two small pillars; a few have one or none)
- 角 Jiao (goblet, similar to the Jue but with the extended symmetrical rim and bielliptical mouth; the Jiao has no pillar; the spout and tail are both of the same shape)
- 罍 Jia (a round tripod vessel with a handle on one side and two uprights on the lip)
- 盂 He (kettle, a rounded vessel with closed spout, handle, cover, and three or four legs, solid or hollow)
- 盛酒饮酒器 Wine Containers and Drinking Vessels
- 觚 Gu (a slender beaker with trumpet-shaped mouth and spreading foot; rectangular ones are rare)
- 尊 Zun (a beaker-shaped rectangular vessel, with flaring lip)
- 樽 Zun (cup, for drinking or warming up wine)
- 牺尊 (鸟兽尊) Xi Zun (vessel in the form of a rhinoceros, bird, or other animal)
- 觥 Zhi (goblet, with flaring lip, swelling body and foot-rim; with or without a lid)
- 方彝 Fang Yi (ewer, a rectangular casket-shaped vessel with cover surmounted by a knob)
- 卣 You (jar or tankard, round or ovoid in horizontal section, with cover and swing-handle)
- 鸱卣 Xiao You (You modeled in the shape of an owl)
- 觥 Gong (a squat pitcher, elongated from front to back, with a cover extending over open spout at front and with handle at back, and a square stand or four legs at the base)
- 壶 Hu (a jar, vase or ewer with bulbous body, narrow neck, foot-rim and two handles or rings, with or without cover)
- 钟 Zhong (the round Hu with a big belly was called Zhong)
- 钫 Fang (the rectangular Hu was called Fang; a term used for a four-sided Hu)
- 钾 Jia (the compressed Hu was called Jia)
- 扁壶 (参见 P151)
- 贯耳壶 Hu (thread-ear Hu with tubular ears for cord)
- 罍 Lei (a large vase, or jar similar to the Hu, but with the widest part of the body just below the neck)

- 甗 Pou or Bu (a vessel resembling the Hu and the Lei, but lower in proportion, bulkier and with a more rounded body)
- 餅 Ping (a vessel with the form of a Hu but generally with a flat base)
- 缶、鐺、罍 Fou, Ling, Dan (names for low spout vessels with contracted mouths)
- 卮 Zhi (a low cup or bowl with two or more handles)
- 杯、觞 Bei, Shang (low oval cups with horizontal flanges parallel to the longer axis, known as "Wings")
- 勺 Shao (ladle for serving fluids with a long handle and deep bowl)
- 禁、案 Jin, An (a low table or altar, square or rectangular, on which ritual vessels may be stood)

水器 Water Vessels

- 盤 Pan (a wide shallow bowl for washing vessels or for ablutions, usually with a high foot-rim and two ears for lifting)
- 匜 Yi (a low ewer, from which water could be poured, with a flat base on three or four legs)
- 鑑 Jian (a large deep basin with two or more ring-handles, or none at all, used for washing; used also as a mirror when filled with water; or used for keeping ice)
- 洗、盆、盂 Xi, Pen, Yu (basins similar in form to the Jian, but smaller, and usually with everted rims, rather like the wash-basin of today)
- 匊 He (an oval-shaped container with a handle, usually to hold water for grinding an ink-stick for scholarly writing)
- 皿 Min (vessels, containers especially for use in the house)

乐器 Musical Instruments

- 铙 Nao (a large cymbal; a bell with a long bar-handle set on a wooden stand and struck with a wooden mallet)
- 钟 Zhong (a clapperless bell to be struck with a stick on the outside; also a Nao upside down, hung up to produce a clear sound)
- 特钟 Te Zhong (a large bell designed to hang alone, not as part

of a chime)

- 搏钟 Bo Zhong (a kind of bell with a plane opening; it was hung vertically by a circular knob)
- 编钟 Bian Zhong (a chime of bells hung in series in a wooden frame so that it could play more complicated tunes)
- 甬钟 Yong Zhong (a bell with cylindrical handle on top; it was hung up in an inclined position)
- 执钟 Zhi Zhong (handled bell from the Shang Dynasty)
- 钮钟 Niu Zhong (a bell with semi-circular knob on top)
- 铎于 Chun Yu (a kind of cylindrical bell, suspended by a loop in the form of a bird or an animal; its long body which widens upward is usually undecorated)
- 钲 (丁宁) Zheng (Ding Ning) (a kind of bell, oval section and wide mouth, with a short hollow handle; like the Nao it was struck with a mallet)
- 钩铎 Gou Diao (used at sacrificial ceremonies or feasts)
- 铎 Duo (a hand-bell with clapper; in ancient times, Zheng, Chun Yu and Duo were used as signals in battle)
- 铃 Ling (a small bell of oval section suspended by a loop or canon)
- 鼓 Gu (drum; has a face on both sides, which is struck with sticks or hands)
- 甬 Yong (the shank or handle of a bell)
- 舞 Wu (the flat top of a bell)
- 磬 Qing (stone chime; sonorous stone)
- 舞戚 Wu Qi (a ceremonial axe used in dancing)
- 舞铙 Wu Nao (ringing instrument for the dance)
- 旂铃 Ji Ling (a bell fixed at the top of a flag)
- 铎 Luo (gong)
- 钹 Bo (cymbal)

兵器 Weapons (Military Implements)

- 勾兵 Gou Bing (hook weapons; a general term for weapons having a pointed blade held at right angles to the shaft)
- 戈 Ge (a dagger-axe, consisting essentially of a pointed blade with both edges sharpened, used for hooking and hitting)

戈各部的技术名称 technical names of the parts of a Ge

- 援 Yuan (the blade of a Ge)
内 Nei (tang or the butt end of a Ge)
后缘 Hou Yuan (tang terminal)
胡 Hu (dewlap; the base or stem of the later Ge)
穿 Chuan (aperture or hole of a Ge)
锋 Feng (blade tip of a Ge)
阑 Lan (banister of a Ge)
脊 Ji (median ridge)
斧 Fu (axe, hatchet, celt; also used for battle-axe)
戚 Qi (axe, battle-axe, broad axe; a term used for several variants of this weapon)
钺 Yue (an axe, was used both as a weapon of war as well as an implement of execution)

钺各部的技术名称 technical names of the parts of a Yue

- 秘冒 Bi Mao (finial)
木秘 Mu Bi (wooden shaft)
身 Shen (body)
内 Nei (tang)
肩 Jian (shoulder)
刃 Ren (blade edge)
阑 Lan (banister)
穿 Chuan (aperture)
矛 Mao (a spear or lance; and has the same function as a bayonet)
戟 Ji (a kind of lance, halberd; a combined spear and dagger axe developed from the slotted Ge)
勾戟 Gou Ji (hook-halberd; a kind of weapon combining dagger axe and knife)
弓 Gong (bow)
铳 Chong (blunderbuss)
釜 Qiong (the socket in a tool or weapon for the shaft or handle)
突 Tu (protuberance; the ferrule of the shaft of a weapon)
弩 Nu (cross-bow, bow fitted with mechanism for stretching and

firing)

弩各部的技术名称 technical names of the parts of a Nu

郭 mechanism host

望山 scope

牙 tooth

悬刀 (扳机) trigger

钩心 catch

键 (栓塞) pinions

弦 bow string

弩箭 arrow

弩弓 bow

木制弩臂 tiller

箭、矢 Jian, Shi (arrow)

矢箛 Shi Fu (quiver)

鸣镝 Ming Di (whistling arrow)

镞 Zu (the barbed head of an arrow, or arrow-head used for long-range shooting)

大刀 Da Dao (knife; broad sword with long handle used for sabering)

刃 Ren (the edge of a knife)

马头短刀 Ma Tou Duan Dao (horse-head short dagger, used for fighting at slope quarters)

盾 Dun (emblazoned shield)

甲冑 Jia Zhou (armor and helmet used as protective equipment)

剑 Jian (double-edged sword)

剑各部的技术名称 technical names of the parts of a Jian

锋 Feng (the tip of a sword)

腊 (脊) La or Ji (the spine of a sword)

茎 Jing (the hilt or grip of a sword)

首 Shou (the pommel of a sword)

叶 Ye (the blade of a sword)

格 Ge (the guard of a sword)

节尖 Jie Jian (the jag of a sword)

镗 Xin (the nose of a sword)

铍 Pi (short sword with long handle; most Pi are shaped like a willow leaf with a hole on the hilt)

车马饰 Chariot and Harness Ornaments

辕 Yuan (shaft of chariot)
耑 Wei (the endpiece of axle)
軛 E (horse collar; yoke)
辖 Xia (linchpin; axle-pin)
镳 Biao (curb chain)
衔 Xian (curb bit)
镫 Deng (stirrup)
毂 Gu (hub)
当卢 Dang Lu (ornaments of bridle)
马冠 Ma Guan (horse mask)
銮铃 Luan Ling (bell)
马面饰 Ma Mian Shi (bridle ornament)

生产工具 Tools of Production

手工业工具 handicraft tools (employed mostly in carpentry)

斧 (参见 P125)
镑 Ben (adze)
锥 Zhui (awl)
钻 Zuan (drill)
凿 Zao (chisel)
削 Xiao (scraper)
锯 Ju (saw)
锉 Cuo (file)
农具 farm tools
铲 Chan (shovel)
耨 Jue (pickaxe)
镰 Lian (sickle)
锄 Chu (hoe; pickaxe)
鱼钩 Yugou (fish hook)

度量衡器 Weights and Measures

直尺 Zhi Chi (ruler)

- 卡尺 Ca Chi (calipers)
 天平 Tian Ping (balance; scales)
 秤 Cheng (steelyard)
 权 Quan (weight)
 衡 Heng (graduated arm of a steelyard; balance)
 枋 Fang (a measure with a square mouth)

杂器 Miscellaneous Articles

- 镜 Jing (flat hand-mirror)
 奁 Lian (a cylindrical covered vessel used as a cosmetic box)
 炉 Lu (brazier; stove; censer)
 熏炉 Xun Lu (incense burner)
 博山炉 Bo Shan Lu (hill censer; censer shaped as a stem cup with cover in the form of a mountain peak; Boshan incense burner)
 灯 Deng (lamps)
 烛台 Zhu Tai (candlestick)
 服饰 Fu Shi (clothing ornaments)
 带钩 Dai Gou (belt hook; clothing hook)
 带扣 Dai Kou (buckle)
 建筑装饰件 ornamental pieces for buildings
 棺槨饰件 decorative accessories for coffins
 鸠杖首 pigeon-shaped staff-head
 杠头 pole cap
 铺首 (门环) Pu Shou (brass knocker; door knocker)
 铜钱 a coin, a cash, money
 肉 Rou (the field of a cash)
 好 Hao (the hole in a cash)
 郭 Guo (the thickened rim of a coin)
 背 Bei (reverse of a coin)
 面 Mian (obverse of a coin)
 刀币 knife-shaped money
 铲币 spade-shaped money
 虎符 Hu Fu (a tiger-shaped tally)
 鱼符 Yu Fu (a fish-shaped tally)
 腰牌 Yao Pai (waist warrant)

纹 饰 DECORATIONS

- 云雷纹 cloud and thunder pattern
- 回纹 meandering pattern; rectangular spiral pattern
- 螺旋纹 (涡纹) spiral pattern; whorl circle
- 浪花纹 foam pattern
- 弦纹 bow string pattern
- 圈带纹 belt-of-circles; circle band
- 环带纹 wave pattern
- 重环纹 double ring pattern
- 直线纹 perpendicular pattern
- 乳丁纹 nipple pattern; nipple protrusion
- 绉纹 (参见 P163)
- 鳞纹 scale pattern
- 龟纹 tortoise design; turtle pattern
- 瓦纹 tile pattern
- 窃曲纹 curved and hooked forms derived from animal elements;
"broad figure band"
- 穷曲纹 impoverished (ragged, degenerate) curves
- 鸟兽纹 bird and animal (beast) pattern
- 夔 (Kui) Kui pattern; Kui-dragon
- 两头夔 two-headed Kui
- 饕餮纹 glutton motive; ogre mask; Tao Tie (a monster with a
head but no body)
- 蟠螭纹 (Pan Chi) interlaced-hydras design
- 蟠虺纹 Pan Hui pattern; coiled serpent design
- 龙 dragon (an animal with scaly serpentine body, four legs with
clawed feet, and a large head with horns)
- 凤 phoenix (a more splendid and handsomely crested variant of
the bird)
- 两尾龙 two-tailed dragon; two dragons with heads fused into
one
- 蟠 (龙、螭、夔) motives in which a dragon or other animal
is coiled, head to tail to form a circular or oval medal-

lion

螭 (Chi) a hornless dragon; "hydra" or "lizard"

虺 (Hui) serpent

鸱 (Xiao) owl

蝉 (Chan) cicada

人面 human mask

羊头 ram head

神怪鸟兽纹 mythical bird and animal design

动物形纹 zoomorphic design

翼鹿纹 winged deer design

鳄鱼纹 crocodile design

虎噬猪纹 tiger devouring a pig

海马葡萄纹 "beasts and grapes"

变形兽纹 stylized animal pattern

龙盘虎绕 dragon entwined with tiger

龙鸟交织 interlacing dragons and birds

蕉叶纹 banana-leaf pattern

垂叶纹 descending leaf pattern

四瓣花纹 four-petaled flower pattern

四半月形纹 four crescents

三角云纹 cloud-in-triangle pattern

斜方格 rhomboid form

几何图案 geometric pattern

对称图案 symmetrical patterns

错纹 geometrical interlacery

相交纹 interlocking patterns

贝纹 cowrie pattern

粟纹 grain (millet) pattern

战斗纹 combat motive; combat between man and animals

猎纹 hunting motive; hunting scenes

人字纹 (参见 P162)

万字纹 (参见 P162)

四神、四灵 the four supernatural beings (symbolizing the four quadrants of the sky and the earth, and also the four seasons); the Animals of the Four Quarters, they are:

青龙 Green Dragon, symbol of the east and of spring

朱雀 Scarlet Bird, symbol of the south and of summer
 白虎 White Tiger, symbol of the west and of autumn
 玄武 Somber Warrior, symbol of the north and of winter
 连续双线椭圆纹 linked ellipses formed by double lines
 连续菱形纹 linked lozenge pattern
 棋盘格式纹 chessboard (or checked) pattern
 花纹文字 characters in the shape of design
 勾莲纹 crochet (hooked) lotus
 勾旋纹 hooked spiral
 直凿纹 vertical ribs
 竹编纹 bamboo interlacery

铭 辞 INSCRIPTIONS

金文学 epigraphy
 记名铭文 inscription of names
 族名 clan name
 受祭者名 name of ancestor receiving offering
 作器者名 name of the maker of the vessel
 器名 name of vessel
 铸冶工人名 name of the caster
 器之所有者 name of the owner
 记事铭文 inscription of events
 征伐 warfare
 赏赐 (参见 P73)
 祀典 ceremonial events
 祭祀 sacrificial activities
 册命 appointment of officials by the king (emperor)
 分封 enfeoffment
 契约 covenants
 作器媵女 record of marriage of daughter
 先世功绩 in praise of ancestral deeds
 作器时间 date of making vessel
 吉祥语 auspicious sayings
 铸器记名 names of the conferer and receiver of the vessels

青铜器物选

SELECTED WORKS OF BRONZES

- 妇好鸮尊 Owl-shaped Zun (wine vessel) made for Fu Hao
- 盘驹尊 Colt-shaped Zun (wine vessel) made for Li
- 蔡侯觶尊 Zun (wine vessel) made for Marquis Shen of the Cai State
- 三羊尊 Zun (wine vessel) with three rams' heads on shoulder
- 赵曹鼎 Ding (cooking vessel) made for Que Cao
- 毛公鼎 Ding (cooking vessel) of the Duke of Mao
- 父己鼎 Ding (cooking vessel) to worship Father Ji
- 鱼父丁鼎 Ding (cooking vessel) of Yu clan to worship father Ding
- 祖庚作司母戊方鼎 Rectangular Ding (cooking vessel) made by Zugeng to worship mother Wu
- 田告作母辛鼎 Ding (cooking vessel) made by Tian Gao for mother Xin
- 叔父丁鬲 Li (cooking vessel) to worship uncle Ding
- 加作父戊爵 Jue (wine vessel) made by Jia to worship father Wu
- 猷簋 Gui (food container) made for Hui
- 宜侯矢簋 Gui (food container) of Ze, Marquis of Yi
- 中山王方壶 Rectangular Hu (wine vessel) of the Prince of Zhongshan
- 杜伯盃 Xu (food container) inscribed with the name Du Bo
- 郑乙伯觶 Ling (wine container) inscribed with the name Zheng Yi Bo (count Yi of the Zheng State)
- 鲁大司徒铺 Pu (food container) inscribed with Lu Da Situ (Great Minister Rites of the Lu State)
- 陈侯午敦 Dui (food container) of Wu, Marquis of Chen
- 曾侯乙编钟 (参见 P9)
- 號季子白盘 Pan (water vessel) of Bai, younger brother of Guo
- 越王勾践剑 Jian (sword) of Gou Jian, Prince of Yue
- 秦始皇二十六年诏版 Bronze plate inscribed with an imperial

- edict of the 26th year of Qinshihuang's reign
- 商鞅量 Liang (measure) of the State of Qin introduced by its prime minister Shang Yang
- 武城相帮七年戈 Ge (dagger axe) of the seventh year of Wucheng Xiangbang
- 巴蜀符号矛 Mao (spearhead) with Bashu Emblem
- 元兴元年弩机 Nuji (crossbow trigger mechanism) of the first year of Yuan Xing
- 十字孔方缶 Rectangular You (wine container) with rectangular openings (or cross holes) on each side
- 饕餮龙鸟纹觥 Gong (wine vessel) decorated with Taotie mask, dragons and birds
- 三足兽纹甗 Yan (food steamer) with three legs decorated with animal masks
- 鸟纹爵 Jue (wine vessel) decorated with design of birds
- 四腿兽匝 Yi (water vessel) in the form of four legged animal
- 镶嵌纹壶 Hu (wine container) inlaid with scenes of feasting, fishing, hunting and fighting
- 嵌金银绿松石解 Zhi (wine vessel) inlaid with gold, silver and turquoise
- 铜镀金六十二字壶 Gilt-bronze Hu (wine container) with sixty-two character inscriptions giving date and place of manufacture and names of its makers
- 铜镀金博山炉 Gilt-bronze Boshan Lu (censer) in the form of Mountain of the Immortals
- 镂空蟠螭纹鼎 Ding (wine vessel) with interlaced-hydra design in openwork
- 水陆攻战纹鉴 Jian (basin) with land and water battle scenes
- 蟠龙饕餮纹罍 Lei (wine container) with coiled dragon and ogre-mask motif
- 三角援戈 Triangular-blade Ge (dagger-axe)
- 直(曲)内戈 Straight-(curved-) Tang dagger-axe
- 曲刃釜柄剑 Undulated-blade sword with trumpet grip
- 扁茎剑 Flat-grip sword
- 金鞘铜柄铁剑 Gold-sheath and bronze-gripiron sword
- 人面纹钺 Yue (axe) with human-mark motif

古代青铜器样式 (线图)
SHAPES OF ANCIENT BRONZES
(LINE DRAWING)



古代青铜器样式图 (一)

- 1) 鼎 2) 鼎 3) 鼎 4) 鬲 5) 方鼎 6) 献
7) 簋 8) 簋 9) 簋 10) 簋 11) 簋 12) 盥

Shapes of Ancient Bronzes I

- 1) ding 2) ding 3) ding 4) li 5) fang ding 6) yan
7) gui 8) gui 9) gui 10) gui 11) fu 12) xu

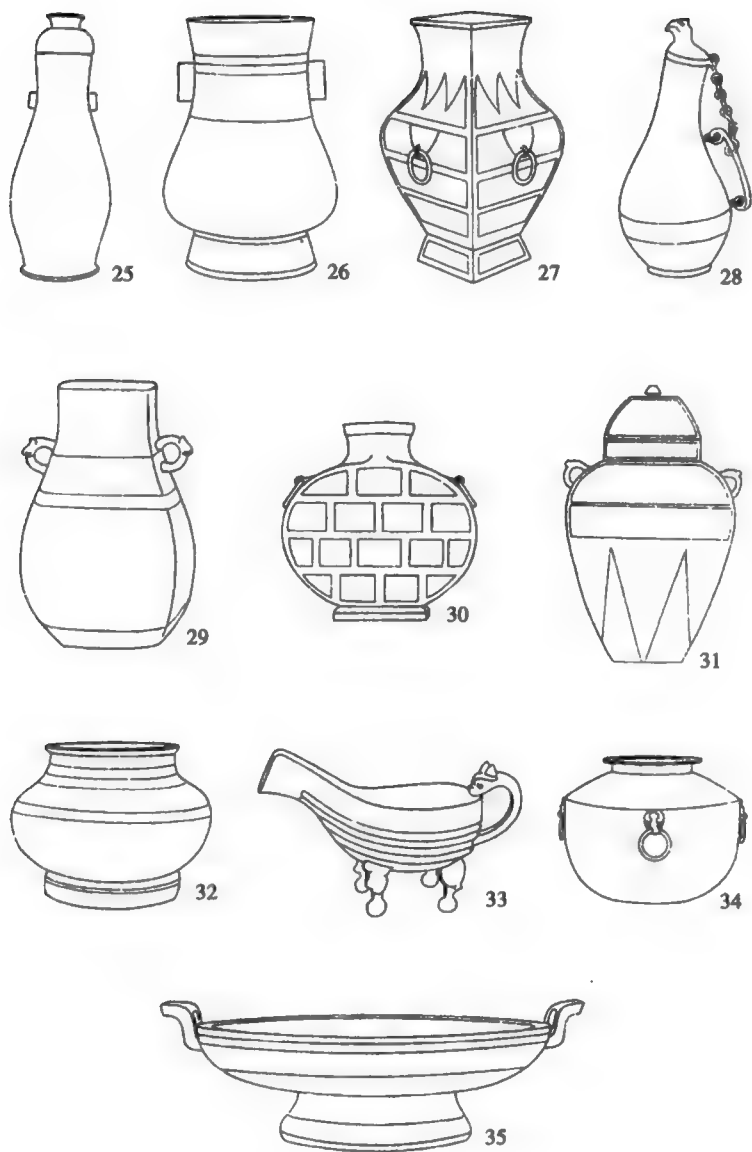


古代青铜器样式图 (二)

13) 爵 14) 豆 15) 角 16) 尊 17) 罍 18) 觚
19) 觶 20) 盃 21) 觴 22) 方彝 23) 卣 24) 觥

Shapes of Ancient Bronzes II

13) *jue* 14) *dou* 15) *jiao* 16) *zun* 17) *jia* 18) *gu*
19) *zhi* 20) *he* 21) *shang* 22) *fang yi* 23) *you* 24) *guang*

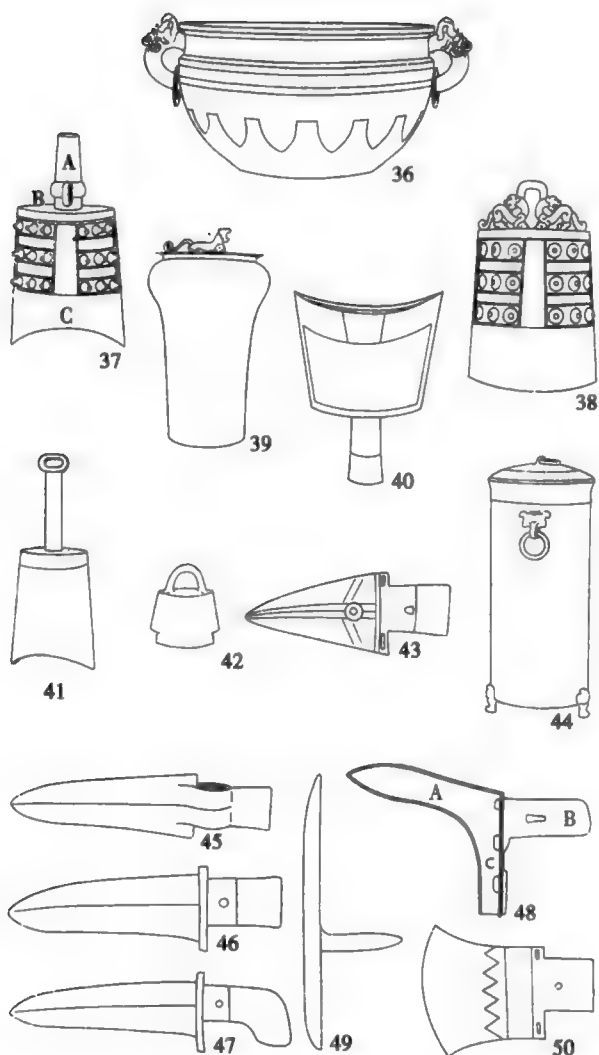


古代青铜器样式图 (三)

- 25) 壶 26) 壶 27) 壶 28) 壶 29) 瓶 30) 扁壶
31) 罍 32) 甗 33) 匜 34) 缶 35) 盘

Shapes of Ancient Bronzes III

- 25) hu 26) hu 27) hu 28) hu 29) ping 30) bian hu
31) lei 32) bu, pou 33) yi 34) fou 35) pan



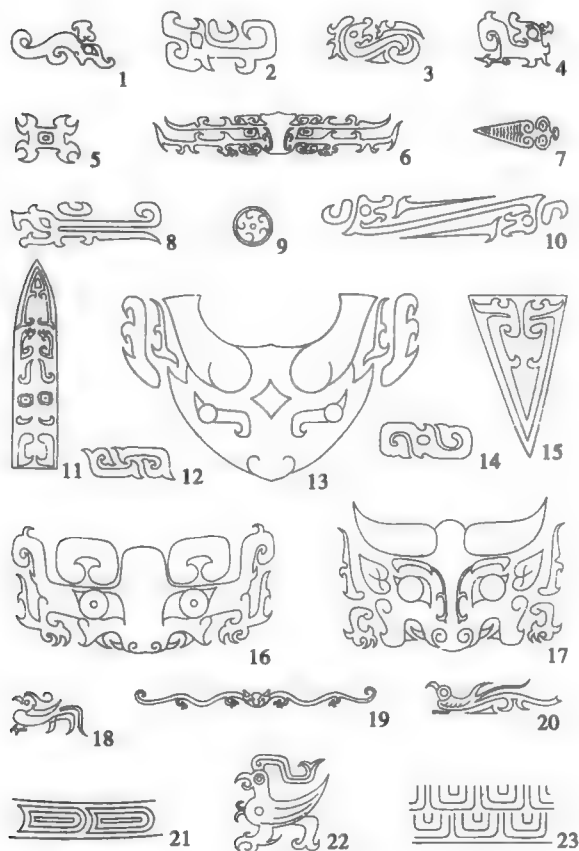
古代青铜器样式图 (四)

36) 监 37) 钟 37A) 甬 37B) 舞 37C) 鼓 38) 钟 39) 罍
40) 钲 41) 铎 42) 铃 43) 戈 44) 奩 45) 戈 46) 戈 47) 戈
48) 戈 48A) 援 48B) 内 48C) 胡 49) 戟 50) 戚

Shapes of Ancient Bronzes IV

36) *jian* 37) *zhong* 37A) *yong* 37B) *wu* 37C) *gu* 38) *zhong*
39) *chun* 40) *zheng* 41) *duo* 42) *ling* 43) *ge* 44) *lian*
45) *ge* 46) *ge* 47) *ge* 48) *ge* 48A) *yuan* 48B) *nei*
48C) *hu* 49) *ji* 50) *qi*

古代青铜器纹饰（线图） MOTIFS OF ANCIENT BRONZE DECORATION (LINE DRAWING)



古代青铜器纹饰图

- 1-4) 夔纹 5) 四瓣花纹 6) 饕餮纹 7) 蝉纹 8) 夔纹 9) 圆涡纹
10) 两头夔 11) 蕉叶纹 12) 窃曲纹 13) 饕餮纹 14) 窃曲纹
15) 垂叶纹 16、17) 饕餮纹 18) 鸟纹 19) 两尾龙 20) 鸟纹
21) 重环纹 22) 凤纹 23) 鳞纹

Motives of Ancient Bronze Decoration

- 1) kui wen 2) kui wen 3) kui wen 4) kui wen 5) si-ban hua wen
6) tao-tie wen 7) chan wen 8) kui wen 9) yuan-wo wen
10) liang-tou kui 11) jiao-ye wen 12) qie-qu wen 13) tao-tie wen
14) qie-qu wen 15) chui-ye wen 16) tao-tie wen 17) tao tie wen
18) niao wen 19) liang-wei long 20) niao wen 21) chong-huan wen
22) feng wen 23) lin wen

九 陶 瓷

CERAMICS

历代名窑

FAMOUS KILNS (YAO) THROUGH THE AGES

唐代 Tang Dynasty

- 越窑 Yue Yao. situated in Yuezhou (越州), the modern Shaoxing (绍兴), Zhejiang Province
- 余姚窑 Yuyao Yao. a site of Yue ware kilns in Yuyao (余姚), Zhejiang Province
- 邢窑 Xing Yao. located in what is now known as Xingtai (邢台), Hebei Province
- 邛窑 Qiong Yao. in Qionglai (邛崃), the modern Dayi (大邑), Sichuan Province
- 宜兴窑 Yixing Yao. in Yixing (宜兴), Jiangsu Province
- 婺州窑 Wuzhou Yao. in Jinhua (金华), Zhejiang Province
- 潮州窑 Chaozhou Yao. in Chaoan (潮安), Guangdong Province
- 郟县窑 Jiaxian Yao. in Jiaxian (郟县), Henan Province
- 大邑窑 Dayi Yao. in Dayi (大邑), Sichuan Province

宋代 Song Dynasty

- 定窑 Ding Yao. in Dingxian (定县), Hebei Province
- 钧窑 Jun Yao. in Juntai (钧台), the modern Yuxian (禹县), Henan Province
- 汝窑 Ru Yao. in Linru (临汝), Henan Province
- 龙泉窑 Longquan Yao. in Longquan (龙泉), Zhejiang Province
- 磁州窑 Cizhou Yao. in Cixian (磁县), Hebei Province

- 建窑** Jian Yao. in Jianyang (建阳), Fujian Province
- 吉州窑** Jizhou Yao. in Ji'an (吉安), Jiangxi Province
- 德化窑** Dehua Yao. in Dehua (德化), Fujian Province, famous since Ming Dynasty; blanc-de-chine ware (中国白器)
- 耀州窑** Yao Zhou Yao. in Tongchuan (铜川), Shaanxi Province
- 哥弟窑** Ge Di Yao. in Longquan (龙泉), Zhejiang Province, named after two Zhang brothers (章氏兄弟) who operated kilns at Longquan for the manufacture of porcelain. These factories were therefore called Ge Yao (the Elder Brother's Factory) and Di Yao (the Younger Brother's Factory)
- 官窑** Guan Yao. in Kaifeng (开封), Henan province (in Northern Song); in Hangzhou (杭州), Zhejiang Province (in Southern Song); The products of Imperial Kilns at various periods have been so-called.
- 东窑** Dong Yao. in modern Chenliuxian (陈留县), Henan Province, being situated to the east of the national capital, it was so named Dong Yao (East Kiln)
- 登封窑** Dengfeng Yao. in Dengfeng, Henan Province
- 丽水窑** Lishui Yao. in Lishuixian, Zhejiang Province
- 肖县窑** Xiaoxian Yao. established at Baitu Zhen (白土镇), in modern Xiaoxian, Jiangsu Province
- 当阳峪窑** Dangyangyu Yao. in Xiuwu (修武), Henan Province; It was a civilian kiln (民窑) in northern China.
- 郊坛下窑** Jiaotianxia Yao. means near to Altar of Heaven, at Wuguishan (乌龟山) near Beijing

元代 Yuan Dynasty

- 枢府窑** Shufu Yao. at Jingdezhen, Jiangxi province; The porcelain made there was ordered for official use.
- 鹤壁窑** Hebi Yao. a northern civilian kiln in Hebi, Henan Province

明代 Ming Dynasty

- 处州窑** Chuzhou Yao. so named after a town in Zhejiang Pro-

vince; it was a source of celadon (青瓷) in this dynasty.

石湾窑 Shiwan Yao. in Foshan (佛山), Guangdong Province

清代 Qing Dynasty

郎窑 Lang Yao. at Jingdezhen, Jiangxi Province

年窑 Nian Yao. at Jingdezhen, Jiangxi Province

醴陵窑 Liling Yao. in Liling, Hunan Province

唐山窑 Tangshan Yao. at Tangshan, Hebei Province

广窑 Guang Yao. at Shiwan (石湾), Guangdong Province

景德镇窑 Jingdezhen Yao. at Jingdezhen, Jiangxi Province,
beginning from Chen of the Southern Dynasties up to now

陶瓷术语

CERAMIC TERMS

陶瓷学 ceramography

陶瓷业 ceramic industry

陶瓷工艺 ceramic technology

陶瓷工人 potter

陶工 potter's craft

陶土 potter's clay; pottery clay; potter's earth

赤陶 (赤土) terracotta

泥水 the paste in water state

色泥 colored paste

瓷土 white clay

高岭土 Kaolin; infusible clay

紫金土 reddish purple clay; "Zijin" clay

白墩子 white briquette; "Petuntse"

素坯 biscuit

陶车 potter's wheel

按泥 (拉坯) to mold, or throw clay on the wheel

轮制 wheel-made

圆器 round vessel, i. e. vessel shaped by throwing on the wheel

琢器 carved vessel, i. e. vessel of angular and of other shapes
not produced by throwing on the wheel, but as if worked

	by a lapidary
锥工	awl-work, incising with a pointed instrument
雕鏤	carved applique work
鏤雕	engraving
鏤空	(参见 P118)
胎质 (骨)	paste, or body of pottery
铁骨	iron body; porcelain body of dark color
砂胎	sandy body
脱胎	insubstantial; "bodiless"; egg-shell porcelain
绞胎	twisted colored body
滑泥	slip
涂泥浆	slip decoration
蘸釉	glazing by immersion
堆釉	massed glaze
吹釉	glazing by sufflation; soufflé glaze
绞釉	twisted glaze
浇釉	glazing by pouring
通体施釉	all-glazed
窑	kiln (窑址); ware (产品)
官窑	official kiln
民窑	civilian kiln
圆顶窑	dome kiln
露天窑	field kiln
蛋形窑	egg-shaped kiln
隧道窑	tunnel kiln
反射窑	inverse kiln
隔焰窑	muffle kiln
侧烧窑	side-fired kiln
回转窑	rotary kiln
素烧窑	biscuit kiln
挡火墙	flash wall
烧箱	saggar
窑门	kiln gate
窑眼	kiln eye
装窑	kiln setting
倒窑	wasters; pottery spoiled in the kiln; kiln collapse

窑具 kiln furniture (items of refractory material (耐火材料) to support ware in the kiln during firing)
 铸模 (范) mold
 模型 model
 浇注 pouring
 分离器 (层) separator (a coating applied to permit separation of mold and model)
 烘烧 to bake
 素烧 unglazed (biscuit) firing
 高 (中、低) 烧 high (medium, lower)-fired; temperature (grand feu, demigrand feu)
 仰烧 the technique of firing bowls one on top of another (with rings placed as pads inside each bowl)
 覆烧 the firing technique of putting the mouth rim of a bowl to that of another; upside-down firing
 火候 mode of fire; maturing temperature
 持久焰 lasting flame; permanent flame
 氧化焰 oxidizing flame
 还原焰 reducing flame
 二次氧化 re-oxidation
 显气孔率 pore-showing rate
 吸水率 water absorption rate
 一次烧器 once-fired ware
 上釉烧法 encaustic
 烧成温度 sintered temperature
 烧成时间 firing time
 窑款 kiln mark
 年款 reign mark
 印款 seal mark
 缺口 chip
 磨痕 sign of abrasion; frayed traces
 支钉痕 spur-marks
 补丁 (片) patch
 瑕疵 blemish; flaw
 露胎 exposed body
 剥釉 peeling

釉泡	bubble
汽泡	air bubble
沙眼	pores; pitting
棕眼	palm eyes
渗漏	leak out
陶瓷器	ceramics
陶器	pottery; earthenware
炆器	stone ware
泥质黑陶	black pottery made of fine clay
夹砂灰陶	gray pottery mixed with sand
细(粗)砂陶	fine (coarse) sandy clay ware
紫砂	purple stoneware; "buccaro" ware; purple sandy ware; redware; "zisha"
赤陶	terracotta
釉陶	glazed pottery; glazed stoneware
彩陶	painted pottery; polychrome pottery
彩釉陶	glaze-colored pottery
铅釉陶	plumbic-glazed pottery
艺术陶	art pottery
印纹陶	impressed pottery
薄胎陶	egg-shell pottery
陶俑	pottery figure; terracotta figure
兵马俑	terracotta warriors and horses
瓷器	porcelain; china
原始瓷器	proto-porcelain
青瓷	celadon; green porcelain
荞麦青瓷	buck wheat celadon
白瓷	white porcelain; blanc de chine
黑瓷	black porcelain
青花瓷	blue-and-white porcelain
青白瓷	bluish-white porcelain; celadon-white porcelain
影青瓷	shadow blue porcelain
秘色瓷	olive green porcelain
彩瓷	decorated (painted) porcelain
花釉瓷	speckle-glazed porcelain; fancy-glazed porcelain
薄胎瓷	egg-shell porcelain

仿古瓷 imitation porcelain
 耐热瓷 refractory porcelain
 雕瓷 sculptured porcelain
 细(粗)瓷 fine (rough) porcelain
 半陶半瓷 semi-porcelain
 白底青花瓷 Nankeen, or Nankin
 瓷器裂纹 crackle (裂隙为 crack)
 百圾碎 hundred-gold crackle
 高温陶瓷 high temperature ceramics
 陶瓷碎片 fragment; shard or sherd
 刻花装饰 incised floral decoration
 朴素无纹 plain; without decoration
 胎质细密 close texture
 胎质坚薄 thinly potted, but strong
 质细而坚 fine and compact
 质粗而松 coarser and looser
 凹面 concave
 凸面 convex
 透明的 transparent
 不透明的 opaque
 半透明的 translucent
 器物各部 parts of vessels
 腹(肚) belly; the swelling body of a jar or vase
 颈(脖子) neck
 盖 cover (用于杯、碗、盒、罐等); lid (用于壶); top (用于瓶)
 钮(顶、捏手) knob (as of a cover)
 柄(把柄) handle; lug (as of a ewer or tea pot)
 耳 ears; handles (attached to the shoulder or rim of a vessel)
 贯耳 handles for threading; loops on the shoulders of a vessel through which tapes could be passed for carrying; pierced handles
 戟耳 halberd-shaped handles
 冲耳 loop handles rising from the rim of a vessel
 壶嘴(口) beak; spout; lip
 碗(盘、杯)口 rim

碗（盘、杯）边 brim
 瓶口 mouth
 足 foot; foot-rim
 乳足 mammillated feet
 底 bottom
 款足（参见 P120）
 圈足（参见 P120）
 侈（撇）口 flared-mouth; everted-mouth; spreading mouth
 敛口（参见 P119）
 直口 upright mouth; straight mouth
 锥足 conical leg
 扁足 flattened foot
 卧足 concave foot
 器心 well
 内壁 inside wall
 外壁 body; exterior
 器物尺寸 sizes of vessels
 长 length
 通长（带嘴壶） length with spout and handle
 全长 full length
 口边长 length of mouth brim
 足（底）边长 length of foot (bottom) brim
 口径长 length of the surface
 足径长 length of the bottom
 宽 width
 高 height
 通高（带盖器） height with lid
 通耳高（带提梁） height with handle
 底径 diameter of bottom
 底盘口径 mouth diameter of tray
 口径（圆器） diameter of mouth
 面径（圆器） diameter of top (face)
 （圆）足径 diameter of base (foot)
 足距 spacing of feet
 腹围（圆器） circumference of belly; girth
 上围（圆器） upper bulb

- 下围（圆器） lower bulb
- 流长（壶） length of spout
- 口纵（方器） length of mouth
- 口横（方器） width of mouth
- 口距（多口瓶） spacing of mouths
- 口缘镶铜边 the mouth-rim bound with a copper band
- 上下饰边线 with double lines above and below
- 器心粘垫托 attached to the well are “clay-cushions”
- 外壁加双圈 to enclose with double rings
- 仿古创新 to introduce some new features while preserving the good old traits
- 背标（标记） back stamp (maker's name or trademark as it appears on the back or underside of a ware)

器物形状

SHAPES OF VESSELS

- 腹部上敛下丰 pear-shaped body
- 腹部上丰下敛 swelling body tapering downwards
- 腹部扁圆 flattened globular body
- 腹部丰硕 swelling belly (body)
- 周壁上丰下削 deep side greatly tapering downwards
- 周壁较深 rather deep sides
- 颈部细长 slender long neck
- 身如直筒 straight cylindrical body
- 中心微凹 slightly concave at the center
- 敛口窄边 contracting mouth with narrow lip
- 侈（撇）口卷边 spreading mouth with everted rim
- 椭圆圈足 low elliptical ring-foot
- 高（矮）圈足 splayed (low) ring-foot
- 双圈足 double foot-ring
- 长颈短流 tall neck and short spout
- 兽首衔环 animal head holding a large pendant ring
- 翻唇 everted rim
- 凸缘 flange
- 凹棱 indented edges

圆棱 rounded edges
 曲鑒 (冲耳) loop handles rising from the rim of a vessel
 弓耳 bow-shaped handle
 衔环兽面耳 beast-head ears holding a loose ring
 凤耳 phoenix-shaped handle
 贯耳 with pierced handles
 螭耳 dragon-mask handles
 绳耳 twisted-rope-shaped handles
 龙首耳 handles in the shape of a dragon head; dragon-head handles
 折沿 foliated edge
 板沿 folded brim
 平底 flat base (bottom)
 浅凹底 slightly recessed base
 委角 flattened angles
 云头足 cloud-scroll feet
 扁方形 depressed tetragonal shape
 敛圆口 contracting round mouth
 碟子 small circular dish
 格碟 dish with compartments
 盘子 plate; large circular dish
 杯盘 plate with cups
 杯 (盞) 托 cup saucer; cup with saucer
 洗子 washer (deeper than a dish and larger than a bowl, and is used only for washing)
 笔洗 brush washer
 鼓式洗 drum-shaped bowl (washer)
 糖锣洗 gong-shaped bowl (washer)
 蔗段洗 cut sugar-can bowl (washer)
 竹节洗 bamboo-joint bowl (washer)
 三联洗 triple washer
 水丞 water container
 二联盒 twin-box
 盖盒 covered box
 碗 bowl
 钵 (参见 P342)

- 宫碗 palace bowl; high-sided bowl with small foot
 撇口碗 cymbal bowl; flared-mouth bowl
 葵瓣碗 mallow-petal bowl; bowl with lip indented like mallow petals
 菱花碗 water-chestnut-flower bowl
 莲花碗 lotus-flower-shaped bowl
 高足碗 high-footed bowl
 鸡心碗 heart-shaped bowl
 卧足碗 bowl with concave foot
 折腰碗 waisted bowl; belly-bent bowl
 合碗 bowl with fitted cover
 盖碗 covered bowl
 六瓣碗 six-lobed bowl
 渣斗式 refuse-vessel shape
 痰盂式 spittoon shape
 秋海棠式 begonia-flower shape
 莲瓣式 lotus-petal shape
 仰钟式 shape of a inverted bell
 杯 (瓯、钟) cups used for serving tea
 盏 small cup used for drinking
 高足杯 stem cup
 压手杯 press-hand cup
 把杯 handle cup
 套杯 overlapping cups; a set of cups, one bigger than and encloses another; a nest of cups
 柳斗杯 cup in the shape of a plaited willow basket
 水仙盆 narcissus pot; bulb pot
 花盆 flower pot
 缸、甕 urn, a large bowl (usually with high sides and slightly contracting mouth)
 鱼缸 fish bowl (for live gold fish)
 瓶 vase or bottle (generally applied to vessels with narrow necks and swelling bodies)
 胆瓶 (锥把瓶) gall-bladder vase; vase with cylindrical neck swelling to a bulbous body; awl-handle vase; gall-shaped vase

- 观音瓶 Guan Yin vase (so named from the Sanskrit amṛta-kalasa carried by Goddess of Mercy)
- 柱瓶 (罐) baluster vase (jug); it has a tall shape with a fullness about the middle.
- 扁瓶 flat vase
- 葫芦瓶 double-gourd vase; vase in the shape of a gourd
- 梅瓶 prunus vase; vase with wide shoulder and contracted neck suitable for displaying a single branch of prunus blossom
- 纸槌瓶 vase in paper-beater shape; paper-mallet vase; vase in the shape of a tool used in the manufacture of paper money
- 盘口瓶 vase with dish-shaped mouth
- 荸荠瓶 vase in the shape of a water-chestnut
- 蒜头瓶 garlic-head vase; a bottle with a bulbous mouth, slender neck and swelling body
- 天球瓶 vault-of-Heaven vase; globular vase with cylindrical neck; vase in the shape of celestial sphere
- 转心瓶 vase with reticulated exterior and independently revolving interior
- 玉壶春瓶 pear-shaped vase with flaring lip (Yu Hu Chun, literally "Spring in a Jade Jar")
- 镂空套瓶 vase enclosed in reticulated envelope, the whole fired in one piece
- 双连瓶 twin (double) vase; Siamese twins
- 双耳瓶 amphora; vase with two ears
- 贯耳瓶 vase with pierced handles
- 穿带瓶 vase with two tape holes
- 灯笼尊 lantern-shaped vase; lantern jar
- 莱菔尊 turnip-shaped vase
- 马蹄尊 horse-hoof-shaped vase
- 凤尾尊 phoenix-tail-shaped vase
- 长颈瓶 flask; long-necked vase
- 盘口鹅颈瓶 vase with dish-shaped mouth and goose-neck
- 大吉瓶 "great luck" vase
- 三孔瓶 vase with "three spouts"
- 六管瓶 vase with six tubes; six-tubed vase

- 花觚 beaker; beaker-shaped vase
- 花插 flower receptacle
- 方瓶 square vase
- 壁瓶 wall vase
- 壶瓶 tall ewer with spout
- 净瓶 white vase; Holy-water vase
- 魂瓶 an ancient burial object mostly celadon in the shape of a jar
- 壶 pot; ewer; flask
- 茶(酒)壶 tea (wine) pot
- 执壶 vase or ewer with handle at the side
- 提梁壶 pot with over-top handle; swing-handled pot; vessel to be held and lifted by a handle passing over the cover; loop-handled teapot
- 唾壶 spittoon
- 三登方壶 vase with a three-terraced trapezoid body
- 鸡首壶 chicken-spout ewer
- 鸡冠壶 cockscomb pot
- 鹦鹉壶 parrot-head pot (ewer)
- 凤首壶 phoenix-head pot
- 僧帽壶 monk's cap jug
- 三系把壶 handled pot with three loops for suspension
- 贯耳穿带壶 pot with piercing handles and tape holes
- 马蹬壶 stirrup-shaped pot
- 卤壶 sauce-pot
- 扁壶 flask; flattened pot; pilgrim bottle
- 鼻烟壶 snuff bottle
- 温壶 warming vessel; vessel for warming wine in hot water
- 罐(甕、罌) jar (commonly applied to substantial vessels more-or-less contracted towards the neck)
- 柳斗罐 jar with impressed willow twig design
- 乳丁罐 jar with nipple decoration
- 鱼篓罐 jar in the shape of a fishing basket
- 谷仓罐 model of granary
- 缸 urn (wide mouth vessel)
- 鸟食罐 container for bird's food; bird feeder
- 四系罐 jar with four rings

- 水注 water dropper
 水浇 flower sprinkler
 渣斗 refuse-vessel
 镂空花薰 palace (flower) perfumer with open-work
 花卉漏斗 funnel with floral decorations
 香铲 incense-spade
 香薰 (香炉) incense-burner; vessel for burning perfume
 (perfumer)
 坐墩 barrel-shaped garden seat
 瓷枕 porcelain pillow
 腰圆枕 oval pillow
 银锭枕 ingot-shaped pillow
 盒 small box with fitted cover often circular in shape
 银锭式盒 box in the shape of a silver ingot
 攒盘 plate set; sundry dish
 攒盒 (参见 P240)
 二人共饮餐具 tite-à-tête set (tea, coffee or chocolate service
 for two persons)
 龙骨戟 segmented flanges (There are many vessels which have
 their bodies divided into fields or panels by vertical keel-
 like flanges, either running from top to bottom along the
 whole vessel, or only over one of its horizontal sections.)
 直 (横) 出戟 vertical (horizontal) flanges

器物釉色

GLAZES AND COLORS OF VESSELS

- 深 deep (of colors)
 浅 pale, light (of colors)
 硬 strong (of colors); hard (of substances)
 软 soft (of colors and substances)
 粉 powder (soft or light of colors)
 淡 pale or insipid (of colors)
 大 great (applied to colors in the sense of dark, rich, full)
 白 white (of colors)
 牙白 ivory white

月白 moon-white; light grayish-blue; "clair-de-lune"
 甜白 sweet white
 乳白 creamy white; milky white
 莹白 pure white; transparent glaze
 青 glaucous
 绿 green
 蓝 blue
 秘色 private color; secret color; olive-green color
 峰翠 verdure of mountain peaks
 葱青 (绿) onion green; green of onion sprouts
 瓜皮绿 cucumber green
 苹果绿 apple green
 翠青 (绿) blue-green; bright green; kingfisher blue
 铜绿 copper green
 窑变绿 green flambé
 孔雀绿 peacock green; "turquoise blue"
 鳝鱼青 eel green; dark bluish-green
 雨过天晴 blue of the sky after rain
 天青 sky blue (lighter and with a green tinge)
 天兰 sky blue (with no tinge of green)
 粉青 (绿) light greenish blue; powder blue (green)
 浅青 lighter bluish gray
 灰青 darker bluish gray (the color of wood ash)
 豆青 light bluish green (the color of dried peas)
 霁青 sky-clearing blue; "mazarine blue"; dark rich blue
 影青 shadowy blue; misty blue
 回回青 Mohammedan blue; fine cobalt blue; "mid-night blue"
 苏泥 Sumani (Sumatra) blue
 勃青 Bo-Qing (Penang blue)
 陂塘 (乐平) 青 Po-Tang blue
 卵青 egg blue
 蟹青 crab green
 吹青 sprayed blue; powdered blue; souffle blue; blown blue;
 (speckled blue ground)
 冬 (东) 青 dong green; pale green; holly green
 梅子青 plum green

青花 blue-and-white (painting in cobalt on a white ground)
 老青花 old blue-and-white (Japanese "Ko-sometsuke")
 青白 greenish white; bluish white
 月光蓝 lavender-blue
 砧青 Kinuta (Japanese word)
 法蓝 (绿、紫) "fahua" blue (green, purple)
 洒蓝 snow-flake blue
 祭蓝 sacrificial blue
 云蓝 cloud blue
 青金蓝 lazurite blue
 紫罗兰 violet blue
 釉里 (下) 蓝 underglaze blue
 青花加紫 blue-and-white with purple
 紫 brown; red-brown; mahogany; violet; purple
 紫金 brown bronze; ruddy brown; "café-au-lait"
 葡萄紫 grape-purple
 玫瑰紫 rose-purple
 紫金釉 reddish purple
 丁香紫 lilac color (in Jun ware)
 茄皮紫 aubergine
 窑变浅紫 flambé mauve
 米色 light brown color of roasted rice; millet-colored; beige;
 straw-colored; yellowish brown
 黄 yellow
 娇黄 bright yellow; the fine, rich yellow of the Ming and Kangxi
 bowls and dishes
 鳝鱼黄 eel yellow; greenish yellow
 蔗黄 cane yellow
 蛋黄 egg yellow
 青黄 greenish yellow
 褐 brown
 黄褐 yellowish brown
 御黄 imperial yellow
 红 red
 祭红 sacrificial red; ritual color
 积红 "massed red"

霁红 “sky-clearing red”
 鲜红 fresh red; bright red; blood red
 宝石红 (牛血红) ruby red; precious stone red; ox blood red;
 “sang-de-boeuf”
 豇豆红 kidney-bean red
 辣椒红 chili red
 桃红 peach blossom red
 枣儿红 jujube red; date red
 海棠红 begonia red
 礬(铁)红 red from iron-oxide; iron-red; “rouge-de-fer”
 铜红 copper-red
 抹红 spread red
 胭脂红 rouge red; crimson-pink
 珊瑚红 coral-red
 釉里(下)红 underglaze red; red within the glaze
 粉红 soft red; pink
 茶叶末 tea dust
 铁锈 iron rust
 酱釉 dark reddish brown
 乌金 black bronze; ancient mirror black (“Black gold” is not
 admissible.)
 纹 marks
 鱼子纹 fish-roe mark
 蟹爪纹 crab-claw mark
 菟丝纹 dodder mark (a feature of Jun ware)
 蚯蚓纹 earthworm mark (one of the features of Jun ware)
 鸡皮纹 chicken flesh
 桔皮纹 orange-peel effect
 堆脂 massed fat or lard
 泪痕 tear stains (resembling tears on the outer surface of Ding ware)
 绶纹 silk mark; fortuitous crazing of the glaze
 斑纹 streaks; mottles
 兔毫斑 hare's-fur streaks (as on Jian ware)
 鹧鸪斑 partridge mottles (as on Jian ware)
 玳瑁斑 tortoise-shell marking
 油滴斑 silvery spots; oil spots

- 红斑 red splashes
 紫斑 purple mottles
 铁斑 iron brown spots
 黄斑 yellow mottles; "egg and spinach glaze"
 滴珠 globules of glaze
 窑变 furnace transmutation; flambe glaze; rouge flambe (Ware glaze is composed of relatively high concentrations of copper, which when fired produces flambe effects ranging from blue to red and deep purple. This is called flambe glaze.)
 纹 (开) 片 crackle in a ceramic glaze
 碎纹 crackle of more-or-less close mesh
 冰裂纹 broken ice crackle; wide-mesh crackle
 鳝血纹 eel's blood crackle
 彩 colors in combination, variegated; enamel colors
 三彩 decoration in three colors
 唐三彩 Tang tricolor (Tang pottery in green, yellow and cream)
 釉下彩 underglaze enamels (in green, yellow and aubergine)
 五彩 polychrome; five-colored (porcelains with decoration in green, yellow, aubergine, red and blue)
 斗彩 contending colors; strongly contrasting colors (In this decoration a bright red enamel is contrasted with enamels in softer colors and a soft underglaze blue.)
 粉彩 (软彩) pink family; "famille rose" (French name for a style of imported Chinese porcelain. The predominant color of the design or ground color is pink.); soft color
 绿彩 (硬彩) green family; "famille verte" (French name for a style of imported Chinese porcelain. The predominant color of the design or ground color is green.); strong color
 墨彩 (黑彩) grisaille family; "famille noire" (French name for a style of imported Kangxi's porcelain; The predominant color of the design or ground color is black.); black color
 黄彩 Yellow family; "famille jaune" (French name for a style of imported Kangxi's porcelain; The predominant color of the design or ground color is yellow.)

- 珐琅彩 cloisonne enamel
 钴兰彩 painted in cobalt blue
 织金彩 woven gold color
 胭脂彩 "rouge ware"
 广彩 Guang color; Guangdong-decorated export ware
 广蓝 Canton blue (violet blue obtained by the combination of barium carbonate 硝酸钾钡 with cobalt oxide 氧化钴)
 加彩 clobbering; added color
 点彩 with colored splashes; stippling decoration
 釉上(下)彩 overglaze (underglaze) enamel
 青釉绿(褐)彩 celadon glaze with green (brown) color
 浅黄三彩 tricolor with tender yellow
 黄釉褐(绿)彩 yellow glaze and brownish green color
 素三彩 on-biscuit enamels; painted on a plain porcelain body in three colors; plain tricolor
 天目釉 "Tennoku" (Japanese) glaze
 淡清釉 "café au lait" glaze
 白地墨花 "black on white" ware
 紫口铁足 "purple mouth and iron foot"
 洁白如玉 pure white like jade
 细白如粉 fine and white like powder
 莹白腴润 unctuous and lustrous
 白中透灰 white with a tinge of gray
 白釉微黄 white glaze with a tinge of light yellow
 天青窑变灰黄 glazed in sky blue-green with flembeé yellowish-grey
 青色微含浅粉 blue faintly tinged with light pink
 浅黄细纹密布 to net on the surface with fine yellowish crackles
 足底外露白胎 The bottom of the foot reveals white biscuit.
 粉青微呈淡碧 The light greenish-blue glaze is slightly tinged with light green
 釉色青中泛黄 The glaze looks dark green tinted with yellow
 青花蓝中泛紫 The blue and white color smacks of purple.

器物纹饰

DECORATIONS OF VESSELS

- 花饰 floral decoration; flowers
- 印花 stamped (or impressed) decoration
- 锥花 (刻花) incised decoration (drawn in the paste with a pointed instrument)
- 雕花 (划花) decoration carved in the paste; underglaze relief decoration
- 刻划花 incised and carved design
- 画花 (彩花) painted decoration
- 堆花 embossed decoration; "pâte-sur-pâte" (ornament luted in to the body and carved in relief)
- 暗花 veiled decoration; hidden decoration; secret decoration (decoration lightly incised in porcelain paste)
- 明珐花 Ming cloisonne-style decoration
- 透花 transparent design; rice grains (grains-de-riz)
- 贴花 applied floral design
- 剔花 cut decoration
- 剪纸贴花 applied paper-cut design
- 露胎贴花 applique design with exposed body
- 雕填 designs carved in the paste and filled in with colored glazes
- 描金 (参见 P245)
- 抹金 to cover with gold; gold applied to the whole of the glazed surface
- 珍珠地 over a pearl-pattern ground
- 白地黑花 floral design over a white ground
- 锦地 brocade ground
- 开光 reserved panels
- 梅花 prunus blossom
- 莲花 lotus flower
- 莲蓬 lotus seed-pod
- 钩莲纹 delineated lotus design
- 番莲 Indian lotus
- 牡丹 tree-peony
- 菊花 chrysanthemum
- 兰花 orchid
- 月桂 laurel
- 丁香 clove

- 水仙花 narcissus
- 海棠花 cydonia
- 秋葵 hibiscus
- 玉兰 magnolia
- 牵牛花 petunia; morning glory
- 玫瑰 rose
- 山茶花 wild camellia
- 艾叶纹 artemisia leaf design
- 藤萝 wistaria
- 灵芝 Ling Zhi (an herb of immortality)
- 百花 hundred flowers ("mille flours")
- 四季花 flowers of the four seasons (usually prunus, peony, lotus and chrysanthemum)
- 菱花 water chestnuts
- 转花 a band of floral arabesques
- 缠枝花 interlocking flower
- 八瓣花 eight-petal flower
- 花果朵 clusters of flowers or fruits
- 缠枝 winding branches; arabesques
- 折枝 plucked branches; disconnected sprays of flowers or fruit
- 过枝 overextended branches
- 蔓草纹 entwining vines
- 碧桃花 double-flowering peach blossom
- 佛手 "Buddha's hand"; the finger citrus
- 三多 the Three Abundances (a decoration comprising three clusters of fruit — the finger-citrus, peach and pomegranate)
- 三友 the Three Friends (a name given to decoration of pine, bamboo and prunus)
- 四方 the Four Quadrants; the White Tiger (west), the Dragon (east), the Phoenix (south) and the Tortoise (north)
- 四艺 the Four Elegant Accomplishments; music (Zither), checkers (checker-board and container for the pieces), calligraphy (two books) and painting (two picture scrolls)
- 四灵 the Four Intelligent Creatures (unicorn, phoenix, turtle

and dragon)

- 五蝠 Five Bats (meaning five blessings — longevity, ease, wealth, honor and joy)
- 五岳 the Five Peaks (meaning the five sacred mountains of China, i. e. Taishan in Shandong Province; Huashan in Shaanxi Province; Hengshan in Hunan Province; Hengshan in Shanxi Province; and Songshan in Henan Province)
- 八卦 the Eight Divinatory Trigrams (Each consists of a combination of three parallel lines, either complete or broken medially.)
- 阴阳 Yin-Yang, the symbol of the dualistic cosmogony of the Chinese. It consists of a circle divided into two equal halves by an S-shaped line passing through the center. One half of the circle is colored dark (Yin), the other light (Yang). The latter relates to the male, Heaven, the Sun and light, and the former to the female, Earth, the Moon and darkness.
- 八宝 the Eight Emblems, or Treasures (consist of a pearl, a coin, a rhomboid device of doubtful significance, a mirror, a sonorous stone, two books, two rhinoceros horns and an artemisia leaf)
- 八吉祥 the Eight Buddhist Emblems of good augury (the wheel of the law, the conchshell, the umbrella, the canopy, the lotus, the jar, a pair of fish and the mystic endless knot)
- 八音 the Eight Musical Instruments: Qing (sonorous stone 磬), Zhong (bell 钟), Qin (Zither 琴), Di (flute 笛), Zhu (wooden instrument 柷) Sheng (the mouth-organ 笙), Gu (drum 鼓) and Xun (a kind of ocarina 埙)
- 穆王八马 the Eight Steeds of King Mu
- 八仙 the Eight Immortals
- 百寿 the Hundred Shou (the hundred different forms of the Chinese character for longevity)
- 鸿宝 Taoist emblems for immortality
- 法宝 Buddhist emblems (including charms incorporating figures

- of Buddhas, etc.)
- 百古 the Hundred Antiques of ancient ritual vessels, insignia of rank, etc.
- 梵文 Sanskrit or Pali script
- 真言字 texts from the sutras in Sanskrit
- 鸟兽纹 (参见 P129)
- 鸡 chickens
- 野鸡 (雉鸡) pheasant
- 仙鹤 crane
- 孔雀 peacock
- 凤凰 phoenix
- 穿花凤 phoenixes flying among flowers
- 凫雁 wild ducks and geese
- 鸳鸯 mandarin duck
- 鹦鹉 parrot
- 黄鹂 oriole
- 鹌鹑 quail
- 喜鹊 magpie
- 鸚鵡 mynah
- 燕子 swallow
- 麻雀 sparrows
- 竹雀 sparrows among bamboo
- 龙 (参见 P129)
- 云龙 dragon among clouds
- 海水龙 dragon among waves
- 控珠龙 dragons grasping pearls
- 赶珠龙 dragons in pursuit of pearls; pearl-pursuing dragon
- 蟠龙纹 design of coiled dragons
- 狮子 (参见 P30)
- 狮子滚绣球 lions sporting with ornamental balls
- 麒麟 the unicorn; a fabulous animal of good omen
- 百鹿 the Hundred Deer
- 云蝠 bats among clouds
- 蝴蝶 butterfly
- 螳螂 mantis
- 蛤蟆 toad

蟾蜍 a three-legged toad
 山水人物 scenery and figures
 美人图 beauties; graceful ladies
 婴戏图 children at play; playing boys
 耕织图 design of farm work and weaving
 故事图 scenes from novels, romances and plays
 仙女跨凤 Nymphs riding on phoenixes
 吹箫引凤 to play flageolet to lure phoenix
 丹凤朝阳 phoenix facing the Sun
 天禄流云 deer among moving clouds
 边 a border
 云边 cloud-scroll borders
 海水江牙 crested waves, as at the base of a decoration
 法花 within raised border
 雷纹 (参见 P244)
 珠纹 (团花) medallions
 篮纹 basket pattern
 篦纹 comb pattern
 花束纹 posy design
 几何纹 geometric design
 忍冬纹 acanthus design
 宝相纹 (参见 P223)
 垂叶纹 leaf-shaped lappet
 蕉叶纹 plantain leaf design
 莲瓣纹 lotus-petal design
 缠枝花 (参见 P159)
 花蝶纹 (参见 P242)
 蔓草凤草纹 entwining vines and phoenix design
 鱼藻纹 fish and water-weed design
 菱形纹 rhomboid forms
 方格纹 trellis pattern; check design
 格子纹 lattice pattern
 方胜纹 (参见 P259)
 乳丁纹 (参见 P129)
 人字纹 zigzag pattern
 万字纹 swastika pattern

- 涡纹 whorl design
 涛（浪花）纹 wave pattern
 人面纹 human-mask design
 钱纹 cask pattern (in the shape of a round coin with a square hole in the center)
 绳纹 rope pattern; cord (or string) impressions
 绲纹 twisted cord design
 斜条（线）纹 oblique strip (slanted-line) design
 直纹 perpendicular pattern
 布纹 textile impression
 回纹（参见 P129）
 弦纹（参见 P129）
 团花纹 medallion; posy design
 柳斗纹 willow twig design
 条纹 stripe decoration
 席纹 mat-impression
 锦纹 brocade design
 网纹（参见 P243）
 鼓丁 drum-nail pattern
 福寿双全 both fortune and longevity
 七弦纹 design of seven bow-strings in relief
 凸雕 decoration in relief

陶瓷器物选

SELECTED POTTERY AND PORCELAIN

- 红陶三足鬲 Red pottery Gui (tripod-pitcher)
 红陶布纹碗 Red pottery bowl with textile impressions
 白陶双系壶 White pottery Hu (jar) with two loops at neck
 黑陶细颈镂空高足杯 Black pottery Bei (cup) with thin neck and tall openwork stem
 印纹硬陶罐 Stained hard-pottery Guan (jar)
 斜方格纹彩陶罐 Painted pottery Guan (jar) with rhomboid forms
 硬釉原始青瓷尊 Hard-glazed protoceladon Zun (cup)
 青釉刻划花纹杯 Celadon Bei (cup) with incised floral design

- 青瓷凤首壶 Celadon Hu (pot) with phoenix-head spout
- 青瓷莲花尊 Celadon Zun (cup) with lotus pattern
- 三彩釉陶灯台 Dengtai (candlestick), three-color glazed pottery
- 彩绘陶壶 Pottery Hu (pot) with painted design
- 彩绘乐舞杂技陶俑 (参见 P9)
- 菊纹三彩珐花瓶 Three-colored Fahua vase with design of chrysanthemums
- 绿釉六博陶俑 Green glazed pottery figurines of backgammon players
- 红釉高足碗 High-stemmed bowl, red-glazed porcelain
- 白釉葵口盘 White glazed Pan (plate) with upper rim shaped like mallow petals
- 白釉刻花净瓶 White glazed porcelain holy-water vase with incised floral design
- 白瓷鸡冠扁壶 White porcelain flask decorated with a cockscomb
- 德花窑观音像 Porcelain statue of Buddisattva Avalokitesvara, Dehua ware
- 青白釉龙柄壶 Bluish white glazed porcelain Hu (jar) with dragon-shaped handle
- 浅灰青釉出戟尊 Zun (cup) with vertical flanges, light grayish blue glaze
- 青白釉酒壶和温酒碗 Covered ewer and warmer, bluish white glaze
- 细裂纹褐釉胆瓶 Gall-shapedvase, crackled brownish glaze
- 釉里红松竹梅纹盖瓶 Covered underglazed red porcelain vase with pine-bamboo-prunus design
- 青绿釉里雕牡丹纹瓶 Vase with design of peony sprays in relief, under bluish green glaze
- 青花僧帽壶 Blue-and-white monk's cap Hu (jug)
- 青花八宝纹香壶 Blue-and-white Hu (pot) with design of the Eight Buddhist emblems in the style of bronze He (wine vessel)
- 青花釉里鸳鸯莲花纹盘 Blue-and-white porcelain plate with underglaze decoration of mandarin ducks and lotus

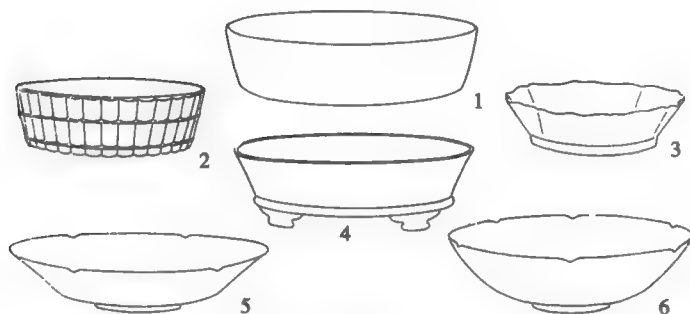
- 影青缠枝卷叶纹瓷瓶 Ying qing (shadowy blue) porcelain vase with interlocking branch and leaf design
- 描金云龙纹直颈瓶 Straight-necked vase with cloud and dragon design in gold tracery
- 釉下蓝和釉上彩婴戏纹斗彩杯 Doucai (contending colors) porcelain cup within underglaze blue and overglaze polychrome enamel decoration of children playing
- 釉下蓝釉上彩镂空云凤纹五彩瓶 Wucai (five colors) porcelain vase with underglaze blue, overglaze polychrome enamel, and openwork decoration of phoenix and clouds
- 釉上彩镀金鸟莲纹五彩尊 Wucai (five colors) porcelain Zun (vase) with overglaze polychrome enamel and gilt design of birds and lotus
- 釉上彩镂空刻花纹素三彩香薰 Susancai (plain tricolor) porcelain censer with floral decoration in overglaze polychrome enamel, incising, and openwork
- 釉上彩牡丹花纹粉彩瓷瓶 Fencai (famille rose) porcelain vase with overglaze polychrome enamel decoration of peony flowers
- 粉彩鹌鹑猎纹天球瓶 Globular vase with famille rose quail and hunting scene
- 蓝地珐琅彩缠枝花纹瓶 Vase decorated with interlocking sprays in cloisonné enamel over a blue ground
- 多彩雉鸡牡丹花纹白瓷瓶 White porcelain vase with polychrome enamel decoration of pheasants and peony flowers
- 白釉黑花褐彩花卉罐 White glazed jar with floral design in black and brown
- 斗彩八挂炉 Porcelain burner with the Eight Trigrams in Doucai (contending colors)
- 窑变绿釉瓶 Green flambé glazed porcelain vase
- 定窑白瓷暗花瓶 White porcelain vase with veiled ornamentation, Ding ware
- 龙泉窑雕龙纹瓷罐 Porcelain jar with dragon design in relief, Longquan ware
- 耀窑刻花青釉三足盖罐 Celadon covered tripod with incised floral design, Yao ware

- 釉里红梅竹纹笔盒 Brush box with design of prunus and bamboo in underglaze red
- 釉里红地白龙纹盖罐 Covered jar with dragon design in white on underglaze red ground
- 绿地黄缠枝花纹高足碗 Bowl with high foot and design of interlocking sprays in yellow enamel on green ground
- 青花斗彩鸳鸯莲池纹侈口碗 Bowl with flared mouth and design of mandarin ducks and lotus pond in Doucai enamel
- 青花缠枝牡丹纹兽耳盖罐 Under glaze blue covered jar with animal-mask handles and design of peony scrolls
- 青花狮子滚绣球墩 Blue-and-white garden seat with design of lion sporting with ball
- 仿官青釉觚 Gu (goblet) with Southern Song imperial kiln type glaze
- 黑釉铁绣花四系瓶 Black glazed brown vase with iron rust decoration and four handles
- 黑釉蓝斑腰鼓 Black glazed waist drum with blue mottles
- 粉彩婴戏纹双连瓶 Fencai "Siamese Twins" vase with polychrome enamel decoration of children at play

典型陶瓷器样式 (线图)

SOME TYPICAL CERAMIC SHAPES

(LINE DRAWING)

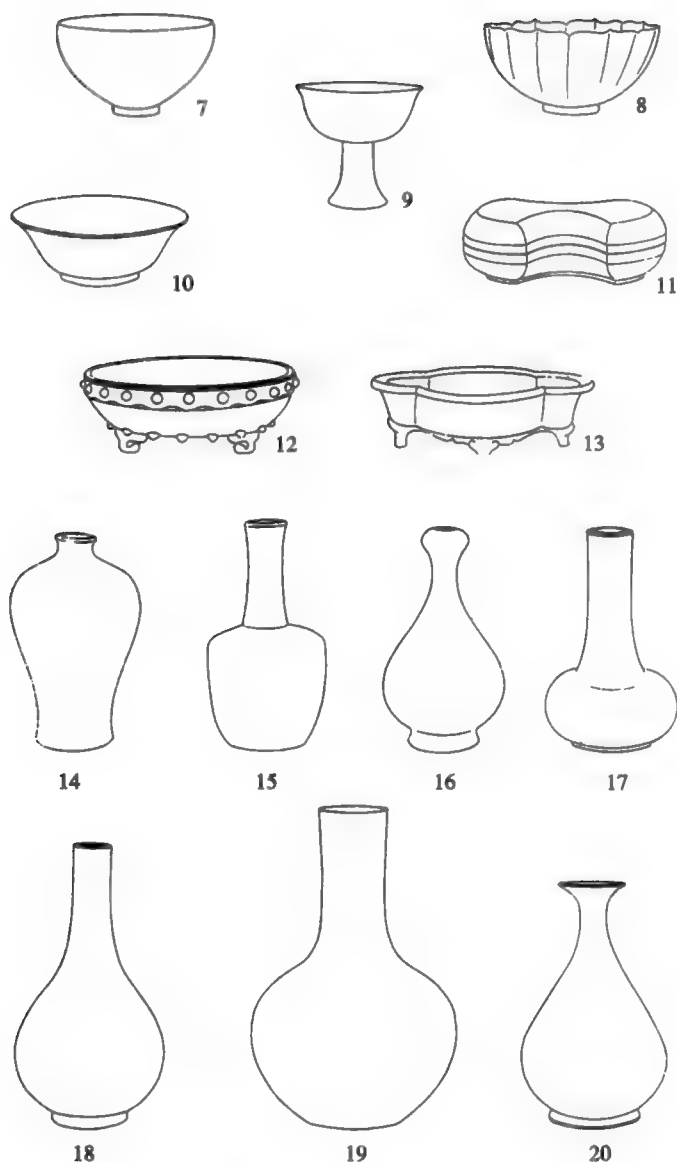


典型陶瓷器样式图 (一)

- 1) 糖锣洗 2) 蔗段洗 3) 菱花碗 4) 水仙盆 5) 葵瓣口碗 6) 葵瓣口碗

Some Typical Ceramic Shapes I

- 1) tang-luo xi 2) zhe-duan xi 3) ling-hua wan 4) shui-xian pen
5, 6) kui-ban-kou-wan

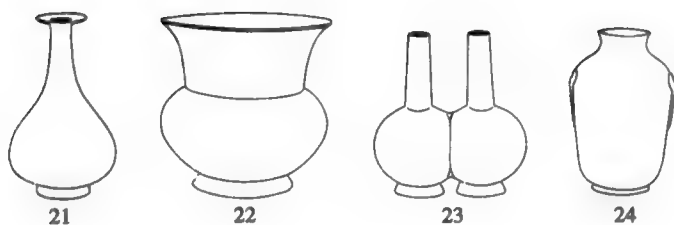


典型陶瓷器样式图 (二)

- 7) 宫碗 8) 莲花碗 9) 高足碗 10) 撇口碗 11) 银锭式盒
12) 鼓式洗 13) 秋海棠式 14) 梅瓶 15) 纸槌瓶 16) 蒜头瓶
17) 荸荠瓶 18) 胆瓶 19) 天球瓶 20) 玉壶春瓶

Some Typical Ceramic Shapes II

- 7) *gong wan* 8) *lian-hua wan* 9) *gao-zu wan* 10) *pie-kou wan*
11) *yin-ding-shi he* 12) *gu-shi xi* 13) *qiu hai-tang-shi* 14) *mei ping*
15) *zhi-chui ping* 16) *suan-tou ping* 17) *bi-qi ping* 18) *dan ping*
19) *tian-qi ping* 20) *yu-hu-chun ping*



典型陶瓷器样式图 (三)

21) 盘口瓶 22) 渣斗式 23) 双连瓶 24) 灯笼尊

Some Typical Ceramic Shapes III

21) *pan-kou ping* 22) *zha-dou shi* 23) *shuang-lian ping*

24) *deng-long zun*

十 玉 器

JADE WARE

玉石名称

NAMES OF JADES, GEMS AND GEMSTONES

玉 jade; gems; gemstones

硬玉 jadeite (belongs to the group of augite or pyroxene (辉石); it is as tough as nephrite but surpasses it in specific gravity (比重) and attains the somewhat higher grade of hardness 6.5 - 7)

软玉 nephrite (belongs to the group of the hornblendes (角闪石) or amphibole (闪石); its hardness does not quite attain grade 6, but it is particularly tough owing to its complicated structure)

翠玉 (翡翠) jadeite; chrysolite

青玉 green jade

碧玉 jasper; dark green nephrite

绿玉 (绿宝石) emerald

蓝宝石 sapphire; aquamarine

墨玉 (黑宝石) jet; dark jade; black jade

红玉 (红宝石) ruby; jacinth

黄玉 yellow jade; topaz

紫翠玉 (金绿宝石) alexandrite

红翡 red jadeite

绿翠 green jadeite

菠菜玉 spinach jade; the dark green Siberian nephrite

羊脂玉 mutton-fat jade; pure white nephrite

钻石 diamond

(白) 玛瑙 agate

红玛瑙 sardonyx; carnelian

条纹玛瑙 onyx
 紫玛瑙 violet agate; lavender agate
 水晶 crystal; rock crystal; clear quartz
 发(棕)晶 hair crystal
 茶晶 tea crystal; cairngorm (found in the Cairngorm Mountains of Scotland)
 墨晶 (参见 P297)
 红晶(石榴石) garnet; rose crystal
 紫晶(紫石英) amethyst; violet quartz
 蓝晶 aquamarine
 珊瑚 coral
 琥珀 amber
 云珀(蜜蜡琥珀) cloudy amber
 珍珠 pearl
 蛋白石 opal
 天青石(青金石) lapis lazuli; lazurite
 孔雀石 malachite
 绿松石(土耳其石) turquoise
 碧玺(电石) tourmaline
 萤石 fluorite; fluor-spar
 滑石(皂石、冻石) steatite; soap-stone
 金星石 aventurine
 芙蓉石 rose quartz
 血石 blood-stone
 寿山石(蛇纹石) a serpentine quarried at Shou Shan, Fujian; Shoushan stone
 绿蛇纹石 bowenite
 青田石 a greenish serpentine found in Qingtian, Zhejiang; Qingtian stone
 岫岩石 a serpentine of jade-like appearance quarried at Xiuyan, Liaoning; Xiuyan stone
 田黄石 a honey-colored stone; Tianhuang stone
 鸡血石 (参见 P297)
 猫眼石 cat's-eye stone
 虎眼石 tiger's eye stone
 玳瑁 turtle; tortoise shell

木变石 petrified wood; woodstone

玉石琢工 LAPIDARY'S CRAFT

琢磨 to carve and polish (jade); to work hardstones by grinding; to carve gems

璞 uncut gem-stones; common stones as opposed to precious or semi-precious stones

硬度 grade of hardness

比重 specific gravity

玢玉 lapidary stones resembling jade but of inferior quality

子玉 jade pebbles; jade from river beds

山料 mined jade

莹润 the rich unctuous quality of well-polished fine jade

木头 the "water", or pellucid quality of fine jade

镌刻 to engrave (or carve) surface decoration

玲珑 fine open-work carving

琢玉砂 the abrasive sand used to cut and grind jade

黄砂 yellow sand; quartz sand

红砂 red sand; crushed almandine garnets

黑砂 (金刚砂) black sand; crushed black corundum; emery

砂纸 (轮) emery paper (wheel)

宝药 precious powder; the jade-polishing medium

觚 Xi, a short pointed instrument; a knot-opener

昆吾刀 Kunwu knife, a traditional tool of ancient jade carver

鬼斧神工 uncanny workmanship; superlative craftsmanship; craftsmanship of exceptional skill

玉器 JADE WARE

瑞玉 Ritual Jades

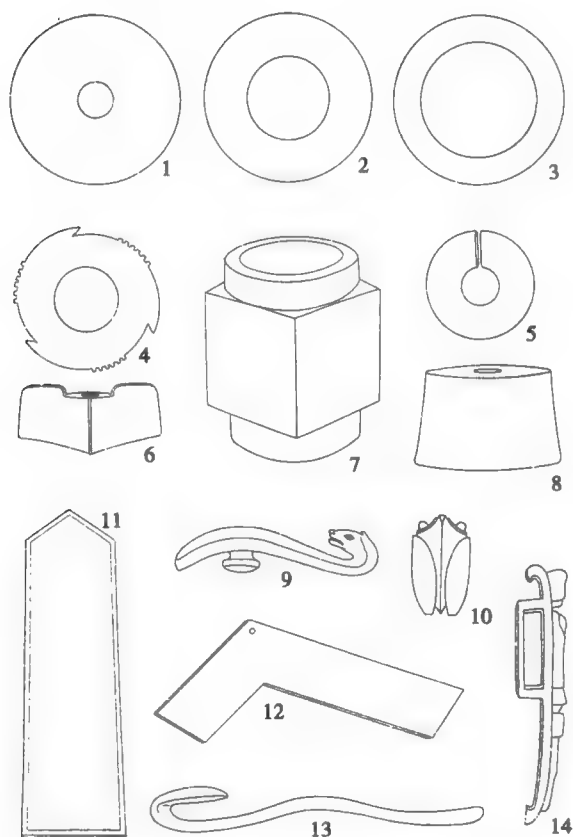
璧 Bi, a flat disk having a circular concentric orifice in the center
(the symbol of the deity Heaven)

环 Huan, a disk with a larger orifice than that of the Bi

- 璜 Yuan, a disk with an orifice still larger than that of the Huan
- 琮 Cong, a hollow tube of cylindrical section enclosed by a rectangular body (the symbol of the deity Earth)
- 珪 Gui, an elongated tablet or flat sceptre (the symbol of the Eastern Quarter)
- 璋 Zhang, a tablet in the form of half of a pointed Gui (the symbol of the Southern Quarter)
- 璜 Huang, a tablet in the form of half a Bi (the symbol of the Northern Quarter)
- 琥 Hu, a jade ornament in the shape of a tiger, and for military use (the symbol of the Western Quarter)
- 珑 Long, as a jade of dragon design used for prayer in time of drought
- 玦 Jue, an incomplete (split) penannular ring; a ring from which a segment has been cut
- 璿玕 Xuan Ji, a disk with serrated edge and central orifice, believed to be an astronomical instrument
- 磬 Qing, chime stone or jade, designed to emit a musical note when struck
- 特磬 Te Qing, a sonorous stone suspended separately
- 编磬 Bian Qing, a chime of sonorous stones
- 琯 Han, a gem placed in the mouth of the dead; commonly in the form of a cicada; archaic jade cicada
- 瑱 (充耳) Tian, Chong-er, ear-plugs or ear-stuffer used in dressing a corpse
- 辟邪 Pi Xie, used to ward off evil influences; thus a charm or an amulet; archaic jade winged beast
- 珮 Pei, worn at the waist; a set of girdle ornaments; a pendant
- 珩 Heng, an archaic jade girdle ornament
- 钗 Chai, a hairpin
- 璪 Ji, a cap ornament
- 带钩 (参见 P128)
- 带扣 (参见 P128)
- 带头 Dai Tou, archaic jade belt ring
- 带环 Dai Huan, ring to engage with clothing hook
- 朝带 Chao Dai, court girdle in which are set plaques of jade

- 剑饰 sword fittings
- 璲 Wei or Zhi, slotted jade fitting attached to sword-scabbard
- 琕 Feng, jade sword-guard; jade sword pendant
- 琕 Bi, chape attached to the lower end of the scabbard
- 璲 Sui, scabbard slide
- 戒指 finger-ring
- 扳指 (玦) archer's ring
- 珠串 necklace
- 朝珠 court beads
- 胸针 brooch
- 项链 necklet
- 手镯 bracelet
- 把玩 fondling pieces
- 玲珑剔透的玉雕 exquisitely wrought jade carvings
- 碧玉花薰 jasper flower perfumer
- 寿山 longevity hills; boulders of jade carved to represent mountains with forests, torrents, buildings, human figures, etc., on their slopes
- 大禹开山治水 Emperor Yu opening mountains to control the flood (more than 7 feet high and 3 feet wide)
- 玉山子“大禹治水图” a rock-shaped jade article carved with the picture of Emperor Yu controlling the flood; a poem composed by Emperor Qianlong is inscribed on it.
- 玉山子“会昌九老图” a rock-shaped jade article carved with the picture of Bai Juyi, a famous poet of the Tang Dynasty, meeting eight old men
- 玉山子“秋山行旅图” a rock-shaped jade article carved with the picture of walking on a mountain in autumn
- 白玉牌“鹤鹿同春” white jade rectangular pendant carved with crane and deer
- 桐荫仕女图 garden scene with moon door afar, with a young woman on either side inscribed with encomium and poem by Emperor Qianlong
- 金缕玉衣 (参见 P9)
- 银缕玉衣 funerary garment made of jade plates linked by silver wire

瑞玉和其他玉器样式（线图）
SOME TYPES OF RITUAL AND OTHER JADES
(LINE DRAWING)



瑞玉和其他玉器样式图

- 1) 璽 2) 环 3) 瑗 4) 璿玕 5) 玦 6) 瑱 7) 琮 8) 琕
 9) 带钩 10) 琕 11) 珪 12) 磬 13) 如意 14) 璜

Some Types of Ritual and Other Jades

- 1) *bi* 2) *huan* 3) *yuan* 4) *xuan ji* 5) *jue* 6) *feng* 7) *cong*
 8) *bi* 9) *dai gou* 10) *han* 11) *gui* 12) *qing* 13) *ru-yi* 14) *zhi*

十一 书 法

CALLIGRAPHY

文房用具

THE INSTRUMENTS FOR WRITING

- 文具 writing materials (or accessories)
- 四宝 the four treasures — paper, ink block, brush and ink slab
- 毛笔 writing brush (usually made of the hair of animals such as goat, weasel, rabbit and others)
- 羊毫 sheep's (or goat's) hair (or wool)
- 狼毫 weasel's hair
- 紫毫 (兔毫) purple hare's (or rabbit's) hair
- 霜毫 (兔毫) white hare's hair
- 鹿毫 deer's hair
- 獾毫 badger's hair
- 鸡毫 chicken's soft feather
- 棕毫 palm coir
- 兼毫 mixed hair
- 鬃毫 pig's (or horse's) hair
- 貂毫 marten's hair
- 花毫 colored hair
- 墨 inkstick; inkcake; inkblock
- 湖笔徽墨 Hu-brush (made in Huzhou) and Hui-inkstick (made in Huizhou)
- 宣纸 Xuan-paper (suitable for writing)
- 生宣 raw Xuanzhou paper
- 熟宣 processed Xuanzhou paper
- 单宣 single Xuanzhou paper
- 夹宣 lined Xuanzhou paper

- 二层夹 double-lined Xuanzhou paper
 三层夹 triple-lined Xuanzhou paper
 罗纹 rib-like grain paper
 龟纹 tortoise-shell grain paper
 扎花 embroidery grain paper
 砚 inkslab; inkstone
 端砚 Duan-inkstone (made in Duanxi, Guangdong Province)
 歙砚 She-inkstone (made in Shexian, Anhui Province)
 洮河砚 Taohe-inkstone (made in Lintao, Gansu Province)
 澄泥砚 Chengni-inkstone (made of settled mud in Shanxi Province)
 笔筒 brush pot (or barrel, or holder)
 笔管 (桿) shaft; stem
 笔帽 (套) cap for writing brush
 笔搁 brush rest (or rack)
 笔洗 (参见 P148)
 笔舔 ink pallet
 水注 (参见 P152)
 水丞 (参见 P148)
 臂搁 arm-rest
 印章 (参见 P203)
 印色盒 seal vermilion box
 镇纸 paper weight
 烟油墨汁 lampblack ink
 消除器 eraser
 战国笔 writing brush of the Warring States Period
 白马作笔 writing brush with the inscription "Bai Ma Zuo"
 彩漆云龙管笔 calligraphy brush with polychrome lacquer stem
 with pattern of dragon and clouds
 乾隆御题十色墨 ten colored inkcakes with Qianlong Emperor's
 inscription
 百子图墨 inkcake with "Hundred Children at Play" motif
 明代方于鲁墨 ink made by Fang Yulu of the Ming Dynasty
 明代程君房墨 ink made by Cheng Junfang of the Ming Dynasty
 清代曹素功墨 ink made by Cao Sugong of the Qing Dynasty
 松花石壶卢砚 Songhua inkstone in the shape of a gourd

北宋百一硯 inkstone with 101 holes at the bottom, Northern Song Dynasty

书 体

DIFFERENT STYLES OF WRITING

古字体 paleography

古文书学家 (古字体研究者) paleographer

古文字 ancient scripts

象形字 ideographs (on early bronze vessels; known as Zhong Ding Wen 钟鼎文); pictographs; hieroglyphs

鸟虫书 (参见 P296)

蝌蚪文 tadpole script

古文 ancient script (introduced by Cang Jie (仓颉) in legendary times)

籀文 writing as developed by Shi Zhou (史籀) in the Eastern Zhou Dynasty (770 - 221 B. C.)

甲骨文 inscriptions on bones or tortoise shells of the Shang Dynasty (c. 16th - 11th century B. C.); oracle-bones inscription

石鼓文 (475 - 221 B. C.) (参见 P184)

魏碑 tablet inscriptions of the Northern Wei Dynasty (386 - 534 A. D.); inscriptions in tablet style (first used in Northern Wei Dynasty)

竹书 inscriptions on bamboo slips (supposedly in the 4th century A. D.)

飞白 flying white style of writing (first used by Cai Yong 蔡邕)

篆书 (参见 P295)

大篆 greater seal; majuscule script (invented or introduced by Shi Zhou 史籀)

小篆 lesser seal; minuscule script (introduced by Li Si 李斯)

隶书 official script; clerical style; chancery script (invented by Cheng Miao 程邈)

楷书 regular script; uncial script; clerkly script; model style (introduced by Zhong You 钟繇)

- 大楷 regular script in big characters
 小楷 regular script in small characters
 行书 semi-cursive script; running script (or hand); a style between regular script and cursive script
 草书 cursive script; draft script; rapid writing; manuscript writing; rustic script; “grass script”
 狂草 wild cursive script
 行草 running-cursive script
 章草 a style of cursive script, originated by Shi You (史游) of the Han Dynasty, so named because it was chiefly used in a memorial 章奏. It is also written in “memorial-used cursive script”.
 瘦金体 slender gold script
 八分书 (汉代) eighty percent style of writing (Han Dynasty)

八 法

THE EIGHT BRUSH-STROKES

- 横 (“一”, 如列阵之排云) dash — like a continuous, horizontal cloud (stratus), scarcely visible but with a definite outline
 点 (“丶”, 如高峰坠石) dot — like a stone falling from a high precipice, bumping as if it would break to pieces.
 左下撇 (“丿”, 如犀角、象牙之锋利) downstroke to the left — sharp enough to sever the horn of a rhinoceros or the tusk of an elephant
 右下勾 (“乚”, 如弹弓之射弹) downstroke to the right with a hook — like the firing of a heavy charge from a catapult
 竖下垂 (“丨”, 如万岁枯藤) perpendicular downstroke — as straight as the drooping branch of an old vine
 捺 (“㇏”, 如海岸之激浪或如闪电) wave-like stroke — like the breakers on a coast line or like streaks of lightning
 弓勾 (“乚”, 如绷紧之臂或拉紧之弓) bow-like stroke — like a taut arm or a stiff bow
 月勾 (“㇏”, 状如新月) thin crescent — like that of the new moon

“永”字八法

The Eight Brush-Strokes of the Character “Yong”



- 点 (“侧”) 1. the dot (“sidelong”)
 横 (“勒”) 2. the dash (“bridle-bit”)
 竖 (“努”) 3. the perpendicular stroke (“strength”)
 勾 (“趯”) 4. the hook (“a foot in the act of kicking”)
 提 (“策”) 5. the upstroke to the right (“a staff”)
 撇 (“掠”) 6. the downstroke to the left (“a flogging stick”)
 短撇 (“啄”) 7. the downstroke to the left (“like the peck of a woodpecker”)
 捺 (“磔”) the downstroke to the right (“like the slash of a sharp weapon”)
 “永”字八法 (传王羲之) the Eight Brushstrokes of the Character “Yong” attributed to Wang Xizhi

品评标准

STANDARDS FOR JUDGING BEAUTIFUL WRITING

- 神 Shen: a style full of spirit, energy of vivacity
 气 Qi: representing the strength of brush-strokes
 韵 Yun: the rhythm or balance
 味 Wei: the aesthetic quality
 笔锋有力 The brush-strokes must be vigorous.
 笔触简洁 a simple, light touches
 匀称谐调 There must be balance or rhythm.
 字体传神 The artistic spirit of the writer, who must control the style of his writing.
 传神之笔 a vivid touch in writing

笔力苍劲 the writing in bold, vigorous strokes

败笔 worn-down brush

硬笔 stiff brush

软笔 soft brush

其 他 OTHERS

纸（绢）本 original form written on paper（silk）

拓本 form of rubbings taken from ancient stones on which characters were incised.

抄本 manuscript

字帖 specimens of the writings（original rubbings bound as albums）；models for calligraphy

碑帖 rubbings from stone tablets

法帖 rubbings of standard autographs；standard calligraphic specimens；famous specimens of calligraphy

临帖 practice calligraphy after a model

对联 antithetic couplets

联句 parallel phrases

楹联 pillar couplets

条幅（贴落） ornamental hanging；vertical scroll

横披（轴） horizontal scroll

春联 good-luck slogans；Spring Festival couplets；New Year couplets

中堂 large size vertical scroll；central scroll

斗方 square scroll（or sheet）

匾额 horizontal tablet over a door；horizontal inscribed board

招牌 sign-board；shop sign

题跋 remarks on scrolls of calligraphy

题诗（参见 P203）

题签 book title written on book cover；a label with the title of a book on it

题款 inscription；dedication

上款 inscription to a person on a scroll

下款 signature in a scroll

- 书简 (札) letters; correspondence
 书法家 calligrapher; calligraphist
 吮笔 (润毫) to lick the brush
 嗅墨 to feed on ink
 悬腕 with the wrist raised, i. e. not touching the desk (when writing big Chinese characters)
 振笔直书 take up the brush and write vigorously

法书精品 MASTERPIECES OF CALLIGRAPHY

- 法帖 model calligraphy; standard calligraphic specimens
 三希堂法帖 famous specimens of calligraphy in San Xi Tang (Hall of Three Rare Specimens of Calligraphy)
 草书《中秋帖》 “The Mid Autumn” in cursive script by Wang Xianzhi 王献之, Eastern Jin Dynasty
 行书《伯远帖》 “The Bo Yuan” in running script or “Letter to Bo Yuan” in running script by Wang Xun (王珣), Eastern Jin Dynasty
 行书《快雪时晴帖》 “The Kuai Xue Shi Qing” (“The Clear Sky after Snow”) in running script by Wang Xizhi (王羲之), Eastern Jin Dynasty
 草书《平复帖》 “The Recovery from Illness” in cursive script or “A Consoling Letter” in cursive script by Lu Ji (陆机), Western Jin Dynasty
 行书《兰亭序》(修楔帖) “The Gathering at Orchid Pavilion” or “Purification at Orchid Pavilion” in running script by Wang Xizhi (王羲之) (considered to be the most valuable calligraphic work)
 行书《祭侄文稿》 “Draft Manuscript of a Memorial to his Nephew” in running script by Yan Zhenqing (颜真卿), Tang Dynasty
 行草《张好好诗》 “Song of Zhang Hao hao” in running-cursive script by Du Mu (杜牧), Tang Dynasty
 草书《怀素自叙帖》 “Autobiography” in cursive script by Huai Su, Tang Dynasty

行草《神仙起居法》 “Massage Technique for Achieving Immortality” in running-cursive script by Yang Ningshi (杨凝式), Five Dynasties

狂草《诸上座帖》 “Sayings of a Chan Buddhist Monk” in the “wild” style of cursive script by Huang Tingjian (黄庭坚), Song Dynasty

行书《将之苕溪》或《苕溪诗》 “Six Poems on Leaving for Shaoxi” in running script by Mi Fu (米芾), Song Dynasty

行草《致季常尺牍》 “Letter to Ji Chang” in running-cursive script by Su Shi (苏轼), Song Dynasty

瘦金体《五七言诗》 “Two Poems in Five and Seven-syllable Verse” in slender gold script by the Song emperor Hui Zong (宋徽宗)

行书《高峰和尚行状》 “Biography of Monk Gaofeng” in running script, by Zhao Mengfu (赵孟頫), Yuan Dynasty

行草《张九龄〈白羽扇赋〉》 “Zhang Jiuling’s ‘Fu on a White Feather Fan’” in running-cursive script by Dong Qichang (董其昌), Ming Dynasty

草书《诗卷》 “Poems” in cursive script (which contains “The Terrace of Ode to the Wind” and two other poems) by Zhu Yunming (祝允明), Ming Dynasty

四体《千字文》 “Thousand Characters Essay” in four scripts (regular, cursive, clerical and seal scripts) by Wen Zhengming (文徵明), Ming Dynasty

题米芾《蜀素帖》 “Inscription on Mi Fu’s ‘Calligraphy on Sichuan Silk’” by Shen Zhou (沈周), Ming Dynasty

章草《急就章》 “Curriedly Composed Writing” or “An Improvization” in memorial-cursive script by Song Ke (宋克), Ming Dynasty

行书《明代名人尺牍精品》 “Albums of Letters of Prominent Figures of the Ming Dynasty” in running script (2 albums of 45 leaves)

隶书《战国策》 “Chronicle of the Warring States” in clerical script by Jin Nong (金农), Qing Dynasty

楷书《义利辨》 “Yi Li Bian” (Discussion on Righteousness

and Personal Benefit) in standard script by Yong Xing
(永理), Qing Dynasty

行书《洛神赋》 “Luoshen Fu” (Rhyme-Prose on Nymph of
the Luo River) in running script by Jin Cong (金聪),
Qing Dynasty (album of 22.5 leaves, ink on paper,
each leaf 38 × 47cm, additional 10 leaves of colophons)

十二 古代碑刻

ANCIENT STONE INSCRIPTIONS

- 碑碣 stone tablet; stele
- 碑额 the top part of a tablet; the head of a stone tablet
- 碑阴 the reverse side of a stone tablet; the back of a stone tablet
- 碑记 (志) an inscriptional record; an inscription; a record of events inscribed on a tablet
- 碑铭 (文) an inscription on a tablet
- 碑亭 a pavilion built over (or housing) a stone tablet
- 碑林 forest of steles; a large collection of stone tablets (especially that of Xi'an which includes more than 3000 items)
- 墓碑 (表) a tombstone; a gravestone
- 墓志铭 inscription on the memorial tablet within a tomb; epitaph
- 纪念碑 monument; memorial
- 牌坊 an honorific arch; memorial archway
- 牌匾 an inscribed board; tablet
- 牌额 a horizontal inscribed board
- 画像石 (砖) pictorial stone (brick)
- 石鼓文 Inscriptions on Drum-shaped Stone Blocks (carved by State of Qin. Warring States Period, discovered in early Tang Dynasty in Shaanxi Province)
- 诅楚文 Inscriptions on "Curse Chu" Steles (done by State of Qin, Warring States Period, unearthed in Song Dynasty at various places)
- 监囿守丘刻石 Jianyou Shouqiu Keshi. Stone inscribed with "Jian You Shou Qiu", Zhongshan State, Warring States Period (unearthed about 1937 at Hebei Province)

- 琅玕刻石 Langya Keshi. Inscribed Stone at Mount Langya, work of Qin Dynasty, at Langyatai, Zhucheng, Shandong Province
- 泰山刻石 Taishan Keshi. Inscribed Stones on Mount Tai, steles of Qin Dynasty erected by the Prime Minister Li Si and others at the top of Mount Tai, Shandong Province
- 张景碑 Zhang Jing Bei. Stele of Zhang Jing, an important inscribed stele of Eastern Han Dynasty, unearthed in 1958 at Nanyang city, Henan Province
- 曹全碑 Cao Quan Bei. Stele of Cao Quan, an important inscribed stele of Eastern Han Dynasty, unearthed in early Wanli period of Ming Dynasty in Heyang County, Shaanxi Province
- 礼器碑 Li Qi Bei. Stele of Ritual Vessels, an important inscribed stele of Eastern Han Dynasty, erected in the second year of Emperor Yongshou's reign
- 西狭颂 Xi Xia Song. Stele with an Eulogy on the Reconstruction of the Road in the Western Gorge, an important cliffside inscription of Eastern Han Dynasty, engraved in the fourth year of emperor Jianning's reign
- 熹平石经 Xi Ping Shi Jing. Stone Classics of the Xiping Reign, the earliest Confucian classics on the stone stele, originally engraved in the fourth year of Xiping's reign and completed in Guanghe's sixth year, Eastern Han Dynasty
- 正始石经 (三体石经) Zhengshi Shijing. Stone Classics of the Zhengshi Reign, or Stone Classics in Three Scripts, made in Cao Wei (曹魏) of the Three Kingdoms
- 晋辟雍碑 Jin Piyong Bei. Stele in the "Piyong" Hall of the Jin Dynasty, China's largest and most complete extant stele inscription of Jin Dynasty, erected in the fourth year (278) of Xianning (咸宁) reign in the Piyong Imperial College at Luoyang (洛阳)
- 好太王碑 Haotaiwang Bei. Stele of Great King Haotaiwang, Korean (高句丽) important inscribed stele, erected in 414 by his son Changshouwang (长寿王) at Ji'an (集安) in Jilin Province

魏晋南北朝墓志 Wei-Jin-Nanbeichao Muzhi. Epitaphs from Tombs of the Wei, Jin, and Southern and Northern Dynasties

王兴之夫妇墓志 Wang Xingzhi Fufu Muzhi. Epitaph on the Tomb of Wang Xingzhi and his wife, work of Eastern Jin, unearthed in 1965 on the outskirts of Nanjing

龙藏寺碑 Longzangsi Bei. Stele of the Construction of Longzang Temple, an important inscribed stele of the Sui Dynasty, erected in the sixth year (586) of the Kaihuang reign at Zhengding, Hebei Province

唐蕃会盟碑 Tang-Bo Huimeng Bei. Monument Commemorating Tang Dynasty's Aligning with Tibet, carved and erected in the third year of the Changqing reign in front of Zuglakang Monastery (大昭寺) in Lhasa

九成宫碑 Jiuchenggong Bei. Stele in the Jiucheng Palace, a famous inscribed stele of the Tang Dynasty, established in the sixth year (632) of Zhenguan 贞观 in the Palace (now at Linyou 临游 county, Shaanxi Province)

多宝塔碑 Duobaota Bei. Stele of the "Abundant Treasure" Pagoda, an important inscribed stele of the Tang Dynasty, erected in the eleventh year (752) of Tianbao (天宝) at Xingping (兴平), Shaanxi Province

大秦景教流行中国碑 Daqin Jingjiao Liuxing Zhongguo Bei. Stele Marking Spread of Nestorianism from Rome to China, a stele of Tang Dynasty erected in 781 and unearthed in 1625 during the Ming Dynasty

升仙太子碑 Shengxian Taizi Bei. Stele Commemorating Prince Jin (王子晋), erected by Empress Wu Zetian (武则天) of the Tang Dynasty in 699 at Yanshi (偃师), Henan Province in memory of Prince Jin

隋唐墓志 Sui-Tang Muzhi. Epitaphs of the Sui and Tang Dynasties (inscriptions on stone, brick or ceramic materials buried in tombs)

泉州宗教石刻 Quanzhou Zongjiao Shike. Religious Stone Inscriptions and Carvings at Quanzhou (These cultural relics of religious stone inscriptions from the Song and Yuan

Dynasties are preserved in Quanzhou.)

契丹文石刻 Qidanwen Shike. Stone Inscriptions in Khitan Hieroglyphic (They were carved in the Liao Dynasty and unearthed or discovered in either Inner Mongolia or Liaoning Province.)

女真文石刻 Nuzhenwen Shike. Stone Inscriptions in Nuzhen (Jurchen) Hieroglyphic (These inscriptions were carved in the Jin (Kin) Dynasty and mostly discovered in Jilin Province.)

西夏文石刻 Xixiawen Shike. Stone Inscriptions in Western Xia (Tangut) Hieroglyphic (Xixia, a state in the Song Dynasty occupied part of today's Inner Mongolia and Gansu. These inscriptions were carved in Song, Yuan and Ming Dynasties.)

蒙古文石刻 Mengguwen Shike. Stone Inscriptions in Mongolian Script (These steles were carved in the Yuan Dynasty and are now distributed mostly over Inner Mongolia, Yunnan, Gansu, Shanxi, Shaanxi, Henan, Hebei and Shandong Provinces.)

沂南墓画像石 Yinanmu Huaxiangshi. Pictorial Stones of the Yi'nan Tomb, excavated from a large tomb chamber of the late Eastern Han Dynasty at Yinan County, Shandong Province

孝堂山汉画像石 Xiaotangshan Hanhuaxiangshi. Pictorial Stones of the Han Dynasty on Xiaotang Mountain, in the earliest existing Chinese Stone Memorial Hall at Guo's Cemetery

十三 绘 画

PAINTING

材 料

MATERIALS

绢 silk (This is the general term for the common ground for painting.)

画绢 picture silk; silk especially adapted to painting, particularly ready-sized silk

花边画绢 colored border painting silk; silk distinguished by multi-colored stripes in the selvage

红边画绢 red border painting silk, distinguished by red stripes in the selvage

绫子 thin silk, a fine silk used chiefly for mounting paintings

瓷青绢 porcelain blue silk, usually a good silk dyed with a very dark blue

素绫 plain thin silk, ordinarily used for mountings, but many prefer it for painting

熟(生)绢 sized (unsized) silk

练绢 prepared silk

双丝绢 double thread silk

单丝绢 single thread silk

缣 a kind of white silk woven with double threads, and waterproof

纸 paper (the general term for this important material)

澄心堂纸 a fine, thin, smooth paper of superior quality, popularly used by the artists of the Song and Yuan Dynasties

宣纸 a fine white bamboo-pulp laid paper, it is so named because it comes from Xuancheng of Anhui Province

矾宣(熟纸) sized paper, specified to distinguish it from the common unsized paper

- 单宣 (生纸) a thin, single layer, unsized paper
- 通纸 (米纸) Tong paper made from the cellular tissue of a plant known to foreigners as "rice paper"
- 蝉衣笺 (蝉翼笺) cicada shell paper (cicada wing paper), a fine, single thickness sized paper
- 金笺 speckled-gold paper; gold-flecked paper
- 墨 ink (Chinese ink is a mixture of a form of carbon and glue, and is usually molded into sticks or cakes.)
- 松烟墨 pine soot ink, the best ink for painting
- 笔 brush (The typical Chinese brush is made of animal hair carefully graded and glued into the end of a bamboo tube.)
- 色素 pigments
- 石青 (佛青) mineral blue; ultramarine; azurite (prepared from lazurite 青金石)
- 头青 first blue (the deepest mineral blue, used for filling in certain outlined leaves and for painting on the back of silk to intensify the blue on the surface)
- 二青 second blue (the medium shade of mineral blue, used for the hills and rocks of blue and green landscape)
- 三青 third blue (the lightest mineral blue, used chiefly for painting garments)
- 石绿 mineral green (prepared from malachite 孔雀石)
- 头绿 first green (the deepest mineral green, used for filling in certain outlined leaves and for painting on the back of silk to intensify the color of rocks and mountains)
- 二绿 second green (the medium tint of the stone greens, used for painting the rocks and mountains of mineral green landscape)
- 三绿 third green (the lightest mineral green, used for garments in figure studies, and in landscape for dotting lichens on tree trunks and rocks, also for leaves)
- 石黄 (雌黄) mineral yellow (prepared from orpiment 雌黄, used chiefly in butterfly painting and in painting of men and objects)
- 雄黄 cock yellow (prepared from realgar 雄黄)
- 朱砂 vermilion (prepared from a kind of cinnabar 朱砂, used

- for the leaves of maple, also for temples, palaces and the railings of terraces)
- 朱标 the lighter form of vermilion (used for the garments of men)
- 银朱 a deeper vermilion (used chiefly in seal pigment)
- 赭石 umber (made from a variety of iron oxide called limonite 褐铁矿; extensively employed in flower and landscape painting)
- 铅粉 lead white (used for all subjects of painting)
- 珂粉 lime white (made by burning sea shells, better than lead white)
- 乳金 milk gold (used in garments and in Buddhist painting)
- 靛花 (花青) indigo blue; flower blue (one of the most common pigments and has many uses)
- 藤黄 rattan yellow; light bright yellow (used extensively for painting flowers, birds and landscapes)
- 胭脂 rouge (mainly used for painting flowers)
- 牡丹红 peony red; pink (used especially for painting peonies)
- 混合色 mixed colors
- 草绿 vegetation green (made by mixing 花青 and 藤黄)
- 老绿 old green (made by mixing six parts of 花青 and one of 藤黄)
- 嫩绿 fresh green (made by mixing three parts of 花青 and seven of 藤黄)
- 苍绿 gray green (made by mixing 草绿 and 赭石)
- 紫粉 purple pink (made by mixing 胭脂 and 白粉)
- 淡桃红 pale peach red (a pink compound of 胭脂 and 白粉)
- 老红 old red (a combination of 银朱 and 赭石)
- 赭黄 ochre yellow (a mixture of 藤黄 and 赭石)
- 赭墨 ochre ink (a mixture of 赭石 and 墨)
- 藤萝紫 wistaria purple (a compound of 洋红 and 花青)

画 式

FORMS OF PAINTING

- 图 a plan or map
- 画 a painting

- 壁画 wall painting; mural painting; mural; fresco
- 帛画 painting on silk or other fabric
- 卷轴 rolled paintings of all kinds (distinguished from murals, albums and fans)
- 卷 hand scrolls (specifically intended to be opened on a table)
- 轴 hanging scrolls (specially designed for hanging)
- 册页 album leaf
- 扇面 fan face
- 斗方 a square picture
- 屏条 sets of four, six, eight, twelve narrow vertical scrolls to be hung together
- 同景 combined scene (a set of scrolls that form one composition such as a large landscape)
- 横幅 (披) a horizontal scroll (designed and mounted to be hung horizontally)
- 直幅 a hanging scroll (designed and mounted to be hung vertically)
- 单条 a single vertical scroll; a tall and very narrow picture
- 孤轴 lonely scroll; independent scroll (pictures hung individually, as opposed to those hung in groups)
- 中堂 (参见 P180)
- 中条 medium-size hanging scroll
- 对联 a pair of scrolls; narrow antithetical scrolls
- 联句 (参见 P180)

画题

SUBJECTS OF PAINTING

- 山水 mountains and water; landscape
- 人物 portraiture; figures; men and objects
- 影像 ceremonial portrait (usually painted posthumously from the corpse, life portrait, or a photo)
- 行乐图 life portrait (This picture has a generous amount of setting or background)
- 道释图 Taoist and Buddhist subjects; religious painting
- 仕女图 women, especially beautiful women; classical lady

- 风俗画 genre painting (including local customs, manners, festivals)
 史实画 paintings describing authentic historical events or incidents
 故事画 illustrations of novels, fictions, romances, plays or legendary incidents
 博古画 curios or antiques (including ancient bronzes, porcelains and similar objects)
 出行图 procession scene
 花卉 flowers and plants
 折枝 broken branches; cut flowers; sprays or branches separated from the parent stalk
 翎毛 birds and animals; feathers and fur
 草虫 grasses and insects
 鱼龙 fishes and dragons
 界画 architectural drawing (refers to buildings in a landscape. These buildings should be correctly drawn according to dimension, and when such correctly drawn buildings are the chief feature of a picture, the picture is called Jie Hua.)
 静物画 still-life painting
 唐卡 Thangka (Buddhist painting of Tibet)

画 技

TECHNIQUES OF PAINTING

- 六法 six principles or canons
 气韵生动 animation through vitality and rhythm; spirit harmony; spirit resonance
 骨法用笔 bone-means use brush; "bony" brushstrokes (i. e. strong and economical)
 应物形象 fidelity to the object in portraying forms
 随类赋彩 conformity to kind in applying colors; correspondence to type (in color)
 经营位置 proper planning in placing (of elements); composition (of picture); division and planning

- 传移模学 to copy (by tracing or transferring); transmission of
the past by copying
- 凸凹法 convex-concave method
- 明暗法 shading
- 光影运用 the play of light and shadow
- 明暗对比 chiaroscuro
- 远近 perspective; far and near
- 合(不合)远近 in (out) perspective
- 合(不合)画法 in (out) drawing; (not) according to rules
of painting
- 高(深、平)远 high (deep, level) distance
- 章法, 构图 composition
- 布局 the process of planing a composition
- 天地 heaven and earth; open or blank space at the top and bot-
tom of a picture
- 宾主 guest and host; the principle of balancing large mountains
by smaller ones
- 写意 free sketch (or style); bold style; spontaneous expression
- 工笔 painting very carefully and precisely executed; elaborate
and realistic style of painting
- 写生 to paint a subject exactly like the original; to paint from life
- 院体(官派) academic painting (very precise with reference to
rules and customs); "official school"
- 设色 arrange color
- 着色 apply color
- 青绿山水 blue and green landscape
- 金碧山水 gold and green landscape; landscape with gold outline
- 淡赭 faint umber; ink painting with very little color
- 浅绛 light purple-red; ink painting with a little more and deeper
color
- 水墨 ink painting without color
- 破墨 broken ink (painting having an outline and the general con-
figuration of rocks defined)
- 泼墨 spilled ink (painting with broad full strokes and no outline)
- 乾笔 dry brush (with little moisture in the brush)
- 飞白 flying white (In this method the hairs of the brush are al-

- lowed to separate so that a stroke is not solid black but broken by streaks of untouched ground.)
- 白描 outline drawing without color or shading
- 没骨画 boneless painting; painting without outline (especially in color)
- 勾勒画 outlined painting (to be filled in with color)
- 指画 finger painting (using finger tips and nails in place of or in addition to the brush)
- 画法 style of painting; method
- 追 to follow or pursue (in the sense of searching out a true and pleasing likeness)
- 传 to make a portrait from a sitting model
- 摹 to copy (by tracing and transferring)
- 仿 to copy (used in colophons in the sense of “after” or “in the style of”)
- 临 to copy (with the original before the artist as a model)
- 勾 to outline (referring chiefly to landscape)
- 描 to outline (referring chiefly to men and objects)
- 皴 Cun; wrinkles; shading; modelling; contour lines
- 染 to dye; to put on a wash or tint of ink or color
- 渲 to put on a wash shading from light to dark or from one color into another
- 点 to dot; dotting; to put dots of ink or color in landscape
- 用朽 to use charcoal for sketching the composition before painting
- 正笔 upright brush (held and used in a vertical position for writing, outlining and some forms of shading and dotting)
- 侧笔 brush on one side (held and used in oblique position for washes and certain types of shading and dotting)
- 兼工带写 elaborate style, with a touch of the impressionistic; the merging of the classic with the symbolic
- 破笔泼墨 broken brush strokes and splashed ink
- 枯笔焦墨 dry brush work and dark ink
- 线条粗浑 bold and rough lines
- 手法完美 perfection of execution
- 笔力浑厚 bold and vigorous strokes

- 笔墨简静 in a simplicity of brushwork and a tranquility of mood
 笔工色丽 detailed brushwork and delicate coloring
 细秀淡雅 refined and graceful style
 清新俊逸 refreshing and innovative style
 古风拙笔 deliberate archaic simplicity and child-like awkwardness
 苍劲浑厚、气魄豪迈 a majestic style filled with strength and power
 明暗对比、立体感强 light and shadow and the comparatively strong effect of the third dimension
 奔放不羁 a bold and flowing style
 工整写实 a style realistic and filled with grace

特 技
















SPECIAL TECHNIQUES

- 树叶点 dots for leaves
 大混点 large confused dots; large turbid dots
 小混点 small confused dots; small turbid dots
 柏叶点 cedar (cypress) -leaf dots
 平头点 even (level) -head dots
 仰头点 raised (uplifted) -head dots; dots with uplifted heads
 垂头点 bowed-head dots; dots with bowed heads
 “个”字点 dots in the shape of the character “个”
 “个”字间双钩点 dots like the character “个”, which are close together giving the effect of double-outlined leaves
 “介”字点 leaves like the character “介”
 杉叶点 like “介字点”, but longer and with a tendency to curve inward
 扁笔点 slanting brush dots
 梧桐点 leaves of the Wu Tong tree
 垂叶点 drooping leaves
 攒三点 three converging dots, like “个字点” but inverted
 小攒聚点 slightly converging collected dots
 鼠足点 rat-foot dots; leaves like the print of a rat's foot
 松叶点 pine-leaf dots






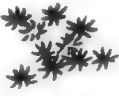







松针点 pine-needle dots
 水藻点 water-grass dots
 仰叶点 upright leaves
 细叶点 fine slender leaves
 菊花点 dots resembling chrysanthemum blossoms
 梅花点 dots like plum blossoms
 攒三聚五点 confused leaves (some of three, some of five strokes)
 椿叶点 long pinnate leaves
 细垂藤点 fine hanging-creeper dots
 藻丝点 seaweed, delicate as silk
 夹叶点 double leaves (usually arranged in a fan downward)
 夹叶法 the method of outlining leaves (outlined in black and then filled in with colors such as green, blue and red)
 陆地山脉点 dots for earth and mountains
 尖头点 sharp-headed dots
 雨雪点 rain-snow dots
 破笔点 broken brush dots
 胡椒点 tiny dots like black pepper
 “一”字点 dots like the character “一”
 垂藤点 hanging-creeper dots
 树木岩石皴 texture wrinkles (or strokes) for trees and rocks
 披麻皴 long, slightly wavy strokes (like spread-out hemp fibers)
 麻皮皴 hemp-fiber wrinkle
 短笔麻皮皴 short hemp-fiber wrinkle
 米点皴 the dotting method of Mi Fu (米芾)
 乱麻皴 confused-hemp wrinkle
 乱柴皴 confused brushwood wrinkle
 荷叶皴 lotus-leaf wrinkle
 解索皴 unravelled-rope wrinkle
 乱云(云头)皴 confused-cloud (thunder-head) wrinkle
 卷云皴 rolling cloud wrinkle
 牛毛皴 cattle hair wrinkle; Cun, like the hair of cattle
 破网皴 torn net wrinkle; Cun, resembling a torn net
 矾头皴 alum lump wrinkle

- 弹涡皱 pellet (as dropped into mud) -whirlpool (eddies)
wrinkle
- 鬼面 (皮) 皱 ghost (devil) -face wrinkle
- 豆瓣皱 split-bean wrinkle
- 刺梨皱 pear-thorn wrinkle
- 雨点皱 raindrop wrinkle
- 芝麻皱 sesame-seed wrinkle
- 小 (大) 斧劈皱 small (large) ax-cut wrinkle
- 斧凿皱 ax-split (cleavage) wrinkle (caused by striking with a
hammer or the back of an axe)
- 拖泥带水皱 dragged-through-mud-and-water wrinkle
- 泥里拔钉皱 nail-extracted-from-mud wrinkle
- 马牙皱 horse-tooth wrinkle
- 铁线皱 iron-wire wrinkle
- 雨淋墙头皱 rain-soaked wall-top wrinkle
- 骷髅皱 skeleton wrinkle
- 松皮鱼鳞皱 pine-bark resembling fish-scale wrinkle
- 松皮如绳皱 cedar-bark resembling rope wrinkle
- 衣纹“十八描” “eighteen outlines” in drawing garments
- 蚯蚓描 angle-worm line (stroke)
- 琴纹描 lute-string line (stroke)
- 曹衣描 Mr. Cao's clothing (stroke) from Cao Buxing (曹不
兴)
- 春蚕吐丝描 spring-silkworm-spitting-silk line (stroke)
- 行云流水描 scudding-cloud and running-water line; drifting-
cloud and flowing-water stroke
- 柳叶描 willow-leaf line (stroke)
- 竹叶描 bamboo-leaf line (stroke)
- 颤笔水纹描 quivering-brush water wave line (stroke)
- 蚂蜂描 wasp's body (waist) line
- 枣核描 date-stone (pit) line
- 橄榄描 olive-stone (pit) line
- 铁线描 iron-wire line
- 折芦描 broken (bent)-reed line
- 钉头鼠尾描 nail-head and rat-tail line
- 掘头钉描 driven-stake line

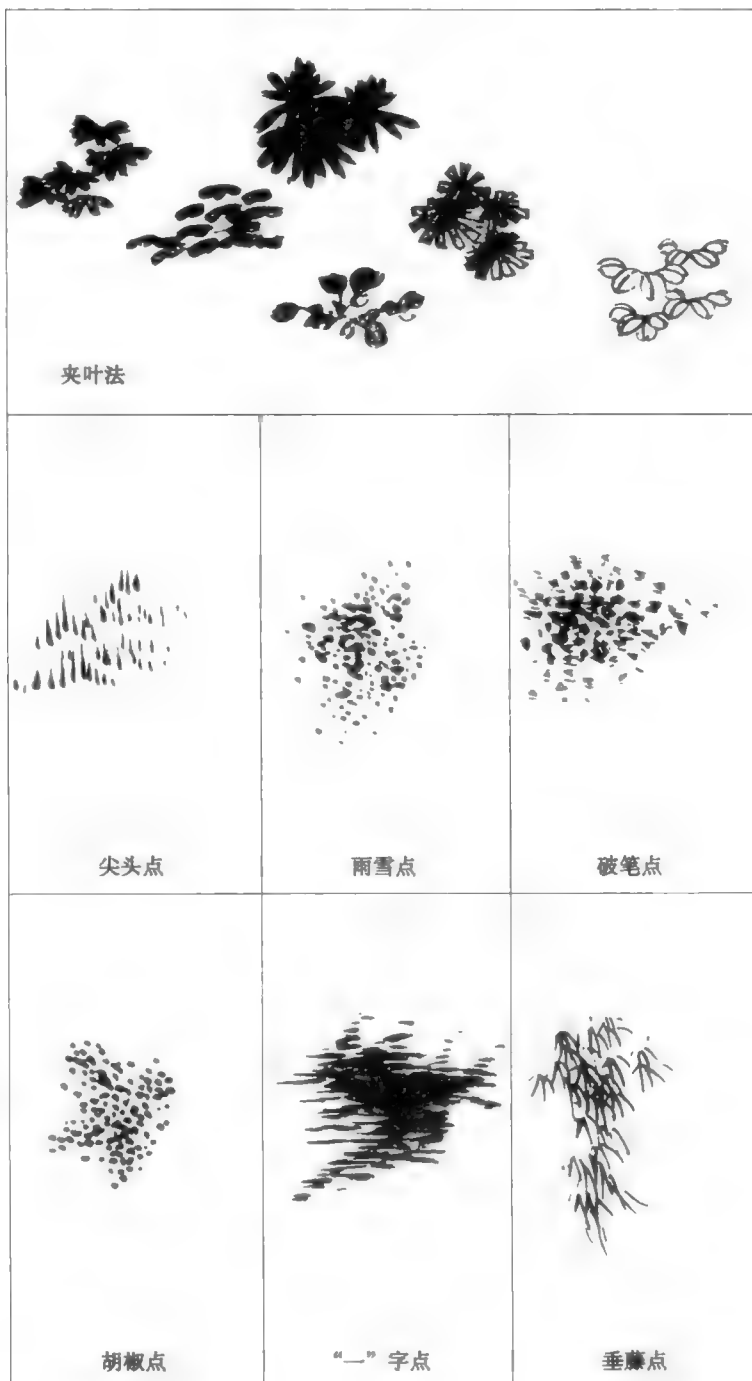
绘画技法图(一) Special Techniques I

			
大混点	小混点	柏叶点	平头点
			
仰头点	垂头点	“个”字点	“个”字间双钩点
			
“介”字点	杉叶点	扁笔点	梧桐点
			
垂叶点	攒三点	小攒聚点	

绘画技法图(二)
Special Techniques II

 <p>鼠足点</p>	 <p>松叶点</p>	 <p>松针点</p>	 <p>水藻点</p>
 <p>仰叶点</p>	 <p>细叶点</p>	 <p>菊花点</p>	 <p>梅花点</p>
 <p>横三厥五点</p>	 <p>梅叶点</p>	 <p>细垂藤点</p>	 <p>藻丝点</p>
 <p>夹叶点</p>	 <p>夹叶法</p>		

绘画技法图(三)
Special Techniques III



- 减笔描 blunt-brush line
- 柴笔描 (枯柴描) brushwood (or kindling) line
- 金玉刀描 golden-jade-knife line
- 龙角描 dragon-horn line
- 凤尾描 phoenix-tail line
- 混描 mixed (or double) line
- 水云绘法 the method of representing water and clouds
- 水口 water openings; water sources
- 溪涧涟漪法 the method of representing the rippling waves of shallow water and the movement of little streams
- 江海波涛法 the method of representing the billows of deep water
- 大瀑布 a large waterfall, wide and high
- 悬崖挂泉法 the method of representing the overhanging cliffs
- 山口分泉法 the method of dividing a stream (as it comes through a valley to a fall)
- 云流泉断法 the method of interrupting a stream with scudding clouds
- 画泉两叠法 the method of drawing a stream in two sections
- 细泉法 the method of showing a narrow stream opening out as it emerges from a gorge or rapids.
- 平泉法 the method of showing a stream in a comparatively level place
- 细勾云 fine hook (or outline) clouds
- 大勾云 large hook (or outline) clouds breaking by clouds
- 云断 breaking by clouds
- 吹云法 blown cloud method
- 钩粉法 white outline method

着 色 COLORS

- 红 (参见 P154)
- 深红 crimson
- 朱红 vermillion
- 粉红 (参见 P155)
- 鲜红 scarlet

暗红 buff
桃红 (参见 P155)
蕃红 saffron
赭红 umber
玫瑰红 rose
紫红 mauve
珊瑚红 (参见 P155)
黄 (参见 P154)
赭黄 sienna
桔黄 orange
金黄 golden
橙黄 salmon
杏黄 apricot
米黄 beige
褐黄 tan; ochre
柠檬黄 lemon
樱桃黄 cherry
蓝 (参见 P153)
碧蓝 azure
天蓝 (参见 P153)
紫罗兰 (参见 P154)
白 (参见 P152)
牙白 (参见 P152)
银白 silver
乳白 (参见 P153)
绿 (参见 P153)
翠绿 emerald
灰绿 sage green
铜绿 (参见 P117)
鹦鹉绿 parrot green
苹果绿 (参见 P153)
灰 gray
褐色 brown
灰褐色 taupe
栗色 maroon
古铜色 bronze

铅灰色 leaden
 铅丹 minium
 铅黄 massicot
 雄黄 realgar
 雌黄 orpiment
 单色 monochrome
 多色 polychrome
 色彩鲜艳 in gay colors
 对比强烈 in dazzling and strongly contrasting colors
 青绿色 blue-and-green; bluish green
 金碧色 gold-and-azure; goldish azure

印 款 SEALS AND SIGNATURES

引首（前幅） frontispiece
 款 the signature or colophon of the artist
 款识 inscription
 单款 a signature or colophon without reference to the name of the person, for whom the picture was painted
 双款 a colophon containing the name of the person, for (or to) whom the picture was painted (or dedicated), and the signature of the artist
 跋 inscription; postscript; epilogue
 题跋 an annotation on a picture or its mounting. It may be written by the artist himself or by other persons.
 另纸款识（后幅） with colophons by sb. on paper separate from the painting
 题诗 a poem inscribed on a painting or its mounting, usually in praise of, or inspired by the painting
 签名 signature
 印章 a seal or an impression
 名章 a seal bearing the artist's surname and formal name
 字（号）章 a seal bearing the artist's intimate name or pseudonym
 图章 colloquial names for seals

印文 (参见 P295)

闲章 seals with mottoes, etc., without the owner's name

连珠章 double or connected seals (one seal in the form of two, or giving the impression of two)

印色 vermilion pigment (used for seal impressions)

骑缝章 seal astride seams

白(朱)文 white (red) legends

阴(阳)文 negative (positive) legends

真迹 a genuine trace (or true work) of sb.

敬模 copied with respect by sb.

添补 interpolated by sb.

代笔 to paint on somebody's behalf; ghostly artist

某某画(笔) pinxit (= he or she painted, 常用于画家署名后, 主格为复数时用 pinxerunt, 略作 pinx. or pxt.)

某某作(画) fecit (= he or she made it, 用于画家署名后, 略作 fec.)

摹某氏某画 copied after such-and-such a painting by sb.

拟(依、同)某氏法 in the style (or manner) of sb.

收藏印 (参见 P293)

假画真印 genuine seal impressed on false scroll

画的年代和出处 the date and provenance of painting

作者签名盖章 artist's signature and seal

印文不辨 unidentified seal (impression)

作者不详 artist unknown

装 裱 MOUNTING

裱法 style of mounting

裱梢 to mount a picture by pasting it on a paper backing

天地 heaven and earth; the upper and lower portions of a mounting

四镶 quadruple border; the border immediately surrounding the picture

养局 protectors (narrow strips of brocade or a special silk, one at the top and one at the bottom of a picture and immedi-

- ately adjacent to it within 四镶)
- 风带 wind bands (two vertical strips at the top of a hanging scroll)
- 诗堂 poetry hall (a piece of silk or ornamental paper mounted directly above a picture, intended to be inscribed by the artist's friends or by collectors and connoisseurs)
- 纸裱 a front mounting of paper
- 绢裱 a front mounting of ordinary silk
- 绫裱 a front mounting of thin silk
- 蓑衣裱 rain-coat mounting
- 巾折裱 folded-cloth mounting
- 衬托纸 mounting paper
- 拖尾纸 towed-at-the-end paper (a long strip following the painting in a hand-scroll to receive annotations)
- 界绫 vertical strips of silk or paper (separating the picture from the superscription and the colophons)
- 本衬 mounted in the basic manner
- 云衬 mounted with a cloud pattern
- 文衬 mounted with figured silk
- 轴杆 the wooden rod around which the scroll is rolled
- 轴头 the ornamental butts of a scroll roller
- 标笺 labels (narrow strips gummed to the outsides of rolled pictures)
- 环 round eyes of copper (often provided with an ornamental clamp of copper plate)
- 缘 suspension loop (made of plain silk cord)
- 整装 uncut mounting
- 剪装 cut mounting
- 衬边 lining the borders
- 小托 adding the first backing
- 上壁 putting the scroll on the board
- 下壁 taking the scroll off the board
- 安轴 attaching the knobs to the roller
- 上杆 adding the roller to the scroll
- 上贴 adding the upper stave
- 贴笺 pasting the title label

揭 taking off the old backing

补 patching up holes

全 retouching

设色绢（纸）本 ink and color on silk (paper)

金笺纸本水墨册页八开 album of eight leaves, ink on gold-speckled paper

画家评论

COMMENTS ON ARTISTS

书画同源 Painting and calligraphy are of common origin.

诗书画合一 the combination of poetry, calligraphy and painting in one

绘画大师 master of painting

壁画家 muralist

收藏家 collector

鉴赏家 connoisseur

评论家 critic

杰作 masterpiece

原作 original; genuine

摹本 copy; reproduction

抄本 (参见 P180)

官本 government-owned scrolls

真迹 true specimen (or work)

赝品 fake; forgery; false

画院 Painting Academy

笔意 artistic conception revealed in the work of a calligrapher, painter or writer

笔势 style of brushwork

笔力雄健 powerful strokes

笔走龙蛇 dragons and snakes following the writing brush

行笔秀丽，布置茂密 in firm but supple brushwork and densely rich composition

善画墨竹，师法某某 be skilled in bamboo painting, following the style of sb.

善画花鸟，以水墨写意法见长 specializing in bird-and-flower

painting. sb. was renowned for his ink monochrome works in the free and spontaneous style.

善画翎毛草虫，学某某设骨法 sb. specialized in painting birds and insects, adopting as his model the Mogu (boneless) manner of sb.

画法主要继承南宋院体，兼师宋元各家之长，融汇变化，自成一家 Personal style was mainly evolved from the Southern Song academic tradition, but enriched by the study of the great masters of Song and Yuan periods.

自创新格，笔力浑厚，气势豪健，对后世影响颇为深远 Creating a personal style of his own which is marked by vigorous and powerful expression, he exerted tremendous influence on artists of later generations.

善画墨梅，笔力遒劲，与某某齐名 to be noted for one's prunus painting executed in vigorous manner, he enjoyed equal prominence with sb.

工笔写意二法兼精 equally adept in the Gongbi (detailed and meticulous) and Xieyi (free and spontaneous) manners

人物学某某白描法，山水师某某，笔墨愈加奔放 To take the Baimiao (plain drawing) manner of sb. as one's model for figure painting and the style of sb. for his landscapes, the personal style that he eventually evolved is characterized by greater freedom and more expressive brushwork.

山水宗某某，人物学某某，花鸟效某某，墨竹师某某亦善书 Sb. was his model for landscape painting while his figures followed the manner of sb. As for paintings of flower and bird and ink bamboo, sb. and sb. were his source of inspiration respectively. He was also proficient in calligraphy.

画法学某某，喜用枯笔焦墨 Basing his style on that of sb., he favoured the use of dry brushwork and dark ink.

尤长翎毛，豪放不羁，但多草率之笔 particularly noted for his representations of birds in a bold and spontaneous style, but worked in a more abbreviated and sketchy manner

善画山水，画法学某某，用笔纯熟，可与某某比肩 An ac-

complished landscape painter, sb. created a personal style in the tradition of sb.. His mastery of brushwork had been compared to that of the latter.

初师某某，后广学宋元名家，将南宋院体画精谨秀丽之画法与元人清隽淡雅之笔墨融为一体，形成自家面貌 Apart from studying with sb. in his early years, he also learned from the Song and Yuan masters. He shaped his own style by combining the refined and elegant style of the Southern Song Academy with the pure and subtle expressions of the Yuan masters.

被誉为“明四家”之一 to be hailed (or acclaimed) as one of the “Four Masters of the Ming Dynasty”

得某某法而稍变 He evolved his personal style from that of sb.

笔势纵横，设色浅淡，人物点缀极其潇洒 He combined a bold brush manner with light colors in his landscapes which were also enlivened by human figures.

当时极具影响 He exerted tremendous influence on contemporary artists.

长于泼墨法，于水墨写意画法上尤有创新 Best known for his skill in the Bomo (splashed ink) method he achieved important innovations in the free and spontaneous style.

画法集陈、陆二家之长，兼工带写，创“钩花点叶”派 Fusing the traditions of Chen and Lu, he created his personal style which combined the meticulous manner with a spontaneous expression, founding the so-called “Gouhua Dianye” school of flower painting.

中年用笔细秀，略近文、仇画法，晚年变为粗厚苍劲，自成一派 In his middle period, his style was meticulous and refined, showing the influence of Wen and Qiu. He came into his own as he grew older, and his work became rough and powerful.

画学分南北二宗，影响后世甚大 Through his paintings and writings on art, he elaborated the theory of Northern and Southern schools of painting, exerting tremendous influence on later generations.

与某某交往，所画山水风貌颇尽之，并时为某某代笔 He en-

joyed a close relationship with sb. His landscapes displayed stylistic affinities with the work of sb. It was believed that he sometimes painted on somebody's behalf.
 其画格调清润明秀，甚有笔意 His work of painting was distinguished by competent brushwork and graceful expression.
 活跃于 1607 - 1640 后，以卖画为生 F1. ca. 1607 - after 1640, he earned his living by selling his paintings.
 画风工细隽丽 His personal style is marked by technical virtuosity and delicacy of touch.
 笔力清劲，以细密见长 His own style is characterised by density of composition and detailed brushwork.

历代名画选 SELECTED MASTERPIECES OF PAINTING THROUGH THE AGES

战国 Warring States Period (475 - 221 B. C.)

帛画 Painting on Silk (unearthed from a Chu tomb at Changsha, Hunan Province)

西汉 Western Han Dynasty (206 B. C. - 24 A. D.)

帛画 Painting on Silk (unearthed from a Han tomb at Mawangdui, Changsha, Hunan Province)

东晋 Eastern Jin Dynasty (317 - 420)

顾恺之《女史箴图》卷 The Admonitions of an Instructress; The Admonitions of an Imperial Preceptress (handscroll) by Gu Kaizhi

顾恺之《洛神赋图》卷 Ode to the Goddess of the River Luo; Nymph of Luo River; The Nymph Illustrates a Romance Poem (handscroll) by Gu Kaizhi

隋 Sui Dynasty (581 - 618)

展子虔《游春图》卷 Traveling in Spring; Spring Excursion; On a Spring Outing (handscroll) by (or attributed to)

Zhan Ziqian

唐 Tang Dynasty (618 - 907)

阎立本《历代帝王图》卷 Portraits of Emperors through the Ages; Portraits of Ancient Emperors (handscroll) by Yan Liben

阎立本《步辇图》卷 Imperial Carriage; Emperor Taizong Receiving an Envoy from Tibet; The Imperial Litter Carried on Feet (handscroll) by Yan Liben

阎立本《职贡图》卷 Foreign Envoy with Tribute Bearers (handscroll) by Yan Liben

韩滉《五牛图》卷 Five Oxen (handscroll) by Han Huang

韩幹《牧马图》卷 Horses and Groom (handscroll) by Han Gan

周昉《挥扇仕女图》卷 Ladies Whiling Away Summer Hours; Noble Ladies Fanning Themselves; Beautiful Women with Their Fans (Handscroll) by Zhou Fang

唐人《明皇幸蜀图》卷 Emperor Minghuang's Traveling in Shu (handscroll), anonymous, Tang Dynasty

五代 Five Dynasties (907 - 960)

关同《关山行旅图》轴 Travelers in the Mountaints; Travelers through Mountain Passes (hanging scroll) by Guan Tong

赵岩《八达春游图》卷 Eight Gentlemen on a Spring Outing (handscroll) by Zhao Yan

胡瓌《卓歇图》卷 Taking a Rest on the Way after Hunting (handscroll) by Hu Gui

顾闳中《韩熙载夜宴图》卷 Han Xizai's Night Revels; The Night Revelry at Han Xizai's; The Nocturnal Entertainments of Han Xizai (handscroll) by Gu Hongzhong

董源《山口待渡图》卷 Waiting for the Ferry at a Mountain Pass (handscroll) by Dong Yuan

董源《潇湘图》卷 The Rivers Xiao and Xiang (handscroll) by Dong Yuan

巨然《秋山问道图》轴 Asking the Tao (or Way) in the Autumn Mountains (hanging scroll) by Ju Ran

黄筌《写生珍禽图》卷 Birds, Insects and Turtles (handscroll) by Huang Quan

黄居采《山鹧棘雀图》轴 Pheasant and Sparrows among Thorns and Bamboos (hanging scroll) by Huang Jucai

宋代 Song Dynasty (960 - 1279)

范宽《溪山行旅图》轴 Travelers among Mountains and Streams (hanging scroll) by Fan Kuan

许道宁《雪溪渔夫图》卷 Fishing on a Snowy River (handscroll) by Xu Daoning

郭熙《窠石平远图》轴 Rocky Lowland with Far Horizon (hanging scroll) by Guo Xi

崔白《双喜图》轴 Two Magpies and a Hare (hanging scroll) by Cui Bai

宋人《柳荫高士图》轴 Noble Scholar under a Willow (hanging scroll), anonymous, Song Dynasty

苏轼《古木怪石图》卷 Withered Tree and Grotesque Rock (handscroll) by Su Shi

王诜《渔村小雪图》卷 Fishing Village after Snow (handscroll) by Wang Shen

李公麟《摹韦偃牧放图》卷 Herding Horses, after Wei Yan (handscroll) by Li Gonglin

梁师闵《芦汀密雪图》卷 Quiet Islet in the Snow-capped Reed Pond (handscroll) by Liang Shimin

赵佶《柳鸦芦雁图》卷 Crows Perching on the Willows, Geese Dwelling by the Reeds (handscroll) by Zhao Ji, the Emperor Huizong

赵佶摹张萱《虢国夫人游春图》卷 Lady of the Guo State and Her Sisters Setting Forth on a Spring Outing (handscroll) by Zhao Ji, after that of Zhang Xuan of Tang Dynasty

张择端《清明上河图》卷 The Riverside Scene at the Qing-Ming Festival; Going Up-River at the Qing-Ming Festival (handscroll) by Zhang Zeduan

王希孟《千里江山图》卷 A Thousand Li of Mountains and Rivers (handscroll) by Wang Ximeng

- 赵伯驹《江山秋色图》卷 Autumn Scenery over (or on)
Mountains and Rivers (handscroll) by Zhao Boju
- 米友仁《潇湘奇观图》卷 Rare Views of Xiao and Xiang;
Wonderful Views of the Rivers Xiao and Xiang (hand-
scroll) by Mi Youren
- 米友仁《云山得意图》卷 Mountains in Clouds and Mist
(handscroll) by Mi Youren
- 扬无咎《四梅图》卷 Four Stages of Blossoming Plum (hand-
scroll) by Yang Wujiu
- 马和之《后赤壁赋图》卷 Second Ode to the Red Cliff (hand-
scroll) by Ma Hezhi
- 巨然《溪山兰若图》卷 Buddhist Retreat by Stream and Moun-
tain by Ju Ran
- 李唐《万壑松风图》卷 Whispering Pines in the Mountains (or
Myriad Ravines) (handscroll) by Li Tang
- 李唐《采薇图》卷 Gathering Ferns; Gathering Edible Wild
Herbs (handscroll) by Li Tang
- 刘松年《四景山水图》卷 Landscapes of the Four Seasons
(handscroll) by Liu Songnian
- 李迪《风雨归牧图》卷 Herdboys and Buffalos Returning Home
in the Rainstorm (handscroll) by Li Di
- 马远《月夜拨阮图》卷 Playing the Lute in Moonlight (hand-
scroll) by Ma Yuan
- 马远《踏歌图》卷 Peasants, Singing and Dancing, Returning
from Work; Singing and Dancing in the Spring (hand-
scroll) by Ma Yuan
- 夏圭《山水十二景图》卷 Twelve Views of Landscape (hand-
scroll) by Xia Gui
- 梁楷《八高僧故事图》卷 Illustrations to the Historical Tales of
Eight Eminent Monks (handscroll) by Liang Kai
- 梁楷《泼墨仙人图》轴 Ink-splash Recluse (hanging scroll)
by Liang Kai
- 赵葵《杜甫诗意图》卷 Illustrations in the Spirit of Du Fu's Po-
em; Scenes Described in Du Fu's Poem (handscroll)
by Zhao Kui
- 赵戴《江山万里图》卷 Ten Thousand Li of Rivers and

Mountains; Landscape of the Yangtze River (handscroll) by Zhao Fu

金代 Jin (Kin) Dynasty (1115 - 1254)

王庭筠《幽竹枯槎图》卷 Quiet Bamboo and Withered Tree (handscroll) by Wang Tingjun

武元直《赤壁夜游图》卷 Making a Journey to the Red Cliff at Night; A Night Trip at Chibi (handscroll) by Wu Yuanzhi

元代 Yuan Dynasty (1271 - 1368)

钱选《花鸟图》卷 Birds and Flowers (handscroll) by Qian Xuan

李衍《四清图》卷 Bamboo, Wutong Tree, Orchid and Rocks (handscroll) by Li Kan

高克恭《云横秀岭图》轴 Verdant Peaks above the Clouds (hanging scroll) by Gao Kegong

赵孟頫《渊明归去来辞》卷 After Tao Yuanming's Poem "Returning Home" (handscroll) by Zhao Mengfu

王振鹏《伯牙鼓琴图》卷 Boya Plucking the Strings of a Lute (handscroll) by Wang Zhenpeng

黄公望《富春山居图》卷 Dwelling in the Fuchun Mountains; Mountain Hermitage by the Fuchun River (handscroll) by Huang Gongwang

吴镇《芦花寒雁图》轴 Reeds and Chilly Geese (hanging scroll) by Wu Zhen

盛懋《秋江待渡图》轴 Waiting for the Ferry at a River Bank in Autumn (hanging scroll) by Sheng Mao

倪瓒《渔庄秋霁图》轴 Fishing Village in Sunny Autumn (hanging scroll) by Ni Zan

王蒙《青卞隐居图》轴 Hermitage in Green Bian Mountain; Hermitage in the Summer Mountains (hanging scroll) by Wang Meng

王蒙《桃源春晓图》卷 Vernal Dawn in the Peach Blossom Spring (handscroll) by Wang Meng

张渥《临李公麟九歌图》卷 The Nine Songs, after Li Gonglin
(handscroll) by Zhang Wo

方从义《武夷放棹图》轴 A Boat Going Downstream along the
Mt. Wuyi (hanging scroll) Fang Congyi

王冕《墨梅图》轴 Ink Blossoming Plums (hanging scroll) by
Wang Mian

张逊《双沟竹图》卷 Bamboos in Delineation Manner (hand-
scroll) by Zhang Xun

王渊《竹石集禽图》轴 Birds in the Thick of Bamboo and Rock
(hanging scroll) by Wang Yuan

明代 Ming Dynasty (1368 – 1644)

王履《华山图》册 Landscapes of Mt. Hua (album) by Wang
Lu

边景昭《竹鹤图》轴 Two Cranes among Bamboo Grove (hang-
ing scroll) by Bian Jingzhao

夏昶《湘江风雨图》卷 Wind and Rain on the Xiang River
(handscroll) by Xia Chang

戴进《关山行旅图》轴 Travelers through Mountain Passes
(hanging scroll) by Dai Jin

戴进《春游晚归图》卷 Returning Late from a Spring Outing
(handscroll) by Dai Jin

刘珏《夏云欲雨图》轴 Mountain Rain Coming from Summer
Clouds (hanging scroll) by Liu Jue

姚绶《秋江渔隐图》轴 Secluded Fisherman on an Autumn Riv-
er (hanging scroll) by Yao Shou

沈周《西山纪游图》卷 Travels on Xishan Mountain; Land-
scape of Xishan Mountain (handscroll) by Shen Zhou

沈周《策杖图》卷 Walking with a Staff; The Staff-bearing
Wanderer (handscroll) by Shen Zhou

吕纪《桂菊山禽图》轴 Laurel Blossoms, Chrysanthemum and
Birds (hanging scroll) by Lu Ji

林良《灌木集禽图》卷 Birds in Shrubbery (handscroll) by
Lin Liang

吴伟《渔乐图》卷 The Pleasure of Fishing (handscroll) by

Wu Wei

周臣《春山游骑图》轴 Horse-riders Traveling in the Spring
Mountains (hanging scroll) by Zhou Chen

唐寅《落霞孤鹭图》轴 Sunset Clouds Flying with the Solitary
Wild Dusk (hanging scroll) by Tang Yin

唐寅《毅庵图》卷 The Garden Retreat of Yi An (handscroll)
by Tang Yin

文徵明《绿荫长话图》轴 Long Conversation under Leafy Shade
(hanging scroll) by Wen Zhengming

文徵明《古木寒泉图》卷 Old Trees and Cold Waterfall
(handscroll) by Wen Zhengming

仇英《莲溪渔隐图》轴 Hermit Fisherman in a Lotus Stream
(hanging scroll) by Qiu Ying

仇英《桃源仙境图》轴 The Fairyland of Peach Blossoms Spring
(hanging scroll by Qiu Ying)

文嘉《琵琶行图》轴 Illustration to the Song of the Lute (hang-
ing scroll) by Wen Jia

陈洪绶《隐居十六观图》册 Sixteen Scenes from a Hermit's
Life (album leaves) by Chen Hongshou

徐渭《杂花图》卷 Miscellaneous Flowers and Plants (hand-
scroll) by Xu Wei

蓝瑛《白云红树图》轴 White Clouds around Red Trees on the
Mountains (hanging scroll) by Lan Ying

清代 Qing Dynasty (1644 - 1911)

王时敏《浮岚暖翠图》卷 Verdant Peaks (handscroll) by
Wang Shimin

程正揆《江山卧游图》卷 Dream Journey among Rivers and
Mountains (handscroll) by Cheng Zhengkui

项圣谟《王维诗意图》册 Illustrations in the Spirit of Wang
Wei's Poems (album) by Xiang Shengmo

原济《搜尽奇峰打草稿图》卷 Searching Everywhere for Won-
derful Peaks (handscroll) by Yuan Ji

王鉴《长松仙阁图》轴 Tall Pines and Immortal Places on the
Mountain (hanging scroll) by Wang Jian

- 王翬《重江叠嶂图》卷 Multipeaked Mountains with Flowing Streams (handscroll) by Wang Hui
- 王翬《千崖万壑图》卷 Countless Peaks and Vales; A Thousand Cliffs and Myriad Ravines (handscroll) by Wang Hui
- 弘仁《黄山天都峰图》轴 Tiandu Peak of Mt. Huangshan (hanging scroll) by Hong Ren
- 肖晨《杨柳归牧图》轴 Herdboy Returning Home via Willow Embankment (hanging scroll) by Xiao Chen
- 髡残《雨洗山根图》轴 Rain Washes the Foot of the Mountain (hanging scroll) by Kun Can
- 髡残《层岩叠壑图》轴 Cliffs and Ravines of Mountain (hanging scroll) by Kun Can
- 吴历《拟古脱古山水》轴 The Continuing and Rejecting the Classic Inheritance Landscape (hanging scroll) by Wu Li
- 龚贤《木叶丹黄图》轴 Sparse Woods on Autumn Mountain (hanging scroll) by Gong Xian
- 朱耷《河上花图》卷 Lotus Pond (handscroll) by Zhu Da
- 吴历《静深秋晓图》轴 A Quiet Dawn in Late Autumn (hanging scroll) by Wu Li
- 王原祁《为问亭作山水》册 Landscapes Made for Wen Ting (album) by Wang Yuanqi
- 禹之鼎《王士禛放鹧图》卷 Illustrations in the Spirit of Wang Shizhen's Poem of "Letting Silver Pheasant Fly Free" (handscroll) by Yu Zhiding
- 袁江《蓬莱仙岛图》轴 Penglai, Isle of Immortals (hanging scroll) by Yuan Jiang
- 华岩《白云松舍图》轴 Thatched Cottages in White Clouds and Green Pines (hanging scroll) by Hua Yan
- 罗聘《人物山水》册 Landscapes and Figures (album) by Luo Pin
- 郎世宁《平安春信图》轴 Tranquil Spring (hanging scroll) by Lang Shining (G. Castiglione)
- 冷枚《梧桐双兔图》轴 Two Rabbits Beneath a Wutong Tree

(hanging scroll) by Leng Mei

任熊《自画像》轴 Self-Portrait (hanging scroll) by Ren Xiong

任颐《苏武牧羊图》轴 Su Wu Herding Sheep (hanging scroll) by Ren Yi

十四 织绣

TEXTILES AND EMBROIDERY

织 物

TEXTILES

- 织品、织物 fabric
- 绸 silk; silk fabric
- 暗花绸 silk with veiled pattern
- 印花绸 silk with hand-printed pattern
- 花绸 figured silk
- 彩绸 colored silk
- 染色绸 dyed silk
- 夹纻绸 woven silk
- 织金绸 silk woven with gold thread
- 潞绸 Lu silk; silk of Luzhou
- 江绸 Jiang silk; silk of Nanjing
- 和田绸 Hetian silk; silk of Hetian
- 鸭江绸 Yajiang tussah pongee
- 缣 fine silk
- 绡 raw silk; raw silk fabric
- 锦、织锦 brocade; polychrome weaving
- 堆锦 brocade embossed with pattern
- 经锦 warp-patterned brocade
- 纬锦 weft-patterned brocade
- 织金锦 gold-woven brocade; gold-thread-woven brocade
- 织银锦 silver-woven brocade; brocade woven with silver thread
- 金宝地锦 brocade with design on a patterned ground woven with
gold and silver thread
- 绒圈锦 pile-loop brocade

唐锦 brocade of the Tang Dynasty
 宋锦 brocade of the Song Dynasty
 宋式锦 Song-styled brocade
 回回锦 Mohammedam brocade
 云锦 Yun brocade; brocade of Nanjing; figured brocade
 壮锦 Zhuang brocade; brocade of Zhuang
 蜀锦 Shu brocade; brocade of Sichuan
 缎 satin
 花缎 figured satin
 暗花缎 satin with veiled pattern
 修花缎 broche satin
 织金缎 satin woven with gold thread; gold-thread-woven satin
 片金缎 gold-foiled satin.
 二色缎 two-colored satin
 鸳鸯缎 double-faced satin with pattern
 织锦缎 tapestry satin
 双面缎 reversible satin
 妆花缎 satin woven with colored pattern
 素面缎 plain satin
 古香缎 Guxiang satin; Suzhou brocade
 广缎 Guang satin; Satin of Guangdong
 漳缎 Zhang satin; Satin of Zhangzhou
 泰西缎 Taixi satin (a reversible fabric woven by imported machine in the late Qing Dynasty)
 贡缎 Palace satin
 绛丝 silk tapestry; "carved silk"
 绉 bengaline; a kind of thick silk
 绌 fairly stiff silk; thin silk; twill-weave silk; damask silk
 板绌 thick damask
 花绌 figured damask
 暗花绌 thin silk with veiled pattern
 堆绌 thin silk applique
 罗 silk gauze; thick gauze
 杭罗 Hang silk gauze; silk gauze of Hangzhou
 二色罗 two-colored silk gauze
 暗花罗 silk gauze with veiled design

纱 gauze
 绮 figured woven silk material; damask; twilled silk cloth
 纨 processed fine and light silk; fine silk fabrics
 纳纱 petit-point gauze
 片金纱 gold-foiled silk gauze
 戮纱 silk taffeta
 绛红纨 deep red silk
 纨素 fine, white silk
 绢 thin, tough silk; plain silk
 绉 crape; crepe
 帛(丝织品的总称) silks (clothes made from silk)
 丝绒、经绒、天鹅绒 velvet
 棉绒、纬绒、平绒 velveteen
 印花棉绒 velveret
 驼绒 camel's-hair cloth
 漳绒 Zhang velvet; velvet of Zhangzhou
 铺绒 silk embroidered by "satin stitch" method
 双层织物、改机 double woven jacquard
 双面织物 reversible fabric
 丝织物 silk fabric
 缙 an ancient term for silk fabric
 麻织物 hemp fabric
 毛织物 woolens; woollen fabric
 氍毹 a woollen fabric produced in Tibet
 棉织物 cotton textile
 平纹织物 plain cloth
 斜纹织物 twill; drill

刺 绣

EMBROIDERY

绣品 embroidered works; embroideries
 绣花 do embroidery; to embroider
 挑花 cross-stitch work; hand stitch work
 补花、贴花 applique; patchwork
 线 thread

粗（细）线	thick (thin) thread
棉线	cotton thread
丝线	silk thread
绒线	floss for embroidering
绣线	embroidery thread
彩线	colored thread
金线	gold thread
金银线	gold and silver thread
绣花丝线	filoselle; floss silk
绣工、刺绣活	needlework
缂绣	cut embroidery
织绣	tapestry and embroidery
苏绣	Suzhou embroidery, one of the four famous embroideries
湘绣	Hunan (or Changsha) embroidery, one of the four famous embroideries
蜀绣	Sichuan (or Chengdu) embroidery, one of the four famous embroideries
粤绣	Guangdong (or Guangzhou) embroidery, one of the four famous embroideries
汴绣	Kaifeng (or Bian) embroidery
瓯绣	Wenzhou (or Ou) embroidery
鲁绣	Shandong (or Lu) embroidery in the Ming Dynasty
顾绣	Gu's embroidery; embroidery of Gu (Gu Minshi) family in the Ming Dynasty
京绣	Beijing embroidery
衣线绣	needlepoint embroidery
丝绣	silk embroidery
绒绣	woolen embroidery; crewelwork
发绣	hair embroidery
珠绣	glass-beaded embroidery
锁绣	chain-stitch embroidery
贴刺绣	applique embroidery
手工绣	hand embroidery
机绣	machine embroidery
盘金绣	cord-stitch embroidery
平绣	plain embroidery

双面绣 double-faced embroidery; embroidery on both sides

十字绣 cross-stitch embroidery

长寿绣 embroidery of longevity pattern

彩绣 colored embroidery

金银线绣 embroidery done with gold and silver threads

纹 饰

DECORATIONS

暗花 (参见 P158)

素花 plain pattern

浮花 embossed pattern

通花 figured on both sides

满花 all-over pattern

格子花 checker pattern

锦字 characters embroidered on brocade or tapestry

十二章 the twelve imperial emblems

十二章纹 (日、月、星辰、山、龙、华虫、宗彝、藻、火、
粉米、黼、黻) the Twelve Ornaments embroidered on imperial
dragon robes conventionally representing the sun, the
moon, a constellation, a mountain, the dragon, the
pheasant, two ritual vessels, an aquatic grass, flames of
fire, grains of rice or millet, an axe, and a device of
doubtful origin. The emperor wore all twelve, other per-
sons wore only those appropriate to their rank.

八宝平水纹 design of Eight Treasures and smooth waves

八宝立水纹 design of Eight Treasures and twilled waves

龙纹 dragon design

正龙纹 front-viewed dragon design; design of facade view of
dragon

侧龙纹 profile image of dragon

行龙纹 flying dragon design

蟠龙纹 (参见 P161)

团龙纹 (参见 P242)

二龙戏珠纹 two dragons playing with a pearl; two dragons pursu-
ing a pearl

百花撵龙纹 design of dragon following with flowers
 暗夔龙凤纹 veiled design of Kui-dragon and phoenix
 龙凤穿花纹 design of dragon and phoenix among flowers
 云龙纹 (参见 P258)
 海水云龙纹 design of dragon among clouds above the sea
 蟒纹 python design
 寸蟒纹、金钱蟒纹 medallion of python
 如意纹 "S"-shaped design
 如意云纹 (参见 P242)
 万福万寿纹 auspicious design of bats and character Shou (longevity)
 吉祥纹 design of auspicious symbols
 百蝶彩纹 design of butterflies of various colors
 四合如意纹 design of headpieces of Ruyi-sceptre in checks
 八仙图 design of Eight Immortals
 八仙庆寿图 design of Eight Immortals on birthday celebration
 天鹿纹 rabbit design
 天鹿桂月图 design of rabbit and laurel in the moon
 龟背纹 tortoise-shell design
 流云纹 design of drifting clouds
 对饮纹 design of a drinking pair
 回纹 (参见 P129)
 联珠纹 pearl-bordered medallion
 博古纹 design of antiques
 杂宝纹 design of miscellaneous treasures
 冰梅纹 design of ice-crack and plum blossom
 瑞花纹 design of auspicious flowers
 团花纹 floral medallion; rosette
 宝相纹 rosette design; design of composite flowers
 灵芝纹 Lingzhi fungus design; mythic fungus design
 牡丹纹 peony design
 暗梅兰松竹纹 veiled design of plum blossom, orchid, pine and bamboo
 海水江崖纹 design of stylized waves and mountain peaks
 曲水纹 design of meandering water
 寿山福海纹 design of longevity as mountains and happiness as

the sea

八团喜相逢纹 eight medallions of two colored butterflies facing each other

花鸟(蝶)纹 design of birds (butterflies) and flowers

对鸟纹 confronting bird design

寒雀纹 design of wintery magpies

鸳鸯戏莲纹 design of mandarin duck playing with lotus

勾莲纹 delineated lotus design

方格朵花纹 design of flowers in checks

卷草纹 (参见 P260)

蔓草纹 trailing grass design

竹石纹 design of bamboo and rocks

云鹤纹 design of cranes and clouds

缠枝纹 design of interlocking sprays; design of winding branches

串枝纹 design of trailing branches

折枝纹 design of disconnected sprays

连枝纹 design of linking sprays; design of connected branches

兰桂齐芳纹 design of magnolia and sweet-scented osmanthus

万字菊纹 design of swastika and chrysanthemum

葫芦双喜纹 design of calabash and the character "Shuangxi" (double happiness)

汉瓦纹 design of Han-styled tile

岁寒三友纹 design of the "three cold-weather friends" — pine, bamboo and plum blossom

三羊开泰纹 design of three rams symbolizing the auspicious beginning of a New Year

九羊消寒图 design of nine rams chasing away the cold

青碧山水图 design of blue and green landscape

色彩 color; hue

本色、自然色 natural color

色调 color tone

素色 plain color

多种色 multicolor; many hues

染色 dye; coloration

配色 color matching

补色 complementary colors

底色 color of ground
浓色 rich in color
淡色 light color; undertone; tint

古代服饰 ANCIENT COSTUMES AND ACCESSORIES

服装 costume; dress; clothing; clothes; attire
服饰 dress and personal adornment; costumes and accessories
古装 ancient costume
中装 traditional Chinese clothing
满装、旗装 Manchu attire; Manchu dress
清宫服饰 costumes and accessories of the Qing court
上衣 upper clothes
下裳 lower skirt
礼服 ceremonial dress worn by emperor at solemn occasions
朝服 court dress
朝袍 court robe worn by emperor, empress and imperial concubines
朝褂 court vest (a sleeveless garment worn by the empress over the court robe)
朝裙 court dress (a one-piece dress worn by the empress)
吉服 formal dress worn by the emperor for occasions of less importance
龙袍 dragon robe; imperial robe
五爪龙袍 imperial robe embroidered with five-clawed dragon
皇帝龙褂 dragon gown worn by the emperor over the formal dress
后妃龙褂 dragon garment worn by the empress and imperial concubines
常服 ordinary dress (worn by the emperor for ordinary occasions)
皇帝常服袍(褂) ordinary robe (gown or jacket) worn by the emperor
后妃常服袍(褂) ordinary robe (garment) worn by the empress and imperial concubines
行服 travelling dress worn by the emperor for making inspection

tours

行服袍 (褂) travelling robe (jacket)

行裳 travelling skirt

端罩 fur overcoat (a winter overcoat made of purple marten or black fox fur, with the hair on the outside)

戎服 martial attire

大阅胄甲 a suit of armour worn by the emperor for reviewing troops

便服 informal dress

马褂 mandarin coat; mandarin dress

紧身 close-fitting undergarment

氅衣 cloak

衬衣 undercoat

褂襕 long vest

敝领 shoulder cape; collar drape

品官礼服 high official's ceremonial dress

蟒袍 python robe; robe embroidered with python design

五爪九蟒蟒袍 robe embroidered with nine five-clawed pythons

四爪八蟒蟒袍 robe embroidered with eight four-clawed pythons

四爪五蟒蟒袍 robe embroidered with five four-clawed pythons

补服 official vestment embroidered with a patch of pattern marking the rank; official vestment embroidered with insignia badge

补子 Bu Zi, a patch of pattern marking the rank; a decorative plaque; a rank badge

圆补 round plaque with dragon design used by the imperial clansmen over the rank of Bei Zi

方补 square plaque with bird or animal design used by officials

黼 square patch on official's costume embroidered with white and black axes

文官补子 a patch of bird design used by the civil official

一品文官补子 (仙鹤) patch of crane design for civil official of the 1st grade

二品文官补子 (锦鸡) patch of gold pheasant design for civil official of the 2nd grade

三品文官补子 (孔雀) patch of peacock design for civil official

- of the 3rd grade
- 四品文官补子（云雁） patch of wild goose design for civil official of the 4th grade
- 五品文官补子（白鹇） patch of silver pheasant design for civil official of the 5th grade
- 六品文官补子（鹭鸶） patch of egret design for civil official of the 6th grade
- 七品文官补子（鹓鶵） patch of mandarin duck design for civil official of the 7th grade
- 八品文官补子（鸂鶒） patch of quail design for civil official of the 8th grade
- 九品文官补子（练雀） patch of paradise flycatcher design for civil official of the 9th grade
- 武官补子 patch of animal design used by the military officer
- 一品武官补子（麒麟） patch of unicorn design for military officer of the 1st grade
- 二品武官补子（狮子） patch of lion design for military officer of the 2nd grade
- 三品武官补子（豹子） patch of leopard design for military officer of the 3rd grade
- 四品武官补子（虎） patch of tiger design for military officer of the 4th grade
- 五品武官补子（熊） patch of bear design for military officer of the 5th grade
- 六品武官补子（彪） patch of young tiger design for military officer of the 6th grade
- 七、八品武官补子（犀牛） patch of rhinoceros design for military officers of the 7th and 8th grades
- 九品武官补子（海马） patch of sea horse design for military officer of the 9th grade
- 霞帔 embroidered tasselled cape worn as part of ceremonial dress by noblewomen
- 袄裙 fur-skirt worn by official's wife
- 冠帽 headgear
- 朝冠 court hat; crown; hat of ceremony
- 皇帝朝冠 emperor's court hat decorated with gold dragons

- 皇后朝冠 empress' court hat decorated with gold phoenixes
- 帝(后)冬(夏)朝冠 court hat worn by the emperor (empress) in winter (summer)
- 吉服冠 formal hat; hat worn with formal dress
- 常服冠 ordinary hat; hat worn with ordinary dress
- 如意帽(皇帝便服冠) informal hat; hat worn with informal dress
- 行服冠 travelling hat; hat worn with travelling dress
- 喜字冠 imperial bride's hat decorated with the character "Shuangxi" (double happiness)
- 品官朝冠 official's court hat with different top decoration and feather streamer which diversifies according to the rank
- 官吏冬朝冠 winter court hat for the official
- 官吏夏纬帽 summer court hat for the official
- 帽顶 hat finial; hat top
- 朝冠顶 court hat finial
- 吉服冠顶 formal hat finial
- 便服冠顶 informal hat finial
- 帽顶装饰 hat top decoration; hat finial decoration
- 红宝石帽顶(一品官) hat with ruby finial for officials of the 1st grade
- 珊瑚帽顶(二品官) hat with coral finial for officials of the 2nd grade
- 蓝宝石帽顶(三品官) hat with sapphire finial for officials of the 3rd grade
- 青金石帽顶(四品官) hat with lapis lazuli finial for officials of the 4th grade
- 水晶帽顶(五品官) hat with crystal finial for officials of the 5th grade
- 砗磲帽顶(六品官) hat with white shell finial for officials of the 6th grade
- 素金帽顶(七品官) hat with gold finial for officials of the 7th grade
- 镂花阴文金帽顶(八品官) hat with gold openwork finial with inscription in intaglio for officials of the 8th grade
- 镂花阳文金帽顶(九品官) hat with gold openwork finial with

- inscription in relief for officials of the 9th grade
- 顶戴 rank button (bead) worn on official's hat as a sign of rank
- 花翎 peacock feather worn on the back of the official's hat
- 顶戴花翎 ruby and coral buttons and peacock feathers worn on officials' hats
- 无眼蓝翎 blue pheasant feather streamer without eye
- 单眼花翎 peacock feather streamer with single eye; single-eyed peacock feather streamer
- 双眼花翎 peacock feather streamer with two eyes; double-eyed peacock feather streamer
- 三眼花翎 peacock feather streamer with three eyes; three-eyed peacock feather streamer
- 翎管 feather fastener; plume-holder
- 乌纱帽 black gauze hat worn by officials
- 缨帽 ceremonial hat with red tassel
- 凤冠 phoenix coronet for a woman of noble rank; a headgear for a lady or bride
- 帽正 a badge made of precious stone placed on the front center of the band of a hat
- 帽花、帽饰 hat ornaments; ornaments on the front of a hat
- 帽顶算盘结 red silk knot in the shape of an abacus bead on the hat top
- 帽顶红绒结 red knotted floss on the hat top
- 幌 hanging streamer
- 腰带 belt; girdle
- 饰带 decorative belt
- 珠饰带 beaded belt
- 朝带 court belt
- 龙纹金方(圆)版饰带 court belt decorated with square (round) gold plaque with dragon design
- 吉服带 formal belt; belt worn with formal dress
- 行服带 travelling belt; belt worn with travelling dress
- 带饰 belt ornaments
- 带板 belt plaque
- 带钩 (参见 P128)
- 龙首带钩 dragon-head-shaped belt hook

- 带扣 (参见 P128)
- 带环 belt ring
- 带瓦 belt ornament in the shape of a tile
- 带头 belt-end ornament
- 凉带 summer belt
- 流苏 tassel
- 饰件 accessory
- 朝珠 a string of court beads; court necklace; court rosary containing 108 pearl beads
- 东珠朝珠 a string of court beads made of pearls from northeastern China
- 风眼菩提朝珠 court beads of Bodhi seeds
- 背云 Beiyun, an ornament of a string of court beads
- 挂刀、腰刀 a knife carried at the waist; a knife worn on the girdle
- 罗盘 compass
- 牙签筒 toothpick case
- 火镰套 purse for flint steel
- 鼻烟壶 (参见 P151)
- 方形腰包 square waistbag
- 荷包 small embroidered handbag; pouch; purse
- 香囊 sachet; perfume bag; pomander
- 烟丝袋 embroidered tobacco leaves bag
- 旱烟袋 long-stemmed Chinese pipe
- 玉烟咀 jade mouthpiece of a long-stemmed Chinese pipe
- 手串 rosary-bracelet; a string of beads
- 十八子手串 a string of 18 beads
- 手镯 (参见 P173)
- 软镯 bracelet of pearls
- 耳饰 ear ornaments
- 耳环 earring
- 耳珰 eardrop
- 佩 pendant
- 坠角 pendant-end
- 彩悦 a kind of silk kerchief
- 遮眉勒 crocheted headband

发勒 hair clasp
 簪笄、发钗 hairpin
 扁方 hair crosspiece; flat square hairpin
 钿子 headdress
 钿花 headdress flowers
 钿口 headdress accessory
 头花 hair ornaments
 步摇 dangling hairpin
 挖耳钗 earpick-hairpin
 金约 Jinyue (court hat band)
 领约 Lingyue (neckpiece; neckband; neck-ring)
 鞋袜 footgear
 鞋类 footwear
 朝靴 court boots
 花盆底鞋 shoes with flower-pot-shaped sole
 元宝底鞋 shoes with silver-ingot-shaped sole
 高底鞋 high-soled shoes
 绣花鞋 embroidered shoes
 珠饰鞋 beaded shoes
 袜类 hosiery
 高靽袜 stockings
 中靽袜 half stockings
 矮靽袜 socks
 民间服装 folk costumes
 男装 men's clothing; menswear
 女装 women's clothing; women's costume
 旗袍 a close-fitting woman's dress with high neck and slit skirt; a
 Chinese-style gown; cheongsam
 袍 robe; long gown
 褂 a short gown with round collar and center buttonholes
 大褂、长衫 long garment; unlined long gown
 马褂 mandarin jacket worn over a gown
 布袍 cotton robe
 丝绸袍 silk robe
 锦袍 embroidered robe
 单袍 unlined robe

- 夹袍 lined robe
- 棉袍 cotton-padded garment; cotton-quilted garment
- 皮袍 fur-lined garment
- 丝棉袍 silk-floss-padded garment
- 大氅 cloak
- 大襟袄 (袍) a Chinese-style jacket (garment) with buttons on the right forepart
- 对襟袄 a Chinese-style center-buttoned jacket; a Chinese-style jacket with buttons down the front
- 小袄 a short close-fitting jacket
- 夹袄 a lined jacket or coat
- 棉袄 cotton-padded jacket
- 棉裤 cotton-padded trousers
- 皮袄 fur-lined jacket
- 坎肩、背心、马甲 waistcoat; vest; sleeveless jacket
- 男装坎肩 male vest
- 女装坎肩 shoulder cape shaped like the male vest
- 大襟坎肩 long-front vest
- 对襟坎肩 center-vented vest
- 琵琶襟坎肩 side-vented vest
- 棉坎肩 cotton-padded waistcoat
- 裙 skirt
- 凤尾裙 phoenix-tail skirt
- 百褶裙 pleated skirt
- 布鞋 cotton shoes; cloth shoes
- 皂鞋 black cloth shoes
- 皂靴 black cloth boots
- 毡靴 felt boots
- 棉鞋 cotton-padded shoes
- 云头棉鞋 cotton-padded shoes of silk damask with cloud-patterned toe
- 尖足绣花小脚鞋 tiny embroidered shoes worn on bound feet
- 布袜 cloth stockings
- 线袜 thread socks
- 瓜皮帽 a small round skullcap; skullcap; a kind of skullcap resembling the rind of half a watermelon

- 风帽 wind hat; wind bonnet; hood
- 瓦楞帽 common man's hat with depression in middle; corrugated man's hat
- 方巾 kerchief (worn by male scholars of the Ming Dynasty); a kind of hood (worn by intellectuals in the Ming Dynasty)
- 头盖、头巾 head-cover; scarf; kerchief
- 地毯 carpet; rug
- 壁毯 tapestry
- 花毯、挂毯 arras
- 毛毯 woolen blanket
- 床帷 bed curtain
- 椅披 slipcover for a chair
- 绣垫 embroidered cushion
- 织绣画 picture embroidered on silk
- 织锦画 picture woven in silk
- 风景织锦 landscape woven in silk
- 裱片 mounted cloth fragment
- 经皮 Buddhist sutra cover
- 包首 wrapper
- 疋料 a bolt of cloth; a roll of cloth
- 衣料 clothing material; material for clothing; dress material
- 成衣 ready-made clothes
- 衣领 collar
- 圆领 round collar
- 花边领 lace collar
- 襟 front of a garment
- 衽 lapel of a garment
- 大襟 the front of a Chinese garment with buttons on the right
- 对襟 a kind of Chinese-style jacket with buttons down the front
- 衩 slit; vent
- 裾 overlap of a robe; the full front and back of a Chinese gown
- 下摆 hem-line
- 袖 sleeve
- 无袖 sleeveless
- 长袖 long sleeve
- 短袖 short sleeve

宽袖 loose sleeve
 紧袖 tight sleeve
 箭袖 horsehoof-shaped cuff
 马蹄袖 horseshoe cuff
 钮扣 button
 鑲金扣 gilt button
 金（银、翡翠、珊瑚）扣 gold (silver, jadeit, coral) button
 小石粒铜扣 small bead-shaped copper button
 衣服下摆（下幅） the lower hem of a gown, jacket or shirt
 布 cloth
 粗布 coarse cloth
 细布 fine cloth
 棉布 cotton cloth
 色布 dyed cloth
 花布 figured cloth
 夏布 grass cloth
 土布 handwoven (or handloomed) cloth; homespun cloth
 质地 texture
 质量 quality
 规格 specification
 幅宽 width
 幅面 breadth
 单幅 single breadth
 双幅 double breadth
 衣服尺寸 measurements of a dress
 衣服身长 length of a dress
 肩宽 width of shoulder
 两袖通长 overall length of two sleeves
 袖口宽 width of cuff
 腰围 waistline
 裙长 length of skirt
 开叉 vent (or slit) in the sides of a dress
 左（右）开叉长 length of the left (right) slit
 前（后）开裾长 length of the full front (back) of a Chinese gown
 下摆宽 width of the lower hem of a dress

披领长 (宽) length (width) of collar drape
 垂带长 length of streamer
 工艺 technology; craft
 织造技艺 weaving technology
 手工织造法 hand-woven techniques
 手工镂空 hand-crochet
 绞缬法 tie-and-dye method
 (布) 绞缬法 twined textile
 织结 knot
 捻、搓 twist
 经线 warp
 纬线 woof (or weft)
 纬线起花 weft-patterned
 压金银线 couched gold and silver threads
 金 (银) 累丝 in gold (silver) filigree; gold or silver filigreed
 缝 sew; stitch
 缀 sew on
 补缀 patch
 缉 sew in close stitches
 缉米珠 sew seed pearls in close stitches on
 钉珊瑚珠 sew coral beads on
 手工缝纫 hand sewing
 缝纫技巧 sewing skill
 蜡染 wax printing; batik
 印染 printing and dyeing

织绣精品选

SELECTED WORKS OF EMBROIDERY

宋沈子蕃缂丝《梅花寒鹊图》 Silk tapestry with pattern of plum blossom and wintry magpies, by Shen Zifan, Song Dynasty

宋朱克柔缂丝《鹤鸽图》 Silk tapestry with wagtail pattern, by Zhu Kerou, Song Dynasty

元缂丝《八仙图》轴 Silk tapestry with pattern of the Eight Immortals, hanging scroll, Yuan Dynasty

- 元缙丝《赵孟頫书早朝诗》 Silk tapestry with the calligraphy of the poem "Early Morning Court" by Zhao Mengfu, Yuan Dynasty
- 明韩希孟绣《宋元名迹册》 Album of masterpieces of the Song and Yuan dynasties, embroidered by Han Ximeng, Ming Dynasty
- 明缙丝《瑶池集庆图》轴 Silk tapestry with pattern of the Assembly of Immortals in Fairyland, hanging scroll, Ming Dynasty
- 明杏黄祥云蟒妆花纱袍 Apricot gauze robe with pattern of four-clawed dragons and clouds, Ming Dynasty
- 明大红地龟背如意瑞华锦大氅 Cloak of brocade with pattern of tortoise-shell, Ruyi-sceptre and auspicious flowers over a red ground, Ming Dynasty
- 清明黄地纳纱彩云金龙朝袍 Petit-point gauze court robe with pattern of colored clouds and golden dragons over a bright yellow ground, Qing Dynasty
- 清蓝纱地描金云龙单朝袍 Unlined court robe of blue gauze with pattern of dragons among clouds in gold tracery, Qing Dynasty
- 清明黄缎绣彩云金龙夹朝袍 Lined court robe of bright yellow satin embroidered with design of colored clouds and golden dragons
- 清黄色暗八宝纹绸棉袍 Cotton-padded robe of yellow silk with veiled design of the eight Buddhist sacred emblems, Qing Dynasty
- 清明黄地云蝠团寿妆花缎棉袍 Cotton-padded robe of bright yellow satin with design of clouds, bats and medallions of character "Shou" (longevity), Qing Dynasty
- 清蓝缎织彩云金龙纹皮朝袍 Fur-lined court robe of blue satin woven with design of colored clouds and golden dragon, Qing Dynasty
- 清黑狐皮端罩 Winter overcoat of black fox fur, Qing Dynasty
- 清大红缎绣花卉夹氅衣 Lined cloak of bright red satin embroidered with floral design, Qing Dynasty
- 清绿纱绣折枝梅花金团寿单衬衣 Unlined undercoat of green

- gauze embroidered with pattern of plum blossom sprays and golden medallions of character "Shou" (longevity), Qing Dynasty
- 清月白缎织彩花蝶夹衬衣 Lined undercoat of bluish white satin woven with polychrome flowers and butterflies, Qing Dynasty
- 清湖色缙丝竹石纹坎肩 Waistcoat of light blue silk tapestry with bamboo and rock pattern, Qing Dynasty
- 清湖色缎绣藤萝夹马褂 Lined mandarin jacket of light blue satin embroidered with design of Chinese wistaria, Qing Dynasty
- 清康熙帝锁子金叶锦盔甲 A suit of brocade armour decorated with herringbone pattern and gold foils worn by Emperor Kangxi, Qing Dynasty
- 清乾隆明黄缎绣五彩云金龙盔甲 A suit of bright yellow satin armour embroidered with polychrome clouds and golden dragons, Qianlong period, Qing Dynasty
- 清黄缎绣金龙皇帝大阅甲 Yellow satin helmet and armour embroidered with golden dragon pattern worn by the emperor for reviewing troops, Qing Dynasty
- 清皇帝夏行服冠 Travelling hat worn by the emperor in summer, Qing Dynasty
- 清皇贵妃冬朝冠 Winter crown for the imperial honourable concubine, Qing Dynasty
- 清蓝漳绒串珠云头朝靴 Court boots of blue Zhang Velvet with a toe decorated with beaded pattern of clouds, Qing Dynasty
- 清明黄缎珠绣朝靴 Court boots of bright yellow satin with beaded embroidery, Qing Dynasty
- 清红缎绣花蝶高底鞋 High-soled shoes of red satin embroidered with pattern of flowers and butterflies, Qing Dynasty
- 清红缎绣金鱼元宝底鞋 Red satin shoes with silver-ingot-shaped sole embroidered with golden fish pattern, Qing Dynasty
- 清蓝缎织金龙凤高腰棉袜 Cotton-padded stockings of blue satin woven with golden dragon and phoenix design, Qing Dynasty

清白绫画花蝶短夹袜 Lined socks of thin white silk painted with
design of flowers and butterflies, Qing Dynasty

清金地几何花卉纹丝毯 Silk blanket with geometric and floral
pattern against a golden ground, Qing Dynasty

清金线地“玉堂富贵”壁毯 Tapestry with auspicious floral de-
sign over a gold-thread-woven ground, Qing Dynasty

十五 漆器

LACQUER WARE

类 别

CLASSIFICATION

- 单色漆 monochromatic lacquer ware
- 黑漆 black lacquer ware
- 朱漆 cinnabar lacquer ware
- 紫漆 purple lacquer ware
- 黄漆 yellow lacquer ware
- 绿漆 green lacquer ware
- 褐（栗）色漆 brown lacquer ware
- 金漆 golden lacquer ware
- 素漆 plain lacquer ware; undecorated lacquer ware
- 罩漆 coated with transparent lacquer ware
- 罩朱漆 cinnabar lacquer ware coated with transparent lacquer
- 罩黄漆 yellow lacquer ware coated with transparent lacquer
- 罩金漆 golden lacquer ware coated with transparent lacquer
- 描金罩漆 lacquer ware with gold-painted design, coated with transparent lacquer
- 描金漆 lacquer ware with gold-painted design; gold-painted lacquer ware
- 洒金漆 monochromatic lacquer ware sprinkled with gold foils
- 戗金漆 lacquer ware incised and filled with gold dust
- 泥金画漆 gold-paste-painted lacquer ware
- 彩漆 polychrome painted lacquer ware; colored design painted on monochromatic lacquer ware
- 堆漆 embossed lacquer ware
- 填漆 filled-in with lacquer ware

- 雕漆 carved lacquer ware
- 剔红 carved red lacquer ware
- 剔黑 carved black lacquer ware
- 剔黄 carved yellow lacquer ware
- 剔绿 carved green lacquer ware
- 剔彩 carved polychrome lacquer ware
- 剔犀 (又称云雕) carved marbled lacquer ware (also known as "cloudy-carving")
- 款彩 (俗称刻灰) polychrome intaglio lacquer ware; carved and painted polychrome lacquer ware (commonly known as "carved ash")
- 镶嵌漆器 lacquer ware with inlays
- 嵌螺钿漆器 lacquer ware inlaid with mother-of-pearl; lacquer ware with shell inlays
- 百宝嵌漆器 lacquer ware inlaid with jewels
- 嵌银丝漆器 silver-inlaid lacquer ware
- 犀皮漆 (虎皮漆或菠萝漆) mottled flat lacquer ware; lacquer ware with streaks (also known as "tiger-skin lacquer or pineapple lacquer")

形 制 SHAPES

- 匣、盒 small box; casket; case
- 提匣 portable casket; handled box
- 攒盒 box with fit-in trays; container for holding various foods simultaneously
- 捧盒 domed box for containing food; food container
- 套盒、屉盒 tiered box; nested boxes
- 二层套盒 two-tiered box set; two-layered nested boxes
- 三撞盒 three-tiered box
- 方胜盒 box in the shape of intersecting lozenges; intersecting-lozenge-shaped box
- 春寿字盒 box with characters Chun (spring) and Shou (longevity)
- 仿古铜簠式盒 box in the style of ancient bronze Fu (food container)

- 带座磬式盒 box in the shape of a Qing (sonorous stone) with a stand
- 双桃式盒 twin-peach-shaped box
- 瓜式盒 melon-shaped box; box in the shape of a melon
- 菱花式盒 water-caltrop-shaped box
- 双缘宝盒 double-circle-shaped box
- 书函式匣 box in the shape of a slipcase
- 漆砂砚盒 lacquer-sand box for containing inkstone
- 委角方盒 square box with flattened angles
- 碗 (参见 P148)
- 靶碗、高足碗 stem-bowl
- 圆耳杯 round ear-cup; round cup with a handle
- 攒盘 (参见 P152)
- 双圆盘 twin-disk plate
- 葵瓣盘 mallow-petal-shaped plate; plate with foliated rim
- 梅花式盘 plum-blossom-shaped plate
- 荷叶式盘 lotus-leaf-shaped plate
- 菱花式盘 water-chestnut-flower-shaped plate; water-caltrop-shaped plate
- 银锭盘 silver-ingot-shaped plate
- 八瓣盘、莲瓣盘 eight-lobed plate
- 瓜楞式执壶 melon-shaped ewer
- 钵式盒 alms-bowl-shaped box
- 寿字形盒 box in the shape of a character "Shou" (longevity)
- 戥子盒 box for small steelyard
- 花觚 flower goblet
- 笔筒 (参见 P176)
- 宝座式笔架 brush stand in the shape of a throne
- 舟式洗 boat-shaped washer
- 经箱 case for containing sutra
- 衾 toilet case; dressing case
- 座屏、插屏 table screen; portable screen
- 挂屏 hanging panel; hanging screen; wall plaque

纹 饰

DECORATIONS

- 八宝纹 design of the eight Buddhist sacred emblems; design of the Eight Auspicious symbols
- 七珍纹 design of the Seven Buddhist Treasures
- 龙纹 (参见 P222)
- 飞龙纹 flying dragon design
- 翔龙纹 design of dragon hovering over the surging waves
- 海水游龙纹 design of dragon swimming in the water
- 团龙纹 dragon roundels; medallion of dragon
- 龙凤纹 (参见 P259)
- 夔龙纹 Kui-dragon design; archaic dragon design; formalized dragon design
- 麒麟纹 design of Kylin (Chinese unicorn)
- 狮子戏球纹 design of lion playing with a ball
- 宝珠纹 fiery ball design
- 百鹿纹 hundred-deer design
- 洗象图 design of elephant-bathing
- 职贡图 design of the Envoy with Tribute Bearers
- 雅集图 design of scholars gathering
- 问渡图 design of asking the ferry at a river bank
- 步月图 design of strolling under the moon
- 佛教故事图 design of Buddhist story
- 洗桐图 design of washing the Chinese parasol tree
- 松竹梅纹 design of pine, bamboo and prunus
- 灵芝纹 (参见 P223)
- 香草纹 sweet-smelling grass design
- 卷草纹 (参见 P260)
- 缠枝纹 (参见 P224)
- 格饰团花纹 posy design and latticed pattern
- 花蝶纹 flower-and-butterfly design
- 锦鸡纹 golden pheasant design
- 仙鹤纹 crane design
- 勾连云纹 design of cloud scrolls
- 如意云纹 S-shaped cloud design
- 波带纹 broad wave design
- 观瀑图 design of enjoying the sight of waterfall
- 抚琴图 design of playing the zither

- 携琴访友图 design of carrying zither to call on a friend
- 庭院高士图 design of noble scholar in a courtyard
- 烹茶图 design of brewing (or making) tea
- 赏花图 design of enjoying flowers
- 献花图 design of presenting flowers
- 五贤图 five worthies design
- 五老献寿图 design of five aged men offering birthday congratulations
- 群仙祝寿图 design of immortals celebrating someone's birthday
- 松鹤延年图 design of pine and crane symbolizing the long life
- 西园雅集图 design of scholars gathering in Xiyuan garden
- 竹林七贤图 design of the seven worthies retired to the bamboo grove
- 月下独酌图 design of a man drinking alone in the moonlight
- 书亭待鹤图 design of looking at a distant crane from the pavilion
- 文会图 design of scholars gathering
- 仙山洞府图 design of cave-dwelling on the mountain of the immortals
- 问道图 design of seeking for the doctrine of Taoism
- 芦雁图 design of reeds and wild geese
- 泛舟图 design of boating on a river
- 垂钓图 fishing design
- 松竹梅虫纹 design of insects amid pine, bamboo and plum blossom
- 茶花绶带纹 design of paradise flycatcher amid camellia
- 双层牡丹纹 two-layered design of peony
- 莲实纹 design of lotus seed
- 龙凤寿字纹 design of dragon, phoenix and character "Shou" (longevity)
- 开光云龙纹 design of dragon and cloud within a reserved panel
- 五伦图 design of five birds symbolizing five human relations
- 重环纹 (参见 P129)
- 网纹 reticulated design; mesh design; netlike design
- 锥画纹 needle-incised design
- 百子图 a hundred children design
- 卍字饰 swastika; swastica

暗八仙纹 the Eight Immortals emblems; emblems of the Eight Immortals; attributes of the Eight Immortals

御制耕织图 Imperial Edition of the Pictures of Tilling and Weaving

饕餮纹 (参见 P129)

雷纹 thunder and lightning design

胎 骨 BODIES

泥子、膏子 lacquer putty

木胎 wooden core; wooden-body

竹胎 bamboo-body; core made of bamboo strips

藤胎 rattan core; rattan-body

皮胎 leather core

夹纻 fabric core

泥胎 mud core; clay body

瓷胎、窑胎 porcelain core; porcelain-body

金属胎 metal core; metal-body

金(银)胎 gold (silver) core

铜丝胎 core made of copper wire

脱胎 bodiless; hollow-bodied dried lacquerwork

工 艺 TECHNIQUES

髹漆之术 technique of using lacquer

髹 to paint or lacquer articles; to coat with lacquer

直髹 direct lacquering; application of lacquer directly to any material without a fabric (or wood, bamboo, brass, etc.) base

刀法 carving technique

刻、剔 V- and V-shaped carving; used in making decorative lines of carving

毛雕 incision technique; incising in a bird-peck-like pattern

平雕 carve

- 凸（浮）雕 emboss; carved in relief
- 针刻、锥刻 carved with needle; needle-carving
- 锥画 an innovative decoration technique; awl-incision
- 雕镂 openwork-carving; carved in openwork
- 大雕填 bold carving and filling
- 雕填和填彩 incising and filling-in with colored lacquer
- 填漆（参见 P239）
- 磨显填漆 polished filled-in with lacquer
- 镂嵌填漆 inlaid filled-in with lacquer
- 戗金细钩填漆 incised and filled-in with gold and colored lacquer
- 戗金细钩描漆 painted with gold and colored lacquer
- 戗金、镂金 Qiangjin technique; inlaid-gold; incising and filling with gold dust
- 戗金钻犀 incising and filling with gold dust against a mesh-design ground with a dot drilled in the center of each square of mesh
- 戗银 incising in lines and filling with silver; inlaid-silver
- 戗彩 incising in lines and filling the lines with colored lacquer
- 描金 design drawn in thin gold; design in gold tracery; painted in gold; painted with gold lines; design traced in gold
- 描金花边 rimmed in gold
- 识文描金 embossed with design in gold tracery
- 洒金 sprinkle with gold foils
- 洒金地 a gold-sprinkled ground
- 泥金 design drawn in thick gold; gold dust used as surface material; coating material made of glue and powered gold
- 鎏金 gold-plating; gilt; gilded
- 帖金或金箔 application of gold foil to lacquer
- 平脱 submerged and polished-out design
- 金银平脱 burnished works with gold or silver inlay; appliquing with gold or silver
- 金银错（参见 P268）
- 镶嵌（参见 P267）
- 嵌螺钿 mother-of-pearl inlay; inlaid with mother-of-pearl
- 衬色螺钿 mother-of-pearl design set off by colored pattern
- 百宝嵌 hundred-treasure inlay; design inlaid with jewels; inlaid

- with gems forming design of
- 桂浆 use of cassia juice for coloring lacquer
- 攒生 lacquer-soaked-cloth technique
- 钻犀 drilled texture
- 堆彩 embossed colored lacquer
- 堆红或罩红 piled red lacquer; red-coated lacquer; the built-up red lacquer
- 款彩 Kuancai, polychrome carving (also known as Kehui)
- 刻灰 Kehui, carving sandlike putty that is painted with lacquer and filling the carving with colored lacquer
- 八宝灰 eight precious ashes (the ash applied to the body beneath the lacquer)
- 乌间朱线 crimson lines amid raven-black
- 红间黑带 black bands among red
- 夹纆 Jiazhu technique; fabric was to be used as the body over which many layers of lacquer were painted; use of fabric in the body of wares; wrapped-linen
- 印板刻平 pasted-on design with carving
- 彩绘 coloring
- 制胎 (参见 P268)
- 搽漆 application of transparent lacquer
- 编漆 lacquered basketwork
- 打蜡 technique of applying wax
- 磨光 polishing; burnishing

款 识

REIGN MARK AND INSCRIPTION

- 年款 (参见 P143)
- 御铭 imperial inscription
- 书刻铭款 adding inscription to a lacquer ware
- 暗款 semi-concealed reign mark
- 双钩暗款 semi-concealed reign mark with double outline
- 大字钹金横列永乐款 a horizontal Yongle reign mark in large gold-etched characters
- “大明永乐年制” 直行款 inscription of six characters “Made in

- Yongle Reign, Ming Dynasty" in a vertical line
 四字双行钹金楷款 inscription of four gold-etched characters in regular script in two lines
 描金六字三行篆款 inscription in three vertical lines of six characters in seal-script drawn in gold
 楷书单行款 inscription of regular script in a single line
 康熙癸丑款 Kangxi reign mark in Gui Chou (1673)
 乾隆铭识 inscription by Emperor Qianlong
 盖内铭识 inscription inside lid
 口沿款识 inscription on vessel rim
 腹部款识 inscription on vessel body
 颈部款识 inscription on vessel neck
 底款 inscription on vessel base; reign mark on underside of vessel
 加书干支的横款 a horizontal mark with the date added in Chinese cyclical characters
 干支纪年 the year-date in cyclical characters

漆器精品选

SELECTED WORKS OF LACQUER WARE

- 晚唐花鸟纹嵌螺钿黑漆经箱 Black lacquer sutra case inlaid with floral and bird design in mother-of-pearl, the late Tang Dynasty
 宋花瓣形黑漆碗 Flower-petal-shaped bowl of black lacquer, Song Dynasty
 元张成造剔红栀子纹圆盘 Round dish of carved red lacquer with Cape jasmine design, made by Zhang Cheng, Yuan Dynasty
 元杨茂剔红花卉尊 Carved red lacquer vase with floral design, made by Yang Mao, Yuan Dynasty
 元张敏德剔红赏花图圆盘 Round dish of carved red lacquer with design of enjoying the sight of flowers, made by Zhang Minde, Yuan Dynasty
 元剔黑孔雀牡丹八瓣盘 Eight-lobed plate of carved black lacquer with peacock and peony design, Yuan Dynasty
 元剔红双层海棠花圆盘 Round plate of carved red lacquer with

- two-layered design of begonia, Yuan Dynasty
- 元黑漆嵌螺钿花鸟舟式洗 Black lacquer boat-shaped washer with mother-of-pearl inlays of birds and flowers, Yuan Dynasty
- 明剔红婴戏图靶碗 Stem-bowl of carved red lacquer with playing children pattern, Ming Dynasty
- 明剔彩云龙捧盒 Domed box of carved polychrome lacquer with cloud and dragon design, Ming Dynasty
- 明剔红鹦鹉牡丹葵瓣盘 Carved red lacquer plate with foliated rim decorated with parrot and peony design, Ming Dynasty
- 明剔红抚琴图八方盒 Octagonal box of carved red lacquer with design of playing lute, Ming Dynasty
- 明剔红杜甫诗图圆盒 Round box of carved red lacquer with design described in Du Fu's poem, Ming Dynasty
- 明戗金彩漆花卉寿字形盒 Polychrome lacquer box in the shape of character "Shou" (longevity) with floral design incised and filled-in with gold dust, Ming Dynasty
- 明剔犀云头纹二层盒 Two-tiered box of carved marbled lacquer with S-shaped cloud pattern, Ming Dynasty
- 明黑漆百宝嵌梅蝶圆盒 Round box of black lacquer inlaid with jewels design of plum blossom and butterfly, Ming Dynasty
- 明剔红松鹤延年图圆盘 Round plate of carved red lacquer with pine and crane design symbolizing long life, Ming Dynasty
- 明剔红三桃福禄寿字圆盘 Round plate of carved red lacquer with characters "Fu" (happiness), "Lu" (official position) and "Shou" (longevity) on three peaches separately, Ming Dynasty
- 明填彩漆梵文荷叶盘 Lotus-leaf-shaped plate decorated with Sanskrit and design filled-in with colored lacquer, Ming Dynasty
- 明剔黑开光花鸟纹梅瓶 Prunus vase of carved black lacquer with flower and bird pattern within reserved panels, Ming Dynasty

- 明剔红龙凤纹瓜楞式执壶 Carved red lacquer ewer in the shape of a melon with dragon and phoenix design, Ming Dynasty
- 明黑漆百宝嵌花卉方笔筒 Square brush holder of black lacquer inlaid with jewels forming floral design, Ming Dynasty
- 明填彩漆八宝小圆盒 Small round box filled-in with polychrome lacquer with design of the eight Buddhist sacred emblems, Ming Dynasty
- 明剔黑多宝碗 Carved black lacquer bowl with design of precious objects, Ming Dynasty
- 清绿地剔红诗句笔筒 Brush holder with verses of carved red lacquer over a green ground, Qing Dynasty
- 清葵生款漆砂砚盒 Rectangular black lacquer box for containing a lacquer-sand inkstone, with a mark of Kuisheng, Qing Dynasty
- 清剔犀如意云纹凤尾尊 Phoenix-tailed jar of carved marbled lacquer with S-shaped cloud design, Qing Dynasty
- 清剔彩葵瓣式三撞盒 Three-tiered box of carved polychrome lacquer in the shape of mallow petal, Qing Dynasty
- 清彩漆戗金寿春束腰盘 Rectangular wasp-waisted plate of polychrome lacquer with design of god of longevity and character "Chun" (spring) incised and filled with gold dust, Qing Dynasty
- 清填彩漆锦纹方胜式盒 Lacquer box in the shape of intersecting lozenges with brocaded design filled-in with polychrome lacquer, Qing Dynasty
- 清红漆描金龙凤纹手炉 Hand warmer of red lacquer with dragon and phoenix design in gold tracery, Qing Dynasty
- 清描油折枝花卉长方匣 Rectangular case with design of disconnected sprays of flowers in Tung oil, Qing Dynasty
- 清识文描金团花攒盒 Lacquer box with fit-in trays embossed with medallion-flower design in gold tracery, Qing Dynasty
- 清识文描金银桃式盒 Lacquer peach-shaped box with a raised decoration in gold and silver tracery, Qing Dynasty
- 清罩金漆荷花诗句盘 Rectangular gold lacquer plate with design of lotus and verses coated with transparent lacquer, Qing

Dynasty

清洒金地嵌玉瓜纹漆唾盂 Lacquer spittoon with melon design of
jade inlay over a gold-scattered ground, Qing Dynasty

十六 古代家具

ANCIENT FURNITURE

材 质

MATERIALS FOR MAKING FURNITURE

- 硬木 hard wood
软木 soft wood
楠木 Nanmu wood; Persian cedar
樟木 camphor wood
花梨木 rosewood
黄花梨木 Huanghuali wood
铁力木 ferrous mesua wood; Tielimu
乌木、乌檀 ebony
檀香木、白檀 sandalwood; white sandalwood
紫檀 red sandalwood; padauk
杉木 fir wood; China fir
紫杉 yew
黄杨木 boxwood; Chinese littleleaf box tree
红木 mahogany; red wood
鹧鸪木 Xichimu wood
榉木 beech
桦木 birch; birch wood
楸木 Chinese catalpa
榆木 elm
椴木 basswood; linden
枣木 jujube wood
黄柏 golden cypress; yellow cypress
酸枝木 (即红木) mahogany

瘿木 gnarled wood; burl wood

天然木 natural wood

各类家具 CLASSIFICATION

几、案、桌类 Tables

几 low table or side table

圆几 round low table

方几 square low table

香几 incense-burner table; incense stand

折角香几 censer table with flattened angles

大理石面香几 marble-topped incense table

高束腰五足香几 high-waisted five legged incense stand

兽足圆几 round low table with claw-shaped legs

六足高几 tall six-legged table

卷书式几 small scrolled-end table; low table with scroll-shaped ends

茶几 tea table; teapoy; side table

双环几 small double-ring-shaped table; small table with a double-interlocking-circle-shaped top

翘头条几 narrow table with everted flanges

案 long and narrow table; old-fashioned long, narrow table

御案 imperial table

条案 long narrow side table

书案 studio table; library table; writing desk

大画案 large painting-table

香案 censer table

神案 altar table

平头案 plane-ended narrow table; table with flat ends; table with plane ends; flat-topped side table

折叠式大平头案 large portable narrow table

带屉板小平头案 small recessed-leg table with shelf

翘头案 long table with up-turned ends; long table with everted ends

卷头案 long table with down-turned ends; scroll-ended long table

- 卷书式脚案 long narrow table with a turn in feet
- 杯案 small cup table
- 架机案、搁板桌 trestle table
- 桌 table; a table of regular height
- 方桌 square table; square corner-leg table
- 喷面式方桌 square table with overhanging top
- 两用方桌 square table with removable legs
- 铜包角长桌 rectangular table of wood with copper-coated corners; rectangular wooden table with copper corner sheathings
- 宴桌 dining table
- 折叠式带屉酒桌 wine table with drawers and demountable legs
- 八仙桌 old-fashioned square table for eight people; square dining table for eight persons
- 半桌 half table; a table of half size of an old-fashioned square table
- 半圆桌 semi-circular table
- 瓷心半圆桌 semi-circular table with a porcelain top
- 月牙桌 crescent-shaped table
- 梯形桌 trapezoidal table
- 书桌 desk; writing desk
- 琴桌 Chinese lute table; oblong table
- 鼎式桌 table in the shape of a quadripod
- 独腿桌、支柱式桌 pedestal table
- 圆转桌 round turning table
- 折面桌 pembroke table
- 宝塔桌 tiered table
- 供桌 altar table; sacrificial table
- 棋桌 chess table; a square games table
- 梳妆桌 toilet table; dressing table
- 炕桌 small short-legged table on a kang (heatable brick bed); bedtable; bedtable with folding legs
- 矮桌 low table
- 两屉桌 table with two drawers; two-drawer table

座椅类 Chairs and Stools

- 宝座 throne; throne chair; settee

御座 imperial throne

七屏风式靠背扶手横方形宝座 imperial throne with a rectangular seat surrounded by a seven-leaf-screen-shaped back and armrests

宝座台 throne dais

椅 chair

靠背椅 high-back chair; side chair; chair with a high back

无靠手直椅 lounge chair

扶手椅 armchair

安乐椅 easy chair

罗汉椅 Arhat settee

双人椅 double chair; double seated chair

玫瑰椅 low-backed armchair

圈椅 round-backed armchair; horseshoe-shaped-back armchair

透雕靠背圈椅 armchair with curved rests and openwork splat

束腰圈椅 round-backed and wasp-waisted armchair

卷书式圈椅 low-backed armchair with a scroll shaped backrest

席心椅 chair with cane seat

木梳背椅 chair with the arched back of a comb; chair with a back shaped like an old-type comb

官帽椅 yoke-backed armchair; "official's hat"-shaped chair; winged hat-shaped chair

四出头官帽椅 yoke-backed armchair with four decorative ends to its back and armrest; official's hat-shaped chair with four protruding ends

四出头藤编官帽椅 caned yoke-back armchair with four decorative ends to its back and armrest

南官帽椅 southern yoke-backed armchair

扇面形南官帽椅 fan-shaped southern official's-hat-shaped armchair

灯挂式椅 chair with decorative ends to its back; yoke-backed side chair; lamphanger side chair

禅椅 seat for meditation

贵妃椅 Gui-fei style settee

太师椅 old-fashioned wooden armchair; armchair with a carved back; Grand tutor's armchair

摇椅 rocking chair
 躺椅 couch; reclining chair
 交椅式躺椅 folding reclining chair
 交椅 an ancient folding chair
 交机 large campstool; folding stool
 有踏床的交机 folding stool with footrest
 凳 stool; backless chair
 方凳 square stool
 圆凳 round stool
 梅花式凳 lobe-shaped stool
 长凳、条凳 bench
 小凳子 tabouret
 春凳 an old-fashioned bench
 五腿梅花式凳 five-legged stool in the shape of plum blossom
 海棠式凳 stool with a begonia-shaped seat
 墩、坐墩 round stool; barrel stool
 绣墩 garden stool; ceramic stool with an embroidered cover
 鼓式敦 drum-shaped stool; circular stand in the form of a drum
 四开光绣墩 garden stool with four openings
 六角墩 hexagonal stool
 瓜楞墩 melon-shaped stool

床榻类 Beds and Couches

床 bed
 榻 couch; plain couch; daybed
 竹(藤)榻 bamboo (cane) couch
 束腰马蹄足榻 wasp-waisted daybed with hoof-shaped feet
 木板床 plank bed
 罗汉床 Arhat bed; Luohan bed; railed couch
 三屏风式罗汉床 Luohan bed with three-panel-screen-shaped railings
 连方围子罗汉床 railed couch with mesh-enclosure
 曲尺式围子罗汉床 Luohan bed with lattice railings
 独板围子罗汉床 Luohan bed with solid railings
 大理石围子罗汉床 railed couch with marble panels
 架子床 four-posted wooden bed; canopy bed

带门围子架子床 canopy bed with lattice railings; canopy bed
with open-carved railings
六柱门围子架子床 six-posted canopy bed
万字纹围子架子床 four-posted bed with swastika pattern on the
surrounding railings
月洞式门罩架子床 four-posted bed with a circular entrance
围床 bed enclosed with curtains
天蓬床 canopied bed
六腿折叠床 folding bed with six feet; six-legged folding bed
禅床 meditation bed; bed for meditation
木胎红漆床 wood-bodied red lacquer bed
榻凳 stepping stool
脚踏、脚凳 footstool; foot rest
束腰圆脚踏 wasp-waisted footstool with circular ends
宝座脚踏 footstool attached to the throne
滚凳 footstool with roller

橱柜类 Cabinets

橱 cabinet; closet; wardrobe; coffer
联二橱 two-drawer coffer
联三橱 three-drawer coffer
闷户橱 coffer with drawers and a hidden compartment
玻璃橱 glass-fronted cabinet
柜 cupboard; cabinet; sideboard; chest
方角柜 square-cornered cabinet
圆角柜 round-cornered cabinet;
透格门圆角柜 tapered cabinet with latticework doors
龙柜 huge cabinet with dragon design
古玩柜 curios cabinet
画柜 chest for storing paintings
书柜 bookcase; book cabinet
图书行柜 travelling scholar's bookcase
橱柜 compound cabinet in two parts
顶柜 cabinet
四件柜 compound cabinet in four parts; compound wardrobe
双层柜格 cabinet with two shelves above

顶箱立柜 cabinet with removable top section
 顶竖柜 cabinet in two sections; two-sectioned cabinet
 联三(四)柜 cabinet with three (four) drawers
 衣柜 wardrobe
 药柜 drug casket
 茶柜 tea chest
 食柜 cupboard; ambry
 餐具柜 sideboard
 柜格 cabinet with open upper compartment; open-style wooden cabinet
 格 shelf
 架格 shelving
 棧格架格 shelving decorated with latticework
 栏架格 bookcase with drawers and lattice panels
 品字栏杆架格 shelves with alternating-square-opening lattice railings
 十字栏杆书格 bookcase with shelves and railings
 书格 simple bookcase without panels; bookshelf
 多宝格(榻) wooden curio stand with many sections; antique shelves; multi-tiered treasure boxes; treasure shelves
 箱 chest; box; case
 衣箱 storage chest
 官皮箱 table-top chest
 轿箱 sedan chair document case

屏风及其他 Screens and Others

屏风 screen; standing screen
 折式屏风 screen of folding type
 围屏 folding screen
 单扇立屏 single-panel screen
 四扇屏 four-leaf screen
 六扇可移动屏风 six-leaved movable screen
 六扇折屏 six-paneled folding screen
 十二扇大屏风 large twelve-paneled screen; large screen with twelve leaves
 插屏 table screen; table plaque; portable screen; a miniature

screen for ornamental purpose

双面插屏 double-faced table screen

插屏式小座屏风 table screen with decorative panel

挂屏 (参见 P241)

炕屏 bed screen

花枱、花几 flower stand

高足花台 tall flower stand

鼓形花台 drum-shaped flower stand; flower stand in the shape of
a drum

树围 wooden apron for protecting trees

盆架 washbasin stand

高面盆架 washbasin stand with towel rack; towel rack and wash-
basin stand

火盆架 brazier stand

三足灯台 lampstand with three legs

升降式灯台 adjustable lampstand

冠架 hat-stand; hatrack

衣架 clothes rack; dress hanger

穿衣镜 a dressing glass; a cheval-glass; full-length mirror

镜奁 toilet case; dressing case

镜台 dressing table; mirror stand

折叠式镜台 dressing case with folding mirror stand

五屏风式镜台 dressing table in the shape of a five-leaf screen

纹饰

DECORATIONS

龙纹 (参见 P222)

正龙纹 (参见 P222)

行龙纹 (参见 P222)

升龙纹 rising dragon design

云龙纹 design of dragon among clouds

龙戏珠纹 design of two dragons sporting with a pearl

双龙献宝纹 design of two dragons presenting a treasure

五龙捧寿纹 design of five dragons supporting a round character
“Shou” (longevity)

龙凤纹 dragon and phoenix design
 双凤朝阳纹 design of two phoenixes facing the sun
 夔纹、拐子纹 Kui pattern; a legendary animal design; design of one-legged monster in fable
 夔龙纹、拐子龙纹 Kui-dragon design; formalized dragon design; design of stylized dragon
 夔凤纹 design of Kui-phoenix
 螭纹 hydra design; hornless dragon design
 团螭纹 medallion of hydras
 云螭纹 hydra and cloud design
 麒麟纹 unicorn design; design of fantastic animal
 异兽纹 rare animal design
 兽面纹 animal mask motif
 兽面衔环纹 design of animal mask holding a ring in its mouth
 朵云纹 embossed cloud design
 海兽海水纹 design of sea animals and waves
 浪涛纹 design of billowing waves
 云纹 cloud design
 瑞云纹 design of fortuitous clouds; auspicious cloud design
 卷云纹 cirrus cloud design
 云头纹 cloud cluster design; design of cloud scrolls
 卍字饰 (参见 P243)
 寿字纹 stylized character "Shou" (longevity)
 万蝠纹 design of bat and swastika
 蝠磬图 design of bat and sonorous stone
 三羊开泰纹 (参见 P224)
 绳璧纹 design of an ancient coin with a cord
 双钩回纹 key-fret design in double outline
 盘纹 fanciful knot design
 乳丁纹 (参见 P129)
 方胜纹 intersecting lozenge design
 团花纹 (参见 P223)
 四季花卉纹 design of flowers in four seasons; design of four-season-flower
 宝相花纹 rosette design
 双钩描金花卉 design of flowers outlined in gold tracery

- 蕉叶纹 banana leaf design
 卷叶纹 design of leaf scrolls
 卷草纹 design of grass scrolls; twisted-grass design; curly grass design; scrolled grass design
 番莲纹 passion flower design; dahlia pattern
 西洋花草纹 design of Western flowers and grasses
 枯槎嫩桠纹 design of new sprouts growing out of old branches

es

工艺及其它 TECHNIQUES AND OTHERS

- 浮雕、凸雕 emboss; relief; carved in relief
 透雕、镂空 openwork; carved in openwork
 嵌 deeply inlay
 镶 shallow inlay
 镶嵌 (参见 P267)
 包镶 coated with
 包镶竹黄 coated with sheathless bamboo
 包镶竹丝 coated with bamboo slips
 嵌螺钿 (参见 P245)
 洒螺钿 sprinkled with mother-of-pearls
 嵌牙 inlaid with ivory; with ivory inlay
 嵌瓷 inlaid with porcelain; with porcelain inlay
 嵌玉 inlaid with jade; with jade inlay
 嵌云石 inlaid with marble; with marble inset
 嵌银片 inlaid with silver foils
 嵌珐琅 inlaid with enamel
 百宝嵌 inlays of precious stones; inlaid with precious stones; inlaid with gems forming design of
 彩绘 painted with design of
 描金 (参见 P245)
 错银线 silver-wire inlays
 点翠花卉 flowers of kingfisher feathers
 纹理 grain pattern
 对称木纹 matching wood grain pattern

黄花梨鬼面木纹 Huanghuali wood showing characteristic grain
 pattern of "ghost face"
 刀法 knife-usage; carving skill
 雕工 carving work
 漆工 lacquer work
 打磨 polishing work
 卯眼 mortise
 榫 tenon
 榫法 joinery
 榫卯结构 structure of mortise and tenon
 榫卯连接 mortise-and-tenon joint
 活榫结构 structure of movable tenons at joints
 鸠尾结合 dovetail joint
 燕尾榫 swallow-tailed tenon
 夹头榫 elongated bridle joint
 插肩榫 inserted shoulder joint
 栽榫 planted tenon
 枰 stretcher; brace; rail; strut
 角枰 corner brace
 横枰 transverse brace; side stretcher
 霸王枰 giant's arm brace; curvilinear arm brace; struts support-
 ing the tabletop
 罗锅枰 hump-back-shaped brace; arched brace
 双罗锅枰 double humpbacked stretcher
 鸠尾榫枰 dovetailed stretcher
 锁(管)脚枰 base stretcher; braces jointing four feet of a table
 两卷枰 stretcher with scrolls
 两卷相抵圆枰 round stretcher curved with two abutting curls
 矮老 pillar-shaped strut
 罗锅枰加矮老 humpbacked braces with pillar-shaped struts
 卡子花 decorative struts
 双钱卡子花 double-coin brace
 桌档 table stretcher
 椅档 chair stretcher
 前档 front stretcher
 横档 transverse stretcher

足部横档 transverse stretchers between legs of a chair
 底部横档 transverse stretchers below a seat of a chair
 档板 fender; inset panel
 单支穿戴 single transverse brace
 托泥 pad; floor stretcher
 亮脚 a "brightening-the-feet" opening
 牙板 serrated board
 牙条 apron
 素牙条 plain apron
 四面牙条 aprons on all four sides
 牙头 apron-head spandrel
 素牙头 plain apron-head spandrel
 牙子 serrated edge; spandrel
 挂牙 hanging spandrel
 龙形角牙 dragon-shaped spandrel
 托角牙子 supporting spandrel
 阳线牙条 beaded apron
 券口 arch-shaped inner frame
 券口牙条 arch-shaped inner frame apron
 券口牙子 arch-shaped inner frame apron and spandrel
 直牙条券口 straight apron with an arch-shaped inner frame
 壶门 ornamental opening with cusped upper edge
 壶门券口 ornamental opening with an arch-shaped inner frame
 线脚 molding; beading
 拦水线 a water-stopping molding
 皮条线 a leather strap molding
 “两柱香”线 “two incense-stick” beading
 双洼线 two lines of concave molding
 腰板 waist board
 束腰 contracted waist; waisted; wasp-waisted
 高束腰 high waist; high wasp-waisted; tall-girt up waist
 无束腰 waistless; non-waisted
 洼堂肚 crescent frame work (the upper section of the frame bulges in the center)
 全身打洼 the whole frame is inset
 边框打洼 the frame of the inset panel has concave molding

椅靠背 backrest
 椅靠背板 back splat
 向外弯曲的 C 靠背板 outward curving "C" -shaped back splat
 搭脑 top rail; crest rail; backrest
 直形搭脑 straight protruding crest rail
 扶手 armrest; arm
 直棹 spindle
 鹅脖 "gooseneck" extensions (posts); armrest post; supporting post
 联帮棍 arm side post
 立柱 post
 床面 bed surface
 床靠背 bed rest
 桌面 tabletop
 桌面饰漆心 table with a lacquer top
 桌面嵌瘿木 table with a gnarled wood top
 桌前沿 front apron of a table
 椅(凳)面 seat
 椅盘 seat frame
 凳周沿 the outer edge of a stool
 座面独板 a solid board top
 圆柱形独腿 a single cylinder leg
 直腿 straight leg
 一腿三牙 three spandrels to one leg
 牛腿 leg shaped like with sigmoid curves and carved with climbing veins
 裹腿 rounded leg; encircling leg; leg-encircling
 展腿 extended leg
 束腰直腿 wasp-waisted and ending in straight legs
 三弯腿 cabriole leg
 矮腿三弯 short cabriole leg
 四腿三弯 four cabriole legs; four curved legs
 高拱罗锅腿 tall-arched leg
 八字形腿 splayed leg
 无束腰圆八字形腿 waistless with round splayed leg
 撇足 flared feet

- 四腿带撇足 four legs with flared feet
 外翘转足 everted feet
 外翻云纹足 outward-curving feet with cloud-scroll design
 内翻云纹足 inward-curving feet with cloud-scroll design
 内卷球足 inward-scrolling ball feet
 卷鼻足 scroll-nose-shaped feet
 马蹄足 hoof-shaped feet
 内翻矮马蹄足 short inward curving horse-hoof feet
 兽爪足 claw-shaped feet
 狮爪足 lion-claw-shaped feet
 鹰爪足 eagle-claw-shaped feet

古代家具精品选 SELECTED WORKS OF FURNITURE

明代家具 Ming Dynasty (1368 - 1644)

- 黄花梨束腰方桌 Square wasp-waisted table of Huanghuali wood
 黄花梨喷面式方桌 Square table of Huanghuali wood with over-
 hanging top
 黄花梨铜包角长桌 Rectangular Huanghuali wood table with cop-
 per corner sheathings
 黑漆嵌螺钿花蝶纹翘头案 Black lacquered table with up-turned
 ends, inlaid with mother-of-pearl design of flowers and
 butterflies
 紫檀雕荷花纹宝座 Red sandalwood throne decorated with lotus
 flower carvings
 花梨木四出头官帽椅 Rosewood yoke-backed armchair with four
 protruding ends
 紫檀藤心矮圈椅 Round-backed chair of red sandalwood with rat-
 tan seat cover
 洒螺钿珐琅面圆凳 Round lacquered stool with an enamel top
 sprinkled with mother-of-pearl
 黄花梨双螭纹玫瑰椅 Huanghuali wood low-backed armchair
 decorated with a carving of twin hydras
 黄釉三彩瓷双龙纹绣墩 Yellow glazed porcelain barrel stool dec-
 orated with twin dragons pattern in three colors

黄花梨六足折叠式榻 Huanghuali wood six-legged folding couch
bed

黑漆嵌螺钿花鸟纹罗汉床 Black lacquered Arhat bed inlaid with
mother-of-pearl design of birds and flowers

黄花梨万字纹围架子床 Huanghuali wood four-post bed with
swastika pattern on the surrounding railings

黑漆款彩百鸟朝凤图八扇屏 Black lacquered, eight-leaf, fold-
ing screen decorated with a multicolored carving of a hun-
dred birds paying homage to the phoenix

黑漆洒螺钿百宝嵌石榴纹插屏 Black lacquered table screen
sprinkled with mother-of-pearl dust, featuring a pome-
granate tree pattern made of gems

填漆戗金云龙纹立柜 Lacquered wooden cabinet with dragon-
and-cloud design in gold relief and filled-in with colored
lacquer

黄花梨百宝嵌顶竖柜 Huanghuali wooden cabinet in two sections
inlaid with gems

清代家具 Qing Dynasty (1644 - 1911)

金漆龙纹宝座 Gold lacquered throne carved with dragon design

紫檀嵌玉花卉纹宝座 Red sandalwood throne inlaid with jade
floral design

紫檀云龙纹海棠式凳 Red sandalwood stool with a begonia-
shaped seat, decorated with dragon and cloud design

紫檀龙纹香几 Red sandalwood censer table carved with dragon
design

紫檀雕勾莲纹长桌 Rectangular red sandalwood table carved with
delineated lotus pattern

紫檀条桌 Long, narrow table of red sandalwood

红漆嵌螺钿寿字炕桌 Red lacquered bedtable inlaid with mo-
ther-of-pearl characters "Shou" (longevity)

红木边框嵌玉插屏 Table screen with mahogany frame, inlaid
with jade fish

红雕漆兰亭雅集图挂屏 Hanging panel of carved red lacquer
with design of scholars gathering in Lanting

黑漆边框点翠万花献瑞图围屏 Folding screen with black lac-

quered frame , decorated with flowers in kingfisher feather
applique

黑漆描金百宝嵌屏风 Black lacquered screen painted with gold
and inlaid with gems

紫檀嵌珐琅九龙榻 Red sandalwood couch bed inlaid with nine
dragons in enamel

楠木云龙纹灯挂式椅 Nanmu wood chair with decorative ends to
its back , decorated with dragon and cloud design

花梨木狮爪椅 Rosewood chair with lion-claw-shaped legs

楠木嵌青花瓷心凳 Nanmu wood stool with a blue-and-white
porcelain seat

黄花梨座面鹿角椅 Chair made of antlers with a seat of Huang-
huali wood

十七 宫廷器物

UTENSILS IN THE IMPERIAL COURT

珐琅器

ENAMEL WARE

工艺 Techniques

- 掐丝珐琅 (俗称景泰蓝) cloisonne enamel; filigreed enamel
- 画珐琅 painted enamel
- 錾胎珐琅(又称内填珐琅) champleve enamel; embossed enamel
- 锤胎珐琅 hammered enamel
- 铸胎珐琅 cast enamel
- 金属胎珐琅 enamelware with a metal body; metal-bodied ware
with enamelled design; metal-bodied ware with design in
enamel
- 银胎软珐琅 (俗称银烧蓝) silver bodied ware with design in
soft enamel
- 透明珐琅 translucent (or transparent) enamel
- 广珐琅 Guangzhou enamel ware
- 仿欧洲画珐琅 painted enamelware after European style; copy of
European painted enamelware
- 珐琅工艺 enamelling technique
- 珐琅料 enamel ingredients; enamel pigments
- 烧蓝、烤蓝 enamelling
- 点蓝 enamel-filling
- 掐丝 (参见 P119)
- 镶嵌 inlay work; applique work; inset work; inlaid with; with in-
lay of; inset with
- 錾花 engraved with patterns; embossed with design of; chisel
carving

- 锤揲 hammered in repoussé work
- 贴金 inlaid with gold foil; overlaid with gold leaf; gold-overlaid
- 镀金 gilt; gilded; plated with gold; gold-plating
- 描金 (参见 P245)
- 金银错 gold and silver inlay work; inlaid with gold and silver
- 镂金错彩 gilt and colored
- 制胎 body-making; base-making; mold-casting
- 金属胎 (参见 P244)
- 焙烧 bake; fire
- 烧焊 soldering; welding
- 打磨 polish; burnish
- 珐琅作 the enamel workshop in the Imperial Palace

珐琅器精品选 Selected Works of Enamelware

- 掐丝珐琅角端 Cloisonne enamel Luduan (a mythical animal-shaped censer)
- 掐丝珐琅仙鹤烛台 Cloisonne enamel candlestick in the shape of a crane
- 掐丝珐琅缠枝莲纹兽耳三环尊 Cloisonne enamel Zun (wine vessel) with three animal-shaped ears holding a ring, decorated with design of interlocking sprays of lotus
- 掐丝珐琅狮戏纹藏草瓶 Cloisonne enamel bottle for holy herbs, decorated with design of lions at play
- 掐丝珐琅荷塘白鹭图缸 Cloisonne enamel vat with design of egret and lotus pond
- 掐丝珐琅缠枝莲纹多穆壶 Cloisonne enamel pot in the shape of the Mongolian milk teapot with design of interlocking sprays of lotus
- 掐丝珐琅缠枝莲纹贡巴壶 Cloisonne enamel pot in the Tibetan style decorated with interlocking lotus pattern
- 掐丝珐琅夔龙纹暖砚盒 Cloisonne enamel box for warming ink-slab decorated with Kui-dragon pattern
- 掐丝珐琅兽面纹石榴尊 Cloisonne enamel pomegranate-shaped Zun (wine vessel) with animal mask motif
- 金胎掐丝珐琅开光仕女图执壶 Cloisonne enamel gold-bodied ewer inlaid with design of ladies within reserved panels

- 掐丝珐琅蟠螭纹四轮香车 Cloisonne enamel censer in the shape of four-wheeled chariot decorated with interlaced hydra design
- 掐丝珐琅勾莲纹瑞兽 Cloisonne enamel auspicious animal with delineated lotus design
- 掐丝珐琅天鸡尊 Cloisonne enamel Zun (wine vessel) on the back of an auspicious bird
- 掐丝珐琅仿古铜狮戏纹尊 Cloisonne enamel vase in the style of ancient bronze Zun with lion-at-play design
- 掐丝珐琅镂空云龙纹转心瓶 Cloisonne enamel revolving vase with dragon and cloud design in openwork
- 錾胎珐琅缠枝莲纹圆盒 Champleve enamel box with design of interlocking sprays of lotus
- 錾胎珐琅勾云纹牺尊 Champleve enamel ox-shaped Zun (wine vessel) with cloud cluster design
- 錾胎珐琅四友图屏风 Champleve enamel screen with design of pine, bamboo, orchid and plum blossom
- 錾胎珐琅蟠螭纹碗 Champleve enamel bowl with interlaced hydra design
- 錾胎珐琅折枝花果纹双耳瓶 Champleve enamel vase with two handles, decorated with fruit and floral design
- 錾胎珐琅双凤纹大圆盘 Large champleve enamel dish with double-phoenix design
- 錾胎珐琅瓜棱西番莲三足薰炉 Champleve enamel melon-shaped censer with three legs, decorated with passion-flower pattern
- 錾胎珐琅缠枝莲纹双连提柄罐 Champleve enamel twin jar with loop handle, decorated with interlocking lotus design
- 画珐琅玉堂富贵图直颈瓶 Painted enamel long-necked vase with magnolia, begonia and peony design
- 画珐琅“大吉”葫芦瓶 Painted enamel gourd-shaped vase with characters “Da Ji” (great luck)
- 画珐琅桃式洗 Painted enamel peach-shaped brush washer
- 画珐琅开光山水花鸟提梁壶 Painted enamel loop-handled teapot with design of landscape, birds and flowers within reserved panels

画珐琅福寿双耳活环瓶 Painted enamel vase with two ears holding movable rings, decorated with design of bats around character "Shou" (longevity)

画珐琅开光山水人物鱼缸 Painted enamel fish bowl with design of landscape and figures within reserved panels

画珐琅饕餮纹提梁卣 Painted enamel You (wine vessel) with loop handle, decorated with gluttonous ogre mask motif

画珐琅开光海马椭圆手炉 Painted enamel oval hand warmer with seahorse design within reserved panels

画珐琅海棠花式瓶 Painted enamel vase in the shape of begonia-flower

画珐琅西洋人物风景六棱瓶 Painted enamel hexagonal vase with design of Western figures in landscape

画珐琅缠枝花卉纹攒盒 Painted enamel box with fit-in trays, decorated with interlocking flowers

画珐琅莲托杂宝纹筒炉 Painted enamel cylindrical censer with design of lotus supporting miscellaneous treasures

画珐琅缠枝花卉五福捧寿罩炭盆 Painted enamel brazier with an openwork cover decorated with design of five bats supporting character "Shou" (longevity)

画珐琅花鸟纹镂空天球式冠架 Painted enamel globular hat-stand with bird and flower design in openwork

锤揲起线珐琅太平有象尊 Repoussé enamel elephant with a vase on its back

锤揲起线珐琅五伦图屏风 Enamel screen with repoussé design of flowers and birds symbolizing the five human relationships

广珐琅贴金锦袱纹瓶 Guang enamel vase with brocaded buckle design in gold applique

广珐琅贴金八宝纹攒盒 Guang enamel box set with design of Eight Buddhist Emblems in gold foils

广珐琅贴金银花卉纹洗 Guang enamel brush washer with floral design in gold and silver foils

广珐琅描金夔龙纹双耳高足碗 Guang enamel stem bowl with two ears, decorated with Kui-dragon design in gold tracery

蓝透明珐琅贴金片八宝纹面盆 Blue translucent enamel basin

decorated with design of Eight Buddhist Emblems in gold foils

蓝透明珐琅贴金银花五供 Blue translucent enamel altar set (a censer, a pair of candlesticks, and a pair of beakers) with floral design in gold and silver foils

银烧蓝五福捧寿八方盒 Octagonal silver box with enamel design of five bats supporting character "Shou" (longevity)

珐琅小陈设 Enamel knacks on desk

银胎内填珐琅梅花指甲套 Silver bodied finger guard with plum blossom design in champleve enamel

雕刻品 CARVINGS

竹雕 Bamboo Carving

竹根 bamboo root

竹筒 bamboo stem

竹丝 bamboo strips; bamboo filament

棕竹 bamboo palm; a variety of black bamboo

文竹 (竹黄) Zhu Huang; bamboo with its green covering removed; skin of bamboo below the green covering; the inner skin of a bamboo stem; bamboo-on-wood ware

贴黄 (竹黄刻) bamboo veneer (where strips of bamboo are cut to form design and then stuck on to a wooden base often used on boxes or paperweights)

留青 Liuqing low relief; bamboo skin reserved

留青雕刻 Liuqing low relief carvings (in which portions of bamboo skin were retained to produce a contrasting color in the finished work)

毛雕 scratch incising

浅刻 shallowly carve; lightly engrave

深刻 deeply carve

陷地浅刻 sunken ground shallow carving

陷地深刻 sunken ground deep carving

薄地阳文 thin ground relief; thin ground positive carving design

圆雕 carving in the round; fully three-dimensional carving

竹雕精品选 Selected Works of Bamboo Carving

竹雕松树形笔筒 bamboo brush holder carved in the shape of a pine tree

竹根雕卷心式刘海戏蟾图笔筒 scroll-shaped brush holder of bamboo-root carved with design of Liu Hai playing with a toad

竹雕留青携琴访友图笔筒 bamboo brush holder carved with a design of figure having a zither to visit a friend in Li-uqing low relief

竹雕荷花图香筒 bamboo incense holder carved with lotus design

竹雕寒蝉葡萄式洗 grape-leaf-shaped brush washer of bamboo carved with a cicada

竹雕兰花图臂搁 bamboo arm-rest carved with orchid design

竹雕夔龙纹活环提梁扁壶 bamboo flask carved with loop handle and Kui-dragon design

竹雕松树形小壶 small bamboo ewer carved in the shape of a pine tree

竹雕荷叶式杯 bamboo cup carved in the shape of lotus leaf

竹根雕寿星 God of Longevity, bamboo-root carving

竹雕和合二仙乘舟 He He Er Xian (the twin immortals of Harmony and Union) on a boat, bamboo carving

竹根雕麻姑献寿槎 raft with the female immortal Ma Gu offering birthday congratulations, bamboo-root carving

竹根雕松树罗汉 an Arhat under a pine tree, bamboo-root carving

竹雕勾莲纹提梁花篮 bamboo basketwork with delineated lotus design

棕竹雕题诗七佛钵 bamboo palm bowl carved with seven Buddhas and inscribed with a poem

棕竹水浪莲纹盒 bamboo palm box carved with lotus and waves design

棕竹丝嵌文竹方屉盒 square box with sectional trays of bamboo palm strips inlaid with bamboo veneer

文竹方胜式屉盒 bamboo-veneered box in the shape of double rhombus with removable trays

贴黄蝉纹方鼎 bamboo-veneered quadripod with cicada design

镶两色竹丝贴黄冠架 bamboo-veneered hatstand inlaid with bamboo strips in two colors

文竹刻春寿字盒 bamboo-veneered box carved with characters "Chun" (spring) and "Shou" (longevity)

文竹双莲蓬式盒 bamboo-veneered box in the shape of double seedpod of lotus

竹丝编嵌文竹龙戏珠纹笔筒 brush holder woven with bamboo strips decorated with pattern of dragon playing with a pearl of bamboo veneer

竹雕东方朔 bamboo carving of Dongfang Shuo (a writer of the Western Han Dynasty)

木雕 Wood Carving

雕刻 carve; engrave; incise

透雕 openwork; reticulated work

浮雕 relief; to emboss; to enchase

圆雕 (参见 P271)

镶嵌 (参见 P267)

嵌螺钿 (参见 P245)

百宝嵌 (参见 P245)

镶铁钹金 design in gold-damascened iron work

木雕精品选 Selected Works of Wood Carving

紫檀木雕会昌九老图笔筒 Red sandalwood brush holder engraved with design of the Gathering of Nine Elders in Huichang period

黄杨木雕董其昌题诗笔筒 Boxwood brush holder inscribed with a poem by Dong Qichang

沉香木雕山行图笔筒 Brush holder of eaglewood carved with design of figures travelling in mountains

硬木雕仙山问道图笔筒 Hardwood brush holder carved with design of seeking doctrine in fairy mountains

紫檀木雕荷叶枕 Red sandalwood pillow carved in the shape of a lotus leaf

黄杨木雕枫叶洗 Boxwood washer carved in the shape of maple leaf

紫檀木嵌宝石花果笔筒 Red sandalwood brush holder inlaid with flowers and fruits of gems

木雕天然笔筒 Brush holder carved in its natural form

桦木百宝嵌玉堂富贵纹盒 Birch box inlaid with gems forming design of magnolia, begonia, peony and butterfly

红木百宝嵌九狮图香料盒 Mahogany box for containing perfumes inlaid with gems forming design of nine lions

黄杨木雕三螭海棠式盒 Begonia-shaped case of boxwood carved with design of three hydras

黄杨木雕仕女 A classical lady, boxwood carving

黄花梨木百宝嵌石榴绶带纹盒 Huanghuali wood box inlaid with gems forming design of pomegranate and paradise fly-catcher

黄杨木雕活环链葫芦 Boxwood calabash carved with a movable chain of rings

枷楠香木雕花佩 Agalloch eaglewood pendant carved with floral design

椰壳雕双龙戏珠纹圆盒 Round case of coconut shell carved with design of two dragons playing with a pearl

椰壳雕松竹梅纹银里碗 Coconut shell bowl mounted with silver inside and carved with pine, bamboo and plum blossom design

椰壳雕蟠龙碗 Coconut shell bowl carved with design of twining dragon

橄榄核刻诗人物小舟 Light boat with figures, olive-nut carving

橄榄核雕寿星 God of Longevity, olive-nut carving

檀香木雕八仙庆寿像 Sandalwood statues of Eight Immortals celebrating birthday

木雕彩绘观音像 Avalokitesvara, painted wood-carving

彩绘木俑 Painted wood figurine

牙雕、角雕 Ivory Carving, Horn Carving

象牙 ivory

大象牙 elephant tusk

牙丝 ivory strips
 牙牌 (片) ivory panel; ivory chip
 染牙 stained ivory; tinted ivory
 染色 color staining
 象牙本色 the natural color of ivory
 雕刻 (参见 P273)
 镂花 openwork design; carved design in openwork
 镂钻 carved with openwork
 镂鏤 pierced with openwork
 拨镂 relief carving
 起突雕刻 (高浮雕) carved in high relief
 浅浮雕 low relief carving
 毛刻 scratch incising
 装饰技法 technique of decoration
 牙雕绝品 a unique piece of ivory carving
 防尘防潮 protect from dust and dampness

牙雕精品选 Selected Works of Ivory Carving

象牙笏 Ivory Hu-sceptre (or court tablet)
 象牙斋戒牌 Abstinence plaque of ivory
 象牙雕月曼清游册 Ivory carving of Pleasures of Court Ladies in Twelve Months (There are twelve interconnected tablets in an album and each tablet has one side carved with a picture and the other side with a poem by the Qing emperor Qianlong.)
 象牙雕柳荫奕棋图笔筒 Ivory brush holder carved with design of figures playing chess under the shade of a willow tree
 象牙雕渔樵耕牧图笔筒 Ivory brush holder carved with design of fisherman, woodcutter, farmer and buffalo boy
 象牙雕海水双龙纹笔架 Ivory brush rest carved with design of double dragon and waves
 象牙雕葵花笔舔 Ivory ink-pallet carved in the shape of mallow
 象牙雕十八罗汉渡海图臂搁 Ivory arm-rest carved with design of eighteen Arhats crossing the sea
 象牙雕松荫雅集图臂搁 Ivory arm-rest carved with design of the gathering of scholars under a pine tree

- 象牙雕竹节草虫花插 Ivory flower receptacle in the shape of bamboo joint carved with grass and insect design
- 象牙镂雕双喜大吉字葫芦形花薰 Ivory calabash-shaped perfumer carved with characters "Shuangxi" (double happiness) and "Da Ji" (great luck) in openwork
- 象牙雕染色花卉纹香囊 Stained ivory pomander carved with floral design
- 象牙丝编织玉堂富贵图宫扇 Palace fan woven with ivory strips forming design of magnolia, peony and birds
- 象牙编凉席 Summer sleep mat woven with ivory strips
- 象牙雕山村别墅图插屏 Ivory table screen carved with design of mountain villa
- 象牙雕渔家乐图插屏 Ivory table screen carved with a scene of the fishermen's happy life
- 象牙雕松鹤挂屏 Ivory hanging panel carved with design of pine and crane
- 象牙雕海市蜃楼景屏 Ivory screen carved with mirage
- 象牙雕群仙祝寿龙舟 Ivory dragon boat carved with a scene of immortals celebrating birthday
- 象牙雕福寿宝相花套球 Ivory pendant of concentric balls engraved with rosette design and characters Fu (well-being) and Shou (longevity) in openwork
- 象牙镂雕花鸟火镰套 Stained ivory purse for flint steel carved with bird and flower design in openwork
- 象牙雕云龙花鸟纹镜奁 Ivory toilet case carved with design of dragons, clouds, birds and flowers
- 象牙雕镂空染色花卉纹八方盒 Octagonal ivory box engraved with colourful flower design in openwork
- 象牙雕染色佛手式盒 Stained ivory box in the shape of a finger citrus
- 象牙雕抚琴图金里碗 Ivory bowl mounted with gold inside and carved with design of a figure playing the zither

角雕精品选 Selected Works of Horn Carving

- 犀角镂雕螭柄兽面纹杯 Rhinoceros horn cup carved with a hydra-shaped handle and animal mask design in openwork

- 犀角雕仿古莲纹爵杯 Rhinoceros horn cup carved in the style of an ancient Jue (wine vessel) with lotus design
- 犀角雕鹰熊纹合卺杯 Nuptial cup of rhinoceros horn carved with eagle and bear design
- 犀角雕仙人乘槎杯 Raft-like cup of rhinoceros horn carved with an immortal
- 犀角雕双螭纹执壶 Rhinoceros horn ewer carved with double hydra design
- 犀角雕松鹿纹笔架 Rhinoceros horn brush rest carved with pine and deer design
- 犀角嵌金银丝夔纹扳指 Rhinoceros horn ring of an archer inlaid with gold and silver filigrees and decorated with Kui-dragon pattern
- 鹿角椅 Chair of deerhorn
- 羚羊角鞘刀 Knife with antelope horn sheath
- 羚羊角柄犀角雕云龙嵌石鞘刀 Knife with an antelope horn hilt and a rhinoceros horn sheath carved with dragon and cloud design and inlaid with precious stones

鼻烟壶

SNUFF BOTTLES

一般用语 Terminology

- 金属胎珐琅鼻烟壶 metal-bodied enamel snuff bottle; metal snuff bottle with enamelled decoration
- 画珐琅鼻烟壶 painted enamel snuff bottle
- 掐丝珐琅鼻烟壶 cloisonne enamel snuff bottle; enamel-filigreeing snuff bottle
- 银胎软珐琅鼻烟壶 (俗称银烧蓝) silver-bodied snuff bottle with soft enamel decoration; silver snuff bottle with decoration in enamelling
- 玻璃鼻烟壶 glass snuff bottle
- 单色玻璃鼻烟壶 monochrome glass snuff bottle
- 套色玻璃鼻烟壶 glass snuff bottle with overlay decoration
- 搅色玻璃鼻烟壶 glass snuff bottle in twisted colors
- 金星玻璃鼻烟壶 aventurine snuff bottle

洒金星玻璃鼻烟壶 snuff bottle of glass sprinkled with golden spots

玻璃胎画珐琅鼻烟壶 glass snuff bottle with painted enamel decoration

玉石鼻烟壶 snuff bottle of jade or other precious stones

瓷鼻烟壶 porcelain snuff bottle

竹木牙角鼻烟壶 snuff bottle of bamboo, wood, ivory and horn

漆制鼻烟壶 lacquer snuff bottle

内画鼻烟壶 snuff bottle with inside painting

宫廷制作鼻烟壶 snuff bottle produced by the imperial workshop

官办作坊造鼻烟壶 snuff bottle made by state-run workshop

民办作坊造鼻烟壶 snuff bottle made by civilian-run workshop

地方入贡宫廷的鼻烟壶 snuff bottle paid as a tribute to the throne by local officials

传世品 an article handed down from ancient times

精品 an article of fine quality; art treasure

绝品 superb work of art; art rarity

传统工艺 traditional crafts

工艺水平 technological level

鼻烟碟 snuff saucer; snuff dish

鼻烟勺 snuff scoop

鼻烟漏斗 snuff funnel

鼻烟壶盖 stopper of snuff bottle

鼻烟壶精品选 Selected Works of Snuff Bottles

白玉凸雕开光人物鼻烟壶 White jade snuff bottle embossed with figure design within reserved panels

白玉双夔捧寿图鼻烟壶 White jade snuff bottle with design of double Kui-dragon surrounding character "Shou" (longevity)

青玉双连光素鼻烟壶 Plain twin snuff bottle of sapphire

碧玉结绳纹鼻烟壶 Jasper snuff bottle carved with design of knotted cord

玛瑙“马上封侯”鼻烟壶 Agate snuff bottle with design of a monkey on a horse

花玛瑙行舟捕鱼图鼻烟壶 Floral agate snuff bottle with design of a fishing boat

- 茶晶葫芦形鼻烟壶 Calabash-shaped snuff bottle of tea-colored crystal
- 紫晶瓜形鼻烟壶 Amethyst snuff bottle in the shape of a melon
- 孔雀石鼻烟壶 Malachite snuff bottle
- 绿松石雕填金扁圆鼻烟壶 Oblate turquoise snuff bottle carved with floral design filled-in with gold
- 琥珀光素鼻烟壶 Plain snuff bottle of amber
- 铜胎画珐琅开光花卉鼻烟壶 Painted enamel snuff bottle with a copper body decorated with floral design within reserved panels
- 银胎珐琅山水人物鼻烟壶 Silver bodied snuff bottle with enamelled design of figure in landscape
- 金胎画珐琅孔雀尾形鼻烟壶 Gold bodied snuff bottle of painted enamel in the shape of peacock's tail
- 画珐琅蟹菊纹荷叶式鼻烟碟 Painted enamel snuff dish in the shape of a lotus-leaf with design of crab and chrysanthemum
- 掐丝珐琅宝相花纹鼻烟壶 Cloisonne enamel snuff bottle with rosette design
- 掐丝珐琅勾莲纹双连式鼻烟壶 Cloisonne enamel twin snuff bottles with delineated lotus design
- 白玻璃浮雕荷花鼻烟壶 White glass snuff bottle carved with lotus pattern in relief
- 搅色玻璃罐式鼻烟壶 Pot-shaped snuff bottle of glass in twisted colors
- 椭圆仿翠玻璃鼻烟壶 Elliptic snuff bottle of jadeite-imitating glass
- 洒金星玻璃葫芦式鼻烟壶 Calabash-shaped snuff bottle of glass sprinkled with golden spots
- 白玻璃套粉红龙凤纹扁圆鼻烟壶 Oblate white glass snuff bottle overlaid with design of dragon and phoenix in pink
- 蓝玻璃套两色蔬果纹鼻烟壶 Blue glass snuff bottle with overlay design of vegetables in two colors
- 玻璃胎画珐琅花鸟纹鼻烟壶 Glass bodied snuff bottle with bird and flower design in painted enamel
- 青花釉里红寒江独钓图鼻烟壶 Blue-and-white porcelain snuff

bottle with design of a fishing boat on a wintry river in underglaze red

青花加紫携杖出行图鼻烟壶 Blue-and-white porcelain snuff bottle mixed with purple, decorated with pattern of an old man walking with a staff

绿地开光粉彩婴戏图鼻烟壶 Snuff bottle with design of children at play in famille rose within reserved panels over a green ground

染牙苦瓜形鼻烟壶 Stained ivory snuff bottle in the shape of six-lobed bitter melon

匏制狮纹鼻烟壶 Molded gourd snuff bottle with lion design

红雕漆羲之爱鹅图鼻烟壶 Red lacquer snuff bottle carved with design of Wang Xizhi with his favorite goose

赭漆描金波浪鱼跃图鼻烟壶 Reddish brown lacquer snuff bottle with design of fish jumping out of waves in gold tracery

玻璃内画风雨归舟图鼻烟壶 Glass snuff bottle with inside picture of a boat returning in wind and rain

金银珠宝

GOLD, SILVER AND JEWELLERY

一般用语 Terminology

金银器 gold and silver ware

珠宝饰物 jewellery

珠宝 jewels; pearls and gems

赤金(纯金) pure gold; solid gold

金箔 goldleaf; gold foil

金(银)丝 gold (silver) wire

金(银)累丝 (参见 P235)

纯银 fine (pure; refined) silver

天然银 native silver

银锭 silver ingot

镀金 gold-plating; gilding

镀银 silver-plating; silver-coating; silvering

银镀金 gilt silver; silver plated with gold

银镀金累丝 gilt silver filigree

银错金 silver inlaid with gold
贴金 (参见 P268)
镶嵌 (参见 P267)
鑿花 embossed design
刻花 engraved (carved) design
透花 openwork; carved in openwork

金银珠宝精品选 Selected Works of Gold, Silver and Jewellery

金嵌珠天球仪 Gold celestial globe inlaid with pearls
金嵌珠立佛 Standing Buddha of gold inlaid with pearls
金嵌珠“金瓯永固”杯 Gold cup inscribed with characters
“Jin Ou Yong Gu” (impregnable territorial integrity)
and inlaid with pearls
崇庆皇太后金发塔 Gold pagoda for containing hairs of Empress
Dowager Chongqing (Qing Emperor Qianlong's mother)
金嵌珍珠宝石塔 Gold pagoda inlaid with pearls and gems
金累丝鑿花嵌松石坛城 Gold filigree mandala inlaid with tur-
quoises
金嵌珍珠松石楼式龕 Gold tower-shaped niche for Buddha inlaid
with pearls and turquoises
金嵌珍珠宝石佛龕 Gold casket of Buddha inlaid with pearls and
gems
金嵌珍珠藏经匣 Gold case for keeping Buddhist sutra, inlaid
with pearls and gems
金亭式香筒 Gold pavilion-shaped incense holder
金云龙纹提炉 Gold portable censer with cloud and dragon design
金鹤式香薰 Gold crane-shaped perfumer
金累丝鑿珠松石香囊 Gold filigree sachet inlaid with pearls and
turquoises
金角端香薰 Gold perfumer in the shape of Luduan
金双耳四足炉 Gold incense burner with two ears and four legs
金鹤鹿同春挂屏 Hanging panel inlaid with gold crane and deer
金鑿花八宝双凤盆 Gold basin embossed with design of Eight
Treasures and double phoenix
金嵌蓝宝石葫芦式盒 Gold calabash-shaped box inlaid with sap-
phire

- 金镂空扳指盒 Gold box carved in openwork for containing archer's ring
- 金镶翠碧玺四孔花插 Gold flower receptacle with four holes, inlaid with jadeites and tourmaline
- 金鍐云龙葫芦式执壶 Gold calabash-shaped ewer embossed with design of dragons among clouds
- 金胎画珐琅执壶 Gold-bodied ewer of painted enamel
- 金胎珊瑚桃式盒 Coral box with gold body in the shape of peach
- 金龙凤双喜四字盘 Gold dish carved with four characters "Long" (dragon), "Feng" (phoenix), "Shuang" (double), "Xi" (happiness)
- 御用嵌珠金杯金盘 Gold cup and plate inlaid with pearls for the emperor's daily use
- 金鍐双喜团寿纹茶碗 Gold tea cup engraved with design of Shuangxi (double happiness) and Tuanshou (longevity)
- 金胎绿珐琅嵌红宝石高足盖碗 Gold-bodied green enamel stem bowl with cover decorated with ruby inlays
- 金盖白玉藏文碗 White jade bowl with a gold cover engraved with Tibetan writings
- 金云鹤纹盖罐 Gold covered jar with crane and cloud design
- 金编钟一套 A set of gold Bianzhong (chime bells)
- 金册 Gold album (it was used as the evidence to crown an empress and imperial concubines)
- 金成嫔满汉文册 Gold album for Cheng Pin (Concubine Cheng) in both Chinese and Manchu scripts
- 铜镀金嵌珐琅套筒式千里镜 Gilded copper telescope of the interlocking sleeve type inlaid with enamel plaques
- 银槎杯 Silver cup in the shape of a raft
- 银累丝花瓶 Silver filigree vase
- 银龙柄奶茶壶 Silver pot with a dragon-shaped handle
- 银梅花瓣酒壶 Silver wine ewer in the shape of plum petals
- 带巧妙开关的银酒壶 Silver wine pot with a lid shut with trick lock
- 银暖碗 Silver covered bowl for warming food
- 银鍐云龙纹盖罐 Silver covered jar engraved with dragon and cloud design

- 银胎花梨木食盒 Silver-bodied food box of rose wood
- 银嵌珊瑚项圈 Silver necklace with coral inlay
- 珊瑚双喜字朝珠 Court necklace of coral beads carved with characters "Shuangxi" (double happiness)
- 翠十八子手串 Rosary-bracelet of 18 jadeite beads
- 翠手镯 Jadeite bracelet
- 金镶珠翠手镯 Gold bracelet with pearl and jadeite inlays
- 金镶祖母绿钻石戒指 Gold ring inlaid with emerald and diamond
- 金镶红蓝宝石戒指 Gold ring inlaid with ruby and sapphire
- 银镀金指甲套 Silver-gilt long nail protector
- 翠嵌珍珠耳珰 Jadeite eardrop with pearl inlay
- 金镶珠翠蝙蝠耳钳 Gold eardrop with a gold filigree bat inlaid with pearl and jadeite
- 金嵌红宝石蜻蜓簪 Gold dragonfly-shaped hairpin inlaid with ruby
- 金镶珠石兰花蛱蝶簪 Gold hairpin with a katydid on gold filigree orchid inlaid with pearls and gems
- 碧玺松鼠葡萄佩 Tourmaline pendant decorated with squirrel and grape
- 玛瑙螭耳杯 Agate cup with hydra-shaped handle
- 水晶天鸡瓶 Crystal chicken-shaped vase
- 红宝石佛手 Ruby fingered citron
- 红珊瑚狮 Red coral lion
- 青玉描金题诗碗 Green jade bowl with a poem in gold tracery
- 红白玛瑙双鱼花插 Red and white agate flower-receptacle in double fish shape
- 孔雀石山水人物插屏 Malachite table plaque with landscape and figures
- 青金石松泉人物山子 Miniature hill of lapis lazuli with pines, figures, and a small stream

钟 表

DECORATIVE TIMEPIECES

一般用语 Terminology

钟 clock

表 watch
 计时器 timepiece
 传统计时器 traditional timepiece; traditional timekeeping devices
 日晷 (参见 P48)
 圭表 an ancient Chinese sundial consisting of an elongated dial
 and one or two gnomons
 漏壶 (水钟) clepsydra; water clock
 天文钟 astronomical clock
 机械钟 (表) mechanical clock (watch)
 老式机械钟 (表) old-fashioned mechanical clock (watch)
 自鸣钟 striking clock
 摆钟 pendulum clock
 落地大座钟 grandfather clock
 座钟 table clock; desk clock; bracket clock
 挂钟 (壁钟) wall clock
 更钟 night watches
 日历钟表 calendar clock marked with the date and the week
 双面钟 double-faced clock
 三套钟 tri-function clock; clock with three functions
 时乐钟 musical clock; clock with a musical box
 手表 wrist watch
 怀表 (挂表) pocket watch
 座表 desk watch
 袖珍表 miniature watch
 明摆表 watch with a visible pendulum
 计时 to reckon time
 走时 to keep goodtime; time-giving
 报时 to give the correct time
 报时、报刻 to give the correct hours and quarters
 打点 to sound the hours; hour-telling
 打时、打刻 to sound the hours and quarters
 钟表读数 clock indication
 打更 sound the night watches
 打乐 play music
 钟表装置 clockwork
 钟表零部件 parts and accessories of clocks and watches

钟（表）面、表盘 dial; clock dial; dial plate
 白珐琅罗马数字钟盘 white enamel dial plate with Roman numerals
 钟表指针 clock hand; indicator; pointer
 时针 hour hand
 分针 minute hand
 秒针 second hand
 时分按钮 hour and minute button
 日秒按钮 date and second button
 表蒙子 watch glass; watch crystal
 表壳 clock case; cover of watch; watchcase
 机芯 inner works
 钟摆 pendulum
 钟摆轴承 pendulum bearing
 打点重锤 striking weight
 齿轮 watch gear
 发条 spiral power; spring; clockwork spring
 发条传动装置 spring motor
 链条 chain; watch chain
 钟碗 bell
 八音盒 musical box
 乐箱 musical box
 活动装置 movable devices
 跑人（转人、活动人） moving figure; rotating figure; animated figure
 翻伞转八仙 automatic umbrella and mechanical Eight Immortals
 转八宝 revolving eight Buddhist sacred emblems
 转花 revolving flower; spinning flower
 变花（字） changeable flowers (characters)
 活动鸟兽 moving birds and animals
 鸟鸣 birds sing
 禽嬉 birds sport
 转天鹅（鸭） swimming swan (duck)
 四马喷水 four horses spurting water
 人打钟 figure striking bell
 变戏法 perform conjuring tricks

- 水法 glass waterfall
- 奏乐 music plays
- 自开门 automatic door
- 装饰 decoration; decorated with
- 鍍花 (参见 P267)
- 嵌钻石 (料石、玻璃) inlaid with diamond (paste, glass)
- 嵌珍珠 (玛瑙、螺钿) inlaid with pearl (agate, mother-of-pearl)
- 料石花 colored pastes
- 群仙祝寿 immortals offering birthday congratulations
- 三猿献宝 three monkeys presenting treasures
- 福禄寿三星 three-star gods of happiness, official position and longevity
- 太平有象 an elephant with a vase on its back, symbolizing peace
- 祥禽报瑞 the singing of an auspicious bird heralding good luck
- 孔雀开屏 a peacock in his pride
- 渔樵耕读 figures in fishing, wood-cutting, ploughing and reading
- 重檐楼阁 a double-eaved pavilion
- 清宫造办处做钟处 the Clockmaking Factory of the Imperial Workshops of the Qing Dynasty
- 做钟 clock-making
- 钟表制造学 horology
- 钟表专家 (技师) horologist
- 钟表匠 watchmaker; clockmaker
- 钟表世家 a famous family making clocks for generations
- 名匠精品 elegant works of famous artisans
- 钟表检验仪器 instrument for checking clocks

钟表精品选 Selected Works of Decorative Timepieces

- 经纬赤道式日晷 Copper equatorial sundial
- 铜壶滴漏 Copper clepsydra (water clock)
- 鼓式漏壶 Drum-shaped clepsydra
- 铜风车式钟 Clock with a copper windmill
- 紫檀木楼阁式大更钟 A red sandalwood tower with a large night clock
- 硬木雕花楼式自鸣钟 Striking clock with a hardwood pavilion carved with floral design

- 铜镀金荷花缸钟 Clock on a copper gilt lotus-pot
- 铜镀金写字人钟 Gilt copper clock with a robot writing Chinese characters with a brush
- 铜镀金孔雀开屏钟 Gilt copper clock decorated with a peacock in his pride
- 铜镀金象拉战车表 Gilt copper clock inlaid on a chariot drawn by an elephant
- 铜镀金嵌珐琅楼渔樵耕读钟 Gilt copper clock with an enamel pavilion decorated with figures in fishing, woodcutting, ploughing and reading
- 铜镀金翻伞转八仙钟 Gilt copper clock decorated with an automatic umbrella and revolving Eight Immortals
- 铜镀金珐琅转花活动人物钟 Gilt copper clock fitted with enamel and decorated with mechanical figures and flowers
- 铜镀金嵌珐琅围屏式钟 Gilt copper clock on a screen inlaid with enamel
- 黑漆木楼嵌铜花大座钟 Large desk clock with a black lacquered pavilion inlaid with copper patterns
- 铜镀金镶银片八角奩盒表 Clock with an octagonal dressing case of gilt copper inlaid with silver foils
- 铜镀金饰玛瑙望远镜表 Watch with a gilt copper telescope inlaid with agates
- 铜镀金皇帝腰带带扣表 Watch on the emperor's gilt copper belt buckle
- 铜灯塔式座表 Watch with a copper lighthouse-shaped stand
- 铜火车头模型表 Watch on a copper model of locomotive
- 金镶钻石蝉别针表 Watch on a gold cicada-shaped brooch inlaid with diamonds
- 扇形银镶珐琅怀表 Pocket watch in the shape of a fan with a silver watchcase inlaid with enamel
- 铜镀金嵌珠料钻如意式表 Watch on a gilt copper Ruyi-sceptre inlaid with pearls and diamonds

盆 景

POTTED LANDSCAPES

盆 pot; basin

盆景 miniature landscape; potted landscape

盆景精品选 Selected Works of Potted Landscape

铜镀金盆红宝石梅花盆景 Potted landscape of ruby plum blossom in a gilt copper pot

青玉盆水仙花盆景 Potted landscape with narcissus in a green jade pot

铜镀金鑿花盆翠竹盆景 Potted landscape with jadeite bamboo in a gilt copper basin engraved with floral pattern

金瓶珍珠梅花盆景 Potted landscape of pearl plum blossom in a gold vase

铜镀金海棠式盆红珊瑚盆景 Potted landscape of red coral in a begonia-shaped basin of gilt copper

画珐琅长方盆碧桃盆景 Potted landscape of flowering peach branches in a rectangular painted enamel basin

银镀金累丝长方盆梅花天竺盆景 Potted landscape of plum blossom and sacred bamboo in a gilt silver filigree pot

掐丝珐琅盆桃树盆景 Potted landscape of peach branches in a cloisonne enamel basin

红雕漆盆灵芝万年青盆景 Carved red lacquer pot with miniature landscape of Lingzhi-fungus and evergreen

画珐琅菱花式盆琥珀佛手盆景 Potted landscape of amber fingered citron in a rhombic basin of painted enamel

银累丝盆菊花盆景 Miniature landscape of chrysanthemum in a silver filigree pot

天然木山子嵌玉石人物花卉盆景 Potted landscape of natural wood hill inlaid with jade figures and flowers

白玉嵌红宝石菊花式盆染牙水仙花盆景 Potted landscape of stained ivory narcissus in a white jade pot inlaid with ruby chrysanthemum

群仙祝寿大盆景 Large potted landscape of immortals offering birthday congratulations

铜镀金鑿寿字长方盆梅花盆景 Potted landscape with plum blossom in a rectangular gilt copper pot engraved with character "Shou" (longevity)

珊瑚麻姑献寿盆景 Potted landscape of coral female immortal Ma

Gu presenting a peach as birthday gift

银镀金累丝长方盆穿珠梅花盆景 Miniature landscape with plum blossoms of pearls and gems in a rectangular pot of gilt silver filigree

嵌松石双耳活环瓶松树花卉盆景 Miniature landscape with a pine tree and flowers in a two-handled pot inlaid with turquoise

银六方盆金铁树盆景 Miniature landscape of gold cycas in a hexagonal silver pot

玛瑙凸雕桃盆料石花卉盆景 Potted landscape of flowers in an agate basin embossed with peach pattern

银累丝珐琅盆珊瑚桃树盆景 Miniature landscape of coral peach tree in an enamel pot inlaid with silver filigree

青玉碗玉石灵芝盆景 Miniature landscape of jade-inlaid Lingzhi-fungus in a green jade basin

掐丝珐琅桃式盆红珊瑚盆景 Potted landscape of red coral in a cloisonne enamel peach-shaped basin

银累丝海棠式盆珊瑚牡丹盆景 Miniature landscape of peony and coral beads in a begonia-shaped pot covered with silver filigree

孔雀石嵌珠宝蓬莱仙景盆景 Miniature landscape with Penglai fairyland of malachite inlaid with pearls and gems

铜镀金长方盆三星献寿盆景 Potted landscape of Three Gods offering birthday gifts in a rectangular gilt copper pot

五彩瓷盆白珊瑚盆景 Potted landscape of white coral in a polychrome porcelain basin

嵌玻璃盆琥珀刘海戏蟾盆景 Potted landscape with amber Liu Hai teasing a toad in an octagonal basin inlaid with glass

木胎海棠式盆翠竹盆景 Miniature landscape of green bamboo in a begonia-shaped pot of wood body

木灵芝海石菌盆景 Potted landscape of natural Haishijun and Lingzhi

银镀金累丝珐琅盆红珊瑚盆景 Miniature landscape of red coral in a gilt silver filigree pot inlaid with enamel

金委角长方盆红宝石梅花盆景 Potted landscape of ruby plum blossom in a rectangular gold basin

如意 RUYI-SCEPTRE

一般用语 Terminology

- 如意 Ruyi-sceptre (an "S" -shaped ornamental object symbolizing auspiciousness and good luck)
如意头 headpiece of Ruyi-sceptre
如意尾 endpiece of Ruyi-sceptre
如意柄 handle of Ruyi-sceptre
如意托 mount of Ruyi-sceptre

如意精品选 Selected Works of Ruyi-Sceptre

- 翠雕螭纹如意 Jadeite Ruyi-sceptre carved with hydra design
墨玉嵌石三多如意 Dark jade Ruyi-sceptre inlaid with peach, pomegranate and fingered citron of precious stones
紫檀雕松竹梅嵌玉如意 Red sandalwood Ruyi-sceptre carved with design of pine, bamboo and plum blossom and inlaid with jades
金“宜子宜孙”双喜小如意 Gold Ruyi-sceptre engraved with characters “Shuangxi” (double happiness) and “Yi Zi Yi Sun” (good for posterity)
黄地粉彩雕松竹如意 Yellow porcelain Ruyi-sceptre with design of pine and bamboo in famille-rose
掐丝珐琅夔龙宝相花如意 Cloisonne enamel Ruyi-sceptre with design of rosette and Kui-dragon
黄杨木嵌金蝠珠石如意 Boxwood Ruyi-sceptre inlaid with gold bats, pearls and precious stones
铜镀金八仙如意 Gilt copper Ruyi-sceptre carved with design of Eight Immortals
水晶雕云龙如意 Crystal Ruyi-sceptre carved with dragon and cloud design
水晶灵芝如意 Crystal Ruyi-sceptre in the shape of Lingzhi-fungus
金鏤花如意 Gold Ruyi-sceptre engraved with floral pattern
铜镀金累丝嵌翠三镶如意 Ruyi-sceptre of gilt copper filigree

- with three jadeite inlays
- 铁错银龙纹嵌松石如意 Ruyi-sceptre of iron inlaid with silver dragon design and inset with turquoises
- 白玉雕三星纹如意 White jade Ruyi-sceptre carved with design of the three gods of well-being, official position and longevity
- 青玉镶荷鸟如意 Sapphire Ruyi-sceptre inlaid with decoration of lotus and birds
- 青玉浮雕百合柿子如意 Sapphire Ruyi-sceptre carved with persimmon and lily flowers in relief
- 木雕嵌玉石染牙石榴如意 Wooden Ruyi-sceptre inlaid with jades and pomegranates of stained ivory
- 紫檀嵌玉八卦如意 Red sandalwood Ruyi-sceptre inlaid with jade design of the Eight Diagrams
- 金累丝万年如意 Ruyi-sceptre of gold filigrees with characters "Wan Nian Ru Yi" (May everything forever turn out as you wish)
- 木雕各式花卉如意 A set of nine wooden Ruyi-sceptres carved in the shape of flowers
- 天然竹根灵芝如意 Ruyi-sceptre of bamboo-root in the shape of Lingzhi-fungus
- 文竹雕暗八仙寿字如意 Ruyi-sceptre of bamboo veneer carved with character "Shou" (longevity) and emblems of the Eight Immortals
- 红珊瑚云蝠纹如意 Ruyi-sceptre of red coral carved with bat and cloud design
- 木柄嵌金饰如意 Wooden Ruyi-sceptre inlaid with gold decoration
- 木柄嵌宝石九九如意 Nine wooden Ruyi-sceptres inlaid with gems
- 松石嵌宝石三镶如意 Turquoise Ruyi-sceptre inlaid with three gems
- 翡翠三镶如意 Ruyi-sceptre with three jadeite inlays
- 铜镀金镂空如意 Gilded copper Ruyi-sceptre carved in openwork

十八 古玺印

ANCIENT SEALS

类型

TYPES OF SEALS

- 玺 the imperial (or royal) seal; the seal of an emperor
- 国玺 the seal of the state; the great seal; the formal seal of a state; the seal used as the emblem of the imperial power
- 传国玺 succession seal; the imperial seal handed down by the founder of the dynasty to his heirs as a symbol of imperial authority
- 玉玺 (宝玺) the seal used in the emperor's collection and appreciation of calligraphy, paintings and books
- 印章 seal; signet
- 戳记 chop; stamp
- 朱记 Zhu Ji, another name for the seal
- 官印 official seal
- 职官印 official seal during one's tenure of office; seal inscribed with one's official title
- 挂帅将军印 commanding general's seal; chief commander's seal
- 官署印 (官府公章) official seal of a government agency
- 关防 government or army seal
- 私印 personal seal
- 姓名印 personal name seal
- 花押印 (元押) seal inscribed with the personal name in cursive hand, also called seal of the Yuan Dynasty
- 吉语印 seal engraved with propitious sayings
- 闲章 leisure seal; unofficial seal, usually containing an idiom, epigram, motto or quotation from poems

- 肖形印 pictorial seal; portrait-seal
- 人物肖形印 pictorial seal engraved with figure pattern
- 走兽肖形印 pictorial seal engraved with quadruped pattern
- 飞禽肖形印 pictorial seal engraved with bird pattern
- 虫鱼肖形印 pictorial seal engraved with insect and fish pattern
- 其它肖形印 pictorial seal engraved with vase, ewer, censer, tree, or pavilion pattern
- 收藏印 collector's seal; seal used on collections of painting, calligraphy or books
- 宫殿印 an imperial seal inscribed with the name of a hall of the imperial palace; palace seal

形制 SHAPES

- 方形 square
- 长方形 rectangular
- 六方形 hexagonal
- 八方形 octagonal
- 圆形 round
- 椭圆形 oblong; oval
- 双圆形 double ring shaped
- 三连形 triplet
- 盾形 shield-shaped
- 银锭形 silver-ingot-shaped
- 琵琶形 in the shape of Pipa (a musical instrument)
- 爵杯形 in the shape of Jue (an ancient bronze wine vessel)
- 龟形 tortoise-shaped
- 鱼形 fish-shaped
- 鸟形 bird-shaped
- 虎爪形 tiger-claw-shaped
- 葫芦形 calabash-shaped
- 叶形 leaf-shaped
- 花形 flower-shaped
- 莲花玉兔形 in the shape of lotus and rabbit
- 子母印 (大小两印套合而成) a pair of interlocking seals (two

seals set with the smaller seal encased in the larger)

套印 (大小数印套合而成) a set of several seals with the
smaller ones encased in the larger

穿带 (式) 印 seal with two tape holes

纽式

KNOB STYLES

印纽 (印鼻) knob (or handle) of a seal

龙纽 dragon-shaped knob

交龙纽 entwining-dragon-shaped knob

蹲龙纽 squatting-dragon-shaped knob

盘龙纽 coiling-dragon-shaped knob

卧龙纽 crouching-dragon-shaped knob

行龙纽 flying dragon-shaped knob

云龙纽 knob shaped like cloud and dragon

螭纽 hydra-shaped knob; hornless-dragon-shaped knob

盘螭纽 coiling-hydra-shaped knob

蹲螭纽 squatting-hydra-shaped knob

螭虎纽 hydra-tiger-shaped knob

虎纽 tiger-shaped knob

狮纽 lion-shaped knob

麒麟纽 unicorn-shaped knob

瑞兽纽 auspicious-animal-shaped knob

异兽纽 strange-animal-shaped knob

辟邪纽 Pixie, fabulous-animal-shaped knob

熊纽 bear-shaped knob

象纽 elephant-shaped knob

卧象纽 crouching-elephant-shaped knob

驼纽 camel-shaped knob

龟纽 tortoise-shaped knob

鱼纽 fish-shaped knob

蛇纽 snake-shaped knob

马纽 horse-shaped knob

羊纽 ram-shaped knob

鹰纽 eagle-shaped knob

雁纽	wild-goose-shaped knob
鸟纽	bird-shaped knob
蛙纽	frog-shaped knob
人物纽	human-figure-shaped knob
舞人纽	dancer-shaped knob
随形山水纽	knob shaped like landscape
鼻纽	nose-shaped knob
直纽 (柱纽)	cylindric knob; column-shaped knob
柄纽	handle-shaped knob
榫纽	knob shaped like a shaft
覆斗纽	inverted-cup-shaped knob
竹节纽	bamboo-joint-shaped knob
钱纽	coin-shaped knob
桥纽	knob shaped like a bridge
亭纽	pavilion-shaped knob
坛纽	knob shaped like an altar
瓦纽	tile-shaped knob
环纽	ring-shaped knob

印文书体

STYLES OF SCRIPTS OF THE SEAL

印文	script of a seal; impression of a seal
书体	script type; style of script
阳文	characters cut in relief; positive legend
朱文	characters carved in relief; red legend
满红文	full red script
阴文	characters cut in intaglio; negative legend
白文	intagliated characters; white legend
满白文	full white script
飞白文	flying white script
象形文	pictographic script
古文	(参见 P177)
篆书	seal script; seal character
大篆	Da Zhuan, large seal script, an ancient style of calligraphy, current in the Zhou Dynasty

- 小篆 Xiao Zhuan, small seal script or the lesser seal character, a simplified form of Da Zhuan, adopted in the Qin Dynasty
- 秦篆 Qin Zhuan, another name for Xiao Zhuan (small seal script)
- 玉箸篆 Yuzhu Zhuan, known as small seal script
- 汉篆 Han Zhuan, Han seal script (the Xiao Zhuan found on seals of the Han Dynasty, sometimes referred to as Han Zhuan)
- 摹印篆 Moyin Zhuan, a special script for seal cutting in the Han Dynasty
- 缪篆 Mou Zhuan, the variation of small seal script; winding seal script
- 叠篆 Die Zhuan, reduplicated seal script; overlapping seal script
- 九叠篆 Jiudie Zhuan, nine-layered seal script
- 叠文 double script
- 殳文 Shu script, a style of script in the Qin Dynasty
- 汉瓦当文 Han tile script
- 蝌蚪文 (参见 P177)
- 柳叶文 willow-leaf script
- 鹄头文 swan-head script
- 玉筋文 jade strip script
- 悬针文 upright needle script
- 垂露文 dewdrop script
- 龙书 dragon script
- 虎书 tiger script
- 鸾凤书 phoenix script
- 鸟书 bird script; bird-foot-shaped script;
- 虫书 insect script
- 鸟虫书 bird and insect script
- 穗书 grain-ear script
- 汉文 Han script; Chinese character (or script)
- 满文 Manchu script
- 满汉合璧印书 inscription in both Chinese and Manchu scripts
- 蒙文 Mongolian
- 八思巴文 Phags-pa script
- 印文待考 scripts of the seal remaining to be verified

印材

MATERIALS FOR SEAL CARVING

- 金 gold
银 silver
铜 copper; bronze
铁 iron
玉 (参见 P169)
白玉 white jade
黄玉 (参见 P169)
青玉 sapphire
碧玉 (参见 P169)
墨玉 dark jade; black jade
鸡血石 Jixie stone; heliotrope; chicken-blood-colored stone
青田石 (参见 P170)
昌化石 Changhua stone
寿山石 Shoushan stone
田黄石 (参见 P170)
巴陵石 Baling stone
竹根 (参见 P271)
檀木 sandalwood
黄杨木 (参见 P251)
象牙 (参见 P274)
骨质 bone
犀角 rhinoceros horn
琥珀 (参见 P170)
玛瑙 agate
水晶 (参见 P170)
紫晶 amethyst
墨晶 smoky quartz; black crystal; opaque crystal
红晶 garnet

其他

OTHERS

- 印章学 sigillography; sphragistics; studies of seal

- 篆刻 seal cutting
- 篆刻流派 schools of seal cutting
- 浙派 Zhejiang school of seal-engraving
- 皖派 Anhui school of seal-engraving
- 莆田派 (也称闽派) Putian school (also known as Min school)
of seal-engraving
- 西泠印社 The Xiling Seal Society
- 篆刻刀法 engraving technique; knife work
- 刻刀 (铁笔) burin; graver
- 单 (双) 刀 single (double) graver
- 印床 tool for seal cutting
- 治印 seal-making; seal-engraving
- 治印人 seal-engraver
- 封泥时期 the Clay Impression Period
- 朱印时期 the Vermilion Impression Period
- 泥封 clay sealing; clay impression
- 泥封技术 clay sealing technique
- 印记 impression of a seal
- 朱榻 vermilion impression of a seal
- 印谱 a collection of impressions of seals by famous seal-engraver; a
book of ancient seals
- 宝谱 album of impressions of imperial seals
- 印体 volume of seal; the style of the whole seal
- 印面 surface of a seal
- 印背 back of a seal
- 印面布局 composition of seal surface
- 边款侧款 (边跋) side colophon on a seal
- 边饰 border decoration of a seal; side view of a seal
- 印绶 seal and its silk ribbon; seal and tassels
- 玺绶 the imperial seal and the attached cordon
- 钤印 affix a seal to; affix one's seal to; stamp a seal
- 印泥 red ink paste used for seals; red ink for imprinting of seals;
Chinese vermilion seal paste
- 印油 stamp-pad ink
- 印池 seal ink-pad well
- 印台 ink pad; stamp pad

清宫玺印选
THE IMPERIAL SEALS SELECTED
FROM THE QING COURT

二十五宝 The Twenty-Five Imperial Seals symbolizing the imperial power were selected by Emperor Qianlong from the seals of successive reigns of the Qing Dynasty in 1746. They were made of jade, gold or sandalwood with knobs in different shapes of dragon, and used for different purposes in politics, military affairs, law, culture and education, imperial clan, and foreign affairs, in order to show directly the supremacy of imperial authority.

天子之宝 (金质、交龙纽、玺文为满文篆书) Gold seal with an entwining-dragon-shaped knob inscribed with "Tian Zi Zhi Bao" (seal of the Son of Heaven) in Manchu script

皇帝之宝 (檀木质、盘龙纽、玺文为满汉文合璧) Sandalwood seal with a coiled-dragon-shaped knob inscribed with "Huang Di Zhi Bao" (seal of the emperor) in both Chinese and Manchu scripts

皇后之宝 (金质、交龙纽、玺文为满汉文合璧) Gold seal with an entwining-dragon-shaped knob inscribed with "Huang Hou Zhi Bao" (seal of the empress) in both Chinese and Manchu scripts

康熙“育德勤民”宝玺 (檀木质、瑞兽纽、玺文为汉文篆书) Emperor Kangxi's seal made of sandalwood with an auspicious-animal-shaped knob inscribed with Chinese characters "Yu De Qin Min" (cultivating the virtue and diligently attending to people's welfare) in seal script

雍正帝“尊亲之宝” (青玉质、卧象纽、汉文篆书) Emperor Yongzheng's seal made of sapphire with a squatting-elephant-shaped knob inscribed with Chinese characters "Zun Qin Zhi Bao" (seal for honoring one's parents) in seal script

乾隆帝田黄三连玺 Emperor Qianlong's tri-connected seal carved

out of one piece of honey-colored stone

太上皇帝之宝（碧玉质、交龙纽、满汉文合璧） Jasper seal with an entwining-dragon-shaped knob inscribed with “Tai Shang Huang Di Zhi Bao” (seal of the super-emperor) in both Chinese and Manchu scripts

青玉交龙纽“古稀天子之宝” Sapphire seal with entwining-dragon-shaped knob inscribed with characters “Gu Xi Tian Zi Zhi Bao” (seal of the Son of Heaven at the age of seventy) The seal was carved in celebration of Emperor Qianlong's 70th birthday in 1780.

青玉交龙纽“八徵耄耋之宝” Sapphire seal with entwining-dragon-shaped knob inscribed with characters “Ba Zheng Mao Die Zhi Bao” (seal of an octogenarian) The seal was carved in celebration of Emperor Qianlong's 80th birthday in 1790.

碧玉交龙纽“十全老人之宝” Jasper seal with an entwining-dragon-shaped knob and the inscription of “Shi Quan Lao Ren Zhi Bao” (seal of the perfect old man)

青玉虎螭纽“三希堂精鉴玺” Sapphire seal with a tiger-and-hydra-shaped knob and the inscription of “San Xi Tang Jing Jian Xi” (appreciation seal of Three Rarities Study)

宝典福书印章 A set of 60 seals of Qingtian stone presented by a high official to Emperor Qianlong in celebration of his 80th birthday

碧玉辟邪纽“抑斋”印 Jasper seal with a knob in the shape of Pixie (evil-exorcising-mythical animal) and the inscription of “Yi Zhai” (Yi Lodge)

铜镀金龟纽“珍妃之印”满汉合璧印文 Gilt copper seal with a tortoise-shaped knob inscribed with “Zhen Fei Zhi Yin” (seal of Imperial Concubine Zhen) in both Chinese and Manchu scripts

十九 古乐器

ANCIENT CHINESE MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS

石乐器

STONE INSTRUMENTS

特磬 (参见 P172)

编磬 (参见 P172)

金乐器

METAL INSTRUMENTS

钟 bell

编钟 (参见 P124)

甬钟 (参见 P124)

铃 bell similar in form to bell but much smaller

铎 (参见 P124)

韵铎 gong chimes

钹 cymbals

搏 bell with plane opening and circular knob

号筒 trumpet

饶 a big bell with hollow handle

铙 a military musical instrument

钲 bell-like but slender with short hollow handle

铎 (参见 P124)

皮乐器

SKIN INSTRUMENTS

- 楹鼓 large barrel-drum
 搏附 small barrel-drum
 鞀鼓 rattle-drum
 梆鼓 flat-drum

弦乐器

STRINGED INSTRUMENTS

- 琴 lute
 瑟 pealtery
 琵琶 balloon guitar
 二弦 two-stringed violin
 三弦 three-stringed guitar
 月琴 moon guitar
 胡琴 four-stringed violin
 洋琴 harpsichord

竹乐器

BAMBOO INSTRUMENTS

- 箫 ceremonial vertical flute
 排箫 pandean pipes
 笙 reed (mouth) organ
 篪 Chi (flute, specially played for an orchestra)
 笛 common horizontal flute
 管 small flute
 锁呐 clarinet

木乐器

WOODEN INSTRUMENTS

- 祝 Zhu (sonorous box, played at the start of an orchestra)
 敔 Yü (musical tiger, played at the end of an orchestra)
 拍板 castanets
 木鱼 (参见 P337)

泥乐器 CLAY INSTRUMENTS

埙 Xun (ocarina shaped like an egg)

明清宫廷音乐 COURT MUSIC OF THE MING AND QING DYNASTIES

丹陛大乐 Danbi Dayue — a great music consisting of metal, bamboo, skin, wooden, and stringed instruments played at grand ceremonies when ministers and officials saluted the emperor

中和韶乐 Zhonghe Shaoyue — a ceremonial music consisting of metal, stone, silk, bamboo, clay, skin, gourd and wooden instruments played at grand ceremonies or when offering sacrifices to gods or ancestors

卤簿乐 Lubu Yue — a protocol music in imperial procession, which instruments consisting of different materials were played when the emperor went on an inspection tour

大驾卤簿 Dajia Lubu — Its musical instruments were played when the emperor offered the sacrifice to Heaven and prayed for rain and bumper harvest year.

法驾卤簿 Fajia Lubu — Its musical instruments were played when the emperor offered the sacrifices to Earth, altars and temples.

銮驾卤簿 Luanjia Lubu — Its musical instruments were played when the emperor gave an inspection tour within the imperial city.

骑驾卤簿 Qijia Lubu — Its musical instruments were played when the emperor gave an inspection tour away from the capital.

二十 古书籍

ANCIENT BOOKS

一般用语

TERMINOLOGY

- 普通书 ordinary books
- 善（珍）本书 rare books
- 孤本书 unique (only extant copy of a rare book); unica (L.)
- 殿本书 palace edition books
- 版本 edition (in different forms, bindings, etc. or by different publishers)
- 刻本 block-printed edition
- 宋刻本 a Song Dynasty block-printed edition
- 线装本 thread-bound edition
- 线装书 thread-bound Chinese book; a book bound in traditional Chinese style
- 廉价版 a cheap edition
- 豪华版 a deluxe edition
- 原（手）稿 manuscript (MS; MSS pl.)
- 缮（抄）本 transcription
- 木版印刷 blockprinting
- 雕版印刷 engraved printing
- 摹真本 facsimile
- 丛书 collectanea (L.); collections
- 会典 documents on rules, regulations and systems (of the governmental institutes of the whole empire)
- 通典 (参见 P309)
- 汇考 the principle series of extracts from standard works
- 集注 variorum

总论	disquisitions of a general character
图书集成	the encyclopedia
图书文献	rare books and historical documents
纪事本末	recording events from beginning to end
纪年 (本纪)	annals; chronicles
轶事	anecdotes
实录	fragments of the official annals; veritable (true) records
类志	topical topography
方志	local gazetteers
方略	military expeditions
兵略	military history
掌故	historical documents
经、史、子、集	classics, history, philosophy, belles-letters
类目	category
类书	reference books with entries according to subjects
总目	general synopsis
表	statements; memorial; report
志	records
传记	biography
列传	biographies of prominent persons; series of biographies
帝纪	annals of the emperors
外纪	extra records
游记	travels
正史	national history
稗史	legend
外史 (传)	romances
野史	unofficial history
纪事	a multifarious collection of notes (minor historical and other passages)
艺文	elegant compositions (especially pieces in the poetical prose)
考工	handicraft
杂录	miscellaneous extracts from the classics and general literature
杂著	miscellanea; miscellaneous literary works
补编	supplements

续编 sequels
 外编 passages of fantasy
 起居注 diaries of activities and repose
 史料 historical materials
 圣训 (参见 P71)
 诏书 imperial mandates
 廷寄 (参见 P72)
 宫中奏折 palace memorials
 丝纶 imperial instruction book
 古书装帧 binding forms of ancient books
 卷轴装 writing reels binding
 旋风装 fringed binding
 经折装 folded binding
 梵夹装 clamped binding
 包背装 wrapped-ridge binding
 线装 thread binding
 蝴蝶装 butterfly binding

经、史、子、集 CLASSICS, HISTORY, PHILOSOPHY, BELLES-LETTERS

- 四书 Si Shu. Four Books (a general title for the four books —
 Lun Yu 论语, Meng Zi 孟子, Da Xue 大学 and Zhong
 Yong 中庸)
- 论语 Lun Yu. Analects of Confucius (a collection of Confucius' sayings that appear to have been remembered and passed along by his disciples)
- 大学 Da Xue. The Great Learning (one of the Confucian classics attributed to Zeng Zi 曾子)
- 孟子 Meng Zi. The Book of Mencius (the book in which Mencius' thought is preserved was probably compiled by Mencius himself)
- 中庸 Zhong Yong. The Golden Mean; Doctrine of the Mean (one of the Confucian classics attributed to Zi Si 子思)

- 五经 Wu Jing. Five Classics (works originally designated in this way and esteemed by Confucians as the literary cornerstone of Chinese civilization)
- 诗经 Shi Jing. Classic of Songs; Book of Odes; Book of Songs (a collection of China's earliest poetry; more than half of its bulk is made up of folk songs; the remainder consists of formal odes or hymns that were used on ceremonial occasions in the feudal courts)
- 书经、尚书 Shu Jing, Shang Shu. Classic of Writings; Classic of Documents (or Ancient Writing); Book of Historical Documents (a collection of disjointed documentary pieces, mostly harangues and exhortations, which are attributed to kings and ministers from the ages of the legendary rulers Yao 尧 and Shun 舜 down through the first three centuries of the Zhou Dynasty)
- 易经 Yi Jing. Classic of Changes (originated as a cryptic diviner's handbook but by early imperial times had acquired commentaries that lent it mystical cosmological significance)
- 春秋 Chun Qiu. Spring and Autumn Annals (a chronicle of events from 722 to 481 B. C., written from the point of view of the State of Lu 鲁 and believed by traditional Chinese to be compiled and edited by Confucius to indicate his valued judgments about historical events and personages)
- 礼经、礼记 Li Jing, Li Ji. Classics of Rituals; Book of Rites (This is not in fact a single work but three books in one category. One is Zhou Rituals 周礼, which is an elaborately detailed description of how government was organized in early Zhou times; the second is Propriety and Ritual 仪礼, supposedly a description of the Zhou Code of gentlemanly conduct; the third is Ritual Records 礼记, a heterogeneous collection of treatises on funerals, mourning, sacrifices, weddings, banquets and similar matters)
- 孝经 Xiao Jing. Classic of Filial Piety (Unknown authorship. It

extols filial piety as the root of all other virtues. From early Han times it became the traditional introduction to classical learning for all Chinese youth.)

山海经 Shan Hai Jing. Classic of Mountains and Rivers; Book of Mountains and Seas (a book dealing with geography as known to the ancient Chinese, written in the Warring States, but author unknown)

水经注 Shui Jing Zhu. The Commentary on Waterways Classic (the oldest recorded description of the rivers and the natural beauties of ancient China together with historical anecdotes; the author is Li Daoyuan 酈道元 of the Northern Wei Dynasty)

三传 San Zhuan. Three Commentaries (These are: Commentary of Gong Yang 公羊传; Commentary of Gu Liang 谷梁传; Commentary of Zuo 左传)

史记 Shi Ji. Historical Records; Historical Memoirs (a monumental work in 130 chapters compiled by Sima Qian 司马迁 of the Han Dynasty, organized in five main sections: basic annals, 12 chapters; chronological tables, 10 chapters; treaties or monographs, 8 chapters; hereditary families, 30 chapters; biographies, 70 chapters)

二十四史 Er Shi Si Shi. The Twenty-Four Dynastic Histories (It covers 4,000 years of China's history up to the Qing Dynasty and runs into 3259 (or 3254) volumes with 40,000,000 Chinese characters.)

前汉书 Qian Han Shu. History of the Former Han Dynasty (compiled by Ban Gu 班固 of the Latter Han Dynasty, and after his death his work was compiled by his sister Ban Zhao 班昭, the outstanding female intellectual of early Chinese history)

三国志 San Guo Zhi. History of the Three Kingdoms (in 65 volumes, telling about the history of the three kingdoms of Wei, Shu and Wu, was compiled by Chen Shou 陈寿 of the Western Jin Dynasty)

唐荟要 Tang Hui Yao. Important Documents of the Tang Dynasty (in 100 volumes divided into 514 categories, was com-

- piled by Wang Pu 王溥 of the Song Dynasty; it includes the evolution of various institutions of the Tang Dynasty)
- 资治通鉴 Zi Zhi Tong Jian. Comprehensive Mirror for Aid in Governance (a compendious, integrated chronicle of Chinese history from 402 B. C. to the establishment of the Song Dynasty in 960 compiled by Sima Guang 司马光)
- 资治通鉴纲目 Zi Zhi Tong Jian Gang Mu. A Condensation of the Comprehensive Mirror for Aid in Governance (written by the Southern Song philosopher Zhu Xi 朱熹 and his disciples, who gave their episodic summaries "headlines" to facilitate skimming)
- 永乐大典 Yongle Dadian. Great Canon of the Yongle Era; Encyclopedia Sinica of the Yongle Era; Yongle Encyclopedia (left in manuscript form in 1407; two additional manuscript copies were made in the 1560's, but various disasters scattered or destroyed all three sets, so that now fewer than 400 volumes are known to exist. It is the largest one of its kind in the world)
- 通典 Tong Dian. Comprehensive Canons (a voluminous treatise on the various departments of official administration, compiled by Du You 杜佑 about 800 A. D. , and divided into nine sections: political economy 食货; literary degrees 选举; government offices 职官; ceremonies 礼; music 乐; the army 兵; punishments 刑; political geography 州群; national defenses 边防)
- 文献通考 Wen Xian Tong Kao. Comprehensive Historical Compendia (By Ma Duanlin 马端临 this book was published in 1919. It is based on the Comprehensive Canons 通典, but the nine sections of the earlier work are expanded into 24, and the bulk of the matter proportionately increased.)
- 通鉴辑览 Tong Jian Ji Lan. General History of China (was compiled in 1767 by imperial command; it contains 116 volumes)
- 太平御览 Tai Ping Yu Lan. Taiping Imperial Encyclopedia (was compiled by Li Fang 李昉 and others in 977 A. D. ; it

contains 1,000 books grouped under 55 categories, each of these being divided into further subcategories)

四库全书 Si Ku Quan Shu. Encyclopedia of the Four Categories; Complete Collection of Writings from the Four Categories (A great imperial manuscript collection that came in the 1770's. The four categories are classics, histories, philosophical writings and bells-lettres. Seven complete sets of roughly 36,000 volumes each were eventually made; some of these sets have been preserved to the present.)

四库全书荟要 Si Ku Quan Shu Hui Yao. Selections from the Encyclopedia of the Four Categories; Essentials of the Imperial Library

荀子 Xun Zi. Master Xun (shows enormous erudition and broad interests in practical matters; Xun Zi set down his philosophy in very systematic detail in this book.)

墨子 Mo Zi. Master Mo (In this book Mo Zi analyzes and offers solutions for the problems of world in highly logical, systematic essays.)

道德经 Dao De Jing. Classic of the Way and of Virtue; Canon of the Tao and Its Virtue; Ethics Scripture (Another title of Master Lao 老子. It has only about 5000 words written by Li Er 李耳 in the Zhou Dynasty. This is a philosophic writing of Taoism on the universe, society, political ideology, socialization and principles of self-cultivation.)

庄子 Zhuang Zi. Master Zhuang (Attributed to Zhuang Zhou 庄周, the book is a longer prose work of parables, parodies and fantasies rather than exposition.)

列子 Lie Zi. Master Lie (Attributed to a shadowy figure named Lie Yukou 列御寇, this book is a short one that has the same rambling, anecdotal, whimsical spirit as the Master Zhuang, but it is certainly a later production than the Master Zhuang.)

管子 Guan Zi. Master Guan (It is a dull, eclectic collection of narratives, dialogues, and essays, some of which deal in the fashion of the later legalist writers with problems of state administration and interstate competition.)

- 商君书、商子 Shang Jun Shu, Shang Zi. The Book of Lord Shang; Master Shang (This is a short series of topical essays on aspects of government. It is ascribed to Shang Yang 商鞅. The book heavily emphasizes the necessity of government by law rather than by human caprice.)
- 韩非子 Han Fei Zi. Master Han Fei (This is a stylish, sophisticated, often witty book written by Han Fei, a noble man of the State of Han 韩. He wrote his book as a guide for his own ruler.)
- 淮南子 Huai Nan Zi. Master Huai Nan; King of Huai Nan (This is a book on philosophy by Liu An 刘安, King of Huai Nan 淮南王 of the Han Dynasty. It was compiled in the 2nd century B. C.)
- 孙子 Sun Zi. Master Sun (The book deals analytically with total war. Its most fundamental principles are that deception is the key to success in war, and that the greatest generals are those who can overcome the enemy without fighting. It was written by Sun Wu Zi 孙武子 or Sun Wu 孙武, a famous Chinese military scientist in the 5th century B. C.)
- 战国策 Zhan Guo Ce. Records of the Warring States; Intrigues of the Warring States (This book written by Liu Xiang 刘向 of the Western Han Dynasty contains rhetorical exercises that were apparently used in the preceding centuries to train men in the subtle skills of diplomatic intercourse. Its anecdotes take the form of historical narratives, in which regional lords are advised how to survive or succeed in critical situations hypothetically confronting their states.)
- 渊鉴类函 Yuan Jian Lei Han. A Magnificent Thesaurus (Compiled by Zhang Ying 张英 and others of the Qing Dynasty and published in 1710. Primarily designed as a collection of phraseology for the purposes of poetic composition, it outgrew its original conception, and forms a magnificent thesaurus of extracts from the best classes of literature. It is divided into 450 volumes, beginning with Heaven and ending with the Animal Kingdom.)

古今图书集成 Gu Jin Tu Shu Ji Cheng. Chinese Encyclopedia; Synthesis of Books and Illustrations of Ancient and Modern Times; Collection of Ancient and Modern Books (This encyclopedia was designed to provide a comprehensive survey of all that was the best in the literature of the past, dealing with every branch of knowledge. The scheme of the work had been conceived and formulated by the Emperor Kangxi and Chen Menglei 陈梦雷 was the man chosen to execute it.)

说文解字 Shuo Wen Jie Zi. Words Explained; Analytical Dictionary of Characters (The book was compiled by the lexicologist Xu Shen 许慎 of the Han Dynasty. It is China's first real dictionary which explained the pronunciations and presumed meanings of more than 9,000 characters. It is a particularly noteworthy landmark in the history of Chinese cultural development.)

古典文学 CLASSICAL LITERATURE

楚辞 Chu Ci. The Elegies of Chu; The Songs of Chu (As the title indicates, the poems represent a South China tradition. About half of them are attributed to Qu Yuan 屈原, whose own poems are thought to have been written during his exile.)

离骚 Li Sao. Encountering Sorrow (This is the longest and most famous poem in Chu Ci. Speaking entirely in the first person and in mystical language, the poet sings of his virtues, his ruination by slanders, his hatred of wickedness, his travels to a variety of heavens and fairy-lands in quest of goodness and appreciation, and his anguished frustrations.)

世说新语 Shi Shuo Xin Yu. New Specimens of Social Talk; A New Account of Tales of the World (An especially famous anthology of wit and humor reflecting the "pure conversation" escapist frivolities of the immediate post-Han

- years. It was compiled by Liu Yiqing 刘义庆 of the Southern Dynasty.)
- 尔雅 Er Ya. Literary Exposition (Compiled by the scholars of the early Han Dynasty, this is the earliest book containing commentaries on classics, names, etc.)
- 文心雕龙 Wen Xin Diao Long. The Literary Mind and the Carving of Dragons (By Liu Xie 刘勰 of the Southern Dynasties, a comprehensive analysis in parallel prose of literary theories and critiques up to the author's time)
- 西厢记 Xi Xiang Ji. Romance of the West Chamber (It is a Za Ju 杂剧 composed early in the thirteenth century by Wang Shifu 王实甫. This famous Chinese drama tells of a love affair between a young student Zhang Junrui 张君瑞 and a young girl Cui Yingying 崔莺莺.)
- 全唐诗 Quan Tang Shi. Complete Tang Poetry (An eighteenth century anthology of poetry from the Tang reproduced 48, 900 poems by almost 2, 300 poets)
- 窦娥冤 Dou E Yuan. Injustice Suffered by Dou E (A poetic drama written by Guan Hanqing 关汉卿 of the Yuan Dynasty. It depicts a case in which a widow Dou E was unjustly sentenced.)
- 三国演义 San Guo Yan Yi. Romance of the Three Kingdoms; History of the Three Kingdoms Fictionalized (a book normally attributed to Luo Guanzhong 罗贯中, a very popular novel mixing facts with fiction about the Three-Kingdoms period)
- 水浒传 Shui Hu Zhuan. Water Margin; Tales of the Marshes; All Men Are Brothers (A popular fiction by Shi Nai'an 施耐庵. It is a rambling account of how 108 outlaws, 36 of whom must be reckoned major characters, separately get into trouble with the authorities and make their way to a mountain hide-out surrounded by marshes in Shandong Province.)
- 西游记 Xi You Ji. A Record of Pilgrims to the West (It is one of the most popular novels, telling the adventures of a Buddhist monk and his three disciples on their way to In-

dia in search of new Buddhist texts. It is attributed to Wu Cheng'en 吴承恩.)

金瓶梅 Jin Ping Mei. The Golden Lotus (A Ming Dynasty novel by an anonymous author. It is a well-plotted novel about a merchant named Ximen Qing 西门庆, his relations with his six wives, and his affairs with neighbors' wives, maids, and prostitutes. Its pornographic qualities easily obscure its literary merits, which are numerous.)

封神演义 Feng Shen Yan Yi. A Historical Romance of Chinese Gods and Heroes (a long historical novel compiled by Xu Zhonglin 许仲琳 of the Ming Dynasty, describing a state of chaos in the late Shang and the early Zhou Dynasties)

牡丹亭 Mu Dan Ting. Peony Pavilion (Written by the famed Ming literator Tang Xianzu 汤显祖, it is probably China's most celebrated Chuan Qi 传奇. Its heroine Du Li'niang 杜丽娘, the daughter of a Southern Song Provincial official, is visited and loved by a young student Liu Mengmei 柳梦梅 in a dream, who travelled to Hangzhou for the civil service examination.)

古今奇观 Gu Jin Qi Guan. Marvels Old and New (A collection of 40 best stories by Feng Menglong 冯梦龙 and Liang Mengchu 梁梦初. This work drove its predecessors into oblivion and became the classic anthology of colloquial short stories down to the present.)

聊斋志异 Liao Zhai Zhi Yi. Strange Stories from an Eccentric's Studio; A Collection of Bizarre Stories (Compiled by Pu Songling 蒲松龄 of the Qing Dynasty, its tales deal with earnest young scholars who are beguiled into danger, humiliation and destruction by fox-fairies disguised as alluring maidens.)

儒林外史 Ru Lin Wai Shi. An Unofficial History of the Confucian Literati; The Scholars (A sarcastic novel lampooning Chinese scholars of the late Ming and early Qing dynasties by Wu Jingzi 吴敬梓)

红楼梦 Hong Lou Meng. The Red Chamber Dream; Dream of the Red Mansion (One of the greatest Chinese novels. It

was written by the impoverished scion of a wealthy and powerful early Qing Dynasty, Cao Xueqin 曹雪芹, and depicts the degenerate life of an upper-class household as he must have remembered from his youth. It is peopled with 30 well-delineated major characters and more than 400 individualized lesser characters, ranging through the whole social scale from the imperial family down to the common peasants.)

镜花缘 Jing Hua Yuan. Flowers in a Mirror (A Qing Dynasty novel by Li Ruzhen 李汝珍. It depicts the sees and hears abroad and the story of 100 talented women.)

初刻拍案惊奇 Chu Ke Pai An Jing Qi. Showing a Surprise by Pounding a Table (a collection of short stories edited by Ling Mengchu 凌濛初 of the late Ming Dynasty)

长恨歌 Chang Hen Ge. Song of Eternal Sorrow (This is a long poem written by the Tang poet Bai Juyi 白居易. It describes the rise and downfall of the famed beauty Yang Guifei 杨贵妃.)

长生殿 Chang Sheng Dian. Chang Sheng Palace (a drama written by Hong Sheng 洪升 about the Tang Emperor Xuanzong and his favorite concubine Lady Yang)

文物研究

STUDIES OF CULTURAL RELICS

历代名画记 Li Dai Ming Hua Ji. Masterpieces of Painting Through the Ages (By Zhang Yanyuan 张彦远 of the Tang Dynasty. This book in 10 volumes records more than 370 masters and their works from the legendary times to Huichang period of Tang Dynasty.)

宣和画谱 Xuan He Hua Pu. A Collection of Paintings in Xuanhe Period (Compiled by the imperial court in Xuanhe period of the Song Dynasty, this is a book in 20 volumes divided into 10 categories including 6396 scrolls of famous ancient Chinese paintings by 231 masters from Jin to Tang Dynasties.)

- 宣和书谱 Xuan He Shu Pu. A Collection of Calligraphy in Xuanhe Period (In 20 volumes divided into eight categories, this book includes an account of calligraphy collected in the imperial court of Xuanhe period.)
- 法书要录 Fa Shu Yao Lu. Abstracts of Treatises on Calligraphy (Compiled by Zhang Yanyuan 张彦远 of the Tang Dynasty, the book has 10 volumes including 42 treatises by calligraphers from Eastern Han to Xuanhe period of the Tang Dynasty. It is China's earliest existing compilation of treatises on calligraphy.)
- 石渠宝笈 Shi Qu Bao Ji. Shi Qu Collection of Paintings and Calligraphy (Compiled by Zhang Zhao 张照, Liang Shizheng 梁诗正 and others of the Qing Dynasty, this book in 44 volumes includes the paintings and calligraphy of past ages in the Qing court.)
- 装潢志 Zhuang Huang Zhi. Painting-and-Calligraphy-Mounting (An ancient Chinese book relating to the techniques for the mounting of painting and calligraphy. It was written in the early Qing Dynasty by Zhou Jiazhou 周嘉胄.)
- 宣和博古图 Xuan He Bo Gu Tu. An Illustrated Book of Antiques in Xuanhe Period (Compiled by Wang Fu 王黼 or Wang Chu 王楚 this book has 30 volumes divided into 20 categories including 839 pieces of ancient bronzes collected in Xuanhe Hall of the imperial court.)
- 西清古鉴 Xi Qing Gu Jian. Xi Qing Collection of Ancient Bronzes (It was compiled in 1751 in the Office of Hanlin Secretaries by Liang Shizheng 梁诗正 and others of the Qing Dynasty. In 40 volumes this book includes 1529 bronzes from Shang, Zhou to Tang Dynasties.)
- 西清续鉴 Xi Qing Xu Jian. Sequel to the Xi Qing Collection of Ancient Bronzes (written by Wang Jie 王杰 and others of the Qing Dynasty)
- 金石录 Jin Shi Lu. Notes on Ancient Metal and Stone Inscriptions; Notes from a Study of Inscriptions on Ancient Bronzes and Stone Tablets (Compiled by Zhao Mingcheng 赵明诚 of the Song Dynasty, this is a book

relating to the epigraphy. In its 30 volumes the first 10 are the contents of bronze inscriptions and the rubbings from stone tablets; the last 20 are 502 comments on the inscriptions on bronzes and tablets. It occupies an important place in China's history of epigraphy.)

历代钟鼎彝器款识法帖 Li Dai Zhong Ding Yi Qi Kuan Zhi Fa Tie. Inscriptions on Bronzes of Various Dynasties (By Xue Shanggong 薛尚功 of the Song Dynasty. In 20 volumes it records 510 pieces of bronzes of various dynasties. 70-80 percent of the bronzes with inscriptions of Song Dynasty are included in this book.)

集古录 Ji Gu Lu. A Collection of Inscriptions on Ancient Bronzes and Stone Tablets (This book in 10 volumes by Ouyang Xiu 欧阳修 of the Song Dynasty includes more than 400 sections of comments on the inscriptions on ancient bronzes and stone tablets from the Zhou and Qin to the Five Dynasties. It is China's earliest existing work on epigraphy.)

考古图 Kao Gu Tu. An Illustrated Book of Antiques (Compiled in 1092 by Lü Dalin 吕大林 of the Song Dynasty, this book in 10 volumes records ancient bronzes and jades in the imperial and private collections with illustrations and inscriptions.)

憲齋集古录 Ke Zhai Ji Gu Lu. Ke Zhai Collection of Antiques (This book was compiled by Wu Dacheng 吴大澂 of the Qing Dynasty. In 26 volumes it records 1144 pieces of bronzes including 19 of the Qin Dynasty, 76 of the Han Dynasty and 1 of the Jin Dynasty.)

寰宇访碑录 Huan Yu Fang Bei Lu. Carved Stones through the Ages (A detailed record of carved stones of the whole country compiled by Sun Xingyan 孙星衍 and Xing Shu 邢澍 of the Qing Dynasty. In its 12 volumes, 8000 kinds of carved stones from the Zhou, Qin to the Yuan Dynasties are included.)

陶说 Tao Shuo. On Ceramics (Written by Zhu Yan 朱琰 of the Qing Dynasty this book in 6 volumes is an important work

relating to the study of ancient Chinese porcelain.)

髹饰录 Xiu Shi Lu. Lacquering Technology; Records of Lacquer (Written by Huang Cheng 黄成 of the Ming Dynasty this book has been regarded as a classical work relating to the lacquering technology. With 18 chapters including 186 articles it recounts comprehensively the technology of lacquerwork in every aspect.)

汲冢竹书 Ji Zhong Zhu Shu. A Collection of Ancient Bamboo Books in a Grave at Ji County (A volume of bamboo books supposedly unearthed in the Wei prince's grave of the late Warring States Period. They are the earliest materials of bamboo slips for writing)

书林清话 Shu Lin Qing Hua. Notes on the World of Ancient Books (Compiled in modern times by Ye Dehui 叶德辉, this book discusses the edition catalogue of ancient books. It is an elementary edition bibliography.)

澹生堂藏书记 Dan Sheng Tang Cang Shu Yue. Danshengtang Stipulations for Collection of Books (China's earliest existing book concerning the methods and regulations for conservation of books. It was written by Qi Chengpu 祁承燾 of the Ming Dynasty.)

格古要论 Ge Gu Yao Lun. Notes on the Study of Antiques; The Essential Criteria of Antiquities (China's earliest existing book on the identification of cultural relics. Compiled in 1388 by Cao Zhao 曹昭 of the Ming Dynasty, this book has three volumes including 13 treatises.)

考工记 Kao Gong Ji. Notes on Handicraft (The author is unknown. According to the textual research this was an official book discussing the technique of handicraft in the late Spring and Autumn Period. It has been regarded as an important document for study of ancient Chinese science and technology.)

天工开物 Tian Gong Kai Wu. Nature's Engineering of Production; Exploitation of the Works of Nature (Written in 1637 by Song Yingxing 宋应星 of the Ming Dynasty, this book systematically discusses the technique and experi-

ence of ancient Chinese agriculture and handicraft industry.)

梦溪笔谈 Meng Xi Bi Tan. Dream Stream Essays (It is so called because it was written in the Dream Stream Garden. This book was compiled by Shen Kuo 沈括 in the Northern Song Dynasty. It has 26 volumes referring to natural science and social history.)

营造法式 Ying Zao Fa Shi. Architectural Methods (Compiled by Li Jie 李诫 of the Northern Song Dynasty, this book includes 36 volumes divided into 357 chapters. It has an important reference value for the study of ancient Chinese architecture.)

东京梦华录 Dong Jing Meng Hua Lu. Memories of the Eastern Capital (Compiled by Meng Yuanlao 孟元老 of the Southern Song Dynasty this book in 10 volumes depicts the city face and the local conditions and customs of Bian-jing 汴京.)

本草纲目 Ben Cao Gang Mu. Compendium of Materia Medica (Edited by Li Shizhen 李时珍 of the Ming Dynasty, this book listed some 1,000 plants and 1,000 animals of medicinal value.)

二十一 科技文物

CULTURAL RELICS OF SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

天文 ASTRONOMY

仪征铜圭表 Bronze sundial from Yizheng (Jiangsu Province,
from an Eastern Han tomb)

托克托日晷 Sundial from Togtoh (Inner Mongolia, made in the
Han Dynasty)

故宫石日晷 Stone sundial in the Palace Museum (Beijing)

千章铜漏壶 Bronze water clock with the inscription "Qianzhang"
(made in 27 B. C.)

元延祐铜漏壶 Bronze water clock of the Yanyou reign, Yuan
Dynasty

故宫铜壶滴漏 Bronze clepsydra (water clock) in the Palace
Museum (Beijing, made in 1745)

月象演示仪 Instrument for demonstrating the phases of the
moon

明代浑天仪 Armillary sphere of Ming Dynasty (made in 1437)

指南车 A chariot showing correct directions; South-pointing car-
riage

地动仪 Seismograph or Seismometer (invented by Zhang Heng
张衡, Eastern Han Dynasty)

简仪 (简易浑天仪) Simplified armillary sphere (invented by
Guo Shoujing 郭守敬, Yuan Dynasty)

北魏元公墓星图 Star map in Yuan Yi's tomb of the Northern Wei
Dynasty

占星盘 (玑) An astrolabe

- 敦煌星图 Star map from Dunhuang (made in Tang Dynasty)
- 苏州天文图 Astronomic map in Suzhou (made in Song Dynasty)
- 天象仪 Planetarium
- 古观象台 (参见 P362)
- 天文水表塔 Water-driven astronomical clock tower (invented by a group led by the astronomer Su Song (苏颂), nine centuries ago)
- 赤道转矩 Equatorial torquetum (made in the 15th century)
- 子午仪 Meridian circle
- 汉代示南勺 South-pointing ladle of the Han Dynasty
- 郑和航海图 Charts of Zheng He's voyages (an early 15th century work)
- 天球(体)仪 Celestial globe
- 七政仪(太阳系仪) Orrery
- 地平经纬仪 Altazimuth
- 象限仪 Quadrant
- 三辰仪 Sun-moon-stars dial
- 天常仪 Celestial equator projector
- 地平公晷仪 Universal dial in horizontal style
- 赤道圭表合璧仪 equinoctial sundial consisting of an elongated dial and one gnomon
- 星象图 Map of configuration of the stars
- 天文望远镜 astronomical telescope

地理 GEOGRAPHY

- 宋代华夷图 Stone map of the Han people and minorities of the Song Dynasty
- 宋代禹迹图 Stone maps of the Chinese water systems in the Song Dynasty
- 宋代地理图 Geographic map of the Song Dynasty
- 明代坤輿万国全图 Great universal geographic map of the Ming Dynasty
- 地球仪 Terrestrial globe

交通 COMMUNICATION

战国辛车 Chariot of the Warring States Period (from Huaiyang, Henan Province)

铜立车 Bronze model of a carriage with a standing driver (unearthed at Qinshihuang's Mausoleum)

东汉铜辇车 Bronze model of a vehicle of the Eastern Han Dynasty (from Xingyi, Guizhou Province)

西汉木安车 Wooden carriage with a seated driver of the Western Han Dynasty (from Wuwei, Gansu Province)

元墓陶车 Pottery model of a carriage from a tomb of the Yuan Dynasty (at Xi'an)

河姆渡船桨 Oar from Hemudu (unearthed at a site of the early New Stone Age)

汉代陶船 Pottery model of a vessel of the Han Dynasty (from a tomb at Guangzhou)

隋代双体船 Double-bodied vessel of the Sui Dynasty (unearthed at Pingdu, Shandong Province)

宋代沉船 Wreck of the Song Dynasty (from Houzhu, Quanzhou, Fujian Province)

元代针碗 Compass bowl of the Yuan Dynasty

晋墓装镫陶马 Stirrured pottery horse from a tomb of the Jin Dynasty at Nanjing

火器 FIREARMS

元至顺铜铳 Bronze cannon (Zhishun reign, Yuan Dynasty)

元至正“神飞”铜铳 Bronze cannon (gun) with the inscription “Shen Fei” (Zhizheng reign, Yuan Dynasty)

阿城铜铳 Bronze cannon (unearthed at Acheng, Heilongjiang Province)

西安景龙池铜铳 Bronze gun (cannon, unearthed at Jinglong Pool, Xi'an)

- 明洪武铜手铳 Bronze gun of the Hongwu reign, Ming Dynasty
(unearthed at Chicheng, Hebei Province)
- 明洪武铁炮 Iron cannons of the Hongwu reign, Ming Dynasty
(discovered at Taiyuan, Shanxi Province)
- 明永乐“天字”铜手铳 Bronze gun with the inscription “Tian-
zi” of the Yongle reign, Ming Dynasty (unearthed at
Zhangjiakou, Hebei Province)
- 明嘉靖辛丑佛朗机铜铳 Frangi brass cannons of the Xinchou
year, Jiajing reign, Ming Dynasty (unearthed at Liao-
yang, Liaoning Province)
- 永历乙未铜炮 Bronze cannon of the Yiwei year, Yongli reign,
Southern Ming
- “神威大将军”铁膛铜炮 Bronze-bodied and iron-bored cannon
with inscription “Shen Wei Da Jiang Jun” Qing Dynasty)
- “神威无敌大将军”铜炮 Bronze cannon with the inscription
“Shen Wei Wu Di Da Jiang Jun” (Kangxi reign, Qing
Dynasty)
- “武成永固大将军”铜炮 Bronze cannon with the inscription
“Wu Cheng Yong Gu Da Jiang Jun” (Kangxi reign,
Qing Dynasty)

度量衡

WEIGHTS AND MEASURES

- 错金云纹铁尺 Iron ruler inlaid with cloud pattern in gold (from
a Han tomb at Mancheng, Hebei Province)
- 新莽铜丈 Bronze Zhang (length measure) of the Xinmang peri-
od (unearthed at Dingxi, Gansu Province).
- 唐“度作”铜尺 Bronze ruler with the inscription “Du Zuo” of
the Tang Dynasty; a ruler handed down from the Tang
Dynasty
- 明景表尺 Scale on a sundial of the Ming Dynasty collected in the
Zijinshan Observatory in Nanjing
- 量器 Capacity measures
- 陈纯铜釜 Bronze Fu (capacity measure) made by Chen Chun
(unearthed at Jiaoxian, Shandong Province, this is a ca-

capacity measure of the Warring States Period)

商鞅铜方升 Square bronze Sheng (capacity measure) made by Shang Yang, a very important treasure in the history of Chinese weights and measures

始皇诏方升 Square bronze Sheng (capacity measure) with a decree by Qinshihuang

“上林共府”铜升 Bronze Sheng (capacity measure) with the inscription “Shang Lin Gong Fu” (Western Han Dynasty)

新莽铜嘉量 Bronze Jialiang (standard capacity measure) of the Xinmang Period

始建国铜方斗 Square bronze Dou of the Shijianguo reign, Xinmang Period

光和大司农铜斛 Bronze Hu made by the Dasinong official of the Guanghe reign, Eastern Han Dynasty

衡器 Weighting apparatuses

楚盱子铜权衡 Scale with a set of bronze weights made by Yuzei of the Chu State, (Warring States Period)

王铜衡杆 Bronze arms of steelyards with the inscription “Wang” (Warring States Period)

高奴铜权 Bronze weight cast at Gaonu (Qin State of the Warring States Period)

婴家竹衡杆 Bamboo beam of a scale of the Ying family (Western Han Dynasty)

武平铁权 Iron weight of the Wuping reign, Northern Qi of the Northern Dynasties

嘉祐铜则 Bronze Ze (weight) of the Jiayou reign, Northern Song Dynasty

二十二 宗教

RELIGION

佛教

BUDDHISM

教派 Sects

大乘佛教 Mahayana, the “Great Vehicle” of salvation, the form of Buddhism prevalent in China, Central Asia and Japan. It is so called by its followers in contradistinction to, and disparagement of, the Hinayana, the “Little Vehicle.”

小乘佛教 Hinayana, the “Little Vehicle” of salvation, the original form of Buddhism prevalent in Sri Lanka, Burma and other Southeast Asian countries. The Hinayanists themselves refer to their system as the Theravada, the “Teaching of the Elders.”

北传佛教 Northern Buddhism (Buddhism prevalent in China, Korea, Japan and Vietnam, which belongs to the Great Vehicle.)

南传佛教 Southern Buddhism (Buddhism prevalent in Sri Lanka, Burma, Thailand, Cambodia and Laos, which belongs to the Little Vehicle.)

天台宗 Tian-Tai School (a school of Buddhism in China)

华严宗 Hua-Yan School (Avatamsaka School, a school of Buddhism in China)

唯实宗 (法相宗) Wei-Shi School also known as Fa Xiang School (a school of Buddhism in China)

成实宗 (成实学派) Cheng-Shi School (Satyasiddhi Sastra School, a school of Buddhism in China)

禅宗 Chan School (Meditative or Intuitionist Sect, traditionally established in China by Bodhidharma)

佛心宗 (禅宗) Fo-Xin School (Buddha-mind School)

净土宗 Jing-Tu School (Sukhavati Sect or Pure Land Sect, whose chief tenet is salvation by faith in Amitabha)

莲花宗 Lian Sect; Lotus Sect (alternative name for the Pure Land Sect)

密宗 Tantrism; Esoteric Sect (a school of Buddhism in China)

瑜伽宗 Yogacara; the Yoga Sect (a school of Buddhism in India)

中观宗 Madhyamika (a school of Buddhism in India)

藏传佛教 (喇嘛教) Tibetan Buddhism (commonly known as Lamaism, a sect of Buddhism prevalent in Tibetan and Mongolian areas of China)

黄教 Yellow Sect of Lamaism

红教 Red Sect of Lamaism

白教 White Sect of Lamaism

藏密 Tantrism in Tibetan Buddhism

宁玛派 Rnying-ma-pa of Tibetan Buddhism

萨迦派 Sa-Skya-pa of Tibetan Buddhism

格鲁派 Dge-lugs-pa of Tibetan Buddhism

噶当派 Bka-gdams-pa of Tibetan Buddhism

噶举派 Bka-gyud-pa of Tibetan Buddhism

神佛称号 Titles of Buddhas and Bodhisattvas

佛祖 Buddhist patriarch

释迦牟尼 Sakyamuni or Shakyamuni (the sage of the Sakyas, the founder of Buddhism, the most common title of Siddhanta Gautama)

佛陀 Buddha — a title for Sakyamuni or a person who has attained enlightenment

如来 Tathāgata (one of the designations of Sakyamuni)

三世佛 Trikala Buddhas (Buddhas of the Past, the Present and the Future)

毗卢舍那佛 (大日如来) Vairocana; First Dhyani Buddha, recognized by some sects as the spiritual or essential body

of the Buddha Truth, all-pervasive like the light of the sun, as the Chinese name suggests

阿耨婆 (不动如来) Aksobhya; Second Dhyani Buddha; “the Imperturbable”

宝生佛 Ratnasambhava; Third Dhyani Buddha; “the Source of Treasures (Holy Things)”

阿弥陀佛、无量光佛 Amitabha; Fourth Dhyani Buddha; the Buddha of “Immeasurable Splendor” (His cult is widespread in Mahayana Buddhism.)

不空成就佛 Amoghasiddhi; Fifth Dhyani Buddha; “the Infallibly Wise”.

南无阿弥陀佛 Namomitabhaya Buddha

弥勒佛 Maitreya Buddha

无量寿佛 Amitayus Buddha (Buddha of Boundless Life)

五方佛 the Five-Dhyani-Buddha

燃灯佛 (锭光佛) Dipamkara Buddha (the Light-making Buddha)

不动佛 Acala Buddha

莲花生 Padmasambhava

旃檀佛 (释迦牟尼佛造像的一种特有形式) Sandalwood Buddha (a specific manifestation of Sakyamuni's Statue)

药师佛 (药师琉璃光佛) Baisajya-guru-vaidurya-prabhasa (Buddha of Medicine)

炽盛光佛 Buddha of Brilliant Light

摩尼光佛 Maniprabha Buddha

多宝佛 Prabhutaratna Buddha (Buddha “Abundant Treasures”)

报身佛 Sambhoga-kaya Buddha

舍利佛 Sariputra Buddha

禅定佛 Buddha in Meditation

毗婆尸佛 Vipashyin Buddha

尸弃佛 Shikhin Buddha

毗舍浮佛 Vishvabhu Buddha

拘留孙佛 Krakucchanda Buddha

时伦王佛 Kalachakre Buddha

上乐王佛 Shamvara Buddha

迦叶佛 Kashyapa Buddha
 龙尊王佛 Nageshvararaja
 贤德佛 Bhadrashri
 宗喀巴佛 Tsongkha-pa Buddha
 尊胜佛母 Ushnishavijaya (the Honored Goddess)
 般若佛母 Prajnaparamita
 四臂般若佛母 Four-armed Prajnaparamita
 四臂金刚佛母 Four-armed Diamond Goddess
 救度佛母 Tara
 白救度佛母 White Tara
 大白伞盖佛母 gdugs-dkar (the white umbrellaed Goddess)
 绿救度佛母 Green Tara
 威德吉祥天母 Shri Devi
 吉祥天母 Palden Lhamo
 妙音佛母 Sarasvati
 金刚亥母 Vajravahni
 孔雀佛母 Mahamayuri
 作明佛母 Enlightening Goddess
 智行佛母 Jnanakara
 空行佛母 Vajrayogini
 十臂积光佛母 Ten-armed Marici
 狮面佛母 Simhavaktra
 阴体狮面佛母 Simhavaktra of Mother Tantra
 阴体智行佛母 the Fairy Mother of Wisdom
 菩萨 (菩提萨埵) Bodhisattva
 文殊菩萨 Manjushri Bodhisattva of Wisdom
 普贤菩萨 Samantabhadra; Bodhisattva of Universal Benevolence
 地藏菩萨 Ksitigarbha; Guardian of the Earth
 观音菩萨 Avalokitesvara; Guanyin, "Goddess of Mercy"
 十一面观音菩萨 Eleven-faced Avalokitesvara
 千手千眼观音菩萨 Sahasrabhuja-sahasranetra-avalokitesvara;
 Thousand-arm and Thousand-eye Avalokitesvara
 千手千钵观音菩萨 Avalokitesvara with a thousand arms and a
 thousand alms-bowls
 四臂观音菩萨 Four-armed Avalokitesvara
 莲花手观音菩萨 Padmapani; A manifestation of Avalokitesvara;

Guanyin holding the lotus flowers

维摩诘 Vimalakirti

善巴拉菩萨王（地藏化身） King of Shambhala (an incarnation of Ksitigarbha)

莲花舞自在观音菩萨 Padmanarteshvara Avalokitesvara

佛海观音菩萨 Jinasagara Avalokitesvara

阳体佛海观音菩萨 Jinasagara Avalokitesvara of Father Tantra

权衡三界观音菩萨 Trilokayavijiya Avalokitesvara

黑色观音菩萨 Black Avalokitesvara

哈罗哈罗观音菩萨 Halahala Avalokitesvara

哈里哈里罗世自在观音菩萨 Halahala Lokeshvara Avalokitesvara

虎皮裙观音菩萨 Avalokitesvara with a Skirt in Tiger Skin

狮吼观音菩萨 Simhanada Avalokitesvara

不空绢索观音菩萨 Avalokitesvara Amoghapsha

持世菩萨 Vasudhārā

红色微怒手持金刚菩萨 Red Wrathful Vajrapani Bodhisattva

调伏部多手持金刚菩萨 Bhutadamara Vajrapani Bodhisattva

邬扎那亚手持金刚菩萨 Utsarya Vajrapani Bodhisattva

三勇武手持金刚菩萨 Raudra Vajrapani Bodhisattva

金刚空行手持金刚菩萨 Vajradakha Vajrapani Bodhisattva

善趣手持金刚菩萨 Jagadbhadra Vajrapani Bodhisattva

狮皮手持金刚菩萨 Vajrapani Bodhisattva with Lion Skin

金刚 Vajra; Guardian spirit of Buddhist monastery

金刚手 Vajrapani; Bearer of the Thunderbolt; Great Protector

上乐金刚 Samvara; Shamvara

密集金刚 Guhyasamaja

大威德金刚 Yamantaka

喜金刚 Hevajra

时轮金刚 Kalachakra

马头金刚 Hayagriva

黄威罗瓦金刚 Yellow Vajrabhairava

吉善金刚 Shrinatha

持金刚（金刚持） Vajradhara

金刚萨埵（金刚勇识菩萨） Vajrasattva

能胜三界金刚 Trailokyavijaya
 摧碎金刚 Vajravidarana
 黄布禄金刚 Yellow Jambhala
 白布禄金刚 White Jambhala
 金刚空行 Vajradaka
 大轮手持金刚 Mahachakra Vajrapani
 大黑天（护法神之一） Mahakala
 四臂永保护法 Four-armed Mahakala
 六臂永保护法 Six-armed Mahakala
 白勇保护法 White Mahakala
 红勇保护法 Red Mahakala
 绿勇保护法 Green Mahakala
 四大天王 The Four Devarajas (Heavenly Guardians)
 南方增长天王 Virudhaka; Southern Lokapala
 北方多闻天王 Vaisravana; Northern Lokapala
 东方持国天王 Dhrtarastra; Eastern Lokapala
 西方广目天王 Virupaksha; Western Lokapala
 财宝天王 Jambhala
 威胜天王 Prabhavajina
 罗汉 Arhat (enlighten saintly man; worthy one)
 伐那婆斯尊者 Arhat Vanavasin
 宾度罗跋罗坠尊者 Arhat Pindola Bharadvaja
 达摩多罗尊者 Arhat Dharmatala
 半托迦尊者 Arhat Panthaka
 注荼半托迦尊者 Arhat Chudpanthaka
 阿氏多尊者 Arhat Ajita
 巴古拉尊者 Arhat Bakula
 因竭托尊者 Arhat Angaja
 迦里迦尊者 Arhat Kalika
 伐着罗佛多尊者 Arhat Vajriputre
 跋陀罗尊者 Arhat Bhadra
 迦诺迦伐蹉尊者 Arhat Kanakavatsa
 迦诺迦跋黎坠尊者尊者 Arhat Kanakabharadvaja
 那迦犀尊者 Arhat Nagasena
 戒博迦尊者 Arhat Gopaka
 阿秘特尊者 Arhat Abheda

护法空行 Tutelary Deity

本尊 Yidam; principal Tutelary

金刚神（门神） Dvarapala (guardian deity)

天神 deva, devata; a god

天女 apsaras; a goddess; a female deva

飞天 flying deva; apsaras

天龙八部 eight classes of brave divine beings (devas, nagas, yaksas, gandharvas, asuras, garudas, kinnaras and mahoragas)

释迦牟尼源流 The Religious Origin of Sakyamuni

达赖喇嘛源流—格桑嘉措 The Religious Origin of the Dalai Lamas — Kalsang Gyatso

达赖喇嘛源流—松赞干布 The Religious Origin of the Dalai Lamas — Songtsan Gambo

达赖喇嘛源流—桑吉贡巴 The Religious Origin of the Dalai Lamas — Sanggyes Gampa

达赖喇嘛（丹增嘉措） The Dalai Lama (Tenzin Gyatso)

班禅喇嘛源流—香格里拉王 The Religious Origin of the Panchen Lamas — King of Shanggrila

班禅喇嘛源流—提婆 The Religious Origin of the Panchen Lamas — Deva

班禅喇嘛源流—阿跋迦罗 The Religious Origin of the Panchen Lamas — Abhayakara

班禅喇嘛源流—桂译师 The Religious Origin of the Panchen Lamas — Great Translator Gos Lotsawa

班禅喇嘛源流—洛桑却吉坚赞 The Religious Origin of the Panchen Lamas — Losang Choskyi Gyaltsan

第十一世班禅额尔德尼（坚赞诺布） The Eleventh Panchen Erdeni (Gyantsen Norpo)

教义、戒律 Doctrine, Discipline

佛法（佛教教义） Buddha dharma; the Buddhist Doctrines; the Law of Buddha

四谛（释迦牟尼的四条基本教义） Catursatya (Four Axioms)

八正道（通往涅槃的八种正确途径） Astangika-marga

戒法 the precepts of Buddhist discipline; commandments and

rules

佛宗 the principles of Buddhist law

戒 sila; rule

华严宗教义 the doctrine of the Hua-yan School

通戒 General Commandments

大戒 Upasampanna (Complete Commandments)

五戒 (戒杀, 戒偷, 戒淫, 戒妄言, 戒酒肉) pancasila;

Five Precepts — no killing; no stealing; no lust; no lying; no tasting intoxicants and meat

八戒 Eight Commandments

十戒 Sikkhananda; Ten Commandments

十重戒 Ten Unpardonable Sins

《五部律》(小乘佛教戒律) Rules of Five Hinayana Sects

摄善法戒 Rules on virtuous behavior

摄众生戒 Rules on winning new converts

摄律仪戒 Rules for spiritual cultivation

五逆罪 Pancanantarya (five deadly sins)

法印 (法体、法的标准) Dharmamudra (Seal of Buddha Truth)

佛经 Buddhist Scripture

内典 (本教的典籍) Buddhist literature

伏藏 Buddhist literature unearthed in Tibet

大藏经 (三藏) the Great Scripture (Tripitaka)

三藏 (佛教经典总称) Tripitaka

经藏 (素坦纛藏) Sutrapitaka; scripture

律藏 (毗奈耶藏) Vinaya-pitaka; canon

论藏 (阿毗达磨藏) Abhidharma-pitaka; annotation

北宋官本大藏经 (983 年) Tripitaka, Northern-Song-Dynasty
Authorized Edition

开宝藏 (即北宋官本大藏经) Tripitaka, Kaibao Edition

宋藏 Tripitaka, Song-Dynasty Edition

金藏 (1173 年) Tripitaka, Kin-Dynasty Edition

赵城藏 (即金藏) Tripitaka, Zhaocheng Edition

元藏 Tripitaka, Yuan-Dynasty Edition

普宁寺版藏经 (即元藏) Tripitaka, Pu'ning Monastery Edition

- 洪武南藏 (1398 年) Tripitaka, Southern Hongwu Edition
- 永乐南藏 (1417 年) Tripitaka, Southern Yongle Edition
- 永乐北藏 (1440 年) Tripitaka, Northern Yongle Edition
- 嘉兴藏 Tripitaka, Jiaxing Edition
- 万历藏 (即嘉兴藏) Tripitaka, Wanli Edition
- 径山藏 (即嘉兴藏) Tripitaka, Jingshan Edition
- 楞严寺藏 (即嘉兴藏) Tripitaka, Lengyan Monastery Edition
- 龙藏 (1735-1738 年) Tripitaka, Qianlong Edition
- 磻沙藏 (1322 年) Tripitaka, Qisha Edition
- 蜀版藏经 Tripitaka, Sichuan Edition
- 频伽藏 (1913 年) (上海频伽精舍出版) Tripitaka, Kalavinka Edition
- 大般若波罗密多经 (大般若经) Mahaprajna-paramita-sutra;
Great Sutra of the Perfection of Wisdom
- 大品般若 (大品经) fuller Chinese edition of Maha-prajnaparamita-Sutra
- 小品般若 summarized Chinese edition of Maha-prajnaparamita-Sutra
- 大般涅槃经 (涅槃经) Mahapari-nirvana-sutra
- 甘珠尔 (藏文大藏经, 直接记载佛语) Bak-gyur; the Gan-gyur of Tripitaka in Tibetan
- 丹珠尔 (藏文大藏经, 对佛语的释) Bstang'gyur; the Tanjur of Tripitaka in Tibetan
- 金刚经 (金刚波罗密多经) Vajracchedika-prajnaparamita-sutra (Diamond Sutra)
- 华严经 Buddha-avatamsaka-mahavai-pulya sutra (Garland Sutra)
- 妙法莲花经 (法华经) Saddharma-pundarika-sutra (Lotus Sutra)
- 般若波罗密多心经 (心经) Prajnaparamita-hrdaya-sutra (Heart Sutra)
- 三转法轮经 Dharmacakra-sutra (Sutra of the Wheel of the Law)
- 宝积经 (大宝积经) Maha-rafna-kuta-sutra (Great Gem-Heap Sutra)
- 大菩萨藏经 Mahayanapitaka-sutra
- 大日经 Mahavairocana-sutra

无量寿经 (大无量寿经) (大经) Amitayus sutra (Sutra of Buddha of Boundless Life)
 阿弥陀经 (小无量寿经) (小经) Amitabha sutra (Sutra of Buddha of Boundless Light)
 维摩经 (维摩诘经) Vimalakirtinirdesa-sutra
 梵网经 (菩萨戒本) Brahmajala-sutra (Sutra of the Brahma-net)
 佛本行集经 Abhiniskramana sutra (Life of Sakyamuni)
 六祖坛经 (坛经) (中国禅宗经籍) Analects of the Sixth Chan Patriarch Huineng
 大乘玄论 Exposition of the Mahayana Doctrine
 大乘义章 Mahayana Encyclopedia
 释氏要览 Encyclopedic Dictionary of Buddhism
 中论广释 Extensive Interpretation of Madyamika-sastra
 大唐内典录 (内典录) Catalogue of Buddhist Scriptures of the Great Tang Empire
 房山云居寺石经 Buddhist stone inscriptions at Yunju Monastery, Fangshan
 正典经籍 Canonized scripture

神职人员 Buddhist Clergy

法号 Buddhist monastic name; clerical name
 鼻祖 (祖师) patriarch; founder
 三藏法师 (玄奘) Master of Tripitaka (Xuan Zhuang)
 三藏法师 (精通三藏的法师) Tripitaka-carya (Master of Tripitaka)
 法师 dharmacarya (Master of the Law; Buddhist master)
 论师 (精通律藏的僧人) abhi-dharmacarya (Master of Buddhist Discourses)
 经师 sutracarya (Master of the Sutra)
 禅师 Chan master, a honorific title for a Buddhist monk
 尊者 (阿梨耶) arya (the Reverend)
 高僧 eminent monk
 僧人 bonze; Buddhist monk
 比丘 bhiksu; Buddhist monk
 比丘尼 bhiksuni; Buddhist nun

方丈（住持） Buddhist abbot; the head monk of a temple

知客僧 usher of a temple

行脚僧（云游僧） roaming monk; wandering monk

苦行僧 ascetic monk

托钵僧 faqir; mendicant monk

头陀 mendicant Buddhist monk

沙弥 sramanera; novice

居士 upasaka; layman; lay Buddhist

女居士 upasika; laywoman

佛教徒 Buddhist

佛门弟子 follower of Buddhism; Buddhist

达赖喇嘛 the Dalai Lama

班禅喇嘛 the Panchen Lama

灵童 soul boy; sacred baby

寻访 identify

认定 confirm

坐床 enthrone (install)

第十一世班禅额尔德尼（坚赞诺布）（参见 P331）

国师 Imperial preceptor

八思巴国师 Buddhist Patriarch Phags-pa

三世章嘉国师 the Third Imperial Preceptor Changkya

法王 Dharma-rajā (King of the Law)

大宝法王 Maharatna Dharma-rajā

大乘法王 Mahayana Dharma-rajā

大慈法王 Dharma-rajā of Great Mercy

活佛 Living Buddha

转世活佛 reincarnation of Living Buddha; transmigration of Living Buddha

大喇嘛 Grand Lama

喇嘛 Lama

喇嘛教徒 Lamaist

格西（藏传佛教学衔） dge-bshes

传戒和尚 instructor of commandments and rules

参头和尚（教授参学者礼仪的僧职） instructor of ceremonies

布袋和尚 Budai Heshang (Big-Bag Mendicant)

佛寺 (堂) Buddhist Temples (Chapels)

寺庙 temple; monastery

尼庵 Buddhist convent; nunnery

古刹 antiquity monastery; ancient temple

梵刹 brahmaksetra (place of purity, namely monastery)

佛堂 Buddhist chapel; hall for worshipping Buddha

佛龕 a niche for a statue of Buddha; shrine

龕室 baldachin, baldaquin

圆拱龕 arched niche

阙形龕 gate-tower-shaped niche

圣骨龕 feretory

舍利塔 dagoba; pagoda for Buddhist relics;
stupa for relics (or ashes) of Buddha or Saints

宝塔 Buddhist pagoda

浮屠 stupa; pagoda

七级浮屠 seven-storied pagoda

藏经阁 vihara

藏经楼 Tripitaka pavilion; Library of Buddhist scriptures

藏经洞 vault for keeping Buddhist scriptures

金陵刻经处 Jingling Buddhist Scriptures Publishing House

法源寺 (北京) Fayuan Monastery (Temple of Source of Buddhist Teaching) in Beijing

潭柘寺 (北京) Pool and Oak Temple in Beijing

碧云寺 (北京) Biyun Monastery in Beijing

雍和宫 (北京, 藏传佛教寺院) Yonghe Monastery; Temple of Harmony and Peace in Beijing

白马寺 (河南) Baima Monastery (White Horse Temple) in Henan Province

少林寺 (河南) Shaolin Monastery in Henan Province

南禅寺 (山西) Nanchan Monastery in Shanxi Province

佛光寺 (山西) Foguang Monastery in Shanxi Province

华严寺 (大同) Huayan Monastery in Datong, Shanxi Province

静安寺 (上海) Jing'an Monastery in Shanghai

寒山寺 (苏州) Hanshan Monastery in Suzhou, Jiangsu Pro-

vince

- 栖霞寺 (南京) Qixia Temple in Nanjing, Jiangsu Province
灵隐寺 (杭州) Lingyin Temple in Hangzhou, Zhejiang Province
vince
天童寺 (宁波) Tiantong Temple in Ningbo, Zhejiang Province
白玉寺 (四川) Baiyu Monastery in Sichuan Province
竹箐寺 (四川, 藏传佛教寺院) Rdzogschen Monastery in Sichuan Province
青龙寺 (西安) Qinglong (Blue Dragon) Temple in Xi'an, Shaanxi Province
布达拉宫 (拉萨) Potala Palace in Lhasa, Tibet
扎什伦布寺 (日喀则) Tashilhumpo (Tashi Lhunpo) Monastery in Rigaze, Tibet
大昭寺 (西藏) Gtsug-lag-Khang (Zuglakang) Monastery in Tibet
小昭寺 (西藏) Klukang Monastery in Tibet
塔尔寺 (青海) Taer (Gumbum) Monastery in Qinghai Province
vince

文物与法器 Cultural Relics and Ritual Implements

- 佛像 image of Buddha
佛造像 statue of Buddha
唐卡 Thangka; Tangka
佛经 Buddhist sutras
佛牙 sacred tooth relic of Buddha
摩尼珠 mani pearl
佛珠 (念珠) mala; rosary; beads
圣骨 holy ashes
供案 altar
香炉 incense burner; censer
香筒 incense holder
烛台 (参见 P128)
木鱼 wooden fish (wooden clapper), which a Buddhist monk or nun beats while chanting
磬 inverted bell (a Buddhist percussion instrument)
引磬 (小手磬) hand bell

- 宝瓶 amṛta-kalasa; nectar vessel carried by certain Bodhisattvas
- 藏草瓶 vase for holy herbs
- 净水瓶 water bottle (for the use of monks)
- 五叶宝冠 five-petal crown; five-leave-shaped crown
- 法冠 crown worn in ritual
- 八宝 (佛前供器) Babao, the Eight Auspicious symbols represent the offerings that are presented to Sakyamuni Buddha
- 法轮 (参见 P339)
- 法螺 the white conch shell
- 宝伞 the precious parasol
- 白盖 the banner of victory; the canopy
- 莲花 (参见 P158)
- 宝罐 the water bottle
- 金鱼 the two golden fishes
- 盘肠 the knotted cord
- 七珍 (藏传佛教) the Seven Buddhist Treasures
- 金轮宝 gold wheel
- 神珠宝 divine pearls
- 玉女宝 jewels of women
- 主藏臣宝 able ministers of the treasury
- 白象宝 white elephants
- 紺马宝 dark swift horse
- 将军宝 loyal generals
- 海螺 (法螺) conch shell
- 左 (右) 旋白螺 white conch shell spiraling to the left (right)
- 雕花梵文螺 conch shell with Sanskrit characters
- 雕七佛白螺 white conch shell carved with seven Buddhas
- 铃杵 bell with a vajra handle
- 玲珑钵 iron alms-bowl in gold tracery
- 嘎巴拉碗 Kapala bowl
- 殊胜奔巴 silver bumpa-pot
- 嘎巴拉念珠 rosary of human-bone beads
- 天杖 heavenly staff, also known as skeleton staff or staff for subduing demons
- 鼗鼓 skull-drum, as a kind of Tibetan tambourine, is used in

- the rituals for exorcising ghosts and evil spirits
- 金刚橛 vajra (thunderbolt), used as a weapon against the powers of darkness
- 钺刀 moon-shaped knife, also known as vajra-ax
- 降魔金刚斧 demon-queller ax
- 降魔金刚锤 demon-queller hammer
- 号 trumpet (one of the principal ritual implements of Tibetan Buddhism)
- 大号 long copper trumpet (a musical instrument for Buddhist activities)
- 玛尼轮 manichorkor (a ritual implement used by the Tibetan Buddhists in prayer)
- 法轮 wheel of Dharma (one of the common sacrificial utensils)
- 坛城 mandala (the mandala in Sanskrit means "rostrum" or "rostrum ground")
- 须弥山坛城 mandala of Sumeru
- 佛舍利盒 Sarira box (box for Buddhist relics)
- 哈达 khatags
- 转经筒 prayer wheel
- 幢 (佛像前的珠顶绸饰立柱) dhvaja (banner)

佛教术语 Buddhist Terminology

- 佛学 Buddhist philosophy; Buddhistic study; Buddhology
- 藏学 Tibetology
- 佛法 power of Buddha
- 佛法无边 The greatness of Buddhism is immeasurable.
- 求法 learn Buddhist doctrines
- 传法 transmission of Buddhist doctrines
- 佛道 the way of Buddha leading to Buddhahood (or enlightenment)
- 成道 enlightenment
- 悟道成佛 attain enlightenment to Buddhahood
- 佛诞节 (释迦牟尼成道纪念日) Buddha's Enlightenment Day
- 佛果 the attainment of enlightenment as a Buddha
- 佛会 the celebration of Buddhist festival
- 佛家 a Buddhist; a Buddhist follower

佛门 Buddhism
 三宝 (佛、法、僧) Triratna; Three Treasures (Buddha;
 Dharma; Sangha)
 念佛三昧 Samadhi (concentrating on Buddha)
 皈依佛门 be converted to Buddhism;
 follow the teachings of Buddha
 空门 door to nirvana; Buddhism
 圆寂 (入灭) parinirvana (pass away; die)
 涅槃 Nirvana
 涅槃四德 Four transcendental realities of nirvana
 解脱 enlightenment; deliverance; to release from worldly cares
 四皈依 Four-Point formula of refuge
 大千世界 the boundless universe
 舍利子 sarira (relic)
 灵骨 holy ashes
 要求受戒 application for monkhood
 受戒 receive ordination
 剃度 tonsure
 削发为僧 take the tonsure
 出家 pravrajana (adoption of monastic life)
 禅 dhgaya; deep meditation
 法身 dharmakaya (embodiment of Truth and the Law); spiritual
 法体 conserve
 天葬 (场) sky burial (site); celestial burial (site)
 轮回 samsara (transmigration)
 转世 reincarnation
 金瓶掣签 to draw lots; lot-drawing from a gold urn
 打坐 (趺坐、跏趺坐) sit cross-legged; sit in cross-legged
 posture
 半跏坐 sit with one leg pendant and the other crossing it and rest-
 ing upon its knee
 交脚坐 to sit cross-ankled
 莲花坐 "lotus posture"; to sit cross-legged
 莲花座 padmasana; the "lotus throne" upon which the Buddha sits
 金刚座 vajrasana; Buddha's seat or throne, particularly in por-
 trayals of the Enlightenment; the "Diamond throne"

狮子座 simhasana; the "lion throne", a term used for Buddha's
 seat, whether there are lions in the design or not
 轮相 the wheel sign on the foot-sole of Buddha or on the top of a
 pagoda
 佛顶 usnisa; the fleshy protuberance on the crown of the Buddha's
 head
 白毫 (玉毫、光毫) urna; the luminous tuft of hair between
 the eye-brows of the Buddha
 菩提树 (佛树) the Bodhi tree (linden tree)
 背光 nimbus
 宝盖 canopy above image
 天盖 Buddha's canopy or umbrella;
 a nimbus of rays of light; halo
 本生 Jataka story (about Buddha's earlier incarnations)
 天宫 Palace of Devas
 西天 Western paradise
 西方净土 pure land of the West
 极乐世界 the land of Ultimate Bliss
 立佛 standing Buddha
 坐佛 seated Buddha
 卧佛 reclining Buddha; figure of Buddha in a recumbent position
 depicting the scene of his death
 说法 preaching the Law
 主尊说法 Buddha expounding the Law
 诸佛法印 seal of Buddha-truth
 坐禅 sitting in abstract meditation
 修行 to undergo rigorous ascetic discipline
 善男信女 Buddhist laymen and women
 宝冠 crown; coronet; diadem; the headdress of a Bodhisattva
 禅衣 monastic robe (habit)
 袈裟 kasaya; the robe of a Buddhist monk
 垂衣 draperies
 百纳衣 robe of patches
 法衣 (僧衣) monastic habit
 璎珞 jewelled necklaces and strings of ornaments on Buddhist im-
 ages

钵 *patra*; a monk's alms-bowl
 洗手钵 *cistern*
 拂子 (拂尘) *fly whisk*; *duster*
 锡杖 *khakkhara*; a monk's staff
 禅杖 *wakening staff*
 蒲团 (跪拜用) *hassock*
 供品 *offering*
 衣钵 *a Buddhist monk's mantle and alms-bowl which he hands down to his favorite disciple*; *legacy*
 红尘 *mundane world*
 凡尘 *the material world*
 苦海 *a sea of suffering*
 因果 *karma*; *preordained fate*
 报应 *retribution*; *judgement*
 度牒 (戒牒) *certificate of ordination*
 法门 *dharmaparyaya* (*dharma door*)
 僧兵 *armed monastic order*
 佛 (法) 事 *Buddhist services*
 法会 *assembly for worshiping (or preaching)*
 拉萨祈祷大法会 (俗称传召大法会) *the Monlam or Grand Summons Ceremony in Lhasa*
 道场 *service*
 做佛事 *hold a Buddhist service*
 潜心佛事 *devote oneself to Buddhist activities*
 供奉佛像 *worship image of Buddha*
 绕佛 (敬佛的礼仪) *walking round the Buddha*
 拜佛 *prostrate oneself before the image of Buddha*; *worship Buddha*
 跪拜 (磕头) *worship on bended knees*; *kowtow*; *perform the kowtow*
 拜倒 *fall down on one's knees*
 匍匐 *prostrate*; *grovel*
 顶礼 *salutation by prostration*
 顶礼膜拜 *prostrate oneself in worship*
 磕长头 *prostrate oneself in prayer*
 上供 *offer up a sacrifice*; *lay offerings on the altar*

上香 (烧香) burn joss sticks before the image of Buddha;
 burn joss sticks in worship
 跪着祈祷 be kneeling in prayer
 合十 anjale (salutation by putting palms together); clasp hands
 念佛 chant the name of Buddha;
 pray to Buddha
 诵经 recite or chant sutra
 超度 release souls from suffering;
 deliverance from hell
 驱邪 exorcise, exorcize
 驱魔仪式 exorcistic ceremony
 放焰口 alms service of Buddhist
 许愿 votive
 斋戒 fast; abstinence
 斋期 fasting-day
 斋日 day of the Eight Commandments
 斋月 month with long periods of Eight Commandment days
 开斋 break fast

道教

TAOISM

教派 Sects

道教 Taoism, a religion among the Han people, formed about 1,800
 years ago
 全真道 Quanzhen Tao, Taoist sect formed by Wang Chongyang
 in 1167 with White Cloud Taoist Temple in Beijing as
 center. Members forsake home and family, do not marry
 and are vegetarians by belief.
 全真道北宗 Quanzhen Taoism (Northern tradition)
 全真道南宗 Quanzhen Taoism (Southern tradition)
 正一道 (五斗米道、天师道) Zhengyi Tao, also known as
 Wu Dou Mi Tao (Taoist sect of Five-Bushel Rice),
 formed by Zhang Daoling with Dragon-and-Tiger Temple
 in Jiangxi as centre. Members do not forsake home or
 family; they marry and are lay followers of Taoist faith.

天师道	Way of Celestial Masters (Taoist sect of Five Bushels of Rice)
北天师道	Way of Celestial Masters (Northern)
南天师道	Way of Celestial Masters (Southern)
太平道	Great Peace, Taoism of
大道教	True Great Way; Great Way
符箓派	Talismanic Sects
上清派	Shang-Qing School
茅山派	Mao-Shan School
楼观派	Lou-Guan School
灵宝派	Ling-Bao School

道教神仙 Taoist Immortals

玉皇大帝	the Jade Emperor (the supreme deity of Taoism)
天后	Queen of Heaven, a female counterpart of the Jade Emperor
西王母	Queen Mother of the West; Royal Lady of the West
东王公	Royal Lord of the East, consort to Queen Mother of the West
仙人	immortal; celestial being
八仙	(参见 P160)
钟离权 (汉钟离)	Zhongli Quan (Han Zhongli), who carries a fan with which he revives the soul of the dead
何仙姑	He Xiangu, a graceful girl carrying a ladle or a long-stalked lotus blossom
张果老	Zhang Guolao, a bearded figure carrying a tubular drum of bamboo with two rods to beat it
吕洞宾	Lü Dongbin, a dignified elderly figure with a sword in hand or slung over his back
韩湘子	Han Xiangzi, the philosopher Han Xiang, a youthful figure carrying or playing a flute
曹国舅	Cao Guojiu, the Imperial Brother-in-Law, an elderly bearded figure carrying a pair of castanets
李铁拐	Li Tieguai (Iron Crutch Li), an emaciated, deformed figure, leaning on a crutch and carrying a gourd
蓝采和	Lan Caihe, usually represented as a girl carrying a bas-

ket of flowers

神 god; deity; divinity

寿星 God of Longevity, or Old Man Longevity. He carries a peach and a rustic staff, and is usually accompanied by a deer or a crane

福星 God of Happiness. He usually carries a Ruyi-sceptre

禄星 God of Rank and Affluence. He usually carries a child.

梓潼帝君 God of Official Career

紫微北极大帝 Zi Wei, Emperor of the Northern Constellations

文昌帝君 God of Literature, patron of scholars

关圣帝君 Lord Guan, God of War, a military hero of the third century

财神 God of Wealth

青龙 Qinglong, or Green Dragon, God of Eastern Lunar Mansions

朱雀 Zhuque, or Scarlet Bird, God of Southern Lunar Mansions

白虎 Baihu, or White Tiger, God of Western Lunar Mansions

玄武 Xuanwu, or Sombre Warrior, God of Northern Lunar Mansions

元始天尊 God of the Prime Origin

灵宝天尊 God of Sacred Jewel

天官（赐福之神） Tian Kuan, God of Blessing

地官（赦罪之神） Di Kuan, God of Forgiveness

水官（解厄之神） Shui Guan, God of Protection

仙官（有官职的神） immortal in divine office

散仙（无官职的神） immortal out of divine office

六丁六甲 six duty goddesses and six duty gods

城隍 patron god of the city; town god

土地神 local god of the land; village god

门神 door gods

灶王 kitchen god

真人 perfect man

盘古真人 Pan Gu, Perfect Man

丹阳真人 Dan Yang, Perfect Man

长春真人 Chang Chun, Perfect Man

洞灵真人 Dong Ling, Perfect Man

- 广宁真人 Guang Ning, Perfect Man
- 祖师 (鼻祖) patriarch
- 重阳祖师 Patriarch Chong Yang
- 五圣 Five Mischievous Deities
- 北 (南) 五祖 Five Patriarches of the Northern (Southern) Tradition
- 天师 celestial master; the title of the head of the Taoist; Taoist master
- 张道陵 Zhang Daoling (or Zhang Ling), the founder of Taoism of Five-Bushel Rice in the Eastern Han Dynasty (2nd century)
- 张天师 Zhang Tianshi (Heavenly Master Zhang), a honorific title for Zhang Daoling
- 太上老君 Tai Shang Lao Jun (Supreme Master), a honorific title for Laozius
- 道德天尊 (老子) Supreme Lord Lao Zi; God of the Way of Power, Worshipped by Taoists as Father of their religion
- 太上混元皇帝 Supreme Heavenly Emperor Hunyuan, a honorific title for Lao Zi
- 太上玄元皇帝 Supreme Heavenly Emperor Xuanyuan, a honorific title for Lao Zi

教义、戒律 Doctrine, Discipline

- 戒律 rules and commandments
- 三品戒 Commandments for Three Grades of Taoists
- 九守 Observation of Nine Principles
- 七伤 (应禁绝的七种行为) Seven harmful behaviors
- 五戒 Five Commandments for Novices and Lay Believers

道藏 Taoist Canon

- 道藏 (道教经书的总称) the Taoist Canon; the Collected Taoist Scriptures
- 开元道藏 Taoist Canon, Kaiyuan Edition (748 A. D.)
- 天宫道藏 Taoist Canon, Tiangong Edition (1012)
- 万寿道藏 Taoist Canon, Wanshou Edition (12th century)
- 玄都道藏 Taoist Canon, Xuandu Edition (1190)

- 正统道藏 Taoist Canon, Zhengtong Edition (1445)
 道藏辑要 Compilation of Important Books in the Taoist Canon
 道枢 Concise Encyclopedia of Taoism
 道典论 An Encyclopedic Dictionary of Taoism
 道门科范大全集 Complete Collection of Taoist Rituals
 灵宝领教济度金书 Book of Taoist Ceremonies and Rites
 太上老君开天经 Taoist Genesis
 玉皇经 Book of the Jade Emperor
 皇天上清金阙帝君灵书紫文上经 Book of the Jade Emperor's
 Divine Edict
 道德经 (道德真经) Book of the Way of Power
 南华真经 Book of Perfect Man Nan Hua
 西山群仙会真记 Teachings of the Immortals of the Western
 Mountains
 洞玄金玉集 Treasures in Taoist Doctrine
 太上三元法 Confessional for Three Major Festivals
 道教义枢 Essentials of Taoist Doctrine
 五斗经 Book of the Five Constellations
 无上秘要 General Information on the Supreme Truth of Taoism
 诸真玄奥集成 Collection of Scriptures of Southern Taoist School
 重阳立教十五论 Fifteen Treatises on Taoist principles by Wang
 Chongyang
 太上感应篇 Supreme Master on Heavenly Reward and Retribu-
 tion
 推背图 Diagrams for Divination
 集仙传 Collection of Biographies of Immortals
 道法会元 Collection of Taoist Liturgy, Signs and Techniques
 玉牒金书 (珍贵的道经) Richly-decorated Scripture
 洞 Dong (Primary Scriptures)

道教术语 Taoist Terminology

- 三元 ①astronomical triplicity: the sun, the moon, the star
 ②cosmic triplicity: heaven, earth, water ③triplicity
 in medical philosophy: essence of life, vital energy, vi-
 tality
 三宝 (道、经、师) Taoist Triratna: Tao, scriptures, mas-

ters

- 三才 (天、地、人) heaven; earth; man
- 云篆 Taoist characters
- 符字 (丹书) talismanic figure
- 受符 shou-fu, transmission of the art of talismanic figures
- 坐忘 full oblivion
- 入静 contemplation in seclusion
- 止念 freedom from all
- 受戒 (参见 P340)
- 斋戒 fasting and ablution
- 道场 grand service
- 斋醮 (设坛祭祷的仪式) ceremonial prayer
- 忏法 confessional
- 持诵 loud reading
- 炼度 (超度亡魂的法事) prayer for the dead
- 祭炼 sacrifice to the dead
- 道术 Taoist magic or sorcery
- 法器 ritual implement
- 辟谷 (断谷、休粮) abstention from food
- 盘古 the legendary creator and first ruler of the universe
- 太虚 the great void; the universe; interstellar space
- 瑶池 Jasper Lake (abode of immortals, associated with mythical Queen Mother of West)
- 玉阙 palace of Taoist immortals in heaven
- 蓬莱仙境 Penglai fairyland
- 蓬莱 (三神山之一) Mt. Penglai, a fabled abode of immortals
(one of Three Sacred Islands)
- 瀛洲 (三神山之一) Mt. Yingzhou, one of Three Sacred
Islands
- 方丈 (三神山之一) Mt. Fangzhang, one of Three Sacred
Islands
- 玉清境 (三清境之一) Realm of Precious Purity
- 太清境 (三清境之一) Realm of Absolute Purity
- 上清境 (三清境之一) Realm of Lofty Purity
- 天条 the laws of god in heaven
- 天书 a book from heaven; Taoist writings

道家	Taoist school; Taoists
道士	Taoist priest; Taoist clergyman
道人	a respectful form of address for a Taoist priest
道姑	Taoist nun; a woman Taoist
道号	monastic name of a person
住持	abbot
经师	cantor
五行	the Five Primary Elements — metal, wood, water, fire and earth
道观	Taoist monastery (or Temple)
道院 (较小)	monastic house
法坛 (经坛、斋坛)	Taoist tabernacles
土地堂	a tiny temple housing the village god

二十三 博物馆

MUSEUM

博物馆学

MUSEOLOGY

理论博物馆学	theoretical museology
历史博物馆学	historical museology
博物馆技术学	museography
博物馆管理学	science of museum management
博物馆气候学	museum climatology
博物馆方法学	museum methodology
博物馆建筑学	museum architecture
博物馆信息学	information technology of museum
普通博物馆学	general museology
专门博物馆学	special museology
博物馆环境管理	administration of museum environment
博物馆管理机制	management mechanism of museum
博物馆自动化管理系统	automatic management system of muse- um
博物馆资源	resources of museum
博物馆类型	types of museum
艺术博物馆	art museum
历史博物馆	history museum
科技博物馆	museum of science and technology
综合博物馆	integrated museum
人类学博物馆	museum of anthropology
人种学博物馆	museum of ethnology
人种志博物馆	ethnographical museum
自然史博物馆	museum of natural history

生态博物馆	eco-museum
考古博物馆	museum of archaeology
民俗博物馆	museum of folklore
军事博物馆	military museum
农业博物馆	agricultural museum
地质博物馆	geological museum
遗址博物馆	site museum
露天博物馆	open-air museum
流动博物馆	mobile museum
无墙博物馆	museum without wall
博物馆陈列	museum display (exhibition)
博物馆宣教	museum propaganda and education
博物馆藏品研究	study of museum collections
博物馆学教育	museological education
博物馆馆长	museum director (or curator)
博物馆专业人员	museum professionals; professional functionaries for museum
博物馆志愿人员	museum volunteers
博物馆观众	museum visitors
经常去博物馆的公众	museum-going public

藏品保管

PRESERVATION OF COLLECTIONS

藏品征集	acquisition of collections
藏品收购	purchase of collections
直(间)接征集	direct (indirect) acquisition
征集道德	ethics of acquisitions
搜集方针	collection policy
搜集任务	collecting missions
藏品储备	reservation of collections
藏品库房	storage for collections
藏品保存环境	conservation environment of collections
藏品入库	be put in storage; be stored
保护道德	ethics of preservation
分类	classification

登记 registration
 编目 cataloging; to catalogue
 目录卡 catalogue card
 排架 shelving; to shelve
 统计 statistics
 档案 archives
 藏品管理 management of collections
 保护(养) conservation; protection
 保管 preservation
 鉴定 appraisal; identification
 定级 grading; to grade
 一、二、三…级 grade A, B, C, ...
 质地分析 texture analysis
 年代测定 date (or age) determination
 复制 reproduction
 复制的档案材料 archive material in facsimile
 认可的复制品 approved replicas
 出库检查 delivery inspection
 调拨 allocate and transfer; allot
 交换 exchange
 注销 cancel
 清点 check
 影像资料 photographic data
 干制标本 specimens in drying
 浸制标本 specimens in solution
 压制标本 specimens in laying
 化石标本 fossil specimens
 土壤标本 soil specimens
 矿岩标本 rock and mineral specimens
 动物标本 animal specimens
 植物标本 plant specimens
 藏品修复 restoration of collections
 修复厂 studio for the restoration of works of art
 科学(工艺)实验室 scientific (or technological) laboratory
 藏品保护技术 preservation techniques for collections
 适宜藏品的小气候 micro-climate for collections

藏品保管设备 equipments for preservation of collections
 检验设备 monitoring equipment
 空气污染 air pollution
 空气调节 (器) air conditioning (conditioner)
 空气过滤器 air filter
 相 (绝) 对湿度 relative (absolute) humidity
 相 (绝) 对温度 relative (absolute) temperature
 加热器 heating apparatus
 加湿器 humidifier
 除湿剂 dehumidizer
 干燥器 dehumidifier
 铜病 bronze disease
 失去光泽 tarnishing
 杀虫剂 insecticides
 驱虫剂 insectifuge
 热辐射 thermal radiation
 红外线辐射 infra-red radiation
 紫外线过滤器 ultra-violet filter
 紫外线检验器 ultra-violet meter
 防潮湿 moisture-proofing
 防辐射 radiation protection
 防腐蚀 anti-corrosion; corrosion control
 防虫蛀 control of insect-eating
 防震 precautions against earthquakes
 防尘 dust-proofing
 防霉菌 mold prevention
 风化剥离 weathering and stripping
 控制环境污染 control of atmospheric pollution
 自动化空调系统 automatic air-conditioning system

陈列展览

DISPLAY AND EXHIBITION

总体设计 general design
 内容设计 content design
 艺术设计 artistic design

设计图	design drawing
分类陈列	classification display; classified display
综合陈列	integration display; integrated display
生态陈列	ecological display
原状陈列	presentation of articles in their original state; exhibition in the original forms; presentation in the original forms
复原陈列	restored exhibition (display)
摹拟陈列	simulated display; diorama
演示陈列	demonstration display; exhibition through demonstration
室内陈列	indoor display
露天陈列	outdoor (or open-air) display
基本陈列	basic display
临时陈列	temporary display (exhibition)
永久陈列	permanent display (exhibition)
流动陈列	mobile display (exhibition)
展览设备	equipments for exhibition
展览橱窗	showcases
台座	pedestals
屏风 (假墙)	screen (artificial wall)
支架	support; stand
镜框	picture frame
展品	exhibits; articles for display
辅助展品	auxiliary articles for display (exhibition)
沙盘	sand table
模型	mold
图表	chart (diagram)
景观	setting view; actual settings
布置展品	arrange exhibits
采光	natural lighting; daylighting
照明	illumination; lighting
照明装置	lighting installation
照度	intensity of illumination; illuminance
光敏度	light-sensitivity
照度计	light meter

勒克司 (照明单位) lux
 照明水平 illumination level
 文字说明 (中、外文) written explanation; expository writing
 (in Chinese and foreign languages)
 参观路线 visitors' itinerary
 指路牌 guide board (post)
 陈列示意图 plan of the exhibition
 预展 preview; private view
 内部展览 restricted show
 签到簿 attendance book
 留言簿 visitors' book
 请签到 please put your signature in the attendance book
 请提意见 please write your impressions in the visitors' book
 欢迎批评 to invite visitors' constructive criticisms; visitors' constructive criticisms are invited
 欢迎参观 welcome
 请勿拍照 no photography
 请勿吸烟 no smoking
 请勿触动展品 please keep (or leave) the exhibits intact
 请勿抚摸展品 please do not touch the exhibits
 室内请肃静 please be quiet in the exhibition hall

宣传教育

PUBLICITY AND EDUCATION

协助学校教育 to assist the school education
 进行成人教育 adult education
 普及科学文化知识 to spread cultural and scientific knowledge
 弘扬民族文化 to promote and develop the national culture
 宣传爱国主义 to publicize patriotism
 增强审美观念 to strengthen aesthetic sense
 多功能文化中心 multi-functional center of culture
 直观教育 audio-visual education
 专题报告 (讲座) report (lecture) on a special topic
 讲解 interpretation; explanation
 讲解员 guides; commentators; interpreters

解说词	commentary from the museum guide; commentary; written caption
说明书	instruction book; guide book; booklet of directions
讲解艺术	art of interpretation
因人施讲	give an interpretation (or explanation) to visitors in accordance with their capacity
参观指南	a guide to a museum
电化教育	education with electric audio-visual aids
出版宣传品	publication of propaganda materials
宣传计划	popularization programs
传播性质	nature of communication
信息传播	communication of information
通讯报导	news report
广告牌	billboard
招贴画	posters
传单	leaflets
明信片	postcards
幻灯片	lantern slides
磁带录像	video tape recording
录音导游	audio-visual tour
宣传橱窗	showcase for publicity
记者招待会	press conference

开放管理

ADMINISTRATION OF OPENING AFFAIRS

售票处	booking office; ticket office
售票时间	ticket office (or window) open
参观时间	visiting hours; hours of operation
预售	reservation; advance booking
预售票	advance ticket
停止售票	ticket office closed
停止入场	no admission
停止参观	we are about to close; stop visiting
凭票入场	admission by ticket only
免费入场	free admission

入场券 admission ticket

副券 sub-ticket

赠券 complimentary ticket; free ticket

优待券 privileged ticket

此票发售当日有效 the ticket is available on the day of issue only

赠券停用 complimentary ticket is not valid

鱼贯而入, 请勿拥挤 please do not push; enter in file (or order)

通知 (告) notice; public notice

一米以下儿童免费参观 children under one meter tall admitted free; children under a meter in height free of charge

团体 20 人以上凭介绍信半价 50% discount for groups of twenty or more people with a letter of recognition from their organization or institute

军警学生半价 half price for service men and students

残废军人凭证免费 disabled soldiers admitted free with their identification card

精神病患者和醉酒者不得入内 mental patients or intoxicated persons not admitted

禁止携带武器和违禁品 no weapons, inflammable materials or explosives

请勿在墙上涂写 please do not mark or draw on the walls; no scribbling on walls

请勿张贴 no posting; stick no bills

请勿攀折花木 please refrain from picking the flowers and breaking the branches

请勿践踏草地 please keep off the grass

请勿随地吐痰 no spitting

请勿攀登 no scaling (or climbing)

请把垃圾扔进垃圾箱内 please deposit garbage or paper in trash containers; throw rubbish into dustbins

危险, 请勿接近 danger! keep out!

问讯台 inquiry desk; information desk

广播室 broadcasting studio

照相室 photo-studio

立等可取 while-U-wait

当日可取 same day service
 休息室 lounging room; sitting room
 接待室 reception room
 餐饮部 catering department
 快餐部 buffet service; snack counter (bar)
 小吃部 refreshment room
 小卖部 small shop (selling cigarettes, confectionery, etc.);
 souvenirs and refreshments
 纪念品出售处 souvenir counter
 外宾服务部 foreign visitors' service (department)
 欢迎惠顾 your patronage (browsing) is welcome
 书亭 book kiosk; bookstall; bookstand
 急救室 first-aid room; room for emergency treatment
 厕所 restrooms; toilets
 男厕所 men's; gentlemen
 女厕所 women's; ladies
 正(旁)门 main (side) entrance
 出(入)口 exit (entrance); way out (in)
 停车处(场) parking lot (area)
 禁止停车 no parking here
 停车 stop here
 禁止通行 no thoroughfare; no through way
 禁止左(右)转 no left (right) turn
 禁止回转 no U-turn
 禁按喇叭 no honking
 此路不通 dead end; road closed; blocked
 绕道行使 detour
 观众止步 no visitors; visitors not admitted; employees only
 谢绝参观 inspection declined
 非公莫入 admittance for business purposes only
 非请莫入 authorized personnel only
 存(取)包处 depositing (withdrawing) parcels
 行李存放处 cloakroom; check room
 失物招领处 lost and found office
 星期六、日照常开放 exhibition as usual on Saturdays and Sun-
 days

春节期间照常开放 exhibition as usual during the Spring Festival
内部整修暂停开放 closed during repairs (or restorations)
重新开放 reopen to the public

博物馆机构 MUSEUM ORGANIZATIONS

国际博物馆协会 International Council of Museums (ICOM)

国际博协各委员会 ICOM Committees

国际考古与历史博物馆委员会 International Committee for Museums of Archaeology and History (ICMAH)

世界(国际)博物馆之友联合会 The World Federation of Friends of Museums (WFFM)

国际博物馆文物保护协会 Institut International pour la Conservation des Objects de Musées (IIC)

史密森学会 Smithsonian Institution (including 14 subordinate museums and 1 national Zoological Garden)

国际博协博物馆职业道德准则 International Council of Museums Norms for Employees of Museums

国际博协中国委员会 ICOM Chinese National Committee

中国博物馆学会 Chinese Society of Museums

中国自然科学博物馆协会 Chinese Association of Natural Science Museums

二十四 全国重点文物保护单位选

SELECTED MAJOR HISTORICAL AND CULTURAL MONUMENTS UNDER STATE PROTECTION

古建筑及历史纪念建筑物

ANCIENT AND HISTORICAL-MEMORIAL BUILDINGS

故宫 (紫禁城) Gu Gong (Zi Jin Cheng). Imperial Palace
(Forbidden City). (Ming and Qing Dynasties, in Bei-
jing)

太庙 Tai Miao. Imperial Ancestral Temple (Ming and Qing Dy-
nasties, in Beijing)

社稷坛 Sheji Tan. Imperial Divine Temple; Altar to the Gods of
Grain and Land (Ming and Qing Dynasties, in Beijing)

天坛 Tian Tan. Temple of Heaven (Ming and Qing Dynasties,
in Beijing)

皇史宬 HuangshiCheng. Imperial Archives (Ming and Qing Dy-
nasties, in Beijing)

北海、团城 Beihai, Tuancheng. Beihai Park and Round City
(Ming and Qing Dynasties, in Beijing)

颐和园 Yi He Yuan. Summer Palace (Qing Dynasty, in Bei-
jing)

避暑山庄 Bishu Shanzhuang. Imperial Summer Resort (Qing
Dynasty, in Chengde city, Hebei Province)

沈阳故宫 Shenyang Gugong. Shenyang Imperial Palace (Early
Qing Dynasty, in Shenyang city, Liaoning Province)

万里长城—八达岭 Wanli Changcheng — Badaling. Great Wall
— Badaling (Ming Dynasty, in Yanqing County, Bei-

jing)

万里长城—山海关 Wanli Changcheng — Shanhai Guan. Great Wall — Shanhai Guan (Ming Dynasty, in Shanhai Guan, Hebei Province)

万里长城—嘉峪关 Wanli Changcheng — Jiayu Guan. Great Wall — Jiayu Guan (Ming Dynasty, in Jiayu Guan City, Gansu Province)

南京城墙 Nanjing Chengqiang. Nanjing City Walls (Early Ming Dynasty, in Nanjing, Jiangsu Province)

平遥城墙 Pingyao Chengqiang. Pingyao City Walls (Ming Dynasty, in Pingyao County, Shanxi Province)

蓬莱水城及蓬莱阁 Penglai Shui Cheng Ji Penglai Ge. Penglai Waterside City and Penglai Pavilion (Ming and Qing Dynasties, in Penglai County, Shandong Province)

布达拉宫 Budala Gong. Potala Palace (Ming Dynasty, in Lhasa, Tibet)

曲阜孔庙及孔府 Qufu Kong Miao Ji Kong Fu. Confucian Temple and Kongs' Residence in Qufu (Jin to Qing Dynasties, in Shandong Province)

武侯祠 Wuhou Ci. Zhuge Liang Memorial Hall (Qing Dynasty, in Chengdu, Sichuan Province)

杜甫草堂 Dufu Caotang. Du Fu Memorial Hall (Qing Dynasty, in Chengdu, Sichuan Province)

国子监 Guozijian. Imperial College (Yuan, Ming and Qing Dynasties, in Beijing)

天一阁 Tianyige. Tianyi Pavilion (Ming Dynasty, in Ningbo, Zhejiang Province)

白鹿洞书院 Bailudong Shuyuan. Bailudong College (Song Dynasty, in Lushan, Jiangxi Province)

岳麓书院 Yuelu Shuyuan. Yuelu College (Song Dynasty, in Changsha, Hunan Province)

岳阳楼 Yueyang Lou. Yueyang Pavilion (Song Dynasty, in Yueyang city, Hunan Province)

丁村民宅 Dingcun Minzhai. Dingcun Common People's House (Ming and Qing Dynasties, in Xiangfen County, Shanxi Province)

- 恭王府及花园 Gongwang Fu Ji Huayuan. Prince Gongwang's Residence and Garden (Qing Dynasty, in Beijing)
- 豫园 Yu Yuan. Yuyuan Garden (Ming Dynasty, in Shanghai)
- 寄畅园 Jichang Yuan. Jichang Garden (Ming and Qing Dynasties, in Wuxi city, Jiangsu Province)
- 拙政园 Zhuozheng Yuan. Zhuozheng Yuan Garden (Humble Administrator's Garden, Ming Dynasty, in Suzhou City, Jiangsu Province)
- 留园 Liuyuan. Liuyuan Garden (Lingering Garden, Ming and Qing Dynasties, in Suzhou City, Jiangsu Province)
- 网师园 Wangshi Yuan. Wangshi Garden (Qing Dynasty, in Suzhou City, Jiangsu Province)
- 罗布林卡 Luobulinka. Norbu Lingka (Qing Dynasty, in Lhasa, Tibet)
- 都江堰 Dujiangyan. Dujiangyan Dams (Tang to Qing Dynasties, in Dujiangyan City, Sichuan Province)
- 古观象台 Gu Guanxiang Tai. Ancient Observatory (Ming and Qing Dynasties, in Beijing 1437—1446)
- 观星台 Guanxing Tai. Stellar Observatory (Yuan Dynasty, in Dengfeng, Henan Province)
- 安济桥 Anji Qiao. Anji Bridge (Sui Dynasty, in Zhaoxian County, Hebei Province)
- 安平桥 Anping Qiao. Anping Bridge (Southern Song Dynasty, in Jinjiang County, Fujian Province)
- 孝堂山郭氏墓石祠 Xiaotangshan Guoshi Mu Shici. Stone Memorial Hall at Guo's Cemetery on Xiaotang Mountain (Eastern Han Dynasty, in Changqing County, Shandong Province)
- 褒斜道石门及其摩崖石刻 Baoxiedao Shimen Jiqi Moya Shike. Rock Gate and Cliffside Inscriptions on Baoxiedao Road (Han Dynasty, in Hanzhong City, Shaanxi Province)
- 佛光寺 Foguang Si. Foguang Temple (Tang to Qing Dynasties, in Wutai County, Shanxi Province)
- 风穴寺及塔林 Fengxue Si Ji Talin. Fengxue Temple and Its Pagodas (Northern Wei, Sui and Tang Dynasties, in Ruzhou City, Henan Province)

- 灵岩寺 Lingyan Si. Lingyan Temple (Eastern Jin, Northern Wei, Tang and Song Dynasties, in Changqing County, Shandong Province)
- 晋祠 Jinci. Jin Memorial Hall (Song Dynasty, in Taiyuan, Shanxi Province)
- 玉皇庙 Yuhuang Miao. Taoist Jade Emperor Temple (Song to Qing Dynasties, in Jincheng, Shanxi Province)
- 大庙飞来殿 Damiao Feilai Dian. Feilai Hall of the Great Temple (Song, Yuan and Ming Dynasties, in Emeishan City, Sichuan Province)
- 玉泉寺及铁塔 Yuquansi Ji Tieta. Yuquan Temple and Its Iron Pagoda (Sui, Tang and Song Dynasties, in Dangyang County, Hubei Province)
- 独乐寺 Dule Si. Dule Temple (Liao Dynasty, in Jixian County of Tianjin)
- 白马寺 Baima Si. White Horse Temple (Eastern Han to Qing Dynasties, in Luoyang City, Henan Province)
- 大昭寺 Dazhao Si. Zuglakang (Jokhang) Monastery (mid-7th century, in Lhasa, Tibet)
- 哲蚌寺 Zhebeng Si. Drepung Monastery (Ming Dynasty, in Lhasa, Tibet)
- 扎什伦布寺 Zhashilunbu Si. Zhaxilhunbu Monastery (Ming Dynasty, in Xigaze, Tibet)
- 塔尔寺 Ta'er Si. Ta'er Temple (Ming to Qing Dynasties, in Huangzhong County, Qinghai)
- 拉卜楞寺 Labuleng Si. Lhabrang Monastery (Qing Dynasty, in Xiahe County, Gansu Province)
- 雍和宫 Yonghe Gong. Lamaist Temple (Qing Dynasty, in Beijing)
- 普宁寺 Puning Si. Puning Temple (Qing Dynasty, in Chengde, Hebei Province)
- 安远庙 Anyuan Miao. Anyuan Temple (Qing Dynasty, in Chengde, Hebei Province)
- 普陀宗乘之庙 Putuozongsheng Zhi Miao. Temple of the Potara-ka Doctrine (Qing Dynasty, in Chengde, Hebei Province)

- 须弥福寿之庙 Xumi Fushou Zhi Miao. Temple of Sumeru Happiness and Longevity (Qing Dynasty, in Chengde, Hebei Province)
- 永乐宫 Yongle Gong. Yonglegong Taoist Temple (Yuan Dynasty, in Ruicheng County, Shanxi Province)
- 武当山金殿 Wudangshan Jindian. Gilt Bronze Hall on Mt. Wudang (Ming Dynasty, in Danjiangkou City, Hubei Province)
- 解州关帝庙 Xiezhou Guandi Miao. Guandi Temple at Xiezhou (Sui to Qing Dynasties, in Xiezhou Town of Yuncheng City, Shanxi Province)
- 牛街礼拜寺 Niujie Libai Si. Niujie Street Mosque (Yuan and Ming Dynasties, in Beijing)
- 大雁塔 Dayan Ta. Great Wild Goose Pagoda (Tang Dynasty, in Xi'an, Shaanxi Province)
- 小雁塔 Xiaoyan Ta. Small Wild Goose Pagoda (Tang Dynasty, in Xi'an, Shaanxi Province)
- 房山云居寺塔及石经 Fangshan Yunjusi Ta Ji Shijing. Yunju Temple Pagoda and Stone Sutras at Fangshan (Sui, Tang, Liao and Jin Dynasties, in Fangshan District of Beijing)
- 棲霞寺舍利塔 Qixiasi Sheli Ta. Qixia Temple Sarira-stupa (Sui Dynasty, in Nanjing City, Jiangsu Province)
- 万部华严经塔 Wanbu Huayanjing Ta. Pagoda for Keeping Ten-thousand Copies of the Buddha-avatamsaka-sutra (Liao Dynasty, in Huhehot, Inner Mongolia)
- 六和塔 Liuhe Ta. Six Harmonies Pagoda (Southern Song Dynasty, in Hangzhou, Zhejiang Province)
- 释迦文佛塔 Shijiawen Fota. Sakya Script Pagoda (Song Dynasty, in Putian County, Fujian Province)
- 一百零八塔 Yibai Lingba Ta. One-hundred-and-eight Pagodas (Yuan, Ming, Qing Dynasties, in Qingtongxia City, Ningxia)
- 真觉寺金刚宝座 (五塔寺塔) Zhenjuesi Jingang Baozuo (Wutasi Ta). Diamond Throne in the Zhenjue Temple (Pagodas of the Five-pagoda Temple, Ming Dynasty, in Beijing)

广德寺多宝塔 Guangdesi Duobao Ta. Abundant Treasure Pagoda of the Guangde Temple (Ming Dynasty, in Xiangyang, Hubei Province)

金刚座舍利宝塔 Jingangzuo Sheli Baota. Sarira-stupas on Diamond Throne (Qing Dynasty, in Huhehot of Inner Mongolia)

赵州陀罗尼经幢 Zhaozhou Tuoluoni Jingchuang. Dharani Sutra Pillars in Zhaozhou (Song Dynasty, in Zhaoxian County, Hebei Province)

石窟寺 (石窟)

BUDDHIST CAVE TEMPLES (GROTTOS)

孔望山摩崖造像 Kongwangshan Moya Zaoxiang. Kongwangshan Cliffside Images (or Sculptures) (Eastern Han Dynasty, in Lianyungang City, Jiangsu Province)

克孜尔千佛洞 Kezi'er Qianfo Dong. Kizil Thousand-Buddha Caves (a. 4th-8th century A. D., in Beicheng, Xinjiang)

莫高窟 (参见 P381)

榆林窟 Yulin Ku. Yulin Grottoes (Tang to Yuan Dynasties, in Anxi County, Gansu Province)

炳灵寺石窟 Binglingsi Shiku. Binglingsi Grottoes (Northern Wei to Ming Dynasties, in Yongjing County, Gansu Province)

麦积山石窟 Maijishan Shiku. Maijishan Grottoes (a. 5th century to Ming Dynasty, in Tianshui City, Gansu Province)

云冈石窟 Yungang Shiku. Yungang Grottoes (Northern Wei Dynasty, in Datong City, Shanxi Province)

龙门石窟 Longmen Shiku. Longmen Grottoes (Northern Wei to Tang Dynasties, in Luoyang City, Henan Province)

鞏县石窟寺 Gongxian Shiku Si. Gongxian Cave Temple (Northern Wei to Song Dynasties, in Gongxian County, Henan Province)

北石窟寺 Beishiku Si. Northern Cave Temple (Northern Wei to

- Song Dynasties, in Xifeng City, Gansu Province)
- 南石窟寺 Nanshiku Si. Southern Cave Temple (Northern Wei to Tang Dynasties, in Jingchuan County, Gansu Province)
- 万佛堂石窟 Wanfotang Shiku. Wanfotang Grottoes (Northern Wei Dynasty, in Yixian County, Liaoning Province)
- 须弥山石窟 Xumishan Shiku. Sumeru Mount Grottoes (Northern Dynasties to Tang Dynasty, in Guyuan County, Ningxia)
- 响堂山石窟 Xiangtangshan Shiku. Xiangtangshan Grottoes (the late Northern Dynasties to Ming Dynasty, in Handan City, Hebei Province)
- 千佛崖摩崖造像 Qianfoya Moya Zaoxiang. Thousand-Buddha Cliffside Images (or Sculptures)
(Southern and Northern Dynasties to Ming Dynasty, in Guangyuan City, Sichuan Province)
- 南龕摩崖造像 Nankan Moya Zaoxiang. Southern Niches Cliffside Images (Sui to Song Dynasties, in Bazhong County, Sichuan Province)
- 千佛崖造像 Qianfoya Zaoxiang. Thousand-Buddha Cliffside Images (Tang to Ming Dynasties, in Ji'nan City, Shandong Province)
- 大佛寺石窟 Dafosi Shiku. Great Buddhist Temple Grottoes (Northern Wei to Qing Dynasties, in Binxian County, Shaanxi Province)
- 乐山大佛 Leshan Dafo. Leshan Cliffside Buddha (Tang Dynasty, in Leshan City, Sichuan Province)
- 北山摩崖造像 Beishan Moya Zaoxiang. Beishan Cliffside Images (Tang to Southern Song Dynasties, in Dazu County, Sichuan Province)
- 石钟山石窟 Shizhongshan Shiku. Shizhongshan Grottoes (Nanzhao and Dali Period, in Jianchuan County, Yunnan Province)
- 飞来峰造像 Feilaifeng Zaoxiang. Feilaifeng Cliffside Sculptures (Five Dynasties to Ming Dynasty, in Hangzhou, Zhejiang Province)
- 宝顶山摩崖造像 Baodingshan Moya Zaoxiang. Baodingshan

Cliffside Images (Southerm Song Dynasty, in Dazu County, Sichuan Province)

通天岩石窟 Tongtianyan Shiku. Tongtianyan Grottoes (Song to Ming Dynasties, in Ganzhou, Jiangxi Province)

石刻及其他

STONE INSCRIPTIONS AND OTHERS

将军崖岩画 Jiangjunya Yanhua. Jiangjunya Petroglyphs (the middle and late Neolithic Age, in Lianyungang, Jiangsu Province)

花山岩画 Huashan Yanhua. Huashan Pictographs (the Warring States Period to Eastern Han Dynasty, in Ningming County, Guangxi)

云峰山、天柱山摩崖石刻 Yunfengshan Tianzhushan Moya Shike. Yunfengshan and Tianzhushan Cliffside Inscriptions (Northern Dynasties, in Laizhou City and Pingdu County, Shandong Province)

白鹤梁题刻 Baiheliang Tike. Baiheliang Inscriptions and Carvings (Tang to Qing Dynasties, in Fuling County, Sichuan Province)

浯溪摩崖石刻 Wuxi Moya Shike. Wuxi Cliffside Inscriptions (Tang to Qing Dynasties, in Qiyang County, Hunan Province)

怡亭铭摩崖石刻 Yitingming Moya Shike. Cliffside Inscription at the Yiting Pavilion (Tang Dynasty, in Ezhou City, Hubei Province)

九日山摩崖石刻 Jiurishan Moya Shike. Jiurishan Cliffside Inscriptions (Song Dynasty, in Nan'an County, Fujian Province)

西安碑林 Xi'an Beilin. Forest of Steles in Xi'an (Han Dynasty to modern times)

段氏与三十七部会盟碑 Duanshi Yu Sanshiqi Bu Huimeng Bei. Tablet Recording the Union of Duan with 37 Tribes (Song Dynasty, in Qujing City, Yunnan Province)

重修护国寺感应塔碑 Chongxiu Huguosi Ganyingta Bei. Tablet

Marking the Rebuilding of the Ganying Pagoda, Huguo Temple (Western Xia Period, in Wuwei City, Gansu Province)

苏州文庙内宋代石刻 Suzhou Wenmiao Nei Songdai Shike. Stone Diagrams of the Song Dynasty in the Confucian Temple, in Suzhou, Jiangsu Province

大金得胜陀颂碑 Dajin Deshengtuo Songbei. Great Jin Memorial Stele at Deshengtuo (Kin Dynasty, in Fuyu City, Jilin Province)

南京南朝陵墓石刻 Nanjing Nanchao Lingmu Shike. Stone Sculptures at Mausoleums of the Southern Dynasties at Nanjing

老君岩造像 Laojunyan Zaoxiang. Rock Image of Lao Jun (Song Dynasty, in Quanzhou City, Fujian Province)

松江唐经幢 Songjiang Tang Jingchuang. Sutra Pillar of the Tang Dynasty in Songjiang county, Shanghai

常德铁幢 Changde Tiechuang. Iron Sutra Pillar in Changde (Song Dynasty, in Changde City, Hunan Province)

地藏寺经幢 Dizangsi Jingchuang. Sutra Pillar of the Ksitigarbha Temple (Song Dynasty, in Kunming City, Yunnan Province)

溪州铜柱 Xizhou Tongzhu. Bronze Column at Xizhou (Five Dynasties in Yongshun County, Hunan Province)

沧州铁狮子 Cangzhou Tieshizi. Cangzhou Iron Lion (Latter Zhou, Five Dynasties, in Hebei Province)

保圣寺罗汉塑像 Baoshengsi Luohan Suxiang. Statues of Arhats in the Baosheng Temple (Song Dynasty, in Wuxian County, Jiangsu Province)

峨嵋山圣寿万年寺铜铁佛像 Emeishan Shengshouwanniansi Tongtie Foxiang. Bronze and Iron Buddhist Sculptures in the Shengshouwannian Temple, Emei Mountain (Song to Ming Dynasties, in Sichuan Province)

古遗址 ANCIENT SITES

腊玛古猿化石地点 Lama Guyuan Huashi Didian. Locality of

- Ramapithecus Fossils (late Miocene Epoch, in Lufeng County, Yunnan Province)
- 元谋猿人遗址 Yuanmou Yuanren Yizhi. Site of Yuanmou Man (early Paleolithic Age, in Yunnan Province)
- 兰田猿人遗址 Lantian Yuanren Yizhi. Site of Lantian Man (early Paleolithic Age, in Lantian county, Shaanxi Province)
- 周口店遗址 Zhoukoudian Yizhi. Zhoukoudian Site (Paleolithic Age, in Zhoukoudian near Beijing)
- 丁村遗址 Dingcun Yizhi. Dingcun Site (Paleolithic Age, in Xiangfen County, Shanxi Province)
- 水洞沟遗址 Shuidonggou Yizhi. Shuidonggou Site (late Paleolithic Age, in Lingwu County, Ningxia)
- 大地湾遗址 Dadiwan Yizhi. Dadiwan Site (Neolithic Age, in Qin'an County, Gansu Province)
- 仰韶村遗址 Yangshaocun Yizhi. Yangshaocun Site (Neolithic Age, in Minchi County, Henan Province)
- 半坡遗址 Banpo Yizhi. Banpo Site (Neolithic Age, in the suburbs of Xi'an, Shaanxi Province)
- 马家窑遗址 Majiayao Yizhi. Majiayao Site (Neolithic Age to Bronze Age, in Lintao County, Gansu Province)
- 马厂塬遗址 Machangyuan Yizhi. Machangyuan Site (late Neolithic Age, in Minhe County, Qinghai Province)
- 大汶口遗址 Dawenkou Yizhi. Dawenkou Site (Neolithic Age, in Tai'an City, Shandong Province)
- 河姆渡遗址 Hemudu Yizhi. Hemudu Site (Neolithic Age, in Yuyao City, Zhejiang Province)
- 屈家岭遗址 Qujialing Yizhi. Qujialing Site (late Neolithic Age, in Jingshan County, Hubei Province)
- 二里头遗址 Erlitou Yizhi. Erlitou Site (early Bronze Age, in Yanshi County, Henan Province)
- 郑州商代遗址 Zhengzhou Shangdai Yizhi. Shang Site at Zhengzhou (in Henan Province)
- 殷墟 Yinxu. Yin Ruins (in Anyang City, Henan Province)
- 周原遗址 Zhouyuan Yizhi. Zhouyuan Site (early Zhou Dynasty, between Qishan and Fufeng Counties in Shaanxi Province)

vince)

丰镐遗址 Fenggao Yizhi. Site of capital cities of Fengjing and Gaojing (Western Zhou Dynasty, in Chang'an County, Shaanxi Province)

琉璃河遗址 Liulihe Yizhi. Liulihe Site (Shang and Zhou Dynasties, in Fangshan District, Beijing)

临淄齐国故城 Linzi Qiguo Gucheng. Site of the Qi State Capital at Linzi (Western Zhou to the Qi State of Warring States Period, in Shandong Province)

曲阜鲁国故城 Qufu Luguo Gucheng. Site of the Lu State Capital at Qufu (Zhou to Han Dynasties, in Shandong Province)

侯马晋国遗址 Houma Jinguo Yizhi. Site of the Jin State at Houma (Spring and Autumn Period, in Shanxi Province)

楚纪南故城 Chu Jinan Gucheng. Site of the Chu State Capital at Jinan Cheng (Eastern Zhou Dynasty, in Jiangling County, Hubei Province)

秦雍城遗址 Qin Yongcheng Yizhi. Site of the Qin State Capital at Yongcheng City (Spring and Autumn Period to Warring States Period, in Fengxiang County, Shaanxi Province)

郑韩故城遗址 Zheng-Han Gucheng Yizhi. Site of the Zheng and Han States Capital (Eastern Zhou Dynasty, in Xinzheng County, Henan Province)

燕下都遗址 Yanxiadu Yizhi. Site of the Yan State Lower Capital (Warring States Period, in Yixian County, Hebei Province)

阿房宫遗址 Epang Gong Yizhi. Site of the Epang (Epang) Palace (Qin Dynasty, in Xi'an, Shaanxi Province)

中山古城遗址 Zhongshan Gucheng Yizhi. Site of the Zhongshan State Capital (Warring States Period, in Pingshan County, Hebei Province)

汉魏洛阳故城遗址 Han-Wei Luoyang Gucheng Yizhi. Site of the Han-Wei Period Capital Luoyang (in Henan Province)

大明宫遗址 Daming Gong Yizhi. Site of the Daminggong Palace

- (Tang Dynasty, in Xi'an City, Shaanxi Province)
- 北宋东京城遗址 Beisong Dongjing Cheng Yizhi. Site of Dongjing City, the Capital of the Northern Song Dynasty (in Kaifeng City, Henan Province)
- 辽上京遗址 Liao Shangjing Yizhi. Site of the Upper Capital of the Liao Dynasty (in Balin Left Banner, Inner Mongolia)
- 元上都遗址 Yuan Shangdu Yizhi. Site of the Yuan Dynasty Upper Capital (in Plain Blue Banner, Inner Mongolia)
- 明中都皇故城及皇陵石刻 Ming Zhongdu Huanggucheng Ji Huangling Shike. Site of the Imperial City and Stone Sculptures at the Imperial Tombs in the Middle Capital of the Ming Dynasty (in Fengyang County, Anhui Province)
- 高昌故城 Gaochang Gucheng. Site of the Gaochang (Khoco) State Capital (460-640, in Turpan, Xinjiang)
- 古格王国遗址 Gugewangguo Yizhi. Site of the Guge Kingdom (10th-16th centuries, in Zada County, Tibet)
- 玉门关及长城烽燧遗址 Yumen Guan Ji Changcheng Fengsui Yizhi. Beacon Sites at the Yumen Pass and along the Great Wall (Han Dynasty, in Dunhuang City, Gansu Province)
- 圆明园遗址 Yuanmingyuan Yizhi. Site of the Yuanmingyuan Palace (Qing Dynasty, in Beijing)
- 上林湖越窑遗址 Shanglinhu Yue Yao Yizhi. Site of the Yue Yao on Shanglin Lake (Eastern Han to Song Dynasties, in Cixi County, Zhejiang Province)
- 什邡堂邛窑遗址 Shifangtang Qiong Yao Yizhi. Site of the Qiong Yao at Shifangtang (Sui to Song Dynasties in Qionglai County, Sichuan Province)
- 长沙铜官窑遗址 Changsha Tongguan Yao Yizhi. Site of the Tongguan Yao at Changsha (Tang and Five Dynasties, in Hunan Province)
- 涧磁村定窑遗址 Jiancicun Ding Yao Yizhi. Site of the Ding Yao at Jianci Village (Tang to Yuan Dynasties, in Quyang County, Hubei Province)

黄堡镇耀州窑遗址 Huangbaozhen Yaozhou Yao Yizhi. Site of the Yaozhou Yao at Huangbao Township (Tang and Song Dynasties, in Yaoxian County, Shaanxi Province)

钧台钧窑遗址 Juntai Jun Yao Yizhi. Site of the Jun Yao at Juntai (Song Dynasty, in Yuxian County, Henan Province)

大窑龙泉窑遗址 Dayao Longquan Yao Yizhi. Site of the Longquan Yao at Dayao (Song to Ming Dynasties, in Longquan County, Zhejiang Province)

屈斗宫德化窑遗址 Qudougong Dehua Yao Yizhi. Site of the Dehua Yao at Qudougong (Song to Qing Dynasties, in Dehua County, Fujian Province)

湖田窑址 Hutian Yao Zhi. Kiln Site at Hutian (Song and Yuan Dynasties, in Jingde zhen, Jiangxi Province)

古墓葬

ANCIENT TOMBS

黄帝陵 Huangdi Ling. Memorial Mausoleum of Legendary Emperor Huangdi (in Huangling County, Shaanxi Province)

田齐王陵 Tianqiwang Ling. Mausoleums of Kings of the Tian Qi State (Warring States Period, in Zibo City, Shandong Province)

秦始皇陵 Qinshihuang Ling. Mausoleum of Qinshihuang (in Lintong County, Shaanxi Province)

长陵 Chang Ling. Changling Mausoleum of Emperor Gaozu and Empress Lü Zhi of the Han Dynasty (in Xianyang City, Shaanxi Province)

茂陵 Mao Ling. Maoling Mausoleum of Emperor Wudi of the Han Dynasty (in Xingping County, Shaanxi Province)

杜陵 Du Ling. Duling Mausoleum of Emperor Xuandi of the Western Han Dynasty (in Xi'an, Shaanxi Province)

昭陵 Zhao Ling. Zhaoling Mausoleum of Emperor Taizong of the Tang Dynasty (in Liquan County, Shaanxi Province)

乾陵 Qian Ling. Qianling Mausoleum of Emperor Gaozong and

- Empress Wu Zetian of the Tang Dynasty (in Qianxian County, Shaanxi Province)
- 藏王墓 Zangwang Mu. Tombs of the Tibetan Kings (6th century in Qonggyai County 琼结县, Tibet)
- 王建墓 Wang Jian Mu. Tomb of Wang Jian, Ruler of the Former State of Shu (Five Dynasties, in Chengdu, Sichuan Province)
- 宋陵 Song Ling. Mausoleums of the Song Dynasty (Imperial Mausoleums of the Northern Song Dynasty, in Gongxian County, Henan Province)
- 西夏陵 Xixia Ling. Mausoleums of the Western Xia (Tangut) State (in Yinchuan City, Ningxia)
- 成吉思汗陵 Chengjisihan Ling. Memorial Mausoleum of Genghis Khan (or Jenghiz Khan) (in Yijinholuo Banner, Inner Mongolia)
- 明孝陵 Ming Xiao Ling. Xiaoling Mausoleum of Emperor Taizu and Empress Ma of the Ming Dynasty (in Nanjing, Jiangsu Province)
- 明十三陵 Ming Shisan Ling. Imperial Mausoleums of the Ming Dynasty (in Changping District, Beijing)
- 永陵 Yong Ling. Yongling Mausoleum of the Qing Emperor Taizu's (Nurhachi) Ancestors (in Xinbin County, Liaoning Province)
- 福陵 Fu Ling. Fuling Mausoleum of Emperor Taizu (Nurhachi) and Empress Yehenala of the Qing Dynasty (in Shenyang City, Liaoning Province)
- 清昭陵 Qing Zhao Ling. Zhaoling Mausoleum of Emperor Taizong (Huangtaiji) and Empress Boerjijite of the Qing Dynasty (north of old Shenyang City, Liaoning Province)
- 清东陵 Qing Dong Ling. East Imperial Tombs of the Qing Dynasty (in Zunhua County, Hebei Province)
- 清西陵 Qing Xi Ling. West Imperial Tombs of the Qing Dynasty (in Yixian County, Hebei Province)
- 中山靖王墓 Zhongshan Jingwang Mu. Tomb of Zhongshan Prince Jingwang (Tomb of Liu Sheng and his wife Dou

- Wan of the Western Han Dynasty, in Mancheng County, Hebei Province)
- 顺陵 Shun Ling. Shunling Mausoleum of Wu Zetian's Mother (Tang Dynasty, in Xianyang City, Shaanxi Province)
- 孔林 Konglin. Cemetery of Confucius and His Descendants (Eastern Zhou Dynasty, in Qufu, Shandong Province)
- 麻浩崖墓 Mahao Yamu. Cave Tombs on the Mahao River (Eastern Han to Southern and Northern Dynasties)
- 辽阳壁画墓群 Liaoyang Bihua Muqun. Painted Tombs at Liaoyang (Eastern Han to Jin Dynasties, in Liaoning Province)
- 夔人悬棺葬 Boren Xuanguan Zang. Hanging-coffin Burials of the Bo People (Song to Ming Dynasties, in Hongxian County, Sichuan Province)
- 霍去病墓 Huo Qubing Mu. Tomb of Huo Qubing (Western Han Dynasty, in Xingping County, Shaanxi Province)
- 司马迁墓和祠 Sima Qian Mu He Ci. Memorial Tomb and Temple of Sima Qian (Western Han Dynasty, in Zhichuan Township, Hancheng City, Shaanxi Province)
- 张衡墓 Zhang Heng Mu. Tomb of Zhang Heng (Eastern Han Dynasty, in Nanyang County, Henan Province)
- 司马光墓 Sima Guang Mu. Tomb of Sima Guang (Song Dynasty, in Xiaxian County, Shanxi Province)
- 岳飞墓 Yue Fei Mu. Tomb of Yue Fei (Southern Song Dynasty, in Hangzhou, Zhejiang Province)
- 徐光启墓 Xu Guangqi Mu. Tomb of Xu Guangqi (Ming Dynasty, in Shanghai)
- 李时珍墓 Li Shizhen Mu. Tomb of Li Shizhen (Ming Dynasty, in Jinchun County, Hubei Province)
- 李自成墓 Li Zicheng Mu. Tomb of Li Zicheng (late Ming Dynasty, in Tongshan County, Hubei Province)
- 郑成功墓 Zheng Chenggong Mu. Tomb of Zheng Chenggong (early Qing Dynasty, in Nan'an County, Fujian Province)
- 阿巴和加麻札 Abahejia Mazha. Abahejias' Cemetery (late 17th century, in Kashi, Xinjiang)

伊斯兰教圣墓 Yisilanjiao Shengmu. Tomb of Islamic Saints
(Tang Dynasty, in Quanzhou, Fujian Province)

近、现代遗址及纪念建筑物 MODERN SITES AND MEMORIAL BUILDINGS

林则徐销烟池与虎门炮台旧址 Lin Zexu Xiaoyanchi Yu Humen
Paotai Jiuzhi. Sites of the Pool of Lin Zexu Destroying
Opium and the Humen Batteries (in Dongguan City and
Fanyu County of Guangdong Province, 1939)

三元里平英团遗址 Sanyuanli Pingying Tuan Yizhi. Site of the
“Quell the British” Corps at Sanyuanli (in Guangzhou,
1841)

太平天国起义遗址 Taiping Tianguo Qiyi Yizhi. Site of Uprising
of the Taiping Heavenly Kingdom (in Jintian Village of
Guiping County, Guangxi, 1851)

大沽口炮台遗址 Dagukou Paotai Yizhi. Site of Dagukou Batter-
ies (in Dagukou of Tianjin, 1900)

甲午战争纪念地 Jiawu Zhanzheng Ji'niandi. Memorial Places of
Sino-Japanese War of 1894-1895 (in Liugongdao of
Weihai City, Shandong Province)

义和团吕祖堂坛口遗址 Yihetuan Luzutang Tankou Yizhi. Altar
Site of the Yihetuan Movement in Lu's Ancestral Temple
(in Tianjin, 1900)

江孜宗山抗英遗址 Jiangzi Zongshan Kangying Yizhi. Site of
Resistance to British Aggression at Zongshan, Jiangzi
(in Gyangze, Tibet, 1914)

黄花岗七十二烈士墓 Huanghua'gang Qishi'er Lieshi Mu. Tomb
of 72 Revolutionary Martyrs at Huanghua'gang (in Guang-
zhou, 1911)

武昌起义军政府旧址 Wuchang Qiyi Junzhengfu Jiuzhi. Site of
the Military Government of the Wuchang Uprising (in
Wuhan, 1911)

北京大学红楼 Beijing Daxue Honglou. Red Building of Peking
University (center of May 4 Movement in 1919)

中国社会主义青年团中央机关旧址 Zhongguo Shehuizhuyi

- Qingniantuan Zhongyang Jiguan Jiuzhi. Site of the Central Organ, Chinese Socialist Youth League (in Shanghai, 1920-1921)
- 中国共产党第一次全国代表大会会址 Zhongguo Gongchandang Diyici Quanguo Daibiao Dahui Huizhi. Site of the First National Congress of the Chinese Communist Party (in Shanghai, 1921)
- 安源路矿工人俱乐部旧址 Anyuan Lukuang Gongren Julebu Jiuzhi. Site of the Anyuan Railway and Mine Workers' Club (in Pingxiang City, Jiangxi Province, 1923)
- 国民党“一大”旧址 Guomindang “Yi-Da” Jiuzhi. Site of the First National Congress of the Chinese National Party (in Guangzhou, 1924)
- 黄埔军校旧址 Huangpu Junxiao Jiuzhi. Site of the Huangpu Military Academy (in Guangzhou, 1924)
- 中华全国总工会旧址 Zhonghua Quanguo Zonggonghui Jiuzhi. Site of the Chinese National Federation of Trade Unions (in Guangzhou, 1925)
- 广州农民运动讲习所旧址 Guangzhou Nongmin Yundong Jiangxi-suo Jiuzhi. Site of the National Institute of Peasant Movements (in Guangzhou, 1926)
- “八一”起义指挥部旧址 “Ba-Yi” Qiyi Zhihui bu Jiuzhi. Site of the August 1 Uprising Headquarters (in Nanchang, Jiangxi Province, 1927)
- “八七”会议会址 “Ba-Qi” Huiyi Huizhi. Site of the August 7 Conference (in Wuhan, Hubei Province, 1927)
- 秋收起义文家市会师旧址 Qiushou Qiyi Wenjiashi Huishi Jiuzhi. Site of the Autumn Harvest Uprising Revolutionary Armies Joining Forces at Wenjiashi (in Liuyang County, Hunan Province, 1927)
- 海丰红宫红场旧址 Haifeng Honggong Hongchang Jiuzhi. Red Square and Red Palace at Haifeng (in Guangdong Province, 1927)
- 广州公社旧址 Guangzhou Gongshe Jiuzhi. Site of Guangzhou Commune (1927)
- 井冈山革命遗址 Jinggangshan Geming Yizhi. Jinggang

- Mountains Revolutionary Sites (in Ninggang, Jiangxi Province, 1927-1929)
- 平江起义旧址 Pingjiang Qiyi Jiuzhi. Site of Pingjiang Uprising (in Pingjiang County, Hunan Province, 1928)
- 古田会议会址 Gutian Huiyi Huizhi. Site of Gutian Conference (in Shanghang County, Fujian Province, 1929)
- 湘鄂西革命根据地旧址 Xiang-Exi Geming Genjudi Jiuzhi. Sites of the Western Hunan and Hubei Revolutionary Bases (in Honghu City and Jianli County, Hubei Province, 1930-1932)
- 瑞金革命遗址 Ruijin Geming Yizhi. Ruijin Revolutionary Sites (in Jiangxi Province, 1931-1934)
- 鄂豫皖革命根据地旧址 E-Yu-Wan Geming Genjudi Jiuzhi. Sites of the Hubei-Henan-Anhui Revolutionary Bases (in Xinxian County, Henan Province, 1931-1932)
- 红四方面军总指挥部旧址 Hongsi-Fangmian-Jun Zongzhihuibu Jiuzhi. Headquarters of the 4th Front Army, Chinese Workers' and Peasants' Red Army (in Tongjiang County, Sichuan Province, 1932)
- 遵义会议会址 Zunyi Huiyi Huizhi. Site of Zunyi Conference (in Guizhou Province, 1935)
- 泸定桥 Luding Qiao. Luding Bridge (in Garze, Sichuan Province, 1935)
- 瓦窑堡革命旧址 Wayaobao Geming Jiuzhi. Wayaobao Revolutionary Sites (in Zichang County, Shaanxi Province, 1935-1936)
- 西安事变旧址 Xi'an Shibian Jiuzhi. Sites of Xi'an Incident (in Xi'an City and Lintong County, Shaanxi Province, 1936)
- 延安革命遗址 Yan'an Geming Yizhi. Yan'an Revolutionary Sites (in Shaanxi Province, 1937-1947)
- 芦沟桥 Lugou Qiao. Lugou Bridge or Marco Polo Bridge (in Fengtai District, Beijing, 1937)
- 平型关战役遗址 Pingxingguan Zhanyi Yizhi. Pingxingguan Battle Site (in Lingqiu County, Shanxi Province, 1937)
- 八路军总司令部旧址 Balujun Zongsilingbu Jiuzhi. Eighth

- Route Army Headquarters (in Wuxiang County, Shanxi Province, 1939-1942)
- 新四军军部旧址 Xinsijun Junbu Jiuzhi. New Fourth Army Headquarters (in Jingxian County, Anhui Province, 1938-1941)
- 中共中央中原局旧址 Zhonggong Zhongyang Zhongyuanju Jiuzhi. Site of Central Plains Bureau, Central Committee of the Chinese Communist Party (in Queshan County, Henan Province, 1939)
- 冉庄地道战遗址 Ranzhuang Didaozhan Yizhi. Site of the Tunnel Warfare at Ranzhuang (in Qingyuan County, Hebei Province, during the War of Resistance Against Japan and the War of Liberation)
- 西柏坡中共中央旧址 Xibaipo Zhonggong Zhongyang Jiuzhi. Site of the Central Committee of the Chinese Communist Party at Xibaipo (in Pingshan County, Hebei Province, 1948.5-1949.3)
- 天安门 Tian'an Men. Gate of Heavenly Peace (in Beijing, where the founding of PRC was proclaimed in 1949)
- 雨花台烈士陵园 Yuhuatai Lieshi Lingyuan. Yuhuatai Cemetery of Revolutionary Martyrs (in Nanjing, established after liberation)
- 平顶山惨案遗址 Pingdingshan Can'an Yizhi. Site of the Pingdingshan Massacre (in Fushun City, Liaoning Province, 1932)
- 旅顺监狱旧址 Lushun Jianyu Jiuzhi. Site of the Lushun Prison (in Dalian, Liaoning Province, 1902-1945)
- 上饶集中营旧址 Shangrao Jizhongying Jiuzhi. Site of the Shangrao Concentration Camp (in Jiangxi Province, established in 1941)
- 中美合作所集中营旧址 Zhong-Mei Hezuosuo Jizhongying Jiuzhi. Site of the Concentration Camp "Sino-American Cooperation Organization" (in Chongqing, established in 1943)
- 人民英雄纪念碑 Renmin Yingxiong Jinianbei. Monument to the People's Heroes (in Beijing, established in 1958)

- 孙中山故居 Sun Zhongshan Guju. The Former Residence of Sun Yat-sen (in Cuiheng Village, Zhongshan City, Guangdong Province, b. 1866)
- 韶山冲毛泽东故居 Shaoshanchong Mao Zedong Guju. Home of Mao Zedong at Shaoshanchong (in Xiangtan City, Hunan Province, b. 1893)
- 周恩来故居 Zhou Enlai Guju. Home of Zhou Enlai (in Huai'an City, Jiangsu Province, b. 1898)
- 朱德故居 Zhu De Guju. Home of Zhu De (in Yilong County, Sichuan Province, b. 1886)
- 刘少奇故居 Liu Shaoqi Guju. Home of Liu Shaoqi (in Ningxiang County, Hunan Province, b. 1898)
- 北京宋庆龄故居 Beijing Song Qingling Guju. Home of Song Qingling (in Beijing, b. 1893)
- 郭沫若故居 Guo Moruo Guju. Home of Guo Moruo (in Beijing, b. 1892)
- 茅盾故居 Mao Dun Guju. Home of Mao Dun (in Tongxian County, Zhejiang Province, b. 1896)
- 中山陵 Zhongshan Ling. Sun Yat-sen Mausoleum (in Nanjing, established in 1926-1929)
- 林则徐墓 Lin Zexu Mu. Tomb of Lin Zexu (in Fuzhou, Fujian Province)
- 冯玉祥墓 Feng Yuxiang Mu. Tomb of Feng Yuxiang (in Tai'an City, Shandong Province, established in 1952)
- 陈嘉庚墓 Chen Jiageng Mu. Tomb of Chen Jiageng (in Xiamen City, Fujian Province, established in 1961)
- 鲁迅墓 Lu Xun Mu. Tomb of Lu Xun (in Shanghai, established in 1956)
- 聂耳墓 Nie Er Mu. Tomb of Nie Er (in Kunming City, Yunnan Province, established in 1937)
- 宋庆龄墓 Song Qingling Mu. Tomb of Song Qingling (in Song's graveyard, Wanguo Cemetery, Lingyuan Road, Changning District, Shanghai)

二十五 世界遗产在中国

WORLD HERITAGE IN CHINA

我国自 1985 年签署《世界遗产公约》以来，到 2005 年 7 月已有 31 处遗产获得联合国教科文组织世界遗产委员会批准列入《世界遗产名录》 By July of 2005, 31 places of cultural and natural heritage in China had been placed on the list of World Heritage with approval from the World Heritage Committee UNESCO since China signed the Convention for Preservation of World Cultural and Natural Heritage in 1985. They are as follows:

自然遗产

NATURAL HERITAGE

- 九寨沟 (Jiuzhaigou) in Jiuzhaigou County, Sichuan Aba Zang and Qing Autonomous Zhou, listed in 1992
- 黄龙 (Huanglong) in Songpan County, Sichuan Aba Zang and Qing Autonomous Zhou, listed in 1992
- 武陵源 (Wulingyuan) in Zhangjiajie City, Hunan Province, listed in 1992

文化和自然双重遗产

CULTURAL AND NATURAL DUAL HERITAGE

- 泰山 (Taishan) Mount Tai, in Tai'an City, Shandong Province, listed in 1987
- 黄山 (Huangshan) Mount Huang, in the southern part of Anhui Province, listed in 1990
- 峨眉山—乐山大佛 (Emeishan-Leshan Dafo) cliffside Buddha in Leshan, Emeishan City, Sichuan Province, list-

ed in 1996

武夷山 (Wuyishan) Mount Wuyi, in the southern suburb of Wuyishan City, Fujian Province, listed in 1999

文化景观遗产

CULTURAL LANDSCAPE HERITAGE

庐山 (Lushan) Mount Lu, in the northern part of Jiangxi Province, listed in 1996

文化遗产

CULTURAL HERITAGE

长城 (Changcheng) the Great Wall, in the northern part of China, from Shanhaiguan Pass in Hebei Province to Jiayuguan Pass in Gansu Province, listed in 1987

周口店“北京人”遗址 (Zhoukoudian “Beijingren” Yizhi) the site of “Peking Man” on the Dragon Bone Hill at Zhoukoudian, Fangshan District, Beijing, listed in 1987

北京故宫 (Beijing Gugong) The Imperial Palace in Beijing, at the center of Beijing, listed in 1987

秦始皇陵及兵马俑坑 (Qin Shihuang Ling Ji Bingma Yong Keng) Qin Shihuang's Mausoleum and Its Terra-Cotta Warriors and Horses Pit, at the northern foot of Lishan Mountain in Lintong County, Xi'an City, Shaanxi Province, listed in 1987

莫高窟 (Mogao Ku) Mogao Grottoes, at the eastern foot of Wusha Mountain about 25 km from Dunhuang City, Gansu Province, listed in 1987

孔庙、孔府、孔林 (Kongmiao, Kongfu, Konglin) Confucian Temple, Kong's Residence and Cemetery of Confucius and His Descendants, in Qufu City, Shandong Province, listed in 1994

承德避暑山庄及周围庙宇 (Chengde Bishu Shanzhuang Ji Zhouwei Miaoyu) Imperial Summer Resort and Its Surrounding Temples

- rounding Temples, in Chengde City, Hebei Province, listed in 1994
- 布达拉宫、大昭寺、罗布林卡 (Budalagong, Dazhaosi, Luobulinka) Potala Palace, listed in 1994; Zuglakang (Jokhang) Monastery, listed in 2000; Norbu Lingka, listed in 2001; all in Lhasa city, the Tibet Autonomous Region.
- 武当山古建筑群 (Wudangshan Gujianzhu Qun) Ancient architectural complex on Mt. Wudang, in Danjiangkou City, Hubei Province, listed in 1994
- 丽江古城 (Lijiang Gucheng) Lijiang City Walls, in Lijiang Naxi Autonomous County, Yunnan Province, listed in 1997
- 平遥古城 (Pingyao Gucheng) Pingyao City Walls in Pingyao County, Shanxi Province, listed in 1997
- 颐和园 listed in 1998 (参见 P360)
- 天坛 (Tiantan) The Temple of Heaven, in Chongwen District, Beijing, listed in 1998
- 大足石刻 (Dazu Shike) Dazu Cliffside Sculptures, in Dazu County, Chongqing City, Sichuan Province, listed in 1999
- 明清皇家陵寝 (Ming Qing Huangjia Lingqin) Imperial Mausoleums of the Ming and Qing Dynasties, in Zhongxiang City, Hubei Province, and in Zunhua City and Yixian County of Hebei Province; all of them were listed in 2000
- 苏州古典园林 (Suzhou Gudian Yuanlin) Suzhou Classic Gardens, in Suzhou City, Jiangsu Province. Among them Zhuozheng Yuan Garden, Liu Yuan Garden, Wangshi Yuan Garden and Huanxiu Shanzhuang Garden were listed in 1997; Canglang Ting Garden, Yipu Garden, Ouyuan Garden, Shizilin Garden and Tuisi Yuan Garden were listed in 2000
- 都江堰 (Dujiangyan) Dujiangyan Dams, in Dujiangyan City, Sichuan Province, listed in 2000
- 皖南古村落 (Wannan Gu Cunluo) Wannan Ancient Villages,

in Yi County of Huangshan City, Anhui Province, listed in 2000

龙门石窟 listed in 2000 (参见 P365)

云冈石窟 listed in 2001 (参见 P365)

高句丽王城、王陵及贵族墓葬 (Gaogouli Wangcheng, Wangling Ji Guizu Muzang) Royal cities, royal mausoleums and noble Tombs of Gaogouli kingdom (including 3 cities, 12 mausoleums, 26 tombs, a monument to King Haotai, and No. 1 secondary tomb of general grave), distributed mainly over Ji'an city of Jilin Province and Huanren County of Liaoning Province, listed in July 2004

沈阳故宫、盛京三陵 (Shenyang Gugong, Shengjing Sanling) The Imperial Palace in Shenyang and The Three Imperial Mausoleums in Shengjing (now Shenyang), Liaoning Province, listed in July 2004 respectively as enlarged items of the imperial palaces and the imperial mausoleums of the Ming and Qing dynasties

澳门历史城区 (Aomen Lishi Chengqu) Historical Center of Macao (Including more than 20 ancient Chinese and western buildings, it is the largest, the most age-old, most complete, and most centralized existing historical centre within the boundaries of China, listed in July of 2005)

二十六 中国历史年表

A CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF CHINESE DYNASTIES

夏	Xia	21st-16th century B. C.
商 (殷)	Shang (Yin)	16th-11th century B. C.
西周	Western Zhou	11th century-770 B. C.
东周	Eastern Zhou	770-221 B. C.
春秋	Spring & Autumn Period	770-476 B. C.
战国	Warring States Period	475-221 B. C.
秦	Qin	221-207 B. C.
西汉	Western Han	206 B. C. -24 A. D.
东汉	Eastern Han	25-220
三国	Three Kingdoms	220-280
魏	Wei	220-265
蜀	Shu	221-263
吴	Wu	222-280
西晋	Western Jin	265-316
东晋	Eastern Jin	317-420
南北朝	Southern and Northern Dynasties	420-589
南朝	Southern Dynasties	420-589
宋	Song	420-479
齐	Qi	479-502
梁	Liang	502-557
陈	Chen	557-589
北朝	Northern Dynasties	386-581
北魏	Northern Wei	386-534
东魏	Eastern Wei	534-550

西魏	Western Wei	535-557
北齐	Northern Qi	550-577
北周	Northern Zhou	557-581
隋	Sui	581-618
唐	Tang	618-907
五代十国	Five Dynasties and Ten Kingdoms	907-979
五代	Five Dynasties (in North China)	907-960
后梁	Later Liang	907-923
后唐	Later Tang	923-936
后晋	Later Jin	936-946
后汉	Later Han	947-950
后周	Later Zhou	951-960
十国	Ten Kingdoms (in South China)	902-979
前蜀	Former Shu	907-925
后蜀	Later Shu	934-965
南平 (荆南)	Nanping (Jingnan)	924-963
楚	Chu	927-951
吴	Wu	902-937
南唐 (齐)	Southern Tang (Qi)	937-975
吴越	Wu Yue	907-978
闽	Min	907-945
南汉 (越)	Southern Han (Yue)	917-971
北汉	Northern Han	951-979
北宋	Northern Song	960-1127
南宋	Southern Song	1127-1279
辽	Liao Dynasty	916-1125
西夏	Western Xia	1038-1227
金	Jin Dynasty	1115-1234
元	Yuan	1271-1368

明朝	Ming Dynasty	1368-1644
洪武 (太祖朱元璋)	Hong Wu (Taizu, Zhu Yuanzhang)	1368-1398
建文 (惠帝朱允炆)	Jian Wen (Huidi, Zhu Yunwen)	1399-1402
永乐 (成祖朱棣)	Yong Le (Chengzu, Zhu Di)	1403-1424
洪熙 (仁宗朱高炽)	Hong Xi (Renzong, Zhu Gaozhi)	1425-1425
宣德 (宣宗朱瞻基)	Xuan De (Xuanzong, Zhu Zhanji)	1426-1435
正统 (英宗朱祁镇)	Zheng Tong (Yingzong, Zhu Qizhen)	1436-1449
景泰 (代宗朱祁钰)	Jing Tai (Daizong, Zhu Qiyu)	1450-1456
天顺 (英宗朱祁镇)	Tian Shun (Yingzong, Zhu Qizhen)	1457-1464
成化 (宪宗朱见深)	Cheng Hua (Xianzong, Zhu Jianshen)	1465-1487
弘治 (孝宗朱祐樞)	Hong Zhi (Xiaozong, Zhu Youtang)	1488-1505
正德 (武宗朱厚照)	Zheng De (Wuzong, Zhu Houzhao)	1506-1521
嘉靖 (世宗朱厚熜)	Jia Jing (Shizong, Zhu Houcong)	1522-1566
隆庆 (穆宗朱载堉)	Long Qing (Muzong, Zhu Zaihou)	1567-1572
万历 (神宗朱翊钧)	Wan Li (Shenzong, Zhu Yijun)	1573-1620
泰昌 (光宗朱常洛)	Tai Chang (Guangzong, Zhu Changluo)	1620-1620
天启 (熹宗朱由校)	Tian Qi (Xizong, Zhu Youxiao)	1621-1627

崇祯 (思宗朱由检)	Chong Zhen (Sizong, Zhu Youjian)	1628-1644
清朝	Qing Dynasty	1644-1911
顺治 (世祖爱新觉罗福临)	Shun Zhi (Shizu, Aixinjueluo Fulin)	1644-1661
康熙 (圣祖爱新觉罗玄烨)	Kang Xi (Shengzu, Aixinjueluo Xuanye)	1662-1722
雍正 (世宗爱新觉罗胤禛)	Yong Zheng (Shizong, Aixinjueluo Yinzhen)	1723-1735
乾隆 (高宗爱新觉罗弘历)	Qian Long (Gaozong, Aixinjueluo Hongli)	1736-1795
嘉庆 (仁宗爱新觉罗颙琰)	Jia Qing (Renzong, Aixinjueluo Yongyan)	1796-1820
道光 (宣宗爱新觉罗旻宁)	Dao Guang (Xuanzong, Aixinjueluo Wenning)	1821-1850
咸丰 (文宗爱新觉罗奕訢)	Xian Feng (Wenzong, Aixinjueluo Yizhu)	1851-1861
同治 (穆宗爱新觉罗载淳)	Tong Zhi (Muzong, Aixinjueluo Zaichun)	1862-1874
光绪 (德宗爱新觉罗载湉)	Guang Xu (Dezong, Aixinjueluo Zaitian)	1875-1908
宣统 (爱新觉罗溥仪)	Xuan Tong (Aixinjueluo Pu Yi)	1909-1911
中华民国	Republic of China	1912-1949
中华人民共和国	People's Republic of China	1949-

附录 (1)

APPENDIX

天干地支

THE HEAVENLY STEMS

AND EARTHLY BRANCHES

天干 The ten Heavenly Stems

1. 甲 (Jia) the first of the ten Heavenly Stems
2. 乙 (Yi) the second of the ten Heavenly Stems
3. 丙 (Bing) the third of the ten Heavenly Stems
4. 丁 (Ding) the fourth of the ten Heavenly Stems
5. 戊 (Wu) the fifth of the ten Heavenly Stems
6. 己 (Ji) the sixth of the ten Heavenly Stems
7. 庚 (Geng) the seventh of the ten Heavenly Stems
8. 辛 (Xin) the eighth of the ten Heavenly Stems
9. 壬 (Ren) the ninth of the ten Heavenly Stems
10. 癸 (Gui) the last of the ten Heavenly Stems

地支 The twelve Earthly Branches

- | | | | | |
|-----------|----------------|------|-------|----|
| 1. 子 (鼠) | (Zi, rat) | 11-1 | A. M. | 三更 |
| 2. 丑 (牛) | (Chou, ox) | 1-3 | A. M. | 四更 |
| 3. 寅 (虎) | (Yin, tiger) | 3-5 | A. M. | 五更 |
| 4. 卯 (兔) | (Mao, hare) | 5-7 | A. M. | |
| 5. 辰 (龙) | (Chen, dragon) | 7-9 | A. M. | |
| 6. 巳 (蛇) | (Si, snake) | 9-11 | A. M. | 上午 |
| 7. 午 (马) | (Wu, horse) | 11-1 | P. M. | 正午 |
| 8. 未 (羊) | (Wei, sheep) | 1-3 | P. M. | 下午 |
| 9. 申 (猴) | (Shen, monkey) | 3-5 | P. M. | |
| 10. 酉 (鸡) | (You, cock) | 5-7 | P. M. | |
| 11. 戌 (狗) | (Xu, dog) | 7-9 | P. M. | 初更 |

12. 亥 (猪) (Hai, pig) 9-11 P. M. 二更

Notes: 时辰 (Shichen)

One of the 12 two-hour periods into which the day was formerly divided (each being given the name of one of the 12 Earthly Branches 地支)

更 (Geng)

One of the 5 two-hour periods into which the night was formerly divided (each being given the name of one of the 5 Earthly Branches, that is: Xu 戌时, 初更 Hai 亥时, 二更 Zi 子时, 三更 Chou 丑时, 四更 Yin 寅时, 五更)

附录 (2)

APPENDIX

四季月名

THE NAMES OF THE LUNAR MONTHS OF FOUR SEASONS

孟月 (Meng Yue) The first month of a season:

孟春 (Meng Chun) the first month of spring (i. e. the first moon 正月)

孟夏 (Meng Xia) the first month of summer (i. e. the fourth moon 四月)

孟秋 (Meng Qiu) the first month of autumn (i. e. the seventh moon 七月)

孟冬 (Meng Dong) the first month of winter (i. e. the tenth moon 十月)

仲月 (Zhong Yue) The second month of a season:

仲春 (Zhong Chun) the second month of spring (i. e. the second moon 二月)

仲夏 (Zhong Xia) the second month of summer (i. e. the fifth moon 五月)

仲秋 (Zhong Qiu) the second month of autumn (i. e. the eighth moon 八月)

仲冬 (Zhong Dong) the second month of winter (i. e. the eleventh moon 十一月)

季月 (Ji Yue) The last month of a season:

季春 (Ji Chun) the last month of spring (i. e. the third moon 三月)

季夏 (Ji Xia) the last month of summer (i. e. the sixth moon 六月)

季秋 (Ji Qiu) the last month of autumn (i. e. the ninth moon 九月)

季冬 (Ji Dong) the last month of winter (i. e. the twelfth moon 十二月)

附录 (3)

APPENDIX

二十四节气

THE TWENTY-FOUR SOLAR TERMS

- 立春 (Lichun) The Beginning of Spring — the 1st of the 24 solar terms (beginning from Feb. 3, 4, or 5)
- 雨水 (Yushui) Rain Water — the 2nd of the 24 solar terms (beginning from Feb. 18, 19, or 20)
- 惊蛰 (Jingzhe) The Waking of Insects — the 3rd of the 24 solar terms (beginning from Mar. 3, 6, or 7)
- 春分 (Chunfen) The Spring Equinox — the 4th of the 24 solar terms (beginning from Mar. 20 or 21)
- 清明 (Qingming) Pure Brightness — the 5th of the 24 solar terms (beginning from Apr. 4, 5, or 6; also known as a festival for worshiping at ancestral graves)
- 谷雨 (Guyu) Grain Rain — the 6th of the 24 solar terms (beginning from Apr. 19, 20, or 21)
- 立夏 (Lixia) The Beginning of Summer — the 7th of the 24 solar terms (beginning from May. 5, 6, or 7)
- 小满 (Xiaoman) Lesser Fullness of Grain — the 8th of the 24 solar terms (beginning from May. 20, 21, or 22, when the winter wheat is filling out its ears)
- 芒种 (Mangzhong) Grain in Beard — the 9th of the 24 solar terms (beginning from Jun. 5, 6, or 7. which marks the end of the grain-growing season)
- 夏至 (Xiazhi) The Summer Solstice — the 10th of the 24 solar terms (beginning from Jun. 21 or 22, the longest day of the year)

- 小暑 (Xiaoshu) Lesser Heat — the 11th of the 24 solar terms
(beginning from Jul. 6, 7, or 8)
- 大暑 (Dashu) Greater Heat — the 12th of the 24 solar terms
(beginning from Jul. 22, 23, or 24)
- 立秋 (Liqiu) The Beginning of Autumn — the 13th of the 24
solar terms (beginning from Aug. 7, 8, or 9)
- 处暑 (Chushu) The End of Heat — the 14th of the 24 solar
terms (beginning from Aug. 22, 23, or 24, when
summer is really over)
- 白露 (Bailu) White Dew — the 15th of the 24 solar terms
(beginning from Sept. 7, 8, or 9)
- 秋分 (Qiufen) The Autumn Equinox — the 16th of the 24 solar
terms (beginning from Sept. 22, 23, or 24)
- 寒露 (Hanlu) Cold Dew — the 17th of the 24 solar terms (be-
ginning from Oct. 8 or 9, which sees the first leaves
falling from the trees)
- 霜降 (Shuangjiang) Frost's Descent — the 18th of the 24 solar
terms (beginning from Oct. 23 or 24)
- 立冬 (Lidong) The Beginning of Winter — the 19th of the 24
solar terms (Beginning from Nov. 7 or 8)
- 小雪 (Xiaoxue) Lesser Snow — the 20th of the 24 solar terms
(beginning from Nov. 22 or 23)
- 大雪 (Daxue) Greater Snow — the 21st of the 24 solar terms
(beginning from Dec. 6, 7, or 8)
- 冬至 (Dongzhi) The Winter Solstice — the 22nd of the 24 solar
terms (beginning from Dec. 21, 22, or 23)
- 小寒 (Xiaohan) Lesser Cold — the 23rd of the 24 solar terms
(beginning from Jan. 5, 6, or 7)
- 大寒 (Dahan) Greater Cold — the last of the 24 solar terms
(beginning from Jan. 20 or 21, after which the
weather grows slowly warmer)

Notes: 节气 (Jieqi)

The 24 seasonal periods into which the solar year is divid-
ed, each consisting of 15 days; the day marking the begin-
ning of the first solar term.

附录 (4)

APPENDIX

二十八宿 (THE 28 XIU) LUNAR MANSIONS

The twenty-eight constellations into which the celestial sphere was divided in ancient Chinese astronomy. Seven of these constellations were allotted to each of the four quadrants of the vault of Heaven.

苍龙 (Canglong) the Green Dragon

a collective name for the eastern quadrant, comprising *Jiao* 角, *Kang* 亢, *Di* 氐, *Fang* 房, *Xin* 心, *Wei* 尾, and *Ji* 箕

玄武 (Xuanwu) the Black Warrior; the Black Tortoise

a collective name for the northern quadrant, comprising *Dou* 斗, *Niu* 牛, *Nü* 女, *Xu* 虚, *Wei* 危, *Shi* 室, and *Bi* 壁

白虎 (Baihu) the White Tiger

a collective name for the western quadrant, comprising *Kui* 奎, *Lou* 娄, *Wei* 胃, *Mao* 昴, *Bi* 毕, *Zi* 觜, and *Shen* 参

朱雀 (Zhuque) the Scarlet Bird

a collective name for the southern quadrant, comprising *Jing* 井, *Gui* 鬼, *Liu* 柳, *Xing* 星, *Zhang* 张, *Yi* 翼, and *Zhen* 轸

附录 (5)

APPENDIX

吉祥语 AUSPICIOUS PHRASES

- 一帆风顺 (Yi Fan Feng Shun)
May you have favorable winds in your sails; to proceed smoothly without a hitch; smooth sailing
- 一团和气 (Yi Tuan He Qi)
full of goodwill toward one another; harmonious; goodnatured; keep on the right side of everyone
- 二龙戏珠 (Er Long Xi Zhu)
two dragons playing with a pearl
- 双喜 (Shuang Xi)
double happiness
- 双喜临门 (Shuang Xi Lin Men)
to have simultaneously two happy events in a family; a double blessing has descended upon the house
- 三多 (多福、多寿、多男子) (San Duo)
three abundances — blessing, longevity and male offspring
- 三星 (福、禄、寿) (San Xing)
the three stars — lucky, official rank and salary, longevity
- 岁寒三友 (松、竹、梅) (Sui Han San You)
the three friends in the cold of the year — the pine, the bamboo, and the plum blossom, all of which do not wither in winter
- 三阳开泰 (San Yang Kai Tai)

a surge of good luck; the auspicious beginning of a new year; (usually symbolized by three sheep or goats)

四季平安 (Si Ji Ping An)

safe and sound all the year around

五福 (寿、福、康宁、修好德、考终命) (Wu Fu)

the five blessings — longevity, wealth, health, love of virtue, and natural death

五谷丰登 (Wu Gu Feng Deng)

an abundant harvest of grains of all sorts; bumper harvest of all grains

五世其昌 (Wu Shi Qi Chang)

May you be blessed with many children and grand children.

五子登科 (Wu Zi Deng Ke)

Succeed in the civil examinations and become high officials.

五福捧寿 (Wu Fu Peng Shou)

good wish for longevity (usually symbolized by five bats holding a peach or the character "Shou")

六合同春 (Liu He Tong Chun)

Spring is everywhere (usually symbolized by deer and crane)

乔迁之禧 (Qiao Qian Zhi Xi)

best wishes for your new home; congratulations on your new home

竹林七贤 (Zhu Lin Qi Xian)

the Seven Wise Men of the Bamboo Grove, known as a group of seven men of letters in the 3rd century A. D. They were: Ji Kang 嵇康 Ruan Ji 阮籍 Shan Tao 山涛 Xiang Xiu 向秀 Liu Ling 刘伶 Ruan Xian 阮贤 and Wang Rong 王戎

竹报平安 (Zhu Bao Ping An)

to report in a letter home that everything is well

七夕 (牛郎会织女) (Qi Xi)

the seventh night of the Seventh lunar month when the

legendary Herd-boy and the Weaving-girl meet each other for their once-a-year tryst over a bridge formed by sympathetic magpies over the Milky Way

嫦娥奔月 (Chang E Ben Yue)

Chinese legend Chang E who ascended the moon after secretly eating her husband's elixir of life.

八卦 (Ba Gua)

the Eight Diagrams (or Trigrams). consisting of an arrangement of all solid, all broken, or a combination of solid and broken lines in eight groups of three lines, such as: 乾 Qian (☰), 坤 Kun (☷), 震 Zhen (☳), 艮 Gen (☶), 兑 Dui (☱), 巽 Xun (☴), 坎 Kan (☵), 离 Li (☲)

八吉祥 (八宝) (Ba Ji Xiang)

the eight auspicious emblems, also called the eight treasures (Ba Bao). They are 法螺 (Fa Luo) conch, 法轮 (Fa Lun) wheel of the law, 宝伞 (Bao San) umbrella, 白盖 (Bai Gai) canopy, 莲花 (Lian Hua) lotus, 宝瓶 (Bao Ping) bottle, 金鱼 (Jin Yu) goldfish, and 盘肠 (Pan Chang) knotted cord

八仙 (Ba Xian)

the Eight Immortals of Taoism — (汉钟离) Han Zhongli, (张果老) Zhang Guolao, (吕洞宾) Lu Dongbin, (李铁拐) Li Tieguai, (韩湘子) Han Xiangzi, (曹国舅) Cao Guojiu, (蓝采和) Lan Caihe and (何仙姑) He Xianggu

八仙过海各显神通 (Ba Xian Guo Hai, Ge Xian Shen Tong)

the Eight Immortals crossing the sea, each of them showing his or her special prowess

长命富贵 (Chang Ming Fu Gui)

May you live long and be successful!

富贵有余 (Fu Gui You Yu)

have enough and to spare

吉祥如意 (Ji Xiang Ru Yi)

good luck and satisfaction of one's every wish

- 吉星高照 (Ji Xing Gao Zhao)
the lucky star shines brightly; be blessed by a lucky star
- 吉人天相 (Ji Ren Tian Xiang)
Heaven helps a good man; Heaven stands by the good man.
- 天长地久 (Tian Chang Di Jiu)
as old as heaven and earth; a very long time
- 万寿无疆 (Wan Shou Wu Jiang)
long life; longevity; May you attain (or enjoy) boundless longevity!
- 群仙祝寿 (Qun Xian Zhu Shou)
Immortals (Arhats) celebrating somebody's birthday
- 海屋添筹 (Hai Wu Tian Chu)
a conventional phrase for wishing an aged person a happy birthday
- 松柏长青 (Song Bai Chang Qing)
(a congratulatory expression on someone's birthday)
May you live long and remain strong like the evergreen pine and cypress!
- 松鹤遐龄 (Song He Xia Ling)
pine and crane symbolizing longevity
- 喜上眉梢 (Xi Shang Mei Shao)
be radiant with joy; look very happy
- 喜鹊登梅 (Xi Que Deng Mei)
the magpie on the plum tree (announcing good news)
- 百鸟朝凤 (Bai Niao Chao Feng)
all birds paying homage to the phoenix — peace under a wise ruler
- 百鸟朝阳 (Bai Niao Chao Yang)
a hundred birds worshipping the sun
- 百美图 (Bai Mei Tu)
a picture showing large numbers of beautiful women
- 百子图 (Bai Zi Tu)
a picture showing numerous children either drawn or embroidered (given as a wish that the recipient will

- have numerous offspring)
- 花好月圆 (Hua Hao Yue Yuan)
blooming flowers and full moon (usually used as a
congratulatory message for somebody's marriage)
- 龙凤呈祥 (Long Feng Cheng Xiang)
prosperity brought by the dragon and the phoenix — in
extremely good fortune
- 龙凤相配 (Long Feng Xiang Pei)
union of a dragon and a phoenix (a congratulatory
phrase on the occasion of wedding)
- 琴瑟和鸣 (Qin Se He Ming)
marital harmony; conjugal bliss
- 天作之合 (Tian Zuo Zhi He)
a match by Heaven; a match blessed by God (used in
congratulatory messages or greetings to a couple on
their wedding)
- 麒麟送子 (Qi Lin Song Zi)
the unicorn bestowing a child
- 天伦之乐 (Tian Lun Zhi Le)
family happiness; family love and joy
- 万事亨通 (Wan Shi Heng Tong)
everything goes well
- 万事大吉 (Wan Shi Da Ji)
everything is just fine; everything's O. K.
- 桃符换旧 (Tao Fu Huan Jiu)
the time when old scrolls (or couplets) are replaced
by new ones — the Lunar New Year's Day
- 万象更新 (Wan Xiang Geng Xin)
all things take on a new aspect; everything looks new
and fresh.
- 万古长青 (Wan Gu Chang Qing)
to remain fresh forever; to be everlasting
- 太平盛世 (Tai Ping Shang Shi)
a reign of peace, order and prosperity
- 海清河晏 (Hai Qing He Yan)
time of peace and calm

- 海市蜃楼 (Hai Shi Shen Lou)
a mirage; illusion
- 狮子滚绣球 (Shi Zi Gun Xiu Qiu)
the lion sporting with an embroidered (or ornamental) ball
- 鲤鱼跳龙门 (Li Yu Tiao Long Men)
carp leaping over the Dragon Gate — to succeed in the civil service examination in former times
- 金瓯无缺 (Jin Ou Wu Que)
The golden goblet is intact — The integrity of the national territory is unaffected.
- 金童玉女 (Jin Tong Yu Nu)
young boys and girls attending upon an immortal
- 金玉满堂 (Jin Yu Man Tang)
to have one's house filled with riches
- 步步高升 (Bu Bu Gao Sheng)
to get promotions step by step
- 春风得意 (Chun Feng De Yi)
to attain a high official rank; to ride on the crest of success
- 福如东海 (Fu Ru Dong Hai)
happiness as immense as the eastern sea
- 寿比南山 (Shou Bi Nan Shan)
(a greeting for a person on his birthday) May your life be as lofty as the Southern Mountain Ranges.
- 福寿双全 (Fu Shou Shuang Quan)
to enjoy both happiness and longevity
- 眉鹤万年 (Mei He Wan Nian)
bushy eyebrows and crane symbolizing longevity (usually decorated with plum blossom, clouds and crane)
- 蟠桃献瑞 (Pan Tao Xian Rui)
to present somebody with a legendary peach (which gives eternal life) symbolizing propitious omen (usually decorated with peach and crane)
- 瑞雪兆丰年 (Rui Xue Zhao Feng Nian)
a timely snow promises a good harvest

附录 (6)

APPENDIX

吉祥图案

AUSPICIOUS PATTERNS

1. 中国字 Chinese characters used as ornamental designs
 - 寿 Shou (It stands for longevity.)
 - 万 Wan (meaning “ten thousand”)
 - 喜 Xi (meaning “joy”)
 - 吉 Ji (meaning “luck”)
 - 双喜 Shuangxi (“double happiness” means happiness and also longevity)
 - 万字 Swastika (A Sanskrit term was held to mean “ten thousand” and also longevity.)
2. 八仙标志 The attributes of the Eight Immortals
 - 钟离权扇 the fan carried by Zhongli Quan
 - 吕洞宾剑 the sword of Lu Dongbin
 - 李铁拐葫芦拐杖 the double gourd and crutch of Li Tieguai
 - 曹国舅响板 the castanets of Cao Guo Jiu
 - 兰采和花篮 the basket of flowers of Lan Caihe
 - 张果老竹筒竹杆 the bamboo tube and rods of Zhang Guo Lao
 - 韩湘子长笛 the flute of Han Xiang Zi
 - 何仙姑莲蓬 the lotus pod of He Xian Gu
3. 八吉祥 The eight Buddhist emblems of good fortune
 - 白盖 the canopy (It is a symbol of a monarch, who shelters all living things.)
 - 法螺 the conch shell (It symbolizes the call to worship.)
 - 宝瓶 the sacred vase (It is a rebus for peace, because it is also pronounced “ping.”)

- 宝伞 the royal umbrella (It is a symbol of the incorruptible official.)
- 法轮 the wheel of the law (the ever-turning cycle of the transmigration of souls)
- 盘长 the endless knot (It represents the everlasting love of Buddha and is a symbol of long life.)
- 莲花 the lotus flower (It is a symbol of purity.)
- 金鱼 a pair of gold fish (They are symbols of abundance.)
4. 珍宝 Treasures used as ornaments, the symbols of wealth and fortune
- 方金饰 a pair of rectangular gold ornaments
- 圆金饰 a pair of circular gold ornaments
- 珍珠 a pearl or jewel
- 卷轴 a pair of scrolls
- 石磬 a musical stone
- 犀角 a pair of rhinoceros horns
- 珊瑚 coral
- 锭 an ingot
- 灵芝 the Lingzhi fungus (symbol of longevity)
- 如意 the Ruyi Sceptre (meaning “as you wish”)
- 万字 (事) 如意 the Ruyi Sceptre with Swastika (May you have everything you wish.)
- 如意头 the head of Ruyi Sceptre (It conveys “good wishes for a long life as all you desire”)
- 如意云 the cloud in the shape of Ruyi Sceptre (a symbol of peace and good fortune)
5. 动植物界 The zoological and botanical worlds (harmony with nature)
- 仙鹤 the crane (a symbol of longevity)
- 孔雀 the peacock (a symbol of splendor)
- 鸳鸯 mandarin ducks (a symbol of marital happiness)
- 蝴蝶 butterfly (a rebus for “Die,” meaning 70 or 80 years of age, also a symbol of happiness in marriage)
- 蝙蝠 bat (a rebus for “Fu,” happiness, when a bat is depicted with peaches, it means “may you live long and be happy”; when a bat is depicted with a Swastika, it

means "may you have the greatest joy. ")

- 桃子 peaches (a symbol of longevity and immortality)
- 佛手 Buddha's Hand Citron (The components of this name, "Fu" meaning "Buddha," and "Shou" meaning "hand," also play on the words for happiness "Fu" and long life "Shou. ")
- 石榴 pomegranate (a symbol of abundant male offspring)
- 三多 (果) The Three Abundances, The Three Fruits (The Peach, Buddha's Hand Citron and Pomegranate represent long life, happiness and male offspring.)
- 梅花 prunus (The prunus represents winter and the first month of the year, and is a symbol of perseverance and purity.)
- 牡丹 peony (The peony represents spring and the sixth month of the year, and is a symbol of wealth and advancement in life.)
- 莲花 lotus (The lotus represents summer and the seventh month of the year, and is a symbol of purity and nobility.)
- 菊花 chrysanthemum (The chrysanthemum represents autumn and the tenth month, and is also symbolic of a noble personality.)
- 兰花 orchid (The orchid represents the eleventh month of the year, and also symbolizes a noble personality as well as sincere friendship.)
- 水仙花 narcissus (The narcissus represents the twelfth month of the year, and symbolizes good fortune and prosperity.)



寿



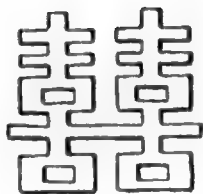
万



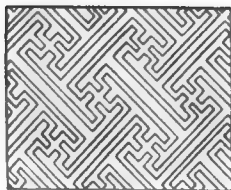
喜



吉



双喜



万字



钟离权扇



吕洞宾剑



李铁拐葫芦拐杖



曹国舅响板



兰采和花篮



张果老竹筒竹杆



韩湘子长笛



何仙姑莲蓬



白盖



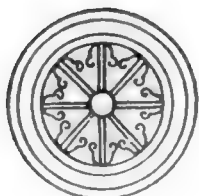
法螺



宝瓶



宝伞



法轮



盘长



莲花



金鱼



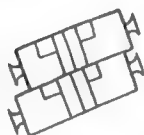
方金饰



圆金饰



珍珠



卷轴



石馨



犀角



珊瑚



锭



灵芝



如意



万字(事)如意



如意头



如意云



仙鹤



孔雀



鸳鸯



蝴蝶



蝙蝠



桃子



佛手



石榴



三多 (果)



梅花



牡丹



莲花



菊花



兰花



水仙花

主要参考书目

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. 《中国大百科全书 文物博物馆》，中国大百科全书出版社，1993 年。
2. 《故宫博物院藏文物珍品大系》（包括金属胎珐琅器卷，竹木牙角雕刻卷，明清家具卷，鼻烟壶卷，藏传佛教造像卷，唐卡卷，元明清漆器卷，清宫服饰卷，玺印卷），商务印书馆（香港）有限公司，上海科学技术出版社，2001~2005 年。
3. 故宫博物院编，《故宫博物院藏明代绘画》，香港中文大学文物馆，1988 年。
4. 台北故宫博物院编，《故宫漆器特展目录》，1981 年。
5. 朱家溍，《清代造办处漆器制作考》，载《故宫博物院院刊》1987 年第 3 期。
6. 《清代家具艺术》，台北历史博物馆印行，1985 年。
7. 《黄花梨家具之美》，台北南天书局有限公司出版。
8. 《故宫珐琅器选萃》，台北故宫博物院印行，1979 年。
9. 朱家溍，《清代画珐琅器制作考》，载《故宫博物院院刊》1982 年第 3 期。
10. 夏更起、张荣主编，《故宫鼻烟壶选萃》，紫禁城出版社，1995 年。
11. 《故宫鼻烟壶》，台北故宫博物院编辑，1991 年。
12. 《故宫玺印选萃》，台北故宫博物院印行，1976 年。
13. 《清代服饰》，台北历史博物馆编辑，1988 年。
14. 《清代服饰展览图录》，台北故宫博物院编辑，1986 年。
15. 杜友良主编，《简明汉英—英汉世界宗教词典》，中国对外翻译出版公司，1994 年。
16. 故宫博物院编，《清宫藏传佛教文物》，紫禁城出版社，两木出版社，1992 年。
17. 《颐和园》（*Yi He Yuan*）
18. 《远东汉英大辞典》，新华出版社，远东图书公司，

1995 年。

19. 北京外国语学院英语系《汉英词典》组编，《汉英词典》（修订版），外语教学与研究出版社，1995 年。

20. 中国社会科学院近代史研究所翻译室编，《近代来华外国人名辞典》，中国社会科学出版社，1981 年。

21. *A Glossary of Chinese Art and Archaeology*, by S. Howard Hansford, The China Society, London, 1954.

22. *A Dictionary of Official Titles in Imperial China*, by Charles C. Hucker, Stanford University Press, Stanford, California, 1985.

23. *Ch'ing Administrative Terms*, Published by Harvard University Press, Cambridge, Massachusetts, 1961.

24. *Chinese Traditional Architecture*, by Stein, Nancy Shatsman, New York, 1984.

25. *The Palace Museum, Beijing Treasures of the Forbidden City*, by Wan-Go Weng and The Palace Museum, Beijing, published by Harry N. Abrams, Inc. New York, 1982.

26. *Some Technical Terms of Chinese Painting*, published by Worvery Press, Baltimore, 1935.

27. *2000 Years of Chinese Lacquer*, by Oriental Ceramics Society of Hong Kong and Art Gallery, The Chinese University of Hong Kong, 1933.

28. *Oriental Lacquer Art*, by Lee Yu-Kuan, New York-Tokyo Weatherhill, 1972.

29. *Chinese Lacquer*, by Sir Harry Garner, Faber and Faber Limited London, 1979.

30. *The Dr. S. Y. Yip Collection of Classic Chinese Furniture*, introduction by Shing Yiu Yip, Hong Kong, 1991.

31. *Chinese Snuff Bottle*, by Lilla S. Perry, published by the Charles E. Tuttle Company of Rutland, Vermont and Tokyo, Japan, 1960.

32. *Chinese Seals*, by T. C. Lai, University of Washington Press, Seattle and London, 1976.

33. *Chinese Bamboo Carving*, Hong Kong Museum of Art, 1978.

34. *Bamboo Carvings of China*, by Wang Shixiang, Wan-Go Weng, New York.

索引

INDEX

A

阿巴和加麻札	374
阿城铜铎	322
阿台婆（不动如来）	327
阿氏多尊者	330
阿房宫遗址	370
阿弥陀佛、无量光佛	327
阿弥陀经（小无量寿经）（小经）	334
阿秘特尊者	330
哀册	13
矮老	261
矮腿三弯	263
矮靴袜	231
矮桌	253
艾启蒙（字醒安，今译伊格内修斯·西克尔塔特）	84
艾叶纹	159
爱翠楼	51
爱新觉罗氏	65
隘口	109
盒	121
安济桥	362
安乐窝	56
安乐椅	254
安平桥	362
安源路矿工人俱乐部旧址	376
安远庙	363
安远寺	61
安轴	205

庵画轩	53
鹌鹑	161
鞍囊式舞马衔杯银酒壶	10
鞍形屋顶	28
按察副使	96
按察金使	96
按察使	96
按察使经历	96
按察使司	96
按泥（拉坯）	141
案	252
案衣	107
暗八仙纹	244
暗红	202
暗花	158, 222
暗花绸	218
暗花缎	219
暗花绫	219
暗花罗	219
暗款	246
暗夔龙凤纹	223
暗梅兰松竹纹	223
凹棱	147
凹面	145
麈战	110
袄裙	227
澳门历史城区	383

B

八瓣花	159
八瓣盘、莲瓣盘	241

八宝（佛前供器）	338	跋	203
八宝	160	跋扈	110
八宝灰	246	跋陀罗尊者	330
八宝立水纹	222	把杯	149
八宝平水纹	222	把玩	173
八宝纹	242	靶碗、高足碗	241
八方形	293	霸王枨	261
八分书（汉代）	178	（白）玛瑙	169
八卦	160	白（朱）文	204
八吉祥	160	白	152, 202
八角井	31	白玻璃浮雕荷花鼻烟壶	279
八戒	332	白玻璃套粉红龙凤纹扁圆鼻烟壶	279
八路军总司令部旧址	377	白布禄金刚	330
八品文官补子（鹌鹑）	227	白瓷	144
八旗	94	白瓷鸡冠扁壶	164
八旗公	95	白底青花瓷	145
八旗制	94	白地黑花	158
八旗总管大臣	80, 95	白地墨花	157
八思巴国师	335	白墩子	141
八思巴文	296	白珐琅罗马数字钟盘	285
八团喜相逢纹	224	白盖	338
八仙	160, 344	白膏泥	14
八仙庆寿图	223	白毫（玉毫、光毫）	341
八仙图	223	白鹤梁题刻	367
八仙桌	253	白虎	131, 345
八音	160	白教	326
八音盒	285	白晋（字明远，今译若阿基姆·布韦）	82
八音克谐	50	白救度佛母	328
八正道（通往涅槃的八种正确途径）	331	白鹿洞书院	361
八字形腿	263	白马寺（河南）	336
“八卦”	21	白马寺	363
“八七”会议会址	376	白马作笔	176
“八一”起义指挥部旧址	376	白描	194
巴古拉尊者	330	白石佛	52
巴陵石	297	白石甬路	34
巴茂正（今译夏尔·帕里斯）	85	白塔	52
巴蜀符号矛	133	白陶双系壶	163
拔贡	109	白文	295
拔贡生	101		

白象宝	338	班禅喇嘛源流—桂译师	331
白银	117	班禅喇嘛源流—洛桑却吉坚赞	331
白勇保护法	330	班禅喇嘛源流—提婆	331
白釉黑花褐彩花卉罐	165	班禅喇嘛源流—香格里拉王	331
白釉刻花净瓶	164	般若波罗密多心经（心经）	333
白釉葵口盘	164	般若佛母	328
白釉微黄	157	斑铜矿	117
白玉	297	斑纹	155
白玉雕三星纹如意	291	板壁	32
白玉牌“鹤鹿同春”	173	板绫	219
白玉嵌红宝石菊花式盆染牙水仙 花盆景	288	板门	32
白玉双螭捧寿图鼻烟壶	278	板门及毗卢罩	33
白玉寺（四川）	337	板瓦	22
白玉凸雕开光人物鼻烟壶	278	板沿	148
白中透灰	157	版本	304
百宝嵌	245, 260, 273	半壁桥	59
百宝嵌漆器	240	半封闭三合院	24
百瓣彩纹	223	半跏坐	340
百古	161	半坡遗址	369
百花	159	半陶半瓷	145
百花撵龙纹	223	半透明的	145
百级碎	145	半托迦尊者	330
百鹿	161	半圆桌	253
百鹿纹	242	半桌	253
百纳衣	341	伴读	80
百寿	160	榔鼓	302
百褶裙	232	榜眼	100
百子图	243	蚌刀	8
百子图墨	176	包背装	306
柏叶点	195	包首	233
摆钟	284	包镶	260
败笔	180	包镶竹黄	260
拜倒	342	包镶竹丝	260
拜佛	342	包衣	81
裨史	305	包衣昂邦	81
（半、浅凹、深凹）盖	119	包衣参领	81
扳指（裸）	173	包衣佐领	81
班禅喇嘛	335	褒斜道石门及其摩崖石刻	362
班禅喇嘛源流—阿跋迦罗	331	宝城	14
		宝典福书印章	300

宝顶山摩崖造像	366	抱厦	24
宝盖	341	陂塘（乐平）青	153
宝冠	341	杯（瓿、钟）	149
宝罐	338	杯（盏）托	148
宝积经（大宝积经）	333	杯、觥	123
宝瓶	338	杯案	253
宝谱	298	杯盘	148
宝伞	338	碑额	184
宝生佛	327	碑记（志）	184
宝石红（牛血红）	155	碑碣	184
宝塔	336	碑林	184
宝塔桌	253	碑铭（文）	184
宝相花纹	259	碑帖	180
宝相楼	46	碑亭	14, 184
宝相纹	162, 223	碑阴	184
宝药	171	北（南）五祖	346
宝源局	91	北朝	384
宝月楼	51	北传佛教	325
宝云阁	55	北垂亭	53
宝蕴楼	47	北方多闻天王	330
宝珠纹	242	北海、团城	360
宝座	253	北汉	385
宝座脚踏	256	北京大学红楼	375
宝座式笔架	241	北京故宫	381
宝座台	254	北京宋庆龄故居	379
保存到现代	22	北齐	385
保存完整	6, 22	北山摩崖造像	366
保管	352	北石窟寺	365
保和殿	37	北宋	385
保和殿后的云龙阶石	48	北宋百一砚	177
保护（养）	352	北宋东京城遗址	371
保护道德	351	北宋官本大藏经（983年）	332
保护世界文化和自然遗产公约	11	北天师道	344
保举	102	北魏	384
保圣寺罗汉塑像	368	北魏元义墓墓图	320
报身佛	327	北五所	40
报时	284	北周	385
报时、报刻	284	贝勒	64
报应	342	贝丘冢	6
抱告	111	贝纹	130

贝子	64	笔力清劲，以细密见长	209
备订婚宝、册、礼物	75	笔力雄健	206
背	128	笔帽（套）	176
背标（标记）	147	笔墨简静	195
背光	341	笔势	206
背云	230	笔势纵横，设色浅淡，人物点缀 极其潇洒	208
被告	111	笔舔	176
被誉为“明四家”之一	208	笔筒	176, 241
焙烧	268	笔洗	148, 176
奔放不羁	195	笔意	206
腭	127	笔走龙蛇	206
本草纲目	319	璏	173
本村	205	毕方济（字今梁，今译弗朗索 瓦·桑比亚西）	81
本仁殿	43	陛见	103
本色、自然色	224	陛下	63
本生	341	辟谷（断谷、休粮）	348
本制结构	20	辟邪	172
本尊	331	辟邪纽	294
琫	173	秘冒	125
逼宫	69	碧兰	202
荸荠瓶	150	碧螺亭	42
鼻纽	295	碧桃花	159
鼻烟碟	278	碧玺（电石）	170
鼻烟壶	151, 230	碧玺松鼠葡萄佩	283
鼻烟壶盖	278	碧玉	169, 297
鼻烟漏斗	278	碧玉辟邪纽“抑斋”印	300
鼻烟勺	278	碧玉花薰	173
鼻祖（祖师）	334	碧玉交龙纽“十全老人之宝”	300
匕	121	碧玉结绳纹鼻烟壶	278
比丘	334	碧云寺（北京）	336
比丘尼	334	碧照楼	53
比重	171	篦纹	162
笔	189	壁画	191
笔触简洁	179	壁画家	206
笔锋有力	179	壁瓶	151
笔搁	176	壁毯	233
笔工色丽	195	避暑山庄	60, 360
笔管（桿）	176		
笔力苍劲	180		
笔力浑厚	194		

斃監免议	113	宾度罗跋罗坠尊者	330
臂洲	176	宾主	193
埤	171	滨海要汛	110
边	162	幽风桥	59
边■	109	冰裂纹	156
边景昭《竹鹤图》轴	214	冰梅纹	223
边款侧款（边跋）	298	兵部	94
边框打洼	262	兵略	305
边饰	298	兵马俑	13, 144
编目	352	柄（把柄）	145
编漆	246	柄、拊	120
编磬	172, 301	柄纽	295
编钟	124, 301	炳灵寺石窟	365
贬黜	74	并赃治罪	112
贬为庶民	74	拨补	105
贬谪	74	拨镂	275
扁笔点	195	波带纹	242
扁方	231	波及无辜	112
扁方形	148	玻璃鼻烟壶	277
扁壶	122, 151	玻璃橱	256
扁茎剑	133	玻璃内画风雨归舟图鼻烟壶	280
扁瓶	150	玻璃胎画珐琅鼻烟壶	278
扁足	146	玻璃胎画珐琅花鸟纹鼻烟壶	279
匾额	180	钵	148, 342
汴绣	221	钵式盒	241
变花（字）	285	悖悖房	79
变戏法	285	剥釉	143
变形兽纹	130	菠菜玉	169
便服	226	帛（丝织品的总称）	220
便服冠顶	228	帛画	191, 209
标笺	205	■	301
镗	127	铸钟	124
表	284, 305	勃青	153
表壳	285	钹	124
表蒙子	285	焚人悬棺葬	374
表现出相当高的工艺水平	7	博古画	192
裱褙	204	博古架	33
裱法	204	博古纹	223
裱片	233	博山炉	128
别致的重檐八角攒顶式结构	29	博物馆藏品研究	351

彩漆	239	藏品入库	351
彩漆云龙管笔	176	藏品收购	351
彩陶	144	藏品修复	352
彩线	221	藏品征集	351
彩绣	222	藏王墓	373
彩釉陶	144	藏学	339
彩悦	230	曹国舅	344
彩仗	76	曹全碑	185
蔡侯冢尊	132	曹衣描	197
参罚	103	漕运使	97
参革	103	漕运总督	97, 105
参观路线	355	草虫	192
参观时间	356	草鉴堂	59
参观指南	356	草绿	190
参领	95	草书	178
参头和尚（教授参学者礼仪的僧 职）	335	草书《怀素自叙帖》	181
参议	96	草书《平复帖》	181
参议朝政	67	草书《诗卷》	182
参预政事	67	草书《中秋帖》	181
参政	96	册封	72
餐具柜	257	册立皇后	72
餐秀亭	55	册立皇后礼	75
餐饮部	358	册命	72, 131
残废军人凭证免费	357	册页	191
苍劲浑厚、气魄豪迈	195	厕所	358
苍绿	190	侧（垂）脊	28
沧州铁狮子	368	侧（附）耳	119
藏草瓶	338	侧笔	194
藏传佛教（喇嘛教）	326	侧福晋	65
藏经洞	336	侧龙纹	222
藏经阁	336	侧烧窑	142
藏经楼	336	侧石（路边石）	23
藏密	326	插肩榫	261
藏品保存环境	351	插屏	257
藏品保管设备	353	插屏式小座屏风	258
藏品保护技术	352	茶（酒）壶	151
藏品储备	351	茶柜	257
藏品管理	352	茶花绶带纹	243
藏品库房	351	茶几	252
		茶晶	170

茶晶葫芦形鼻烟壶	279	长恨歌	315
茶库	78	长颈短流	147
茶叶末	155	长颈瓶	150
捺漆	246	长孔	118
衩	233	长廊	49, 54
钗	172	长陵（汉高祖刘邦与其妻吕雉合 葬墓）	15
柴笔描（枯柴描）	201	长陵（明成祖文皇帝之陵）	16
禅	340	长陵	372
禅床	256	长桥	60
禅定佛	327	长沙铜官窑遗址	371
禅师	334	长生殿	315
禅衣	341	长寿绣	222
禅椅	254	长信宫灯	9
禅杖	342	长袖	233
禅宗	326	长牙	3
缠枝	159	长阳人	2
缠枝花	159, 162	长于泼墨法，于水墨写意画法上 尤有创新	208
缠枝莲纹花罩	32	常德铁罐	368
缠枝纹	224, 242	常服	225
蝉	130	常服冠	228
蝉衣笈（蝉翼笈）	189	常在	65
簪	126	敞轩	24
蟾蜍	162	氅衣	226
铲	127	畅春园	54, 60
铲币	128	畅观楼	59
仟法	348	畅音阁	41
颤笔水纹描	197	抄本	180, 206
昌化石	297	超度	343
昌陵（清仁宗睿皇帝之陵）	18	朝（朝代）	66
猖乱	110	朝拜	70
长	146	朝班（朝列）	70
长城	381	朝臣	79
长春宫	45	朝带	172, 229
长春宫院内的《红楼梦》壁画	47	朝房	70
长春书室	50	朝服	225
长春真人	345	朝纲（朝章）	69
长凳、条凳	255	朝贡	108
长而细	120	朝褂	225
长方形	293		
长公主	65		

朝冠	227	枨	261
朝冠顶	228	诚肃殿	40
朝贺	74	承德避暑山庄及周围庙宇	381
朝会	70	承光殿	52
朝见（觐见）	70	承光门	39
朝觐	108	承露盘	53
朝袍	225	承露台	42
朝裙	225	承乾宫	40
朝审	112	城堡	25
朝靴	231	城池	25
朝仪	69	城垛（雉堞）	25
朝珠	173, 230	城隍	345
潮州窑	139	城隍庙	47
车驾司	94	城门楼	25
车马坑	13	城垣	25
砵磬帽顶（六品官）	228	乘鸡仙人	29
撤出摄政	67	乘舆服御物	108
臣（大臣向皇帝自称）	79	程正揆《江山卧游图》卷	215
沉香木雕山行图笔筒	273	澄怀阁	56
陈	384	澄辉阁	56
陈纯铜釜	323	澄浆砖	22
陈洪绶《隐居十六观图》册	215	澄泥砚	176
陈侯午敦	132	澄瑞亭	39
陈嘉庚墓	379	澄爽斋	58
陈列示意图	355	澄心堂纸	188
衬边	205	橙黄	202
衬色螺钿	245	秤	128
衬托纸	205	鸱尾	30
衬衣	226	笞五十	112
称帝	66	摘藻堂	39
成道	339	螭	130
成丁	106	螭耳	148
成化（宪宗朱见深）	386	螭虎纽	294
成吉思汗陵（元太祖铁木真）	16	螭纽	294
成吉思汗陵	373	螭纹	259
成实宗（成实学派）	325	噢墨	181
成衣	233	驰驱	110
成招	112	驰驿就道	111
呈赐	104	持金刚（金刚持）	329
呈奏折求见	70	持久焰	143

持世菩萨	329	初祭	108
持诵	348	初刻拍案惊奇	315
麈	302	初师某某,后广学宋元名家,将南宋院体画精谨秀丽之画法与元人清隽淡雅之笔墨融为一体,形成自家面貌	208
齿冠	3	除俸	104
齿轮	285	除湿剂	353
侈(撇)口	146	除夕	107
侈(撇)口卷边	147	锄	127
侈口	119	橱	256
赤(红、紫)铜	117	橱柜	256
赤城霞起	58	储妃	65
赤道圭表合璧仪	321	储位之争	67
赤道转矩	321	储秀宫	44
赤金(纯金)	280	楚	385
赤陶(赤土)	141	楚辞	312
赤陶	144	楚纪南故城	370
炽盛光佛	327	楚盱子铜权衡	324
敕令	73	处州窑	140
冲耳	145	黼黻	103
冲决	115	穿	125
虫书	296	穿带(式)印	294
虫鱼肖形印	293	穿带瓶	150
崇敬殿(乐善堂)	44	穿斗	27
崇陵(清德宗景皇帝之陵)	19	穿花凤	161
崇庆皇太后金发塔	281	穿堂殿	56
崇雅殿	51	穿衣镜	258
崇祯(思宗朱由检)	387	传	194
宠臣	79	传播性质	356
铕	125	传单	356
仇报	111	传法	339
仇英《莲溪渔隐图》轴	215	传国玺	292
仇英《桃源仙境图》轴	215	传唤朝见	70
■	218	传记	305
出(人)口	34, 358	传戒和尚	335
出版宣传品	356	传驴	101
出陈易新	105	传神之笔	179
出家	340	传世品	278
出库检查	352	传统工艺	278
出纳	105		
出土文物	6		
出行图	192		

传统计时器	284	鐎于	124, 301
传位于	67	纯一斋	51
传心殿	42	纯银	280
传移模学	193	淳化大鼎	9
椽梢(头)	26	戳记	292
串枝纹	224	瓷鼻烟壶	278
窗花纹	32	瓷库	78
床	255	瓷器	144
床靠背	263	瓷器裂纹	145
床面	263	瓷青绢	188
床帷	233	瓷胎、窑胎	244
吹青	153	瓷土	141
吹箫引凤	162	瓷心半圆桌	253
吹釉	142	瓷枕	152
吹云法	201	辞位	67
垂带长	235	慈福楼	55
垂钓图	243	慈宁宫	46
垂虹亭	51	慈宁宫花园	46
垂花门	25	磁带录像	356
垂帘听政	68	磁山—裴李岗文化	5
垂露文	296	磁州窑	139
垂簾点	196	雌黄	203
垂头点	195	此路不通	358
垂叶点	195	此票发售当日有效	357
垂叶纹	130, 162	刺梨敏	197
垂衣	341	刺字	112
锤揲	268	赐	74
锤揲起线珐琅太平有象尊	270	赐奠	74
锤胎珐琅	267	赐恩	74
锤头	8	赐爵	74
春(伏、秋)汛	115	赐谥	74
春蚕吐丝描	197	赐宴	74, 108
春凳	255	从	97
春节期间照常开放	359	从八品	98
春联	180	从二品	98
春明楼	50	从九品	98
春耦斋	51	从六品	98
春秋	307, 384	从七品	98
春寿字盒	240	从三品	98
椿叶点	196		

从四品	98	答应	65
从五品	98	打点	284
从一品	98	打点重锤	285
葱青（绿）	153	打更	284
丛书	304	打蜡	246
琮	172	打乐	284
粗（细）线	221	打磨	261, 268
粗布	234	打时、打刻	284
篡位	69	打制石器	7
崔白《双喜图》轴	211	打坐（趺坐、跏趺坐）	340
摧碎金刚	330	大	152
萃赏亭	42	大白伞盖佛母	328
翠雕螭纹如意	290	大般涅槃经（涅槃经）	333
翠瑛	202	大般若波罗密多经（大般若经）	333
翠嵌珍珠耳珰	283	大宝法王	335
翠青（绿）	153	“大明永乐年制”直行款	246
翠十八子手串	283	大泊湖	60
翠手镯	283	大藏经（三藏）	332
翠蝠	54	大髻	232
翠玉（翡翠）	169	大臣	79
殿	194	大乘法王	335
存（取）包处	358	大乘佛教	325
存七束三	105	大乘玄论	334
寸蟒纹、金钱蟒纹	223	大乘义章	334
醴	127	大慈法王	335
错金（银）	118	大刀	126
错金云纹铁尺	323	大刀长枪	110
错落有致	21	大道教	344
错纹	130	大地湾遗址	369
错银线	260	大典	74

D

厝厝	263	大佛寺石窟	366
达赖喇嘛（丹增嘉措）	331	大佛堂	46
达赖喇嘛	335	大勾云	201
达赖喇嘛源流—桑吉贡巴	331	大沽口炮台遗址	375
达赖喇嘛源流—松赞干布	331	大褂、长衫	231
达赖喇嘛源流—格桑嘉措	331	大号	339
达摩多罗尊者	330	大黑天（护法神之一）	330

大红门	14	大西天	53
大画案	252	大溪文化	5
大婚	75	大喜轿	76
大混点	195	大象牙	274
大吉瓶	150	大行皇帝	63
大祭	108	大行皇太后尊谥	108
大驾卤簿	76, 303	大雄宝殿	55
大戒	332	大选	102
大金得胜陀颂碑	368	大学	306
大襟	233	大雁塔	364
大襟袄(袍)	232	大窑龙泉窑遗址	372
大襟坎肩	232	大邑窑	139
大楷	178	大禹开山治水	173
大喇嘛	335	大圆宝镜	54
大理石板	23	大约(用在年代前)	7
大理石面香几	252	大阅胄甲	226
大理石围子罗汉床	255	大昭寺(西藏)	337
大理寺	93	大昭寺	363
大理寺卿	93	大征礼	75
大理寺少卿	93	大篆	177, 295
大理寺左(右)评事	93	大字钹金横列永乐款	246
大理寺左(右)寺丞	93	大足石刻	382
大荔人	2	代笔	204
大轮手持金刚	329, 330	玳瑁	170
大庙飞来殿	363	玳瑁斑	155
大明宫遗址	370	带板	229
大明门	48	带钩	128, 172, 229
大内	62	带环	172, 230
大品般若(大品经)	333	带扣	128, 172, 230
大菩萨藏经	333	带门围子架子床	256
大瀑布	201	带巧妙开关的银酒壶	282
大千世界	340	带饰	229
大秦景教流行中国碑	186	带屉板小平头案	252
大日经	333	带头	172, 230
大水法	60	带瓦	230
大祀	75, 106	带座磬式盒	241
大唐内典录(内典录)	334	待月轩	50
大威德金刚	329	戴进《春游晚归图》卷	214
大汶口文化	5	戴进《关山行旅图》轴	214
大汶口遗址	369	戴进贤(字嘉宾, 今译伊格纳	

什·克格勒)	83	澹泊敬诚殿	61
丹陛大乐	303	澹会轩	59
丹陛桥	49	澹宁堂	58
丹墀、丹陛	34	澹生堂藏书约	318
丹凤朝阳	162	当朝一品	98
丹阳真人	345	当卢	127
丹珠尔(藏文大藏经,对佛语的 解释)	333	当日可取	358
单(双)刀	298	当时极具影响	208
单层须弥座围白石栏杆	34	当阳峪窑	140
单幅	234	挡火墙	142
单拱结构	34	挡土墙(拥壁)	24
单拱桥	34	档案	352
单款	203	档板	262
单袍	231	刀	121
单坡屋顶	28	刀币	128
单翘三昂	27	刀法	244, 261
单色	203	刀扎	114
单色玻璃鼻烟壶	277	导养正性	56
单色漆	239	倒窑	142
单扇立屏	257	到任	102
单丝绢	188	盗犯	114
单条	191	道	96
单宣(生纸)	189	道藏(道教经书的总称)	346
单宣	175	道藏辑要	347
单檐庑殿顶	28	道场	342, 348
单檐歇山顶	28	道德经(道德真经)	347
单眼花翎	229	道德经	310
单支穿戴	262	道德天尊(老子)	346
胆瓶(锥把瓶)	149	道典论	347
淡	152	道法会元	347
淡清釉	157	道姑	349
淡色	225	道观	349
淡桃红	190	道光(宣宗爱新觉罗旻宁)	387
淡赭	193	道号	349
弹涡纹	197	道家	349
蛋白石	170	道教	343
蛋黄	154	道教义枢	347
蛋形窑	142	道考	109
澹碧斋	58	道门科范大全集	347
		道人	349

道士	349	底径	146
道释图	191	底款	247
道枢	347	底櫨	26
道术	348	底盘口径	146
道台（巡道）	96	底色	225
道院（较小）	349	地藏菩萨	328
蠡旗	111	地藏寺经幢	368
得某某法而稍变	208	地丁钱粮	104
得沧州趣	59	地动仪	320
德和园	54	地方入贡宫廷的鼻烟壶	278
德花窑观音像	164	地宫	15
德化窑	140	地官（赦罪之神）	345
德辉殿	55	地坑探测	6
德陵（明熹宗哲皇帝之陵）	17	地理位置	5
德兴殿	57	地幔金砖	23
德音维馨	59	地平公晷仪	321
灯	128	地平经纬仪	321
灯挂式椅	254	地球仪	321
灯节	107	地毯	233
灯笼尊	150	地下水道	34
登第	100	地质博物馆	351
登封窑	140	帝（后）冬（夏）朝冠	228
登极大典	74	帝号	66
登记	352	帝纪	305
等（级）	97	帝师	80
等候上朝	70	帝位、皇权	66
等级制	97	帝制	66
戩子盒	241	递回	111
邓玉函（字涵璞，今译扬·特伦茨）	82	第十一世班禅额尔德尼（坚赞诺布）	331, 335
凳	255	典籍	80
凳周沿	263	典税	105
铎	127	典章（典制）	69
堤备不严	110	点（“侧”）	179
滴水嘴	34	点（“、”、“，如高峰坠石”）	178
滴珠	156	点	194
笛	302	点彩	157
嫡子	64	点翠花卉	260
底	146	点蓝	267
底部横档	262	点视	110

电化教育	356	丁村遗址	369
垫赔	105	丁巳复辟	69
钿花	231	丁香	158
钿口	231	丁香紫	154
钿子	231	钉珊瑚珠	235
殿本书	304	钉头鼠尾描	197
殿试（廷试）	99	顶戴（顶子）	98
殿试	109	顶戴	229
靛花（花青）	190	顶戴花翎	229
刁奸	114	顶骨化石	6
刁讼	111	顶柜	256
凋残瘠薄地	106	顶礼	342
貂毫	175	顶礼膜拜	342
雕版印刷	304	顶名代告	111
雕瓷	145	顶竖柜	257
雕工	261	顶箱立柜	257
雕花（划花）	158	鼎	120
雕花大门	25	鼎式桌	253
雕花梵文螺	338	定鼎（定都）	66
雕刻	273, 275	定级	352
雕栏玉砌	21	定陵（明神宗显皇帝之陵）	17
雕梁画栋	21	定陵（清文宗显皇帝之陵）	18
雕梁	245	定窑	139
雕七佛白螺	338	定窑白瓷暗花瓶	165
雕漆	240	东方持国天王	330
雕石御路	34	东宫	64
雕填	158	东宫门	53
雕填和填彩	245	东汉	384
雕缠	142	东汉铜辇车	322
调拨	352	东华门	42
调伏部多手持金刚菩萨	329	东晋	384
调迁	102	东京梦华录	319
叠翠楼	53	东三所	40
叠架法	27	东王公	344
叠文	296	东魏	384
叠篆	296	东窑	140
碟子	148	东周	384
丁村民宅	361	东珠朝珠	230
丁村人	2	冬（东）青	153
丁村文化	4	冬暖夏凉	33

董源《山口待渡图》卷	210	镀（鍍）金（银）	118
董源《潇湘图》卷	210	匱	118
动物标本	352	镀金	268, 280
动物饰件	22	镀银	280
动物形纹	130	端门	48
洞	347	端砚	176
洞灵真人	345	端罩	226
洞玄金玉集	347	短笔麻皮皴	196
都察院	93	短而粗	120
都察院监察都御史	93	短撇（“啄”）	179
都察院监察御史	93	短袖	233
都察院左都御史	93	段氏与三十七部会盟碑	367
都察院左副都御史	93	断虹桥	47
都江堰	362, 382	断流	115
都统	95	缎	219
都虞司	89	缎库	78
都御史	94	榑木	251
都知监	78	锻炼	118
都指挥使	96	堆彩	246
都指挥使司	96	堆红或罩红	246
斗彩	156	堆花	158
斗彩八挂炉	165	堆积层	6
斗方	180, 191	堆锦	218
斗拱	27, 115	堆绫	219
斗牛	30	堆漆	239
豆、琦	121	堆秀山	39
豆瓣皴	197	堆釉	142
豆青	153	堆云积翠桥	51
窦娥冤	313	堆脂	155
督抚	96	对比强烈	203
督领侍	90	对称木纹	260
独板围子罗汉床	255	对称图案	130
独乐寺	363	对称原则	21
独特风格	21	对襟	233
独腿桌、支柱式桌	253	对襟袄	232
杜伯盥	132	对襟坎肩	232
杜甫草堂	361	对联	180, 191
杜陵（汉宣帝刘询之陵）	15	对鸟纹	224
杜陵	372	对鸥舫	54
度牒（戒牒）	342	对饮纹	223

敦	121
敦煌星图	321
墩、坐墩	255
墩台	110
蹲螭纽	294
蹲龙纽	294
盾	126
盾形	293
多宝殿	55
多宝佛	327
多宝佛塔颂	57
多宝格（桶）	257
多宝塔碑	186
多彩雉鸡牡丹花纹白瓷瓶	165
多功能文化中心	355
多罗格格	66
多色	203
多檐多脊角楼	22
多种色	224
多种形象的琉璃饰件	23
罽	124, 301
朵云纹	259

E

峨眉山一乐山大佛	380
峨眉山圣寿万年寺铜铁佛像	368
鹅腔	263
鹅卵石	23
额駝（駝马）	64
軛	127
鄂豫皖革命根据地旧址	377
鳄鱼纹	130
尔雅	313
耳	119, 145
耳珰	230
耳环	230
耳饰	230
二层夹	176
二层套盒	240

二次发掘	6
二次氧化	143
二等勤职	103
二甲赐进士出身	108
二里岗文化	4
二里头文化	5
二里头遗址	369
二联盒	148
二龙戏珠纹	222
二绿	189
二品文官补子（锦鸡）	226
二品武官补子（狮子）	227
二青	189
二人共饮餐具	152
二色缎	219
二色罗	219
二十四史	308
二十五宝	299
二弦	302

F

发（棕）晶	170
发边外为民	113
发掘	6
发勒	231
发配	113
发条	285
发条传动装置	285
发现	5
发绣	221
发烟瘴充军	113
伐那婆斯尊者	330
伐着罗佛多尊者	330
法宝	160
法冠	338
法号	334
法花	162
法会	342
法驾卤簿	76, 303

法蓝（绿、紫）	154	梵华楼	40
法轮	338, 339	梵夹装	306
法轮殿	52	梵刹	336
法螺	338	梵网经（菩萨戒本）	334
法门	342	梵文	161
法器	348	方塚	13
法身	340	方补	226
法师	334	方城	14
法书要录	316	方从义《武夷放棹图》轴	214
法坛（经坛、斋坛）	349	方髹	255
法体	340	方格朵花纹	224
法帖	180, 181	方格纹	162
法王	335	方几	252
法衣（僧衣）	341	方角柜	256
法印（法体、法的标准）	332	方巾	233
法源寺（北京）	336	方井	31
珐琅彩	157	方略	305
珐琅工艺	267	方略馆	77, 87
珐琅料	267	方瓶	151
珐琅小陈设	271	方胜盒	240
珐琅作	78, 268	方胜纹	162, 259
番莲	158	方外观	60
番莲纹	260	方形	293
匳唇	147	方形腰包	230
翻伞转八仙	285	方彝	122
翻座	115	方丈（三神山之一）	348
髹（铁）红	155	方丈（住持）	335
凡尘	342	方志	305
矾头皴	196	方桌	253
矾宣（熟纸）	188	枋心	26
蕃红	202	枋	122, 128
反唇	119	防潮湿	353
反射窑	142	防尘	353
反狱在逃	113	防尘防潮	275
鑒	120	防虫蛀	353
犯人	114	防辐射	353
犯罪待对	112	防腐蚀	353
泛舟图	243	防霉菌	353
范宽《溪山行旅图》轴	211	防暑措施	33
范围（用在朝代前）	7	防震	353

房山云居寺石经	334	粉彩 (软彩)	156
房山云居寺塔及石经	364	粉彩鹌鹑猎纹天球瓶	165
房屋建造	115	粉彩婴戏纹双连瓶	166
仿	194	粉红	155, 201
仿古创新	147	粉青 (绿)	153
仿古瓷	145	粉青微呈淡碧	157
仿古铜簠式盒	240	丰镐遗址	370
仿官青釉觚	166	“风水”	20
仿欧洲画珐琅	267	风带	205
放弃摄政	67	风化剥离	353
放射性碳 - 14 测定	7	风景织锦	233
放焰口	343	风帽	233
飞昂	26	风门	32
飞白	177, 193	风俗画	192
飞白文	295	风穴寺及塔林	362
飞椽	26	风雅存	43
飞来峰造像	366	封拜	73
飞龙纹	242	封侯	73
飞禽肖形印	293	封建社会	1
飞天	331	封爵	73
飞檐	29	封泥时期	298
飞冤驾害	111	封神演义	314
妃	65	封相	73
非公莫入	358	封荫	73, 104
非请莫入	358	封赠	73
肥田	106	峰翠	153
翡翠三镶如意	291	烽火台	25
废黜	68	锋	125, 126
盼	229	冯秉正 (字端友, 今译约瑟夫· 弗朗索瓦·玛丽·安娜·德· 穆瓦里亚克·德梅拉)	83
分封	131	冯玉祥墓	379
分类	351	缝	235
分类陈列	354	缝纫技巧	235
分离器 (层)	143	凤	30, 129
分凉台	52	凤耳	148
分针	285	凤冠	229
分铸法	118	凤凰	161
坟堆 (宝顶)	13	凤凰墩	59
坟墓	12	凤首壶	151
焚帛炉	14, 48		
粉	152		

凤尾描	201	佛手	159
凤尾裙	232	佛堂	79, 336
凤尾尊	150	佛亭	51
凤翔云应	56	佛陀	326
凤眼菩提朝珠	230	佛香阁	55
凤舆	76	佛像	337
奉安	76	佛心宗（禅宗）	326
奉裁改调	103	佛学	339
奉宸苑	89	佛牙	337
奉宸院	77	佛造像	337
奉上谕事件处	77	佛珠（念珠）	337
奉先殿	40	佛宗	332
奉迎皇后礼	75	佛祖	326
奉旨	72	缶、罍、罐	123
俸档房	93	玦玉	171
俸工银两	105	伏藏	332
俸饷处	90	鳧雁	161
俸薪银	105	芙蓉石	170
佛（法）事	342	扶壁（扶垛）	14
佛本行集经	334	扶手	263
佛诞节（释迦牟尼成道纪念日）		扶手椅	254
	339	拂子（拂尘）	342
佛道	339	服闋	104
佛顶	341	服饰	128, 225
佛法（佛教教义）	331	服装	225
佛法	339	浮碧亭	38
佛法无边	339	浮雕	273
佛光寺（山西）	336	浮雕、凸雕	260
佛光寺	362	浮花	222
佛果	339	浮屠	336
佛海观音菩萨	329	符篆派	344
佛会	339	符望阁	42
佛家	339	符字（丹书）	348
佛教故事图	242	■ 窗	234
佛教徒	335	幅面	234
佛经	337	福昌殿	53
佛龕	336	福晋	65
佛门	340	福陵	373
佛门弟子	335	福祿寿三星	286
佛舍利盒	339	福寿双全	163

福星	345
福荫轩	55
蝠磬图	259
抚琴图	242
斧	125, 127
斧凿纹	197
府	96
府丞	96
府经历	96
府儒学教授	97
俯清流	51
釜	121
俛首自招	112
辅助展品	354
辅佐	67
簠	121
簠	226
父己鼎	132
父系社会	1
妇好鸂尊	132
附(夹)片	71
附件	71
复原	6
复原陈列	354
复制	352
复制的档案材料	352
副都统	95
副将	95
副券	357
傅作霖(今译费利克斯·达·罗查)	84
腹(肚)	145
腹部扁圆	147
腹部丰硕	147
腹部款识	247
腹部上丰下敛	147
腹部上敛下丰	147
腹里	109
腹围(圆器)	146
覆斗纽	295

覆烧	143
----	-----

G

嘎巴拉念珠	338
嘎巴拉碗	338
噶当派	326
噶举派	326
赅春园	57
改朝换代	66
盖	119, 145
盖盒	148
盖内铭识	247
盖捏手	119
盖碗	149
干燥器	353
干证	111
干支纪年	247
干制标本	352
甘露殿	52
甘珠尔(藏文大藏经, 直接记载 佛语)	333
坍塌(将军盔)	117
赶珠龙	161
橄榄核雕寿星	274
橄榄核刻诗人物小舟	274
橄榄描	197
紺马宝	338
缸	151
缸、甕	149
杠头	128
高(矮)圈足	147
高(深、平)远	193
高(中、低)烧	143
高	146
高昌故城	371
高底鞋	231
高拱罗锅腿	263
高句丽王城、王陵及贵族墓葬	383
高克恭《云横秀岭图》轴	213

高岭土	141	隔心	32
高面盆架	258	隔焰窑	142
高奴铜权	324	镬、锅	121
高僧	334	各宫殿首领太监	81
高束腰	262	各宫殿总管太监	81
高束腰五足香几	252	各具特点	21
高水平的建筑技术	22	“个”字点	195
高靺鞨	231	“个”字间双钩点	195
高温陶瓷	145	更钟	284
高招旗	111	耕九余三之谷	106
高足杯	149	耕织图	162
高足花台	258	工笔	193
高足碗	149	工笔写意二法兼精	207
高祖	63	工部	91
告病乞休	104	工艺	235
诰	73	工艺水平	278
诰敕	73	工整写实	195
诰封	73	弓	125
诰封三代	73	弓耳	148
诰命	73	弓勾（“丁”，如绷紧之臂或拉紧之弓）	178
诰授	73	弓弩药箭	110
诰赠	73	公	64
戈	124	公母棒结合	26
戈戟司	89	公元	7
哥弟窑	140	公元前	7
革职	103	功臣	79
阁楼	24	供案	337
格	126, 257	供奉佛像	342
格磬	148	供品	342
格格	66	供桌	253
格古要论	318	宫殿监	78, 90
格鲁派	326	宫殿寺庙	24
格饰团花纹	242	宫殿印	293
格西（藏传佛教学衔）	335	宫娥（宫女）	81
格子花	222	宫禁	62
格子纹	162	宫门抄	72
鬲	120	宫门拉手与饰钉	33
蛤蟆	161	宫墙	36
隔间	24	宫廷常规和习俗	69
隔扇门	32		

宫廷大臣	79	匳	122
宫廷礼仪	69	𪚩	127
宫廷太监	80	撞头	31
宫廷政变	69	古董房	78
宫廷制度	69	古坟、塚	13
宫廷制作鼻烟壶	278	古风拙笔	195
宫碗	149	古格王国遗址	371
宫闱	62	古宫殿群	22
宫中档	72	古观象台	321, 362
宫中奏折	306	古华轩	42
恭亲王	64	古建筑	20
恭王府及花园	362	古今奇观	314
龚贤《木叶丹黄图》轴	216	古今图书集成	312
觥	122	古人	2
拱券	25	古刹	336
蒙县石窟寺	365	古圣先贤	108
共同摄政	67	古书装帧	306
贡缎	219	古田会议会址	377
贡生	101	古铜色	202
贡士	100	古玩柜	256
贡院	109	古文	177, 295
勾(“纆”)	179	古文书学家(古字体研究者)	177
勾	194	古文字	177
勾兵	124	古香缎	219
勾戟	125	古猿	2
勾勒画	194	古装	225
勾连搭式屋顶	28	古字体	177
勾连云纹	242	谷仓罐	151
勾莲纹	131, 224	骨法用笔	192
勾振	115	骨笄	8
勾旋纹	131	骨料	8
沟帮(底)	34	骨器	8
枸橼	124	骨梳	8
钩粉法	201	骨针	8
钩莲纹	158	骨质	297
钩心	126	钴兰彩	157
构虚轩	57	鹄头文	296
孤本书	304	鼓	124
孤贫口粮	105	鼓丁	163
孤轴	191		

鼓楼	25, 49	和公约	11
鼓式敦	255	关于考古发掘的	
鼓式漏壶	286	国际原则建议	11
鼓式洗	148	观瀑图	242
鼓形花台	258	观水法	60
固伦公主	65	观星台	362
故宫（紫禁城）	36, 360	观音瓶	150
故宫石日晷	320	观音菩萨	328
故宫铜壶滴漏	320	观众止步	358
故杀	113	官	97
故事画	192	官办作坊造鼻烟壶	278
故事图	162	官本	206
顾闳中《韩熙载夜宴图》卷	210	官吏冬朝冠	228
顾恺之《洛神赋图》卷	209	官吏夏纬帽	228
顾恺之《女史箴图》卷	209	官帽椅	254
顾命大臣（辅佐大臣）	79	官皮箱	257
顾绣	221	官署印（官府公章）	292
瓜楞墩	255	官窑	140, 142
瓜楞式执壶	241	官印	292
瓜皮绿	153	冠架	258
瓜皮帽	232	冠帽	227
瓜式盒	241	棺侧板	13
刮削器	7	棺床	12
挂刀、腰刀	230	棺挡板	13
挂屏	241, 258	棺槨饰件	128
挂帅将军印	292	管	302
挂牙	262	管子	310
挂钟（壁钟）	284	贯耳	145, 148
贯耳	226	贯耳穿带壶	151
贯耳壶	231	贯耳壶	122
拐骗	114	贯耳瓶	150
关堡	110	灌浆	115
关防	292	罐（甕、罍）	151
关防提督	110	光和大司农铜斛	324
关黄对刀	31	光亮如新	6
关圣帝君	345	光禄寺	91
关税	105	光禄寺卿	91
关同《关山行旅图》轴	210	光禄寺少卿	91
关于禁止和防止非法进出口文化		光敏度	354
财和非法转让其所有权的方法		光谱分析	7

光绪（德宗爱新觉罗载湉）	387	跪拜（磕头）	342
光影运用	193	跪着祈祷	343
广播室	357	滚（挑、减）水坝	115
广彩	157	滚凳	256
广储司	89	郭	126, 128
广德寺多宝塔	365	郭沫若故居	379
广缎	219	郭熙《窠石平远图》轴	211
广珪琅	267	国朝	66
广珪琅描金夔龙纹双耳高足碗	270	国号	66
广珪琅贴金八宝纹攒盒	270	国花台	55
广珪琅贴金锦袱纹瓶	270	国际保护中心	11
广珪琅贴金银花卉纹洗	270	国际博物馆文物保护协会	359
广告牌	356	国际博物馆协会	359
广兰	157	国际博协博物馆职业道德准则	359
广宁真人	346	国际博协各委员会	359
广润良雨寺	59	国际博协中国委员会	359
广窑	141	国际考古与历史博物馆委员会	359
广州公社旧址	376	国际历史艺术品保护协会	11
广州农民运动讲习所旧址	376	国际文物保护与修复研究中心	11
归农	104	国家文物鉴定委员会	10
归葬	104	国家文物局	10
圭表	284	国家文物委员会	10
龟背纹	223	国舅	65
龟甲	8	国民党“一大”旧址	376
龟纽	294	国师	335
龟纹	129, 176	国史馆	43, 77, 92
龟形	293	国玺	292
龟兆	8	国丈	64
珪	172	国子监	91, 361
规格	234	国子监博士	92
皈依佛门	340	国子监典籍	92
鬼斧神工	171	国子监典籍	92
鬼面（皮）皴	197	国子监贡生	92
簠	121	国子监祭酒	91
柜	256	国子监监生（太学生）	92
柜格	257	国子监监事	91
贵妃	65	国子监司业	91
贵妃椅	254	国子监学录	92
贵人	65	国子监学正	92
桂浆	246	国子监助教	92

號季子白盘	132
裹头	115
裹腿	263
过失杀	113
过枝	159

H

哈达	339
哈里哈里罗世自在观音菩萨	329
哈罗哈罗观音菩萨	329
海丰红宫红场旧址	376
瓯疆	109
海螺（法螺）	338
海马	30
海马葡萄纹	130
海兽海水纹	259
海水江牙	162
海水江崖纹	223
海水龙	161
海水游龙纹	242
海水云龙纹	223
海滩淤沙地	106
海棠红	155
海棠花	159
海棠式凳	255
海宴堂	60
玲	172
含新亭	54
涵洞	115
涵虚堂	59
涵元门（殿）	50
涵远堂	58
韩幹《牧马图》卷	210
韩滉《五牛图》卷	210
韩非子	311
韩湘子	344
寒雀纹	224
寒山寺（苏州）	336
行什	30

夯土	14
夯土垫实	23
夯土结构	20
汉白玉	23, 33
汉代示南勺	321
汉代陶船	322
汉瓦当文	296
汉瓦纹	224
汉魏洛阳故城遗址	370
汉文	296
汉篆	296
旱烟袋	230
翰林学士	92, 101
翰林院	92, 101
翰林院编修	92
翰林院待诏	92
翰林院典簿	92
翰林院检讨	92
翰林院孔目	92
翰林院侍读	92
翰林院侍读学士	92
翰林院侍讲	92
翰林院侍讲学士	92
翰林院庶常馆	92
翰林院修撰	92
翰林院掌院学士	92
杭罗	219
豪华版	304
好	128
好太王碑	185
号	339
号带火筒	110
号令森严	110
号筒	301
铏	123
合（不合）画法	193
合（不合）远近	193
合范	118
合欢树	48
合金	117

合香礼	75	黑漆洒螺钿百宝嵌石榴纹插屏	265
合龙门	115	黑色观音菩萨	329
合勺抄撮	105	黑砂（金刚砂）	171
合十	343	黑陶细颈镂空高足杯	163
合碗	149	黑釉蓝斑腰鼓	166
合葬	13	黑釉铁绣花四系瓶	166
何仙姑	344	珩	172
和辑兵民	109	横（“勒”）	179
和奸	113	横（“一”，如列阵之排云）	178
和硕格格	66	横枨	261
和硕公主	65	横档	261
和田绸	218	横幅（披）	191
和玺彩画	31	横木	26
河道总督	97	横披（轴）	180
河工	115	横系梁	26
河姆渡遗址	369	衡	128
河姆渡船桨	322	衡器	324
河姆渡文化	5	烘烧	143
河套人（鄂尔多斯人）	3	弘仁《黄山天都峰图》轴	216
河套文化	4	弘扬民族文化	355
荷包	230	弘治（孝宗朱祐樞）	386
荷风薰露	51	红	154, 201
荷叶瓣	196	红白玛瑙双鱼花插	283
荷叶式盘	241	红斑	156
盂	122	红宝石佛手	283
盒	152	红宝石帽顶（一品官）	228
贺清泰（今译路易斯·德·普瓦洛）	84	红本	72
褐（栗）色漆	239	红本库	43, 77
褐	154	红边画绢	188
褐黄	202	红尘	342
褐色	202	红档	72
鹤壁窑	140	红雕漆兰亭雅集图挂屏	265
鹤鹿同春	31	红雕漆盆灵芝万年青盆景	288
黑瓷	144	红雕漆羲之爱鹅图鼻烟壶	280
黑漆	239	红翡	169
黑漆边框点翠万花献瑞图围屏	265	红间黑带	246
黑漆款彩百鸟朝凤图八扇屏	265	红敦	326
黑漆描金百宝嵌屏风	266	红晶（石榴石）	170
黑漆木楼嵌铜花大座钟	287	红晶	297
黑漆嵌螺钿花蝶纹翘头案	264	红绫本	72

红楼梦	314	后缘	125
红玛瑙	169	后周	385
红木	251	候选	102
红木百宝嵌九狮图香料盒	274	胡	125
红木边框嵌玉插屏	265	胡瓌《卓歇图》卷	210
红漆嵌螺钿寿字炕桌	265	胡椒点	196
红墙绿瓦，交相映衬	21	胡琴	302
红色微怒手持金刚菩萨	329	壶	122, 151
红砂	171	壶瓶	151
红山文化	4	壶嘴（口）	145
红珊瑚狮	283	斛石斗升	105
红珊瑚云蝠纹如意	291	葫芦瓶	150
红四方面军总指挥部旧址	377	葫芦双喜纹	224
红陶布纹碗	163	葫芦形	293
红陶三足鬲	163	湖笔徽墨	175
红土	23	湖滨各桥	59
红土地层	13	湖山真意	56
红外线辐射	353	湖田窑址	372
红衣鸟枪	110	蝴蝶	161
红勇保护法	330	蝴蝶装	306
红釉高足碗	164	虎符	128
红玉（红宝石）	169	虎纽	294
洪武（太祖朱元璋）	386	虎皮裙观音菩萨	329
洪武南藏（1398年）	333	虎枪长	90
洪熙（仁宗朱高炽）	386	虎枪营	90
鸿宝	160	虎噬鹿铜座	9
鸿胪寺	91	虎噬猪纹	130
鸿胪寺卿	91	虎书	296
鸿胪寺少卿	91	虎眼石	170
侯马晋国遗址	370	虎爪形	293
后妃	65	琥	172
后妃常服袍（褂）	225	琥珀	170, 297
后妃龙褂	225	琥珀光素鼻烟壶	279
后汉	385	户部	90
后扈大臣	90	户丁	106
后晋	385	户由执照	106
后梁	385	护城河	25, 36
后三宫	48	护法空行	331
后蜀	385	护军营	95
后唐	385	护墙	24

花柏、花几	258	华严清界	53
花边画绢	188	华严寺（大同）	336
花边领	233	华严宗	325
花布	234	华严宗教义	332
花插	151	华岩《白云松舍图》轴	216
花承阁	57	滑泥	142
花绸	218	滑石（皂石、冻石）	170
花蝶纹	162, 242	化石标本	352
花缎	219	化石层	6
花粉分析	7	化石骨骼	6
花觚	151, 241	化石线索	5
花果朵	159	画	190
花毫	175	画的年代和出处	204
花卉	192	画法	194
花卉漏斗	152	画法集陈、陆二家之长，兼工带写，创“钩花点叶”派	208
花梨木	251	画法学某某，喜用枯笔焦墨	207
花梨木狮爪椅	266	画法主要继承南宋院体，兼师宋元各家之长，融汇变化，自成一家	207
花梨木四出头官帽椅	264	画珐琅	267
花翎	229	画珐琅“大吉”葫芦瓶	269
花翎顶戴	99	画珐琅鼻烟壶	277
花绫	219	画珐琅缠枝花卉纹攒盒	270
花玛瑙行舟捕鱼图鼻烟壶	278	画珐琅缠枝花卉五福捧寿罩炭盆	270
花民	106	画珐琅长方盆碧桃盆景	288
花鸟（蝶）纹	224	画珐琅福寿双耳活环瓶	270
花盆	149	画珐琅海棠花式瓶	270
花盆底鞋	231	画珐琅花鸟纹镂空天球式冠架	270
花山头	24	画珐琅开光海马椭圆手炉	270
花山岩画	367	画珐琅开光山水花鸟提梁壶	269
花饰	158	画珐琅开光山水人物鱼缸	270
花束纹	162	画珐琅莲托杂宝纹筒炉	270
花毯、挂毯	233	画珐琅菱花式盆琥珀佛手盆景	288
花纹文字	131	画珐琅饕餮纹提梁卣	270
花心（旋眼）	31	画珐琅桃式洗	269
花形	293	画珐琅西洋人物风景六棱瓶	270
花押印（元押）	292	画珐琅饕餮纹荷叶式鼻烟碟	279
花釉瓷	144	画珐琅玉堂富贵图直颈瓶	269
华（花）拱	27		
华表	14, 25		
华盖	76		
华严经	333		

画工细腻秀丽	209	皇嫡长孙	64
画柜	256	皇帝	63
画花（彩花）	158	皇帝常服袍（褂）	225
画绢	188	皇帝朝冠	227
画泉两叠法	201	皇帝复位	68
画像石（砖）	184	皇帝龙褂	225
画像石墓	12	皇帝之宝（檀木质、盘龙纽、玺文为满汉文合璧）	299
画学分南北二宗，影响后世甚大	208	皇甫墩	59
画院	206	皇父摄政王	67
画中游	56	皇高祖考	63
桦木	251	皇宫	24
桦木百宝嵌玉堂富贵纹盒	274	皇贵妃	65
怀抱爽	51	皇贵太妃	63
怀表（挂表）	284	皇后	65
怀远斋	51	皇后朝冠	228
淮南子	311	皇后之宝（金质、交龙纽、玺文为满汉文合璧）	299
欢迎参观	355	皇极殿	41
欢迎惠顾	358	皇考	63
欢迎批评	355	皇女（公主）	65
雕毫	175	皇亲国戚	64
还原焰	143	皇穹宇	49
环	171, 205	皇上	63
环碧	61	皇史宬	77, 360
环壁楼	52	皇室成员	63
环带纹	129	皇室家谱	63
环耳	119	皇叔父摄政王	67
环纽	295	皇太妃	63
寰宇访碑录	317	皇太后	63
缓决	112	皇太后临朝	67
幻灯片	356	皇太孙	64
焕章殿	47	皇太子（皇储）	63
荒地	106	皇天后土	66
皇包衣	81	皇天上清金阙帝君灵书紫文上经	347
皇妣	63	皇统	63
皇伯（叔）	63	皇位继承人	67
皇朝惯例和祖制	69	皇曾祖考	63
皇朝家法	69	皇族（皇室）	63
皇城	62		
皇城墙	25		

皇祖	63	黄砂	171
皇祖妣	63	黄山	380
皇祖考	63	黄铜	117
黄	154, 202	黄铜矿	117
黄柏	251	黄威罗瓦金刚	329
黄斑	156	黄杨木	251, 297
黄堡镇耀州窑遗址	372	黄杨木雕董其昌题诗笔筒	273
黄布禄金刚	330	黄杨木雕枫叶洗	274
黄彩	156	黄杨木雕活环链葫芦	274
黄册	72	黄杨木雕三螭海棠式盒	274
黄带子	64	黄杨木雕仕女	274
黄档	72	黄杨木嵌金蝠珠石如意	290
黄档房	77	黄釉褐（绿）彩	157
黄地粉彩雕松竹如意	290	黄釉三彩瓷双龙纹绣墩	264
黄帝陵	15, 372	黄玉	169, 297
黄恭望《富春山居图》卷	213	璜	172
黄褐	154	觚	171
黄鹤楼	59	灰	202
黄花岗七十二烈士墓	375	灰褐色	202
黄花岗百宝嵌顶竖柜	265	灰绿	202
黄花岗鬼面木纹	261	灰青	153
黄花岗六足折叠式榻	265	魑	130
黄花岗梨木	251	辉铜矿	117
黄花岗梨木百宝嵌石榴绶带纹盒	274	徽号	66, 107
黄花岗梨喷面式方桌	264	回避	104
黄花岗束腰方桌	264	回回锦	219
黄花岗双螭纹玫瑰椅	264	回回青	153
黄花岗铜包角长桌	264	回署	102
黄花岗万字纹围架子床	265	回纹	129, 163, 223
黄花岗梨座面鹿角椅	266	回音壁	49
黄花竹	115	回转窑	142
黄教	326	猋簋	132
黄金	117	汇考	304
黄居寀《山鹧棘雀图》轴	211	会典	304
黄鹂	161	会芳堂	57
黄绫本	72	会计司	89
黄龙	380	会试（京试）	99
黄埔军校旧址	376	会试	109
黄漆	239	会试举人	109
黄筌《写生珍禽图》卷	211	会元	100

荟亭	57
绘画大师	206
惠陵（清穆宗毅皇帝之陵）	18
喙	120
毁建数次	22
浑金（彩绘）	31
魂瓶	151
混合色	190
混描	201
豁免	105
活动鸟兽	285
活动装置	285
活佛	335
活樨结构	261
活跃于1607-1640后,以卖画为生	209
活捉	110
火候	143
火烤	114
火镰套	230
火炉	33
火牌火票	111
火盆架	258
火票	72
火器营（神机营）	95
火墙	33
火葬	13
伙盗	114
霍去病墓	374

J

璜	172
机械钟（表）	284
机芯	285
机绣	221
鸡	161
鸡冠壶	151
鸡毫	175
鸡奸	114
鸡皮纹	155

鸡首壶	151
鸡心碗	149
鸡血石	170, 297
积红	154
基本陈列	354
缉	235
缉获	113
缉米珠	235
稽察钦奉上谕事件处	87
稽察员	87
及第	100
吉安所	79
吉服	225
吉服带	229
吉服冠	228
吉服冠顶	228
吉善金刚	329
吉祥天母	328
吉祥纹	223
吉祥语	131
吉祥云	57
吉语印	292
吉云楼	46
吉州窑	140
汲冢竹书	318
极乐世界	53, 341
极为罕见的遗物	6
即位、登极	66
即位号为	66
即位诏书	66
急件（急办）	72
急救室	358
集古录	317
集水孔	35
集仙传	347
集义殿	43
集注	304
瘠田	106
几	252
几何图案	130

几何纹	162	霁红	155
脊	125	霁青	153
脊檩	26	霁清轩	58
戟	125	加帮	115
戟耳	145	加彩	157
戟门	50	加级	102
戟门桥	50	加冕典礼	66
计时	284	加热器	353
计时器	284	加湿器	353
记名铭文	131	加书干支的横款	247
记事铭文	131	加衔	102
记者招待会	356	加作父戊爵	132
纪年（本纪）	305	夹纻	244, 246
纪念碑	184	夹袄	232
纪念品出售处	358	夹袍	232
纪事	305	夹砂灰陶	144
纪事本末	305	夹头棒	261
继位、嗣位	67	夹纻绸	218
祭……王祠	75	夹宣	175
祭城隍	75	夹叶点	196
祭地	75	夹叶法	196
祭典	75	迦里迦尊者	330
祭红	154	迦诺迦跋黎坠者尊者	330
祭火神	75	迦诺迦伐蹉尊者	330
祭兰	154	迦叶佛	328
祭历代帝王庙	75	枷号一个月	112
祭炼	348	枷楠香木雕花佩	274
祭社稷	75	袈裟	341
祭祀	75, 131	嘉靖（世宗朱厚熜）	386
祭祀供品	76	嘉璠	48
祭太庙	75	嘉庆（仁宗爱新觉罗颙琰）	387
祭天	75	嘉兴藏	333
祭文	107	嘉荫轩	57
祭先蚕	75	嘉祐铜则	324
祭先农	75	郟县窑	139
祭先医	75	埽	122
祭仪	107	甲骨	8
祭圜丘	75	甲骨文	8, 177
寄畅园	362	甲午战争纪念地	375
寄澜亭	54	甲冑	126

钾	122	建筑结构与装饰	20
钾氩法	7	建筑群	20
架格	257	建筑设计	20
架机案、搁板桌	253	建筑师	20
架木	116	建筑装饰件	128
架子床	255	建筑艺术	20
假画真印	204	剑	126
尖头点	196	剑饰	173
尖状器	7	健锐营	95
尖足绣花小脚鞋	232	洞磁村定窑遗址	371
奸久情密	114	鉴	123
坚供不移	112	鉴定	352
肩	125	鉴赏家	206
肩宽	234	鉴远堂	59
监生	101	键（栓塞）	126
监围守丘刻石	184	箭、矢	126
监御史	94	箭亭	40
兼工带写	194	箭头	8
兼毫	175	箭袖	234
缣	188, 218	礮礮马道	25
拣选	102	江绸	218
检选举人	104	江海波涛法	201
检验设备	353	江孜宗山抗英遗址	375
剪纸贴花	158	将材	109
剪装	205	将军宝	338
减笔描	201	将军崖岩画	367
减等发落	112	豇豆红	155
“减柱造”法式	27	讲解	355
简仪（简易浑天仪）	320	讲解艺术	356
见春亭	52	讲解员	355
建朝	66	蒋友仁（号德翊，今译米歇尔·伯努瓦）	84
建储匣	67	降调	103
建坊	108	降俸	104
建福宫	46	降俸二级	104
建福宫花园	46	降级	103
建文（惠帝朱允炆）	386	降魔金刚锤	339
建窑	140	降魔金刚斧	339
建筑风格（形式）	20	降座	69
建筑工程	20	绛红纨	220
建筑宏伟	21		

绛雪轩	39	窖藏	13
酱釉	155	窖穴	6
交代	103	接待室	358
交换	352	接任	103
交脚坐	340	接署	103
交龙纽	294	揭	206
交盘	103	揭贴	72
交泰殿	38	街门	24
交泰殿内的铜壶滴漏	47	节尖	126
交机	255	诟告	111
交椅	255	杰作	206
交椅式躺椅	255	洁白如玉	157
郊坛下窑	140	解任	103
浇釉	142	解说词	356
浇注	143	解索皱	196
浇铸	117	解脱	340
浇铸法	118	解元	100
娇黄	154	解州关帝庙	364
蕉叶纹	130, 162, 260	介寿台	55
角	122	戒	332
角枅	261	戒博迦尊者	330
角科斗拱后尾	27	戒法	331
角梁尾	26	戒律	346
角楼	25, 36	戒指	173
角器	8	届期	103
角柱	27	“介”字点	195
角柱石	27	界湖桥	59
角椎体屋顶（金字塔屋顶）	28	界画	192
绞胎	142	界绫	205
绞纛法	235	巾折裱	205
绞釉	142	金（银）累丝	235, 280
脚蹬	113	金（银）丝	280
脚踏、脚凳	256	金（银）胎	244
搅色玻璃鼻烟壶	277	金（银、翡翠、珊瑚）扣	234
搅色玻璃罐式鼻烟壶	279	金	297, 385
剿抚	110	金“宜子宜孙”双喜小如意	290
缴批	104	金鳌玉舫桥	51
轿（舆）	76	金宝	73
轿箱	257	金宝地锦	218
教唆陷害	111	金碧辉煌	21
教习贡生	104		

金碧色	203	金嵌红宝石蜻蜓簪	283
金碧山水	193	金嵌蓝宝石葫芦式盒	281
金编钟一套	282	金嵌珍珠宝石佛窝	281
金箔	280	金嵌珍珠宝石塔	281
金藏（1173 年）	332	金嵌珍珠藏经匣	281
金册	73, 282	金嵌珍珠松石楼式龕	281
金成娘满汉文册	282	金嵌珠“金匱永固”杯	281
金角端香薰	281	金嵌珠立佛	281
金盖白玉藏文碗	282	金嵌珠天球仪	281
金刚	329	金鞘铜柄铁剑	133
金刚亥母	328	金山	61
金刚经（金刚波罗密多经）	333	金石录	316
金刚槌	339	金双耳四足炉	281
金刚空行	330	金水桥	36
金刚空行手持金刚菩萨	329	金胎画珐琅孔雀尾形鼻烟壶	279
金刚萨埵（金刚勇识菩萨）	329	金胎画珐琅执壶	282
金刚神（门神）	331	金胎绿珐琅嵌红宝石高足盖碗	282
金刚手	329	金胎掐丝珐琅开光仕女图执壶	268
金刚座	340	金胎珊瑚桃式盒	282
金刚座舍利宝塔	365	金亭式香筒	281
金棺银椁	12	金土	23
金鹤鹿同春挂屏	281	金瓦	22
金鹤式香薰	281	金委角长方盆红宝石梅花盆景	289
金黄	202	金文学	131
金笈	189	金线	221
金笈纸本水墨册页八开	206	金镶翠碧玺四孔花插	282
金累丝万年如意	291	金镶红蓝宝石戒指	283
金累丝镶珠松石香囊	281	金镶珠翠蝙蝠耳钳	283
金累丝簪花嵌松石坛城	281	金镶珠翠手镯	283
金陵刻经处	336	金镶珠石兰花蛸蛸簪	283
金龙凤双喜四字盘	282	金镶祖母绿钻石戒指	283
金镂空扳指盒	282	金镶钻石蝉别针表	287
金缕玉衣	9, 173	金星玻璃鼻烟壶	277
金銮殿	62	金星石	170
金轮宝	338	金银错	245, 268
金瓶梅	314	金银平脱	245
金瓶掣签	340	金银器	280
金瓶珍珠梅花盆景	288	金银丝细工	118
金漆	239	金银线	221
金漆龙纹宝座	265	金银线绣	222

金鱼	338
金玉刀描	201
金约	231
金云鹤纹盖罐	282
金云龙纹提炉	281
金蟠花八宝双凤盆	281
金蟠花如意	290
金蟠双喜团寿纹茶碗	282
金蟠云龙葫芦式执壶	282
金属胎	244, 268
金属胎珐琅	267
金属胎珐琅鼻烟壶	277
金砖	22
襟	233
紧身	226
紧袖	234
锦、织锦	218
锦地	158
锦鸡纹	242
锦袍	231
锦纹	163
锦衣卫	90
锦字	222
尽髡去发	114
进合叠宴	75
进士	100
进士出身	100
进士及第	100
进行成人教育	355
晋辟雍碑	185
晋祠	363
晋墓装璜陶马	322
浸制标本	352
禁、案	123
禁按喇叭	358
禁城	62
禁止回转	358
禁止停车	358
禁止通行	358
禁止携带武器和违禁品	357

禁止珍贵文物图书出口暂行办法	11
禁止左（右）转	358
茎	126
京察	103
京城	62
京旗	95
京绣	221
经、史、子、集	305
经藏（素坦纛藏）	332
经常去博物馆的公众	351
经费银	105
经管	103
经锦	218
经皮	233
经师	334, 349
经书七义	109
经纬赤道式日晷	286
经线	235
经箱	241
经营位置	192
经折装	306
旌表	108
精品	278
精神病患者和醉酒者不得入内	357
井冈山革命遗址	376
井亭	50
颈（脖子）	145
颈部款识	247
颈部细长	147
景德镇窑	141
景福阁	57
景福宫	42
景观	354
景和门	38
景陵（明宣宗章皇帝之陵）	17
景陵（清圣祖仁皇帝之陵）	18
景祺阁	42
景仁宫	40
景山	49

景泰（代宗朱祁钰）	386	九守	346
景星殿	50	九羊消寒图	224
景阳宫	40	九寨沟	380
景运门	37	旧石器	7
警备严密	110	旧石器时代	1
胥厝	110	旧石器文化	3
径山藏（即嘉兴藏）	333	臼齿	3
净跨	25	救度佛母	328
净瓶	151	就云楼	58
净水瓶	338	拘留孙佛	327
净土宗	326	居士	335
敬模	204	居住遗址	6
敬事房	78	■	233
敬事房首领太监	81	桔黄	202
敬事房总管太监	81	桔皮纹	155
静安寺（上海）	336	菊花	158
静憩轩	51	菊花点	196
静物画	192	菊纹三彩珐花瓶	164
静心斋	52	举劾	103
静宜园	54	举架	29
镜	128	举人	100
镜光亭	50	举手加额	108
镜花缘	315	桦木	251
镜框	354	巨典礼成	107
镜奁	258	巨然《秋山问道图》轴	210
镜桥	60	巨然《溪山兰若图》卷	212
镜台	258	巨猿	2
鸱尾结合	261	具有重要的科学价值	7
鸱尾樟枅	261	距今	7
鸱杖首	128	惧罪潜逃	113
九成宫碑	186	锯	127
九叠篆	296	镌刻	118, 171
九九制	21	卷	191
九龙壁	40	卷鼻足	264
九排八十一门钉	25	卷草纹	224, 242, 260
九品等级制	97	卷棚顶	28
九品文官补子（练雀）	227	卷书式几	252
九品武官补子（海马）	227	卷书式脚案	253
九卿房	37	卷书式圈椅	254
九日山摩崖石刻	367	卷头案	252

卷叶纹	260
卷云纹	196
卷云纹	259
卷轴	191
卷轴装	306
倦勤斋	45
绢	188, 220
绢裱	205
绝对年代	7
饔	127
绝品	278
玦	172
掘头钉描	197
榱桷	295
爵(雀)	121
爵杯形	293
爵位	64
军机处	37, 77, 86
军机大臣(大军机、枢臣)	86
军机大臣	79
军机档	72
军机行走	79, 87
军机章京(小军机、枢曹)	86
军机章京	79
军机重务	110
军警学生半价	357
军事博物馆	351
军营文报	72
钧台钧窑遗址	372
钧窑	139
郡君	65
郡王	64
郡王世子	64
郡主	65

K

卡尺	128
卡墙	24
卡子花	261

开宝藏(即北宋官本大藏经)	332
开叉	234
开光	158
开光云龙纹	243
开元道藏	346
开斋	343
楷书	177
楷书《义利辨》	182
楷书单行款	247
勘合	111
龛室	336
堪舆风水之说	20
坎肩、背心、马甲	232
砍砸器	7
瞰碧台	55
康陵(明武宗毅皇帝之陵)	17
康熙(圣祖爱新觉罗玄烨)	387
康熙“育德勤民”宝玺(檀木质、瑞兽纽、玺文为汉文篆书)	299
康熙癸丑款	247
抗粮	105
炕	33
炕火口	33
炕屏	258
炕桌	253
考工	305
考工记	318
考古博物馆	351
考古队	5
考古发掘管理	11
考古工作者	5
考古勘探	5
考古图	317
考古学	5
考古学家	5
考课	103
考试武举	111
考选	102

拷打	114	孔雀石嵌珠宝蓬莱仙景盆景	289
靠背椅	254	孔雀石山水人物插屏	283
珂粉	190	孔望山摩崖造像	365
柯姑娘（卡尔小姐）（今译凯瑟琳·奥古斯塔·卡尔）	85	控制环境污染	353
科技博物馆	350	控珠龙	161
科甲	99, 109	口	119
科甲出身	99	口边长	146
科举	99, 109	口横（方器）	147
科敛	105	口径（圆器）	146
科学（工艺）实验室	352	口径长	146
科学地发掘与清理	6	口距（多口瓶）	147
磕长头	342	口沿款识	247
蝌蚪文	177, 296	口缘镶铜边	147
克孜尔千佛洞	365	口纵（方器）	147
刻、剔	244	叩头（叩拜）	70
刻本	304	叩谢	70
刻刀（铁笔）	298	枯笔焦墨	194
刻花	281	枯槎嫩桠纹	260
刻花装饰	145	骷髏纹	197
刻划花	158	苦海	342
刻灰	246	苦行僧	335
刻书处	78	酷（极、惨）刑	113
客民	106	块料	23
憲斋集古录	317	快餐部	358
缙丝	219	宽	146
缙绣	221	宽袖	234
空间组合	21	款	203
空门	340	款彩（俗称刻灰）	240
空气调节（器）	353	款彩	246
空气过滤器	353	款识	203
空气污染	353	款足	120, 146
空行佛母	328	狂草	178
孔林	374	狂草《诸上座帖》	182
孔庙、孔府、孔林	381	矿石	117
孔雀	161	矿岩标本	352
孔雀佛母	328	亏空	105
孔雀开屏	286	葵瓣盘	241
孔雀绿	153	葵瓣碗	149
孔雀石	170	■	129
孔雀石鼻烟壶	279	夔凤纹	259

夔龙纹	242
夔龙纹、拐子龙纹	259
夔纹、拐子纹	259
髹残《层岩叠壑图》轴	216
髹残《雨洗山根图》轴	216
坤宁宫	38
坤宁门	38, 49
昆明湖	60
昆吾刀	171
捆打	114
壶门	262
壶门券口	262
廓如亭	59

L

拉卜楞寺	363
拉萨祈祷大法会（俗称传召大法会）	342
喇嘛	335
喇嘛教徒	335
腊（脊）	126
腊玛古猿化石地点	368
蜡染	235
蜡烛灯和灯笼	33
辣椒红	155
来云依日	56
莱菔尊	150
徕远司	93
兰桂齐芳纹	224
兰花	158
岚翠间	59
拦河坝	115
拦水线	262
栏杆格	257
阑	125
蓝	153, 202
蓝宝石	169
蓝宝石帽顶（三品官）	228
蓝玻璃套两色蔬果纹	

鼻烟壶	279
蓝采和	344
蓝地珐琅彩缠枝花纹瓶	165
蓝晶	170
蓝翎侍卫	90
蓝翎总承	90
蓝铜矿（石青）	117
蓝透明珐琅贴金片八宝纹面盆	270
蓝透明珐琅贴金银花五供	271
蓝田人	2
蓝田猿人遗址	369
蓝瑛《白云红树图》轴	215
篮纹	162
郎世宁（字若瑟，今译朱塞佩·卡斯蒂廖内）	83
郎世宁《平安春信图》轴	216
郎窑	141
琅璠	175
琅玕刻石	185
廊道	24
浪花纹	129
浪涛纹	259
老佛爷	63
老红	190
老君岩造像	368
老绿	190
老青花	154
老式机械钟（表）	284
老祖宗	63
酪膳房	58
乐纳	105
乐农轩	58
乐山大佛	366
乐寿堂	42, 54
乐寿堂西廊法帖	47
乐箱	285
勒克司（照明单位）	355
勒限严缉	113
雷纹	162, 244

雷孝思（字永维，今译让·巴蒂斯特·雷吉斯）	83	历史博物馆	350
鼎	122	历史博物馆学	350
垒砌	115	历史文化名城保护规划	11
泪痕	155	立（直）耳	119
类目	305	立……为后	73
类人猿	2	立储	67
类书	305	立储密旨	67
类志	305	立等可取	357
楞严寺藏（即嘉兴藏）	333	立佛	341
冷枚《梧桐双兔图》轴	216	立决正法	113
离宫	62	立有战功	110
离任	103	立柱	263
离骚	312	吏	97
礼部	91	吏部	90
礼服	225	丽江古城	382
礼经、礼记	307	丽景轩	44
礼器碑	185	丽水窑	140
礼亲王	64	隶书	177
礼仪监	89	隶书《战国策》	182
礼制	20	栗色	202
礼制文物	76	砾石石器	8
李衍《四清图》卷	213	奩	128, 241
李迪《风雨归牧图》卷	212	连方围子罗汉床	255
李公麟《摹韦偃牧放图》卷	211	连续菱形纹	131
李时珍墓	374	连续双线椭圆纹	131
李唐《采薇图》卷	212	连檐庑房	24
李唐《万壑松风图》卷	212	连枝纹	224
李铁拐	344	连珠章	204
李自成墓	374	莲瓣式	149
里漆嵌螺钿花鸟纹罗汉床	265	莲瓣纹	162
理藩院	93	莲瓣纹金碗	10
理论博物馆学	350	莲花	158, 338
理事十大臣	80	莲花生	327
理刑司	93	莲花手观音菩萨	328
陵寝窑	141	莲花碗	149
历代陵寝	108	莲花舞自在观音菩萨	329
历代名画记	315	莲花玉兔形	293
历代钟鼎彝器款识法帖	317	莲花宗	326
厉审	112	莲花坐	340
		莲花座	340

莲蓬	158	量器	323
莲实纹	243	辽	385
联帮棍	263	辽陵（祖陵和庆陵）	16
联二櫺	256	辽上京遗址	371
联环	119	辽阳壁画墓群	374
联句	180, 191	聊斋志异	314
联三（四）柜	257	燎炉	50
联三櫺	256	料石花	286
联珠纹	223	瞭望	110
廉价版	304	列传	305
儼	127	列子	310
敛底	120	劣迹	103
敛口	119, 146	烈妇	108
敛口窄边	147	烈女	108
敛圆口	148	猎纹	130
练绢	188	林良《灌木集禽图》卷	214
练桥	60	林则徐墓	379
炼度（超度亡魂的法事）	348	林则徐销烟池与虎门炮台旧址	375
链条	285	临	194
良渚文化	4	临朝	69
凉带	230	临河殿	56
梁	384	临时陈列	354
梁架	25	临帖	180
梁架结构	25	临溪亭	46
梁楷《八高僧故事图》卷	212	临终遗诏	72
梁楷《泼墨仙人图》轴	212	临淄齐国故城	370
梁师闵《芦汀密雪图》卷	211	琳光殿	52
梁柱结构体系	25	鳞纹	129
粮道	97	櫟（栢）	26
“两柱香”线	262	灵宝领教济度金书	347
两卷枅	261	灵宝派	344
两卷相抵圆枅	261	灵宝天尊	345
两屉桌	253	灵芬室	54
两头夔	129	灵骨	340
两尾龙	129	灵童	335
两袖通长	234	灵岩寺	363
两议具奏	112	灵岩霞蔚	59
两用方桌	253	灵隐寺（杭州）	337
两造	111	灵芝	159
亮脚	262	灵芝纹	223, 242

棱恩殿	14	刘松年《四景山水图》卷	212
棱恩门	14	留佳亭	54
玲珑	171	留览	71
玲珑钵	338	留青	271
玲珑剔透的玉雕	173	留青雕刻	271
铃	124, 301	留任	103
铃杵	338	留言簿	355
陵墓	12	留园	362
陵寝保护与发掘	19	留中	71
陵寝管理烧造砖瓦官	19	流	120
陵寝门（三座门）	14	流杯渠	41
陵寝司工匠	19	流长（壶）	147
陵寝驻防	19	流动博物馆	351
陵寝总管	19	流动陈列	354
菱花	159	流内官	104
菱花钉	32	流苏	230
菱花式盒	241	流外官	104
菱花式盘	241	流窝	106
菱花碗	149	流云双鹤盒子	23
菱形格子	32	流云纹	223
菱形纹	162	琉璃宝顶	29
棂格架格	257	琉璃岔角	23
棂星门	14	琉璃灯笼砖	23
翎管	229	琉璃构件	23
翎毛	192	琉璃河遗址	370
羚羊角柄犀角雕云龙嵌石鞘刀	277	琉璃技术	23
羚羊角鞘刀	277	琉璃门	50
绫	219	琉璃配料	23
绫裱	205	琉璃影壁	14
绫子	188	琉璃砖瓦	23
领侍卫府	90	鍍金	245
领侍卫内大臣	79, 90	鍍金扣	234
领约	231	柳斗杯	149
领运	105	柳斗罐	151
另纸款识（后幅）	203	柳斗纹	163
令旗令箭	110	柳江人	3
刘珏《夏云欲雨图》轴	214	柳桥	60
刘少奇故居	379	柳叶描	197
刘松龄（字乔年，今译奥古斯 廷·德·哈勒施泰因）	83	柳叶文	296
		绉纹	155

六瓣碗	149	龙泉窑雕龙纹瓷罐	165
六臂永保护法	330	龙山文化（黑陶文化）	4
六部尚书	91	龙首带钩	229
六部右侍郎	91	龙首耳	148
六部左侍郎	91	龙书	296
六丁六甲	345	龙头（螭首）石雕水注	34
六法	192	龙王庙	60
六方形	293	龙纹	222, 242, 258
六管瓶	150	龙纹金方（圆）版饰带	229
六和塔	364	龙吻	30
六角墩	255	龙戏珠天花板	31
六科给事中	93	龙戏珠纹	258
六科掌印给事中	93	龙形角牙	262
六品文官补子（鹭鸶）	227	龙眼宝珠	32
六品武官补子（彪）	227	龙云石柱	34
六扇可移动屏风	257	龙尊王佛	328
六扇折屏	257	珑	172
六腿折叠床	256	隆福门	38
六柱门围子架子床	256	隆庆（穆宗朱载垕）	386
六足高几	252	隆宗门	37
六祖坛经（坛经）（中国禅宗经籍）	334	楼观派	344
龙	30, 129, 161	镂雕	142
龙藏（1735-1738年）	333	镂花	275
龙藏寺碑	186	镂花阳文金帽顶（九品官）	228
龙凤穿花纹	223	镂花阴文金帽顶（八品官）	228
龙凤门	14	镂金错彩	268
龙凤寿字纹	243	镂空	118, 142
龙凤纹	242, 259	镂空花薰	152
龙凤云雕石栏杆	34	镂空蟠螭纹鼎	133
龙骨戟	152	镂空套瓶	150
龙柜	256	镂空填漆	245
龙角描	201	镂钻	275
龙锦彩画	31	漏壶（水钟）	284
龙门石窟	365, 383	卢	121
龙鸟交织	130	卢斗	27
龙纽	294	芦沟桥	377
龙盘虎绕	130	芦雁图	243
龙袍	225	庐山	381
龙泉窑	139	炉	128
		泸定桥	377

颅	3	绿地开光粉彩耍戏图鼻烟壶	280
颅顶部	3	绿救度佛母	328
卤簿	76	绿漆	239
卤簿大驾（全副执事）	108	绿畦亭	56
卤簿乐	303	绿蛇纹石	170
卤簿仪仗	76	绿松石（土耳其石）	170
卤地	106	绿松石雕填金扁圆鼻烟壶	279
卤壶	151	绿营	95
鲁大司徒铺	132	绿勇保护法	330
鲁桥	221	绿釉六博陶俑	164
鲁迅墓	379	绿釉陶堡垒（模型）	10
陆地山脉点	196	绿玉（绿宝石）	169
录音导游	356	鸾凤书	296
鹿	31	銮驾卤簿	76, 303
鹿毫	175	銮驾内库	78
鹿角傍牌	110	銮铃	127
鹿角椅	277	銮仪使	89
禄星	345	銮仪卫	78, 89
路费银	105	銮舆司	89
盪顶（平顶四坡）	29	卵青	153
盪驹尊	132	乱柴皴	196
戮纱	220	乱麻皴	196
戮尸	113	乱云（云头）皴	196
漏铜	218	略加陞用	103
鹭鸶卧莲盒子	23	略卖	114
露胎	143	轮回	340
露胎贴花	158	轮奸	114
露天博物馆	351	轮相	341
露天陈列	354	轮制	141
露天庭院	24	论藏（阿毗达磨藏）	332
露天窑	142	论师（精通律藏的僧人）	334
吕洞宾	344	论语	306
吕纪《桂菊山禽图》轴	214	罗	219
旅顺监狱旧址	378	罗布林卡	362
律藏（毗奈耶藏）	332	罗广祥（今译尼古拉·约瑟夫·罗）	85
律例馆	94	罗锅桥	60
绿	153, 202	罗锅枨	261
绿彩（硬彩）	156	罗锅枨加矮老	261
绿翠	169	罗汉	330
绿地黄缠枝花纹高足碗	166		

罗汉床	255
罗汉椅	254
罗曼式柱头（带枕柱头）	27
罗盘	230
罗聘《人物山水》册	216
罗纹	176
罗雅各（字味诏，今译亚克·罗）	82
𪛗	124, 301
螺钿	26
螺旋纹（涡纹）	129
落地大座钟	284

M

麻浩崖墓	374
麻皮皴	196
麻雀	161
麻织物	220
马坝人	2
马步箭	111
马厂源遗址	369
马盥壶	151
马夫	111
马褂	231
马冠	127
马国贤（今译马泰奥·里帕）	83
马和之《后赤壁赋图》卷	212
马家浜文化	5
马家窑文化	4
马家窑遗址	369
马面饰	127
马纽	294
马踏飞燕	10
马蹄袖	234
马蹄足	264
马蹄尊	150
马头	111
马头短刀	126
马头金刚	329

马牙皴	197
马远《踏歌图》卷	212
马远《月夜拔阮图》卷	212
马站	111
玛瑙	297
玛瑙“马上封侯”鼻烟壶	278
玛瑙螭耳杯	283
玛瑙凸雕桃盆料石花卉盆景	289
玛尼轮	339
码礅	115
蚂蜂描	197
麦积山石窟	365
麦穗流星	110
满白文	295
满本	72
满本房	77
满档	72
满档房	77
满汉合璧印书	296
满红文	295
满花	222
满文	296
满装、旗装	225
蔓草凤草纹	162
蔓草纹	159, 224
蟒袍	226
蟒纹	223
猫眼石	170
毛笔	175
毛雕	244, 271
毛公鼎	132
毛刻	275
毛毯	233
毛织物	220
矛	125
矛头	8
茅盾故居	379
茅山派	344
卯眼	261
茂陵（汉武帝刘彻之陵）	15

茂陵（明献宗纯皇帝之陵）	17	秘色瓷	144
茂陵	372	密集金刚	329
帽顶	228	密折	70
帽顶红绒结	229	密宗	326
帽顶算盘结	229	棉袄	232
帽顶装饰	228	棉布	234
帽花、帽饰	229	棉坎肩	232
帽正	229	棉裤	232
懋勤殿	37	棉袍	232
么磨小吏	104	棉绒、纬绒、平绒	220
没骨画	194	棉线	221
玫瑰	159	棉鞋	232
玫瑰红	202	棉织物	220
玫瑰椅	254	免费入场	356
玫瑰紫	154	面	128
眉脊	3	面径（圆器）	146
梅花	158	面九进五	21
梅花点	196	描	194
梅花式凳	255	描金 118, 158, 245, 260, 268	
梅花式盘	241	描金花边	245
梅瓶	150	描金六字三行篆款	247
梅子青	153	描金漆	239
楣（过梁、框缘）	26	描金云龙纹直颈瓶	165
美人图	162	描金罩漆	239
门齿	3	秒针	285
门神	345	妙法莲花经（法华经）	333
闷户橱	256	妙觉寺	57
蒙古文石刻	187	妙髻云峰	52
蒙文	296	妙音佛母	328
孟子	306	庙底沟文化	4
梦溪笔谈	319	庙号	66
弥勒佛	327	庙享	107
迷宫	43	民办作坊造鼻烟壶	278
米点皴	196	民间服装	231
米黄	202	民俗博物馆	351
米色	154	民窑	142
米友仁《潇湘奇观图》卷	212	民族风格（形式）	20
米友仁《云山得意图》卷	212	皿	123
秘密觐见	70	闵明我（字德先，今译菲利普·玛丽·格里马尔迪）	82
秘色	153		

画	385	明剔犀云头纹二层盒	248
名匠精品	286	明填彩漆八宝小圆盒	249
名章	203	明填彩漆梵文荷叶盘	248
明暗对比	193	明五暗十（五间两进）	21
明暗对比、立体感强	195	明孝陵（太祖朱元璋之陵， 南京）	16
明暗法	193	明孝陵	373
明摆表	284	明信片	356
明朝	386	明杏黄祥云蟒妆花纱袍	236
明大红地龟背如意瑞华锦		明裔	69
大氅	236	明永乐“天字”铜手銃	323
明代程君房墨	176	明中都皇城及皇陵石刻	371
明代方于鲁墨	176	鸣鏊	126
明代浑天仪	320	命妇	81
明代坤舆万国全图	321	摹	296
明珰花	158	摹	194
明韩希孟绣《宋元名迹册》	236	摹本	206
明黑漆百宝嵌花卉方笔筒	249	摹某氏某画	204
明黑漆百宝嵌梅蝶圆盒	248	摹拟陈列	354
明洪武铁炮	323	摹印篆	296
明洪武铜手銃	323	摹真本	304
明嘉靖辛丑佛朗机铜銃	323	模型	143, 354
明景表尺	323	摩尼光佛	327
明缙丝《瑶池集庆图》轴	236	摩尼珠	337
明楼	14	磨光	246
明器	13	磨痕	143
明钹金彩漆花卉寿字形盒	248	磨显填漆	245
明清皇家陵寝	382	磨制石器	7
明三暗五	21	抹红	155
明十三陵（北京昌平）	16	抹金	118, 158
明十三陵	373	莫高窟	365, 381
明剔彩云龙捧盒	248	墨	175, 189
明剔黑多宝碗	249	墨彩（黑彩）	156
明剔黑开光花鸟纹梅瓶	248	墨晶	170, 297
明剔红杜甫诗图圆盒	248	墨妙轩	58
明剔红抚琴图八方盒	248	墨玉（黑宝石）	169
明剔红龙凤纹瓜楞式执壶	249	墨玉	297
明剔红三桃福祿寿字圆盘	248	墨玉嵌石三多如意	290
明剔红松鹤延年图圆盘	248	墨子	310
明剔红婴戏图靶碗	248	谋杀	113
明剔红鹦鹉牡丹葵瓣盘	248		

璆	121
某某画(笔)	204
某某作(画)	204
母范	118
母系社会	1
牡丹	158
牡丹红	190
牡丹亭	314
牡丹纹	223
木(泥、陶)俑	13
木秘	125
木板床	255
木版印刷	304
木变石	171
木柄嵌宝石九九如意	291
木柄嵌金饰如意	291
木雕彩绘观音像	274
木雕各式花卉如意	291
木雕嵌玉石染牙石榴如意	291
木雕天然笔筒	274
木钉	26
木椁墓	12
木灵芝海石菌盆景	289
木螺丝	26
木梳背椅	254
木胎	244
木胎海棠式盆翠竹盆景	289
木胎红漆床	256
木头	171
木鱼	302, 337
木制弩臂	126
木柱	27
目录卡	352
墓碑(表)	184
墓道	12
墓道天井	12
墓的形制	12
墓地	12
墓坑夯土层	14
墓前室	12

墓石	12
墓室	12
墓穴	12
墓俑	13
墓志	12
墓志铭	184
墓主人	13
慕陵(清宣宗成皇帝之陵)	19
穆王八马	160

N

拿问	103
那迦犀尊者	330
纳彩礼	75
纳纱	220
捺(“磔”)	179
捺(“丿”,如海岸之激浪或如闪电)	178
耐热瓷	145
男厕所	358
男装	231
男装坎肩	232
南北(荆南)	385
南北朝	384
南禅寺(山西)	336
南朝	384
南传佛教	325
南方增长天王	330
南官帽椅	254
南汉(越)	385
南湖	59
南湖岛	60
南华真经	347
南怀仁(字敦白,今译费迪南·韦比埃)	82
南京城墙	361
南京南朝陵墓石刻	368
南龕摩崖造像	366
南石窟寺	366

南书房	43, 77	内卷球足	264
南书房行走	81	内秘书院	77
南宋	385	内批	71
南唐（齐）	385	内前锋营	95
南天师道	344	内容设计	353
南无阿弥陀佛	327	内侍	79
南熏殿	47	内廷	62
楠木	251	内廷待诏	80
楠木嵌青花瓷心凳	266	内廷供奉	80
楠木云龙纹灯挂式椅	266	内廷行走	81
饶	123, 301	内外檐装饰	30
韶	113	内午门	61
脑量	3	内务府	46, 77, 88
内陞	102	内折	70
内	125	内柱	27
内壁	146	内奏事处	77
内部展览	355	内	190
内部整修暂停开放	359	能人	2
内城	62	能胜三界金刚	329
内大臣	79	尼庵	336
内典（本教的典籍）	332	泥封	298
内翻矮马蹄足	264	泥封技术	298
内翻书房	87	泥金	245
内翻云纹足	264	泥金画漆	239
内阁	76, 86	泥里拔钉敝	197
内阁大库	43, 77	泥模	118
内阁大堂	43	泥水	141
内阁大学士	86	泥胎	244
内阁典籍	86	泥质黑陶	144
内阁侍读	86	泥砖结构	20
内阁侍读学士	86	泥子、膏子	244
内阁协办大学士	86	倪瓒《渔庄秋霁图》轴	213
内阁学士	86	拟（依、同）某氏法	204
内阁中书	86	年代测定	352
内阁总理大臣	86	年号	66
内官监	78	年款	143, 246
内国史院	77	年窑	141
内弘文院	77	捻、搓	235
内画鼻烟壶	278	辇（步辇）	76
内监管理	80	念佛	343

念佛三昧	340
鸟虫书	177, 296
鸟鸣	285
鸟纽	295
鸟食罐	151
鸟兽纹	129, 161
鸟书	296
鸟纹爵	133
鸟形	293
聂耳墓	379
涅槃	340
涅槃四德	340
宁玛派	326
宁寿宫	41
宁寿宫花园	41
柠檬黄	202
凝道殿	47
牛胛骨	8
牛街礼拜寺	364
牛毛氍	196
牛腿	263
钮（顶、捏手）	145
钮扣	234
钮钟	124
农具	127
农业博物馆	351
浓色	225
奴才	81
奴隶祭祀坑	13
奴隶社会	1
奴隶殉葬墓	13
弩	125
弩弓	126
弩箭	126
女厕所	358
女官	81
女皇储	65
女居士	335
女摄政王	67
女真文石刻	187

女装	231
女装坎肩	232
腰围	24
挪移	105

O

瓯绣	221
藕香榭	54

P

拍板	302
排架	352
排水干道	34
排箫	302
排云殿	55
排云门	55
牌匾	184
牌额	184
牌坊	184
牌楼	25
潘廷章（今译约瑟夫·潘奇）	84
盘	123
盘肠	338
盘螭纽	294
盘风精舍	52
盘古	348
盘古真人	345
盘金绣	221
盘口鹅颈瓶	150
盘口瓶	150
盘龙纽	294
盘纹	259
盘子	148
蟠（龙、螭、夔）	129
蟠螭纹	129
蟠虺纹	129
蟠龙饕餮纹鼎	133
蟠龙纹	161, 222

蟠青室	52	琵琶	302
庞迪我（字顺阳，今译雅克·德·潘托哈）	81	琵琶襟坎肩	232
旁	71	琵琶形	293
胖袄棉甲	110	片金缎	219
抛撒死尸	114	片金纱	220
袍	231	瓢（长）塚	13
袍制狮纹鼻烟壶	280	票拟	72
跑人（转人、活动人）	285	撇（“掠”）	179
陪祭	107	撇口碗	149
陪祀	107	撇足	263
陪葬	13	频伽藏（1913年）（上海频伽精舍出版）	333
铍领	226	嫔	65
珮	172	嫔御	81
佩	230	品	97
配（耳）室	12	品尝御膳	108
配色	224	品官朝冠	228
喷面式方桌	253	品官礼服	226
盆	287	品级考	104
盆架	258	品级山	98
盆景	288	“品”字科斗拱	27
烹茶图	243	品字栏杆架格	257
蓬莱（三神山之一）	348	平安室	58
蓬莱水城及蓬莱阁	361	平底	148
蓬莱仙境	348	平雕	244
捧盒	240	平顶山惨案遗址	378
批	71	平江起义旧址	377
批本处	38, 77, 87	平櫨	26
披领长（宽）	235	平民	106
披麻皴	196	平桥	34
铍	127, 301	平泉法	201
皮袄	232	平身科斗拱后尾	27
皮库	78	平柴	105
皮袍	232	平头案	252
皮胎	244	平头点	195
皮条线	262	平脱	245
皮铁盔甲	110	平纹织物	220
毗卢舍那佛（大日如来）	326	平型关战役遗址	377
毗婆尸佛	327	平绣	221
毗舍浮佛	327	平遥城墙	361

平遥古城	382
平柱	27
评论家	206
苹果绿	153, 202
凭票入场	356
屏风(假墙)	354
屏风	257
屏门	32
屏条	191
瓶	149
瓶口	146
砑	123
泼墨	193
破笔点	196
破笔泼墨	194
破墨	193
破网皴	196
衰益	105
铺、筵	121
铺垫银	105
铺路石板	23
铺绒	220
铺首(门环)	128
铺首	33
匏匏	342
莆田派(也称闽派)	298
菩萨(菩提萨埵)	328
菩提树(佛树)	341
葡萄紫	154
蒲团(跪拜用)	342
璞	171
朴素无纹	145
普安殿	52
普及科学文化知识	355
普乐寺	61
普宁寺	61, 363
普宁寺版藏经(即元藏)	332
普仁寺	61
普通博物馆学	350
普通书	304

普陀宗乘庙	61
普陀宗乘之庙	363
普贤菩萨	328
榼榼	220

Q

七、八品武官补子(犀牛)	227
七级浮屠	336
七品文官补子(鹓鹓)	227
七屏风式靠背扶手横方形 宝座	254
七伤(应禁绝的七种行为)	346
七弦纹	163
七珍(藏传佛教)	338
七珍纹	242
七政仪(太阳系仪)	321
栖霞寺(南京)	337
威	125
漆工	261
漆砂碗盒	241
漆制鼻烟壶	278
齐	384
齐家文化	4
旗铃	124
其画格调清润明秀,甚有笔意	209
其它肖形印	293
奇石玉座	34, 48
祈年殿	49
骑兵俑	13
骑缝章	204
骑驾卤簿	76, 303
棋盘格式纹	131
棋桌	253
旗	94
旗袍	231
旗手卫	90
棲霞寺舍利塔	364
麒麟(独角兽)	14
麒麟	161

麒麟纽	294	绮	220
麒麟纹	242, 259	绮思楼	50
气	179	绮望轩	57
气韵生动	192	磻沙藏 (1322 年)	333
弃毁死尸	114	器名	131
汽泡	144	器物尺寸	146
启奠	108	器物各部	145
启帘归政	68	器心	146
启祥宫 (未央宫)	46	器心粘垫托	147
启运门	38	器之所有者	131
契丹文石刻	187	千峰彩翠	55
契约	131	千佛崖摩崖造像	366
起伏错落	21	千佛崖造像	366
起居注	72, 92, 306	千秋节庆典	74
起居注官	80, 92	千秋令节	107
起居注馆	77, 92	千秋亭	38
起认脏物	112	千圣殿	51
起突雕刻 (高浮雕)	275	千手千钵观音菩萨	328
掐丝	119, 267	千手千眼观音菩萨	328
掐丝珐琅 (俗称景泰蓝)	267	千章铜漏壶	320
掐丝珐琅宝相花纹鼻烟壶	279	牵牛花	159
掐丝珐琅鼻烟壶	277	铅丹	203
掐丝珐琅缠枝莲纹贡巴壶	268	铅粉	190
掐丝珐琅缠枝莲纹多穆壶	268	铅黄	203
掐丝珐琅缠枝莲纹兽耳三环尊	268	铅灰色	203
掐丝珐琅角端	268	铅釉陶	144
掐丝珐琅仿古铜狮戏纹尊	269	签到簿	355
掐丝珐琅勾莲纹瑞兽	269	签名	203
掐丝珐琅勾莲纹双连式鼻烟壶	279	钤印	298
掐丝珐琅荷塘白鹭图缸	268	前 (后) 开裾长	234
掐丝珐琅夔龙宝相花如意	290	前 (中、后) 室	12
掐丝珐琅夔龙纹暖碗盒	268	前朝后寝	62
掐丝珐琅镂空云龙纹转心瓶	269	前档	261
掐丝珐琅蟠螭纹四轮香车	269	前锋营	95
掐丝珐琅盆桃树盆景	288	前汉书	308
掐丝珐琅狮戏纹藏草瓶	268	前呼后应	21
掐丝珐琅兽面纹石榴尊	268	前任	103
掐丝珐琅桃式盆红珊瑚盆景	289	前三殿	48
掐丝珐琅天鸡尊	269	前蜀	385
掐丝珐琅仙鹤烛台	268	钱德明 (字若瑟, 今译让·约瑟)	

夫·玛丽·阿米奥)	84
钱纽	295
钱文漏窗(扇形窗)	32
钱纹	163
钱选《花鸟图》卷	213
钱眼(下水口)	34
乾摆灌浆,磨砖对缝	23
乾笔	193
乾陵(唐高宗李治与其妻武则天合葬墓)	15
乾陵	372
乾隆(高宗爱新觉罗弘历)	387
乾隆帝田黄三连玺	299
乾隆铭识	247
乾隆御题十色墨	176
乾清宫	37
乾清门	37, 48
乾清门两侧的八字照壁	47
潜心佛事	342
浅	152
浅凹底	148
浅浮雕	275
浅黄三彩	157
浅黄细纹密布	157
浅灰青釉出戟尊	164
浅绛	193
浅刻	271
浅青	153
嵌	260
嵌玻璃盆琥珀刘海戏蟾盆景	289
嵌瓷	260
嵌珐琅	260
嵌花	118
嵌金牛首玛瑙杯	10
嵌金银绿松石簪	133
嵌螺钿	118, 245, 260, 273
嵌螺钿漆器	240
嵌松石双耳活环瓶松树花卉盆景	289
嵌牙	260

嵌岩室	52
嵌银片	260
嵌银丝漆器	240
嵌玉	260
嵌云石	260
嵌珍珠(玛瑙、螺钿)	286
嵌钻石(料石、玻璃)	286
戗彩	245
戗金	118
戗金、镂金	245
戗金漆	239
戗金细钩描漆	245
戗金细钩填漆	245
戗金钻犀	245
戗银	245
强奸	114
敲出品	118
芥麦青瓷	144
桥梁、涵洞	34
桥陵(唐睿宗李旦之陵)	15
桥纽	295
巧说谎供	112
翘头案	252
翘头条几	252
撬门	114
茄皮紫	154
窃盗	114
窃曲纹	129
钦安殿	38, 49
钦颁	72
钦差大臣	80
钦此	72
钦赐	72, 74
钦点	72
钦定	71
钦命	72
钦天监	92
钦天监监丞	92
亲蚕殿	53
亲供	112

亲王	64	青花釉里红寒江独钓图鼻烟壶	279
亲政	68	青花釉里红鸳鸯莲花纹盘	164
亲政诏书	68	青黄	154
秦	384	青黄不接之候	106
秦始皇二十六年诏版	132	青金兰	154
秦始皇陵	372	青金石帽顶（四品官）	228
秦始皇陵兵马俑	10	青金石松泉人物山子	283
秦始皇陵和秦陵兵马俑	15	青莲岗文化	4
秦始皇陵及兵马俑坑	381	青龙	130, 345
秦雍城遗址	370	青龙寺（西安）	337
秦篆	296	青绿釉里雕牡丹纹瓶	164
琴	302	青绿色	203
琴纹描	197	青绿山水	193
琴桌	253	青色微含浅粉	157
禽兽瓦件	22	青田石	170, 297
禽嬉	285	青铜	117
勤政殿	53	青铜时代	1
勤政亲贤	67	青瓦	22
寝殿	49	青釉刻划花纹杯	163
沁泉廊	53	青釉绿（褐）彩	157
青	153	青玉	169, 297
青白	154	青玉浮雕百合柿子如意	291
青白瓷	144	青玉虎螭纽“三希堂精鉴玺”	300
青白石	33		
青白釉酒壶和温酒碗	164	青玉交龙纽“八徵耄耋之宝”	300
青白釉龙柄壶	164		
青碧山水图	224	青玉交龙纽“古稀天子之宝”	300
青瓷	144		
青瓷凤首壶	164	青玉描金题诗碗	283
青瓷莲花尊	164	青玉盆水仙花盆景	288
青花	154	青玉双连光素鼻烟壶	278
青花八宝纹香壶	164	青玉碗玉石灵芝盆景	289
青花缠枝牡丹纹兽耳盖罐	166	青玉镶荷鸟如意	291
青花瓷	144	青芝岫	54
青花斗形鸳鸯莲池纹侈口碗	166	轻骑减从	111
青花加紫	154	清白绫画花蝶短夹袄	238
青花加紫携杖出行图鼻烟壶	280	清彩漆戛金寿春束腰盘	249
青花兰中泛紫	157	清朝	387
青花僧帽壶	164	清大红缎绣花夹氅衣	236
青花狮子滚绣球墩	166	清代曹素功墨	176

清代遗老	69	清式抱鼓石	34
清点	352	清室善后委员会	69
清东陵（在河北遵化）	18	清室优待条例	69
清东陵	373	清剔彩葵瓣式三撞盒	249
清福陵（太祖努尔哈赤之陵）	17	清剔犀如意云纹凤尾尊	249
清宫服饰	225	清填彩漆锦纹方胜式盒	249
清宫造办处做钟处	286	清西陵（在河北易县）	18
清黑狐皮端罩	236	清西陵	373
清红缎绣花蝶高底鞋	237	清新俊逸	195
清红缎绣金鱼元宝底鞋	237	清宴舫	56
清红漆描金龙凤纹手炉	249	清遥亭	54
清湖色缎绣藤萝夹马褂	237	清漪园	60
清湖色缂丝竹石纹坎肩	237	清音山馆	56
清华轩	56	清月白缎织彩花蝶夹衬衣	237
清皇帝夏行服冠	237	清昭陵（太宗皇太极之陵）	18
清皇贵妃冬朝冠	237	清昭陵	373
清黄缎绣金龙皇帝大阅甲	237	清罩金漆荷花诗句盘	249
清黄色暗八宝纹绸棉袍	236	情愿抵偿	112
清金地几何花卉纹丝毯	238	擎天柱	14
清金线地“玉堂富贵”壁毯	238	请把垃圾扔进垃圾箱内	357
清康熙帝锁子金叶锦盔甲	237	请签到	355
清可轩	57	请提意见	355
清葵生款漆砂砚盒	249	请勿触动展品	355
清蓝缎织彩云金龙纹皮朝袍	236	请勿抚摸展品	355
清蓝缎织金龙凤高腰棉袜	237	请勿践踏草地	357
清蓝纱地描金龙单朝袍	236	请勿拍照	355
清蓝漳绒串珠云头朝靴	237	请勿攀登	357
清绿地剔红诗句笔筒	249	请勿攀折花木	357
清绿纱绣折枝梅花金团寿单衬衣	236	请勿随地吐痰	357
清描油折枝花卉长方匣	249	请勿吸烟	355
清明黄地纳纱彩云金龙朝袍	236	请勿在墙上涂写	357
清明黄地云蝠团寿妆花缎棉袍	236	请勿张贴	357
清明黄缎绣彩云金龙夹朝袍	236	庆典	74
清明黄缎珠绣朝靴	237	庆丰司	89
清乾隆明黄缎绣五彩云金龙盔甲	237	庆贺表笺	107
清洒金地嵌玉瓜纹漆唾盂	250	庆陵（明光宗贞皇帝之陵）	17
清识文描金团花攒盒	249	庆霄楼	52
清识文描金银桃式盒	249	磬	124, 172, 337
		釜	125
		邛窑	139

穷曲纹	129
穹桥	60
琼岛春阴碑	53
琼华岛	53
秋海棠式	149
秋葵	159
秋收起义文家市会师旧址	376
秋水亭	54
蚯蚓描	197
蚯蚓纹	155
楸木	251
求法	339
鷓鴣	161
曲尺式围子罗汉床	255
曲阜孔庙及孔府	361
曲阜鲁国故城	370
曲径通幽	21
曲廊	24
曲鑿（冲耳）	148
曲刃釜柄剑	133
曲水纹	223
曲线屋顶	28
驱虫剂	353
驱魔仪式	343
驱邪	343
屈斗宫德化窑遗址	372
屈家岭文化	4
屈家岭遗址	369
取暖	33
圈带纹	129
圈耳	119
圈椅	254
圈足	120, 146
权	128
权衡三界观音菩萨	329
全	206
全长	146
全身打洼	262
全唐诗	313
全招	112

全真道	343
全真道北宗	343
全真道南宗	343
泉州宗教石刻	186
铨衡	102
犬齿	3
劝惩	103
券洞（沟眼）	34
券口	262
券口牙条	262
券口牙子	262
缺口	143
赵曹鼎	132
雀替（托木）	26
阙楼	25
阙形龕	336
逡巡	110
裙	232
裙板	32
裙长	234
群祀	75
群仙祝寿	286
群仙祝寿大盆景	288
群仙祝寿图	243
R	
燃灯佛（锭光佛）	327
冉庄地道战遗址	378
染	194
染色	224, 275
染色绸	218
染牙	275
染牙苦瓜形鼻烟壶	280
让位于	67
绕道行使	358
绕佛（敬佛的礼仪）	342
热辐射	353
热河泉	61
人打钟	285

洒金星玻璃葫芦式鼻烟壶	279	三联洗	148
洒蓝	154	三绿	189
洒螺钿	260	三品戒	346
洒螺钿珐琅面圆凳	264	三品文官补子（孔雀）	226
萨迦派	326	三品武官补子（豹子）	227
“三朝五门”制	20	三屏风式罗汉床	255
三宝（道、经、师）	347	三旗包衣统领	95
三宝（佛、法、僧）	340	三旗侍卫	95
三才（天、地、人）	348	三旗宗室侍卫	95
三彩	156	三青	189
三彩嘶马和黄釉俯首马	10	三世佛	326
三彩釉陶灯台	164	三世章嘉国师	335
三藏（佛教经典总称）	332	三台阶石雕	14
三藏法师（精通三藏的法师）	334	三台石栏杆	14
三藏法师（玄奘）	334	三套钟	284
三层夹	176	三弯腿	263
三场体格	109	三希堂	45, 52
三辰仪	321	三希堂法帖	181
三传	308	三系把壶	151
三登方壶	151	三弦	302
三等平职	103	三眼花翎	229
三多	159	三羊开泰纹	224, 259
三覆奏	112	三羊尊	132
三公	80	三音石	49
三孤	80	三勇武手持金刚菩萨	329
三跪九叩礼	70	三友	159
三国	384	三友轩	41
三国演义	313	三元	101, 347
三国志	308	三元里平英团遗址	375
三呼万岁	70	三猿献宝	286
三甲赐同进士出身	109	三重台基栏杆	34
三交六椀菱花隔扇门及帘架	32	三转法轮经	333
三角援戈	133	三撞盒	240
三角云纹	130	三足灯台	258
三进九院落	21	三足兽纹甗	133
三开间方亭	24	三座洞门	115
三开间卷棚歇山式建筑	29	散斗	27
三孔瓶	150	散仙（无官职的神）	345
三连形	293	散斋	107
		桑亭桥	60

色布	234
色彩	224
色彩鲜艳	203
色调	224
色泥	141
色素	189
瑟	302
僧兵	342
僧帽壶	151
僧人	334
杀虫剂	353
沙弥	335
沙盘	354
沙眼	144
纱	220
砂胎	142
砂纸（轮）	171
山茶花	159
山顶洞人	2
山海经	308
山口分泉法	201
山料	171
山墙（三角墙）	24
山色湖光共一楼	56
山水	191
山水人物	162
山水宗某某，人物学某某，花鸟 效某某，墨竹师某某亦善书	207
杉槁	116
杉木	251
杉叶点	195
珊瑚	170
珊瑚红	155, 202
珊瑚麻姑献寿盆景	288
珊瑚帽顶（二品官）	228
珊瑚双喜字朝珠	283
扇面	191
扇面形南官帽椅	254
扇形银镶珐琅怀表	287
善（珍）本书	304

善巴拉菩萨王（地藏化身）	329
善观寺	57
善画花鸟，以水墨写意法见长	206
善画翎毛草虫，学某某设骨法	207
善画墨梅，笔力遒劲，与某某齐 名	207
善画墨竹，师法某某	206
善画山水，画法学某某，用笔纯 熟，可与某某比肩	207
善男信女	341
善扑营	90
善趣手持金刚菩萨	329
善因殿	52
缮（抄）本	304
鳍血纹	156
鳍鱼黄	154
鳍鱼青	153
伤证俱确	112
商（殷）	384
商君书、商子	311
商鞅量	133
商鞅铜方升	324
赏乘二人肩舆进宫	74
赏赐	73, 131
赏花图	243
赏紫禁城骑马	74
赏紫禁城坐轿	74
上（前）平樑	26
上壁	205
上朝	69
上帝楼	61
上颞骨	3
上杆	205
上供	342
上桁弦	26
上款	180
上乐金刚	329
上乐王佛	327
上梁	115
上林湖越窑遗址	371

上林苑	89	蛇纽	294
上清境（三清境之一）	348	舍丁	106
上清派	344	舍利佛	327
上饶集中营旧址	378	舍利塔	336
上三旗	94	舍利子	340
上上	97	设计图	354
上书房	37, 77	设色	193
上司	104	设色绢（纸）本	206
上驷院	89	社会主义社会	1
上贴	205	社稷江山金殿	47
上围（圆器）	146	社稷坛	50, 360
上下	97	赦前（后）	112
上下饰边线	147	摄律仪戒	332
上香（烧香）	343	摄善法戒	332
上衣	225	摄政	67
上釉烧法	143	摄政王	67
上谕	71	摄政者	67
上中	97	摄众生戒	332
“上林共府”铜升	324	申诉冤枉	112
尚宝监	78, 90	身	125
尚茶	89	身如直筒	147
尚膳	89	（深、中、浅）腹	119
尚膳监	78	深	152
尚书	94	深红	201
尚衣监	78	深刻	271
尚虞备用处	90	神	179, 345
烧成时间	143	神案	252
烧成温度	143	神道	14
烧骨	8	神道碑	14
烧焊	268	神房	79
烧蓝、烤蓝	267	神宫监	78
烧石	8	神怪鸟兽纹	130
烧箱	142	神武门	39, 49
勺	123	神畜	14
韶山冲毛泽东故居	379	神珠宝	338
少保	80	“神威大将军”铁膛铜炮	323
少傅	80	“神威无敌大将军”铜炮	323
少林寺（河南）	336	沈阳故宫	360
少师	80	沈阳故宫、盛京三陵	383
少詹事	88	沈周《策杖图》卷	214

沈周《西山纪游图》卷	214	狮吼观音菩萨	329
审供	112	狮面佛母	328
渗金宝顶	29	狮纽	294
渗漶	144	狮皮手持金刚菩萨	329
慎刑司	89	狮爪足	264
升殿（升座）	69	狮子	30, 161
升降式灯台	258	狮子滚绣球	161
升龙纹	258	狮子戏球纹	242
升平署（南府）	89	狮子座	341
升平署	77	十八子手串	230
升仙太子碑	186	十臂积光佛母	328
陞用	102	十二监	78
生石灰	23	十二扇大屏风	257
生态博物馆	351	十二章	222
生态陈列	354	十二章纹（日、月、星辰、山、 龙、华虫、宗彝、藻、火、粉 米、黼、黻）	222
生土	13	十国	385
生宣	175	十戒	332
生员（儒学）	100	十五盏猴子铜连灯	9
笙	302	十一面观音菩萨	328
绳壁纹	259	十重戒	332
绳耳	148	十字孔方直	133
绳纹	163	十字栏杆书格	257
圣骨	337	十字形镂空	118
圣骨龕	336	十字绣	222
圣寿节庆典	74	什邡堂邛窑遗址	371
圣训	71, 306	什锦窗	32
圣旨（诏）	71	石铤	8
省	96	石铲	8
省亲	104	石锄	8
盛京	62	石锤	8
盛懋《秋江待渡图》轴	213	石雕柱基华表	22
尸弃佛	327	石方	33
失蜡法	118	石舫	56
失去帝位	68	石斧	8
失去光泽	353	石工（匠）	33
失物招领处	358	石鼓文	177, 184
失误军机	110	石棺	12
诗经	307	石核石器	7
诗书画合一	206		
诗堂	205		

石黄（雌黄）	189	矢簠	126
石灰浆	23	始皇诏方升	324
石灰砂浆	23	始建国铜方斗	324
石栏杆	33	世界（国际）博物馆之友联合会	359
石绿	189	世界遗产委员会	11
石磨棒	8	世说新语	312
石磨盘	8	世袭	73
石墓	12	世袭……品	73
石片石器	8	世袭号	73
石器	7	世袭罔替	73
石器时代	1	世子	64
石青（佛青）	189	世祖	63
石渠宝笈	316	仕女图	191
石人	14	事出不测	110
石兽	14	事迹	103
石台五供	14	侍读	80
石湾窑	141	侍读学士	80
石簪	8	侍郎	94
石丈亭	54	侍卫	90
石钟山石窟	366	侍卫班领	90
石子路	48	侍卫处	90
时分按钮	285	侍御史	94
时乐钟	284	饰带	229
时伦王佛	327	饰件	230
时轮金刚	329	试掘	6
时应宫	51	试释译	7
时针	285	适宜藏品的小气候	352
识文描金	245	室内陈列	354
实录	305	室内请肃静	355
实录库	43	释迦牟尼	326
实榻门	32	释迦牟尼源流	331
实物	6	释迦文佛塔	364
实足	120	释氏要览	334
食柜	257	释文	7
炆器	144	谥号	66
史记	308	收藏家	206
史料	306	收藏印	204, 293
史密森学会	359	手表	284
史前时期	1	手串	230
史实画	192		

手法完美	194	兽足圆几	252
手工缝纫	235	瘦金体	178
手工镂空	235	瘦金体《五七言诗》	182
手工绣	221	爻文	296
手工业工具	127	书案	252
手工织造法	235	书法家	181
手扭	113	书格	257
手镯	173, 230	书柜	256
守护陵寝大臣	19	书函式匣	241
守陵寝总兵官	19	书画同源	206
守陵太监	19	书简（札）	181
首	126	书经、尚书	307
首盗	114	书刻铭款	246
首犯	114	书林清话	318
首告	111	书体	295
首领太监	90	书亭	358
寿安宫	46	书亭待鹤图	243
寿康宫	46	书桌	253
寿礼	74	枢府窑	140
寿山	173	叔父丁鬲	132
寿山福海纹	223	殊胜奔巴	338
寿山石（蛇纹石）	170	殊贤寺	61
寿山石	297	梳妆桌	253
寿星	345	疏密相间	21
寿宴	74	疏纵脱逃	113
寿药房	79	熟（生）绢	188
寿字纹	259	熟地	106
寿字形盒	241	熟石灰	23
受符	348	熟宣	175
受贺	70	署理	103
受祭者名	131	蜀	384
受戒	340, 348	蜀版藏经	333
受事	102	蜀情	219
售票处	356	蜀绣	221
售票时间	356	鼠足点	195
兽面纹	259	束颈	119
兽面衔环纹	259	束腰	262
兽面柱头	34	束腰马蹄足榻	255
兽首衔环	147	束腰圈椅	254
兽爪足	264	束腰圆脚踏	256

束腰直腿	263	双挂线	262
漱芳润	50	双眼花翎	229
漱芳斋	43	双圆盘	241
树木岩石皴	196	双圆形	293
树围	258	双缘宝盒	241
树叶点	195	双柱桁架	26
竖(“努”)	179	霜毫(兔毫)	175
竖下垂(“丨”,如万岁枯藤)	178	水丞	148, 176
竖柱	115	水滴子	35
庶常吉士	92	水洞沟遗址	369
耍头	26	水法	286
双(三)交四(六)槐菱花隔心	32	水阁	24
双层柜格	256	水官(解厄之神)	345
双层牡丹纹	243	水浒传	313
双层织物、改机	220	水浇	152
双耳瓶	150	水经注	308
双凤朝阳纹	259	水晶	170, 297
双幅	234	水晶雕云龙如意	290
双钩暗款	246	水晶灵芝如意	290
双钩回纹	259	水晶帽顶(五品官)	228
双钩描金花卉	259	水晶天鸡瓶	283
双环几	252	水口	201
双环亭	49	水乐亭	58
双款	203	水陆攻战纹鉴	133
双连瓶	150	水落管、水槽	35
双龙献宝纹	258	水磨砖	22
双罗锅枨	261	水墨	193
双面插屏	258	水木自亲	54
双面缎	219	水文考古	5
双面绣	222	水仙花	159
双面织物	220	水仙盆	149
双面钟	284	水榭	24
双钱卡子花	261	水心榭	61
双圈足	147	水云绘法	201
双人椅	254	水云榭	51
双丝绢	188	水葬	13
双桃式盒	241	水藻点	196
双亭	57	水周堂	56
		水注	152, 176
		吮笔(润毫)	181

顺陵	374	四合如意纹	223
顺贞门	39	四合院	24
顺治（始祖爱新觉罗福临）	387	四季花	159
说法	341	四季花卉纹	259
说明书	356	四件柜	256
说文解字	312	四角攒尖顶	28
司经局洗马	88	四开光绣墩	255
司礼监	78	四库全书	310
司马光墓	374	四库全书荟要	310
司马迁墓和祠	374	四灵	159
司设监	78	四马喷水	285
司务	94	四面亮山	24
司务厅	94	四面牙条	262
丝绸袍	231	四抹球纹隔扇门	32
丝纶	306	四品文官补子（云雁）	227
丝棉袍	232	四品武官补子（虎）	227
丝绒、经绒、天鹅绒	220	四坡复檐屋顶	28
丝线	221	四坡三角屋顶	28
丝绣	221	四坡式屋顶	28
丝织物	220	四扇屏	257
私渡关津	110	四神、四灵	130
私人收藏文物管理	11	四神祠	38
私印	292	四书	306
思陵（明怀宗愍皇帝之陵）	17	四体《千字文》	182
四半月形纹	130	四腿带撇足	264
四瓣花纹	130	四腿三弯	263
四宝	175	四腿兽匝	133
四臂金刚佛母	328	四系罐	151
四臂般若佛母	328	四镶	204
四臂观音菩萨	328	四艺	159
四臂永保护法	330	四执库	78
四出抱厦	24	四爪八蟒蟒袍	226
四出头官帽椅	254	四爪五蟒蟒袍	226
四出头藤编官帽椅	254	四字双行戗金楷款	247
四大臣辅政	67	寺庙	336
四大天王	330	寺洼文化	4
四谛（释迦牟尼的四条基本教义）	331	祀典	75, 131
四方	159	嗣皇帝	63
四皈依	340	嗣女	65
		松鹤延年图	243

松鹤斋	61	苏州文庙内宋代石刻	368
松花石壶卢碗	176	肃亲王	64
松江唐经幢	368	素花	222
松皮如绳皴	197	素金帽顶（七品官）	228
松皮鱼鳞皴	197	素绫	188
松石嵌宝石三镶如意	291	素面缎	219
松烟墨	189	素坯	141
松叶点	195	素漆	239
松针点	196	素三彩	157
松竹梅虫纹	243	素色	224
松竹梅纹	242	素烧	143
耸秀亭	42	素烧窑	142
宋	384	素牙条	262
宋藏	332	素牙头	262
宋代沉船	322	粟纹	130
宋代地理图	321	狻猊	30
宋代华夷图	321	酸枝木（即红木）	251
宋代禹迹图	321	蒜头瓶	150
宋花瓣形黑漆碗	247	隋	385
宋锦	219	隋代双体船	322
宋刻本	304	隋唐墓志	186
宋陵（北宋皇陵）	16	随安室	58
宋陵	373	随朝伴官	79
宋庆龄墓	379	随类赋彩	192
宋人《柳荫高士图》轴	211	随形山水组	295
宋沈子蕃缂丝《梅花寒鹊图》	235	随葬品	13
宋式锦	219	岁寒三友纹	224
宋朱克柔缂丝《鹁鸽图》	235	璜	173
诵经	343	遂安室	50
搜集方针	351	遂初堂	41
搜集任务	351	遂谋杀夫	114
饕餮	275	碎纹	156
苏泥	153	隧道券	12
苏式彩画	31	隧道窑	142
苏轼《古木怪石图》卷	211	燧石	8
苏绣	221	穗书	296
苏州古典园林	382	孙中山故居	379
苏州街	57	孙子	311
苏州天文图	321	榑	261
		榑法	261

榫卯结构	261
榫卯连接	261
梭柱	27
蓑衣裱	205
锁(管)脚枅	261
锁呐	302
锁绣	221

T

塔尔寺(青海)	337
塔尔寺	363
塔坛堂馆	24
拓本	180
榻	255
榻凳	256
胎质(骨)	142
胎质坚薄	145
胎质细密	145
台石	12
台座	354
抬梁法	27
太保	80
太常寺	91
太常寺博士	91
太常寺卿	91
太常寺少卿	91
太常寺寺丞	91
太傅	80
太和殿(金銮殿)	36
太和殿前广场	37
太和门	36, 48
太湖石	23
太皇太后	63
太皇太上皇	63
太极殿	45
太庙	49, 360
太平道	344
太平天国起义遗址	375
太平有象	286

太平御览	309
太清境(三清境之一)	348
太上感应篇	347
太上皇	63
太上皇帝之宝(碧玉质、交龙纽、 满汉文合璧)	300
太上混元皇帝	346
太上老君	346
太上老君开天经	347
太上三元法	347
太上玄元皇帝	346
太师	80
太师椅	254
太虚	348
太学	101
太液池	50
太液秋风	51
太医	93
太医院	42, 93
太医院吏目	93
太医院院判	93
太医院院使	93
太子少保	80
太子太保	80
泰昌(光宗朱常洛)	386
泰陵(明孝宗敬皇帝之陵)	17
泰陵(清世宗宪皇帝之陵)	18
泰山	380
泰山刻石	185
泰西缎	219
坍塌	115
坛城	339
坛纽	295
昙花阁	58
痰孟式	149
潭柘寺(北京)	336
檀木	297
檀香木、白檀	251
檀香木雕八仙庆寿像	274
炭盆	33

探方	6	陶工	141
探沟	6	陶器	144
探花	101	陶说	317
探针	6	陶土	141
碳-14 断代 (根据 5430 ± 40 半衰期)	7	陶武士俑	13
汤若望 (字道未, 今译让·亚当·沙尔·冯·贝尔)	82	陶俑	144
汤执中 (字精一, 今译皮埃尔·德·安卡维尔)	84	淘金	115
唐	385	绀首	113
唐“度作”铜尺	323	绀纹	129, 163
唐蕃会盟碑	186	鼗鼓	338
唐荟要	308	套杯	149
唐锦	219	套盒、屈盒	240
唐卡	192, 337	套色玻璃鼻烟壶	277
唐人《明皇幸蜀图》卷	210	套印 (大小数印套合而成)	294
唐三彩	156	特赐第	100
唐山窑	141	特磬	172, 301
唐寅《落霞孤鹜图》轴	215	特谕	71
唐寅《毅庵图》卷	215	特钟	123
糖铎洗	148	藤黄	190
螳螂	161	藤萝	159
躺椅	255	藤萝紫	190
涛 (浪花) 纹	163	藤胎	244
缘	205	剔彩	240
掏摸	114	剔黑	240
饕餮龙鸟纹觥	133	剔红	240
饕餮纹	129, 244	剔花	158
洮河砚	176	剔黄	240
桃红	155, 202	剔绿	240
鞀鼓	302	剔犀 (又称云雕)	240
陶车	141	梯形桌	253
陶瓷工人	141	绌	219
陶瓷工艺	141	提 (“策”)	179
陶瓷器	144	提督	96
陶瓷碎片	145	提督军务	96
陶瓷学	141	提督学道	96
陶瓷业	141	提督学使者	96
陶范	118	提督学政	96
		提梁	119
		提梁壶	151
		提炉	76

提匣	240	天然木	252
提刑按察使	96	天然木山子嵌玉石人物花卉盆景	
题跋	180, 203		288
题本（题奏）	70	天然银	280
题款	180	天然竹根灵芝如意	291
题米芾《蜀素帖》	182	天神	331
题签	180	天师	346
题诗	180, 203	天师道	344
体、腹	119	天书	348
体和殿	44	天顺（英宗朱祁镇）	386
体顺堂	45	天台宗	325
体元殿	45	天坛	49, 360, 382
体质特点	3	天条	348
剃度	340	天童寺（宁波）	337
天安门	48, 378	天文水表塔	321
天常仪	321	天文望远镜	321
天地	193, 204	天文钟	284
天盖	341	天象仪	321
天工开物	318	天一阁	361
天官	341	天一门	38
天官道藏	346	天圆地方	21
天官（赐福之神）	345	天圆地方的重檐攒尖顶多角亭	29
天后	344	天葬（场）	340
天井（窗）	24	天杖	338
天蓝	153, 202	天子	63
天龙八部	331	天子之宝（金质、交龙纽、玺文 为满文篆书）	299
天鹿桂月图	223	添补	204
天鹿纹	223	田告作母辛鼎	132
天禄流云	162	田黄石	170, 297
天马	30	田齐王陵	372
天目釉	157	田野考古	5
天女	331	甜白	153
天蓬床	256	填漆	239, 245
天平	128	填漆戗金云龙纹立柜	265
天启（熹宗朱由校）	386	桃花	220
天青	153	桃庙	49
天青石（青金石）	170	条案	252
天青窑变灰黄	157	条陈	71
天球（体）仪	321	条幅（贴落）	180
天球瓶	150		

条纹	163	通耳高（带提梁）	146
条纹玛瑙	170	通高（带盖器）	146
眺远斋	58	通花	222
贴刺绣	221	通奸	113
贴花	118, 158	通鉴辑览	309
贴黄（竹黄刻）	271	通戒	332
贴黄	72	通判	96
贴黄蝉纹方鼎	273	通体施釉	142
贴笺	205	通天岩石窟	367
贴金（彩绘）	31	通讯报导	356
贴金	118, 268, 281	通政参议	87
铁	117, 297	通政副使	87
铁斑	156	通政给事中	87
铁错银龙纹嵌松石如意	291	通政经历	87
铁骨	142	通政使	87
铁力木	251	通政使司	87
铁帽子王	64	通政知事	87
铁器时代	1	通知（告）	357
铁刃铜钺	9	通纸（米纸）	189
铁线皴	197	同进士出身	100
铁线描	197	同景	191
铁锈	117, 155	同僚	104
帖金或金箔	245	同知	96
厅	96	同治（穆宗爱新觉罗载淳）	387
厅室院落	24	桐荫仕女图	173
听鸿楼	51	铜	297
听鹂馆	56	铜包角长桌	253
听政	68	铜贝鼈	48
廷寄	72, 306	铜病	353
亭纽	295	铜车马	10
亭台楼阁	23	铜错金博山炉	9
庭院高土图	243	铜灯塔式座表	287
“停泥城砖”	23	铜镀金八仙如意	290
停车	358	铜镀金宝顶	29
停车处（场）	358	铜镀金博山炉	133
停止参观	356	铜镀金长方盆三星献寿盆景	289
停止入场	356	铜镀金珐琅转花活动人物钟	287
停止售票	356	铜镀金翻伞转八仙钟	287
通长（带嘴壶）	146	铜镀金龟纽“珍妃之印”满汉合璧印文	300
通典	304, 309		

铜镀金海棠式盆红珊瑚盆景	288	统领	95
铜镀金荷花缸钟	287	统辖	109
铜镀金皇帝腰带带扣表	287	筒瓦	22
铜镀金孔雀开屏钟	287	筒子河	47
铜镀金累丝嵌翠三镶如意	290	头盖、头巾	233
铜镀金六十二字壶	133	头骨	3
铜镀金镂空如意	291	头骨化石	6
铜镀金盆红宝石梅花盆景	288	头花	231
铜镀金嵌珐琅楼渔樵耕读钟	287	头绿	189
铜镀金嵌珐琅套筒式千里镜	282	头品顶戴	99
铜镀金嵌珐琅围屏式钟	287	头青	189
铜镀金嵌珠料钻如意式表	287	头陀	335
铜镀金饰玛瑙望远镜表	287	投供	112
铜镀金镶银片八角奩盒表	287	投首	111
铜镀金象拉战车表	287	投掷石器	8
铜镀金写字人钟	287	透雕	273
铜镀金鑿花盆翠竹盆景	288	透雕、镂空	260
铜镀金鑿寿字长方盆梅花盆景	288	透雕靠背圈椅	254
铜风车式钟	286	透雕细工	21
铜锅	48	透格门圆角柜	256
铜鹤	48	透花	158, 281
铜红	155	透明的	145
铜壶滴漏	286	透明珐琅	267
铜火车头模型表	287	凸(凹)刀	8
铜立车	322	凸(浮)雕	245
铜炉	48	凸凹法	193
铜绿	117, 153, 202	凸雕	163
铜牛	59	凸面	145
铜器镶嵌技术	118	凸缘	147
铜钱	128	突	125
铜狮子	48	突出的头(猿)	2
铜石并用时代(红铜时代)	1	突檐	24
铜双翼神兽	9	图	190
铜丝胎	244	图表	354
铜胎画珐琅开光花卉鼻烟壶	279	图书馆	46
铜亭	56	图书集成	305
铜锈	117	图书文献	305
铜永孟(内有124字铭文)	9	图书行柜	256
童试(州试)	99	图章	203
统计	352	涂泥浆	142

涂田	106
土布	234
土地神	345
土地堂	349
土坑墓	12
土民	106
土目	106
土壤标本	352
土舍	105
土司	105
土葬	13
兔毫斑	155
菟丝纹	155
团城	53
团螭纹	259
团花纹	163, 223, 259
团练	110
团龙纹	222, 242
团体 20 人以上凭介绍信半价	357
推背图	347
退朝	69
退出摄政	67
退位、逊位	67
退位诏书	67
屯丁	106
托钵僧	335
托角牙子	262
托克托日鲁	320
托泥	262
拖泥带水皴	197
拖尾纸	205
脱漏户口	106
脱胎	142, 244
驼纽	294
驼绒	220
椭圆仿翠玻璃鼻烟壶	279
椭圆圈足	147
椭圆形	293
唾壶	151

V

V 形檐槽	28
-------	----

W

挖耳钗	231
洼堂肚	262
蛙纽	295
瓦当	22
瓦件造型	22
瓦楞帽	233
瓦纽	295
瓦纹	129
瓦窑堡革命旧址	377
袜类	231
外八庙	61
外壁	146
外壁加双圈	147
外编	306
外宾服务部	358
外城	62
外翻云纹足	264
外纪	305
外戚	64
外翘转足	264
外史（传）	305
外廷	62
外檐额枋	26
外折	71
外转	102
纨	220
纨素	220
完整无损	6
晚唐花鸟纹嵌螺钿黑漆经箱	247
皖南古村落	382
皖派	298
碗（盘、杯）边	146
碗（盘、杯）口	145

碗	148, 241	王希孟《千里江山图》卷	211
卍字饰	32, 243, 259	王兴之夫妇墓志	186
万安宫	44	王爷	64
万部华严经塔	364	王渊《竹石集禽图》轴	214
万春亭	38	王原祁《为问亭作山水》册	216
万佛楼	53	王振鹏《伯牙鼓琴图》卷	213
万佛堂石窟	366	王致诚(今译让·德尼·阿蒂雷)	84
万福万寿纹	223	网师园	362
万蝠纹	259	网纹	163, 243
万里长城—八达岭	360	望蟾阁	59
万里长城—嘉峪关	361	望山	126
万里长城—山海关	361	望天吼	14
万历(神宗朱翊钧)	386	望柱(指路灯)	14
万历藏(即嘉兴藏)	333	望柱	33
万善殿	51	璫	173
万寿道藏	346	危险, 请勿接近	357
万寿节庆典	74	威德吉祥天母	328
万寿山	60	威胜天王	330
万寿圣节	107	为从	114
万岁爷	63	围床	256
万字河	59	围墓沟	13
万字菊纹	224	围屏	257
万字纹	130, 162	唯实宗(法相宗)	325
万字纹围子架子床	256	维摩诘	329
王包衣	81	维摩经(维摩诘经)	334
王翬《千崖万壑图》卷	215	未人流	98
王翬《重江叠嶂图》卷	216	位育斋	39
王建墓(五代前蜀帝王建之墓)	15	纬锦	218
王建墓	373	纬线	235
王鉴《长松仙阁图》轴	215	纬线起花	235
王履《华山图》册	214	味	179
王蒙《青卞隐居图》轴	213	味闲斋	57
王蒙《桃源春晓图》卷	213	味余书室	43
王冕《墨梅图》轴	214	委角	148
王命旗牌	110	委角方盒	241
王诜《渔村小雪图》卷	211	委牌	104
王时敏《浮岚暖翠图》卷	215	曹	127
王庭筠《幽竹枯槎图》卷	213	魏	384
王铜衡杆	324	魏碑	177

魏晋南北朝墓志	186	约》以来,到2005年7月已有	
温壶	151	31处遗产获得联合国教科文组	
文昌帝君	345	织世界遗产委员会批准列入	
文昌阁	59	《世界遗产名录》	380
文村	205	卧佛	341
文官补子	226	卧龙纽	294
文华殿	42	卧象纽	294
文会图	243	卧足	146
文嘉《琵琶行图》轴	215	卧足碗	149
文具	175	乌间朱线	246
文凭	104	乌金	155
文殊菩萨	328	乌木、乌檀	251
文物保护单位管理	11	乌纱帽	229
文物保护管理暂行条例	11	邬扎那亚手持金刚菩萨	329
文物出境管理	11	诬告	111
文物线索	5	诬良为盗	112
文献通考	309	诬轻为重	112
文心雕龙	313	屋顶式样	28
文渊阁	43	屋顶圆头(宝顶)	29
文徵明《古木寒泉图》卷	215	屋脊檐头	28
文徵明《绿荫长话图》轴	215	屋檐与托座	26
文竹(竹黄)	271	无尽意轩	55
文竹雕暗八仙寿字如意	291	无靠手直椅	254
文竹方胜式屨盒	272	无梁殿	27
文竹刻春寿字盒	273	无量殿	57
文竹双莲蓬式盒	273	无量寿佛	327
文字说明(中、外文)	355	无量寿经(大无量寿经)	
文字资料	6	(大经)	334
纹(开)片	156	无墙博物馆	351
纹	155	无上秘要	347
纹理	260	无实权的皇帝	68
闻讣	104	无世袭爵位	73
吻兽	29	无束腰	262
问道图	243	无束腰圆八字形腿	263
问渡图	242	无袖	233
问讯台	357	无眼蓝翎	229
瓮城	25	吴	384, 385
瓮棺	12	吴历《静深秋晓图》轴	216
涡纹	163	吴历《拟古脱古山水》轴	216
我国自1985年签署《世界遗产公			

吴伟《渔乐图》卷	214
吴越	385
吴镇《芦花寒雁图》轴	213
涪溪摩崖石刻	367
梧桐点	195
《五部律》(小乘佛教戒律)	332
五彩	156
五彩瓷盆白珊瑚盆景	289
五代	385
五代十国	385
五斗经	347
五方佛	327
五方阁	56
五凤楼(午门雁翅楼)	36
五蝠	160
五花土	13
五戒(戒杀,戒偷,戒淫,戒妄言,戒酒肉)	332
五戒	346
五金	117
五经	307
五经萃室	77
五老献寿图	243
五龙捧寿纹	258
五龙亭	52
五伦图	243
五逆罪	332
五品文官补子(白鹇)	227
五品武官补子(熊)	227
五屏风式镜台	258
五圣	346
五圣寺	57
五腿梅花式凳	255
五贤图	243
五行	349
五叶宝冠	338
五岳	160
五爪九鳞蟒袍	226
五爪龙	31
五爪龙袍	225

午门	36, 48
庑殿顶	28
武备院	88
武备院笔帖式	89
武备院郎中	89
武备院卿	89
武备院员外郎	89
武昌起义军政府旧址	375
武成殿	51
武城相帮七年戈	133
武当山古建筑群	382
武当山金殿	364
武官补子	227
武侯祠	361
武库司	94
武库司郎中	94
武库司员外郎	94
武陵源	380
武平铁权	324
武选司	94
武夷山	381
武英殿	47
武元直《赤壁夜游图》卷	213
“武成永固大将军”铜炮	323
舞	124
舞刀	111
舞饶	124
舞戚	124
舞人纽	295
戊戌变法	69
物化鉴定	7
误杀	113
悟道成佛	339
婺州窑	139
X	
鸛鹑木	251
夕佳楼	54
西安碑林	367

西安景龙池铜镜	322	锡庆门	40
西安事变旧址	377	锡杖	342
西柏坡中共中央旧址	378	溪涧涟漪法	201
西方广目天王	330	溪州铜柱	368
西方净土	341	熹平石经	185
西宫门	57	歃砚	176
西汉	384	席纹	163
西汉木安车	322	席心椅	254
西华门	47	洗、盆、盂	123
西晋	384	洗秋亭	58
西泠印社	298	洗手钵	342
西清古鉴	316	洗桐图	242
西清续鉴	316	洗象图	242
西山群仙会真记	347	洗子	148
西天	341	玺	292
西王母	344	玺绶	298
西魏	385	喜金刚	329
西狭颂	185	喜鹊	161
西夏	385	喜字冠	228
西夏陵（西夏皇陵）	16	戏杀	113
西夏陵	373	系杆（拉杆）	25
西夏文石刻	187	系梁（额枋）	25
西厢记	313	细（粗）瓷	145
西洋花草纹	260	细（粗）砂陶	144
西游记	313	细白如粉	157
西园雅集图	243	细布	234
西周	384	细垂藤点	196
吸水率	143	细勾云	201
牺尊（鸟兽尊）	122	细裂纹褐釉胆瓶	164
犀角	297	细泉法	201
犀角雕仿古莲纹爵杯	277	细石器	7
犀角雕双螭纹执壶	277	细石器文化	4
犀角雕松鹿纹笔架	277	细秀淡雅	195
犀角雕仙人乘槎杯	277	细叶点	196
犀角雕鹰熊纹合卺杯	277	楔赏亭	41
犀角镂雕螭柄兽面纹杯	276	匣、盒	240
犀角嵌金银丝夔纹扳指	277	瑕疵	143
犀皮漆（虎皮漆或菠萝漆）	240	辖	127
锡罐	117	覆钵	227
锡	117	下（后）平檐	26

下摆	233	咸福宫	44
下摆宽	234	咸若馆	46
下壁	205	衔	127
下第	100	衔环兽面耳	148
下颞骨	3	显气孔率	143
下桁弦	26	县	97
下款	180	县丞	97
下马碑（石）	74	县儒学教谕	97
下马石（碑）	48	县主簿	97
下埽	115	现存最大、最宏伟、最完整的古	
下裳	225	建筑群	22
下上	98	现存最大的木结构群	22
下水道	34	现任	102
下围（圆器）	147	现已失传	6
下五旗	95	线	220
下下	98	线脚	262
下中	98	线条粗浑	194
夏	384	线袜	232
夏布	234	线装	306
夏昶《湘江风雨图》卷	214	线装本	304
夏圭《山水十二景图》卷	212	线装书	304
仙官（有官职的神）	345	陷地浅刻	271
仙鹤	161	陷地深刻	271
仙鹤纹	242	献花图	243
仙家洞	39	献陵（明仁宗昭皇帝之陵）	16
仙女跨凤	162	乡试（省试）	99
仙人	344	乡试外帘五所官	109
仙人走兽全景	29	相（绝）对湿度	353
仙山洞府图	243	相（绝）对温度	353
先蚕坛	53	相对年代	7
先农坛	49	相交纹	130
先世功绩	131	香案	252
鲜红	155, 201	香草纹	242
闲丁	106	香铲	152
闲章	204, 292	香宸殿	50
贤德佛	328	香海真源	57
弦	126	香几	252
弦纹	129, 163	香炉	337
咸安宫	47	香囊	230
咸丰（文宗爱新觉罗奕訢）	387	香筒	337

香薰（香炉）	152	象牙雕海市蜃楼景屏	276
香岩宗印之阁	57	象牙雕海水双龙纹笔架	275
祥禽报瑞	286	象牙雕葵花笔搯	275
厢房	24	象牙雕柳荫奕棋图笔筒	275
翔龙纹	242	象牙雕镂空染色花卉纹八方盒	276
翔鸾阁	50	象牙雕群仙祝寿龙舟	276
湘鄂西革命根据地旧址	377	象牙雕染色佛手式盒	276
湘绣	221	象牙雕染色花卉纹香囊	276
箱	257	象牙雕山村别墅图插屏	276
镶	260	象牙雕十八罗汉渡海图臂搁	275
镶白旗	95	象牙雕松鹤挂屏	276
镶板	26	象牙雕松荫雅集图臂搁	275
镶红旗	95	象牙雕渔家乐图插屏	276
镶黄旗	94	象牙雕渔樵耕牧图笔筒	275
镶蓝旗	95	象牙雕月曼清游册	275
镶两色竹丝贴黄冠架	273	象牙雕云龙花鸟纹镜奁	276
镶嵌		象牙雕竹节草虫花插	276
118, 245, 260, 267, 273, 281		象牙笏	275
镶嵌漆器	240	象牙镂雕花鸟火镰套	276
镶嵌天花（井口天花）	31	象牙镂雕双喜大吉字葫芦形花薰	
镶嵌图案	31		276
镶嵌纹壶	133	象牙丝编织玉堂富贵图宫扇	276
镶嵌细工	118	象牙斋戒牌	275
镶铁钹金	273	象首示众	113
享殿	49	削	127
响堂山石窟	366	削发为僧	340
簋荐	107	骁骑营	95
向外弯曲的C靠背板	263	鸱	130
项、颈	119	鸱卤	122
项链	173	消除器	176
项圣谟《王维诗意图》册	215	绡	218
象纽	294	箫	302
象限仪	321	小（大）斧劈皴	197
象形文	295	小袄	232
象形字	177	小乘佛教	325
象牙	274, 297	小吃部	358
象牙本色	275	小凳子	255
象牙编凉席	276	小混点	195
象牙雕福寿宝相花套球	276	小楷	178
象牙雕抚琴图金里碗	276	小卖部	358

小品般若	333	泄水槽	34
小石粒铜扣	234	卸事	103
小兽	29	谢恩	70
小托	205	谢绝参观	358
小西天	53	獬豸	14, 30
小雁塔	364	璽青	153
小有天	56	蟹爪纹	155
小攒聚点	195	辛店文化	4
小昭寺（西藏）	337	辛亥革命	69
小篆	177, 296	新莽铜嘉量	324
小足	120	新莽铜文	323
孝经	307	新人	2
孝陵（清世祖章皇帝之陵）	18	新任	103
孝堂山郭氏墓石祠	362	新石器	7
孝堂山汉画像石	187	新石器时代	1
孝子顺孙	108	新石器文化	3
肖晨《杨柳归牧图》轴	216	新四军军部旧址	378
肖县窑	140	信息传播	356
肖形印	293	星拱瑶枢	55
歇山顶	28	星期六、日照常开放	358
歇山卷棚式	28	星象图	321
歇山式三间四柱九顶建筑	29	刑部	93
协助学校教育	355	邢窑	139
斜（尖）脊	28	行笔秀丽，布置茂密	206
斜方格	130	行草	178
斜方格纹彩陶罐	163	行草《神仙起居法》	182
斜脊人字（三角）屋顶	28	行草《张好好诗》	181
斜门殿	56	行草《张九龄〈白羽扇赋〉》	182
斜山	115	行草《致季常尺牍》	182
斜条（线）纹	163	行服	225
斜纹织物	220	行服带	229
谐奇趣	60	行服冠	228
谐趣园	54, 58	行服袍（褂）	226
携琴访友图	243	行宫	62
鞋类	231	行脚僧（云游僧）	335
鞋袜	231	行乐图	191
写妙石室	52	行李存放处	358
写秋轩	55	行龙纽	294
写生	193	行龙纹	222, 258
写意	193	行人寺	91

行人寺行人	91	袖	233
行囊	226	袖口宽	234
行书	178	袖岚书室	57
行书《伯远帖》	181	袖珍表	284
行书《高峰和尚行状》	182	绣垫	233
行书《祭侄文稿》	181	绣墩	255
行书《将之苕溪》或《苕溪诗》	182	绣工、刺绣活	221
行书《快雪时晴帖》	181	绣花	220
行书《兰亭序》(修禊帖)	181	绣花丝线	221
行书《洛神赋》	183	绣花鞋	231
行书《明代名人尺牍精品》	182	绣品	220
行税	105	绣绮桥	60
行云流水描	197	绣线	221
形成“凹”字形	24	盥(盥簋)	121
形态区别	3	须弥春牌楼	53
形体壮丽	21	须弥福寿之庙	61, 364
型范	118	须弥灵境	57
杏黄	202	须弥山石窟	366
姓名印	292	须弥山坛城	339
苻桥	57	须弥台	48
胸针	173	须弥座	34
雄黄	189, 203	虚白室	51
熊纽	294	徐光启墓	374
休息室	358	徐日升(字寅公, 今译托玛斯·佩雷拉)	82
休致	104	徐渭《杂花图》卷	215
修复厂	352	许道宁《雪溪渔夫图》卷	211
修花缎	219	许愿	343
修浚	115	旭光殿	61
修内司	77	续编	306
修书处	78	蓄水楼	60
修行	341	宣传爱国主义	355
修整	6	宣传橱窗	356
修筑	115	宣传计划	356
髹	244	宣德(宣宗朱瞻基)	386
髹漆之术	244	宣和博古图	316
髹饰录	318	宣和画谱	315
秀才	100	宣和书谱	316
秀女	81	宣统(有新觉罗溥仪)	387
岫岩石	170	宣泄	115

宣诏	70
宣纸	175, 188
玄都道藏	346
玄穹宝殿	40
玄武	131, 345
璿玑	172
悬刀（扳机）	126
悬山顶	29
悬腕	181
悬崖挂泉法	201
悬针文	296
旋风装	306
旋子	31
旋子彩画	31
选任	102
选侍	81
选秀女	81
渲	194
血石	170
鬻	121
壩	303
熏炉	128
熏竹	115
寻访	335
寻诗径	58
寻云亭	55
寻杖	33
驯马司	89
驯象	48
巡按	96
巡抚	96
荀子	310
训政	68
训政时期	68
逊帝	63
逊清皇室	69
殉葬品	13

Y

压金银线	235
------	-----

压手杯	149
压制标本	352
押运	105
鸭江绸	218
牙	126
牙白	152, 202
牙板	262
牙槽	3
牙床	3
牙雕绝品	275
牙尖	3
牙牌（片）	275
牙签筒	230
牙丝	275
牙条	262
牙头	262
牙子	262
牙作	78
衙役工食	105
疋料	233
雅集图	242
胭脂	190
胭脂彩	157
胭脂红	155
烟道出口	33
烟丝袋	230
烟油墨汁	176
烟雨楼	61
淹禁致死	113
延安革命遗址	377
延晖阁	39
延绿轩	58
延祺门	41
延清赏楼	56
延庆楼	51
延禧宫	40
严重残破	6
严重破损	6
盐运使	97

阎立本《步辇图》卷	210	养局	204
阎立本《历代帝王图》卷	210	养雀笼	60
阎立本《职贡图》卷	210	养心殿	45
檀椁	26	养心殿内的“勤政亲贤”匾	47
檐角套兽	29	养心殿内的“中正仁和”匾	47
檐口瓦槽	26	养心殿造办处	89
檐口望板	27	养性殿	41
檐柱	27	养性斋	39
甌	121	养云轩	55
演示陈列	354	氧化焰	143
砚	176	腰板	262
宴桌	253	腰带	229
验收	116	腰牌	128
雁纽	295	腰围	234
燕台大观	55	腰圆枕	152
燕尾樯	261	邀月门	54
燕下都遗址	370	姚绶《秋江渔隐图》轴	214
燕子	161	窑	142
贗品	206	窑变	156
扬无咎《四梅图》卷	212	窑变绿	153
羊卜骨	8	窑变绿釉瓶	165
羊毫	175	窑变浅紫	154
羊纽	294	窑具	143
羊头	130	窑款	143
羊形铜灯	9	窑门	142
羊脂玉	169	窑眼	142
阳台	24	摇椅	255
阳体佛海观音菩萨	329	遥堤	115
阳文	295	遥相呼应	21
阳线牙条	262	瑶池	348
洋琴	302	药柜	257
仰烧	143	药师佛（药师琉璃光佛）	327
仰韶村遗址	369	要求受戒	340
仰韶文化（彩陶文化）	4	椰壳雕蟠龙碗	274
仰视俯察	59	椰壳雕双龙戏珠纹圆盒	274
仰头点	195	椰壳雕松竹梅纹银里碗	274
仰卧屈肢葬	13	耀窑刻花青釉三足盖罐	165
仰卧伸肢葬	13	耀州窑	140
仰叶点	196	耶律楚材墓	59
仰钟式	149	冶炼	117

野鸡（雉鸡）	161	遗迹	5
野史	305	遗老	69
叶	126	遗址	5
叶形	293	遗址博物馆	351
腋门	25	匾	123
“一”字点	196	颐和轩	42
一、二、三…级	352	颐和园	360, 382
一百零八塔	364	颐乐殿	54
一次烧器	143	以图灭口	114
一等称职	103	椅（凳）面	263
一甲赐进士及第	108	椅	254
一米以下儿童免费参观	357	椅档	261
一品文官补子（仙鹤）	226	椅靠背	263
一品武官补子（麒麟）	227	椅靠背板	263
一腿三牙	263	椅盘	263
一至九品文武官员	98	椅披	233
伊斯兰教圣墓	375	义夫节妇	108
衣钵	342	义和团吕祖堂坛口遗址	375
衣服尺寸	234	艺术博物馆	350
衣服身长	234	艺术设计	353
衣服下摆（下幅）	234	艺术陶	144
衣柜	257	艺文	305
衣架	258	议复奏折	71
衣库	78	议婚选后	75
衣料	233	议政处	77, 86
衣领	233	议政处王大臣	80
衣纹“十八描”	197	议政王	86
衣线绣	221	议政五大臣	80, 86
衣箱	257	异兽纽	294
滴晴楼	52	异兽纹	259
仪驾	76	易经	307
仪仗	76	驿递	111
仪征铜圭表	320	驿夫	111
沂南墓画像石	187	轶事	305
怡春堂	54	益寿堂	58
怡亭铭摩崖石刻	367	翊坤宫	44
宜侯矢簠	132	翼角	29
宜兴窑	139	翼鹿纹	130
宜芸馆	54	因果	342
遗骨	6	因竭托尊者	330

因人施讲	356	银胎珐琅山水人物鼻烟壶	279
阴（阳）文	204	银胎花梨木食盒	283
阴体狮面佛母	328	银胎内填珐琅梅花指甲套	271
阴体智行佛母	328	银胎软珐琅（俗称银烧蓝）	267
阴文	295	银胎软珐琅鼻烟壶（俗称银烧蓝）	277
阴阳	160	银簪云龙纹盖罐	282
阴阳五行之说	20	银朱	190
殷墟	5, 369	引见	70, 103
殷墟甲骨文	9	引磬（小手磬）	337
银	297	引首（前幅）	203
银白	202	引诱逃走	114
银槎杯	282	饮绿亭	58
银错金	281	印板刻平	246
银顶黄缎轿	76	印背	298
银锭	280	印池	298
银锭盘	241	印床	298
银锭式盒	152	印盒	299
银锭形	293	印花	158
银锭枕	152	印花绸	218
银镀金	280	印花棉绒	220
银镀金累丝	280	印记	298
银镀金累丝长方盆穿珠梅花盆景	289	印款	143
银镀金累丝长方盆梅花天竺盆景	288	印面	298
银镀金累丝珐琅盆红珊瑚盆景	289	印面布局	298
银镀金指甲套	283	印泥	298
银库	78	印纽（印鼻）	294
银累丝珐琅盆珊瑚桃树盆景	289	印谱	298
银累丝海棠式盆珊瑚牡丹盆景	289	印染	235
银累丝花瓶	282	印色	204
银累丝盆菊花盆景	288	印色盒	176
银六方盆金铁树盆景	289	印绶	298
银龙柄奶茶壶	282	印绶监	78
银缕玉衣	173	印台	298
银梅花瓣酒壶	282	印体	298
银暖碗	282	印文	204, 295
银嵌珊瑚项圈	283	印文不辨	204
银雀山竹筒	9	印文待考	296
银烧蓝五福捧寿八方盒	271	印纹陶	144
		印纹硬陶罐	163

印油	298	硬木雕仙山问道图笔筒	273
印章	176, 203, 292	硬木楔	26
印章学	297	硬山顶	29
应物形象	192	硬釉原始青瓷尊	163
英华殿	46	硬玉	169
婴家竹衡杆	324	雍和宫（北京，藏传佛教寺院）	336
婴戏图	162	雍和宫	363
瓿帽	229	雍正（世宗爱新觉罗胤禛）	387
瓿珞	341	雍正帝“尊亲之宝”（青玉质、卧象纽、汉文篆书）	299
樱桃黄	202	永安寺	52
鸚鵡	161	永定门	48
鸚鵡壶	151	永和宫	40
鸚鵡绿	202	永久陈列	354
鹰纽	294	永乐（成祖朱棣）	386
鹰爪足	264	永乐北藏（1440年）	333
迎旭楼	56	永乐大典	309
迎薰亭	50	永乐宫	364
莹白	153	永乐南藏（1417年）	333
莹白腴润	157	永历乙未铜炮	323
莹润	171	永陵（明世宗肃皇帝之陵）	17
萤石	170	永陵	373
营造法式	319	永寿宫	44
营造司	89	永寿斋	58
恒瓿	302	“永”字八法（传王羲之）	179
醴耻	180	甬	124
瀛台	50	甬道（俗称“辇道”）	25
瀛洲（三神山之一）	348	甬钟	124, 301
郢爱（楚国）	9	用朽	194
影壁	24	优待券	357
影青	153	优监生	101
影青缠枝卷叶纹瓷瓶	165	优任	102
影青瓷	144	尤长翎毛，豪放不羁，但多草率	
影像	191	之笔	207
影像资料	352	卹符	111
瘿木	252	油滴斑	155
硬	152	油烧	114
硬笔	180	游记	305
硬度	171	游廊	52
硬木	251		
硬木雕花楼式自鸣钟	286		

有封号的贵妇（命妇）	73	鱼藻轩	54
有实权的皇帝	68	鱼子纹	155
有踏床的交机	255	渔樵耕读	286
卣	122	瑜伽宗	326
右春坊庶子	88	榆林窟	365
右春坊赞善	88	榆木	251
右春坊中允	88	与某某交往，所画山水风貌颇尽之，并时为某某代笔	208
右下勾（“L”，如弹弓之射弹）	178	雨点皴	197
诱逼转卖	114	雨过天晴	153
釉里（下）红	155	雨花阁	45
釉里（下）蓝	154	雨花台烈士陵园	378
釉里红地白龙纹盖罐	166	雨淋墙头皴	197
釉里红梅竹纹笔盒	166	雨雪点	196
釉里红松竹梅纹盖瓶	164	散	302
釉泡	144	禹之鼎《王士禛放鹅图》卷	216
釉色青中泛黄	157	玉	169, 297
釉上（下）彩	157	玉册	73
釉上彩镀金鸟莲纹五彩尊	165	玉带桥	60
釉上彩镂空刻花纹素三彩香薰	165	玉牒金书（珍贵的道经）	347
釉上彩牡丹花纹粉彩瓷瓶	165	玉牒所	77
釉陶	144	玉壶春瓶	150
釉陶俑	13	玉皇大帝	344
釉下彩	156	玉皇经	347
釉下蓝和釉上彩婴戏纹斗彩杯	165	玉皇庙	363
釉下蓝釉上彩镂空云凤纹五彩瓶	165	玉筋文	296
		玉兰	159
淤田	106	玉澜堂	54
余姚窑	139	玉门关及长城烽燧遗址	371
鱼杈头	8	玉女宝	338
鱼符	128	玉琴峡	58
鱼父丁鼎	132	玉清境（三清境之一）	348
鱼缸	149	玉泉山	57
鱼钩	127	玉泉寺及铁塔	363
鱼贯而入，请勿拥挤	357	玉阙	348
鱼龙	192	玉山子“大禹治水图”	173
鱼篓罐	151	玉山子“会昌九老图”	173
鱼纽	294	玉山子“秋山行旅图”	173
鱼形	293	玉石鼻烟壶	278
鱼藻纹	162	玉玺（宝玺）	292

玉烟咀	230
玉箸篆	296
浴蚕池	53
浴德堂	47
预售	356
预售票	356
预展	355
谕（旨）	71
谕告（谕示）	71
御案	252
御笔	71
御笔勾除	112
御茶房	38, 79
御茶膳房	78, 89
御赐	74
御花园	38
御黄	154
御景亭	39
御览	71
御马廐	42
御马监	78, 89
御门听政	68
御铭	246
御批	71
御前	68
御前大臣	79, 87
御前会议	68
御前侍卫	79, 87
御前太监	79, 80
御前行走	79, 87
御膳房	79
御史大夫	94
御史台	94
御史中丞	94
御书处	47, 77, 90
御书房	77
御药房	42, 79, 90
御用监	78, 90
御用嵌珠金杯金盘	282
御札	71

御旨	71
御制	71
御制耕织图	244
御座	254
裕陵（明英宗睿皇帝之陵）	17
裕陵（清高宗纯皇帝之陵）	18
毓庆宫	40
豫园	362
鸳鸯	161
鸳鸯缙	219
鸳鸯戏莲纹	224
冤陷在狱	113
渊鉴类函	311
元	385
元宝底鞋	231
元藏	332
元代针碗	322
元旦令节	107
元黑漆嵌螺钿花鸟舟式洗	248
元缂丝《八仙图》轴	235
元缂丝《赵孟頫书早朝诗》	236
元谋	114
元谋人	2
元谋猿人遗址	369
元墓陶车	322
元上都遗址	371
元始天尊	345
元剔黑孔雀牡丹八瓣盘	247
元剔红双层海棠花圆盘	247
元霄	107
元兴元年弩机	133
元延祐铜漏壶	320
元杨茂剔红花卉尊	247
元张成造剔红栀子纹圆盘	247
元张敏德剔红赏花图圆盘	247
元至顺铜铉	322
元至正“神飞”铜铉	322
员缺	102
袁江《蓬莱仙岛图》轴	216
原（手）稿	304

原告	111	远帆阁	52
原官致仕	104	远近	193
原济《搜尽奇峰打草稿图》卷	215	远戍难宽	113
原任	102	远瀛观	60
原始瓷器	144	院考	109
原始氏族时期	1	院体（官派）	193
原始无阶级公社社会	1	院	172
原状陈列	354	日至	115
原作	206	月白	153
（图）足径	146	月波楼	59
圆塚	13	月洞式门罩架子床	256
圆补	226	月勾（“飞”，状如新月）	178
圆穿	118	月光蓝	154
圆堊	255	月桂	158
圆雁	271, 273	月华门	37
圆顶窑	142	月梁	26
圆耳杯	241	月琴	302
圆拱龕	336	月下独酌图	243
圆几	252	月象演示仪	320
圆寂（人灭）	340	月牙桌	253
圆角柜	256	月折档	72
圆井	31	岳飞墓	374
圆朗斋	55	岳麓书院	361
圆椀	148	岳阳楼	361
圆领	233	钺	125
圆明园遗址	371	钺刀	339
圆窗	141	悦心殿	52
圆屋顶（穹窿）	28	阅古楼	52
圆形	293	阅卷大臣	100
圆攒尖顶	28	阅是楼	42
圆柱形独腿	263	越坝	115
圆转桌	253	越出界石	110
援	125	越河	115
援赦	112	越开	115
缘（唇）	119	越盾	114
缘边关塞	109	越王勾践剑	132
猿人化石	6	越王句践剑	9
辘	127	越窑	139
圆丘	49	越狱脱逃	113
		粤绣	221

云边	162
云村	205
云螭纹	259
云断	201
云峰山、天柱山摩崖石刻	367
云蝠	161
云冈石窟	365, 383
云鹤纹	224
云辉玉宇	55
云会寺	57
云会轩	58
云绘楼	51
云锦	219
云蓝	154
云雷纹	129
云流泉断法	201
云龙	161
云龙阶石	34
云龙纽	294
云龙纹	223, 258
云珀（蜜蜡琥珀）	170
云松巢	56
云梯牌钹	110
云头棉鞋	232
云头纹	259
云头足	148
云外天香	55
云纹	259
云香阁	59
云篆	348
匀称谐调	179
运官	105
运同	97
韵	179
韵锣	301
蕴古室	56

Z

杂宝纹	223
-----	-----

杂犯死罪	112
杂录	305
杂色旗	111
杂项钱粮	105
杂职	104
杂著	305
栽棒	261
载入建筑史册	22
载时堂	58
宰牲亭	49
在位	66
在位皇帝	63
簪筓、发钗	231
攒盒	152, 240
攒盘	152, 241
攒三点	195
攒三聚五点	196
攒生	246
簪花	118, 267, 281, 286
簪胎珐琅（又称内填珐琅）	267
簪胎珐琅缠枝莲纹双连提柄罐	269
簪胎珐琅缠枝莲纹圆盒	269
簪胎珐琅勾云纹牺尊	269
簪胎珐琅瓜棱西番莲三足薰炉	269
簪胎珐琅蟠螭纹碗	269
簪胎珐琅双凤纹大圆盘	269
簪胎珐琅四友图屏风	269
簪胎珐琅折枝花果纹双耳瓶	269
赃经主认	112
赃证明确	112
葬俗	13
凿	127
早朝	69
枣儿红	155
枣核描	197
枣木	251
藻井、天花	31
藻丝点	196
藻头	31
藻韵楼	50

皂鞋	232	战国笔	176
皂靴	232	战国策	311
灶坑	6	战国苹车	322
灶王	345	湛清轩	58
造办处	47, 78	湛虚楼	50
择吉日	75	蘸柏	142
泽普如春	59	张诚（字实斋，今译让·弗朗索瓦·热比隆）	83
曾侯乙编钟	9, 132	张道陵	346
增强审美观念	355	张果老	344
缙	220	张衡墓	374
赠券	357	张景碑	185
赠券停用	357	张天师	346
甑	121	张渥《临李公麟九歌图》卷	214
渣斗	152	张逊《双沟竹图》卷	214
渣斗式	149	张择端《清明上河图》卷	211
扎花	176	章草	178
扎什伦布寺（日喀则）	337	章草《急就章》	182
扎什伦布寺	363	章法，构图	193
斋宫	39, 49	掌故	305
斋醮（设坛祭祷的仪式）	348	掌卫事大臣	89
斋戒	107, 343, 348	掌握大权	68
斋期	343	掌仪司	77, 89
斋日	343	漳缎	219
斋月	343	漳绒	220
摘印	103	璋	172
毡靴	232	樟木	251
旃檀佛（释迦牟尼佛造像的一种特有形式）	327	帐房锣锅	110
詹事	88	招牌	180
詹事府	88	招贴画	356
斩罪	113	昭陵（明穆宗庄皇帝之陵）	17
盞	149	昭陵（唐太宗李世民之陵）	15
展览橱柜	354	昭陵	372
展览设备	354	召见	70
展品	354	诏敕	73
展腿	263	诏令	71
展子虔《游春图》卷	209	诏书	71, 306
占星盘（玑）	320	赵伯驹《江山秋色图》卷	212
战斗纹	130	赵城藏（即金藏）	332
战国	384	赵馥《江山万里图》卷	212

赵信《柳鸦芦雁图》卷 211
 赵佶摹张萱《虢国夫人游春图》
 卷 211
 赵葵《杜甫诗意图》卷 212
 赵孟頫《渊明归去来辞》卷 213
 赵岩《八达春游图》卷 210
 赵州陀罗尼经幢 365
 照度 354
 照度计 354
 照明 33, 354
 照明水平 355
 照明装置 354
 照相室 357
 罩黄漆 239
 罩金漆 239
 罩漆 239
 罩朱漆 239
 遮橡板 26
 遮眉勒 230
 折叠式太平头案 252
 折叠式带屉酒桌 253
 折叠式镜台 258
 折角香几 252
 折芦描 197
 折面桌 253
 折式屏风 257
 折沿 148
 折腰碗 149
 折枝 159, 192
 折枝纹 224
 哲蚌寺 363
 赭红 202
 赭黄 190, 202
 赭漆 190
 赭漆描金波浪鱼跃图鼻烟壶 280
 赭石 190
 浙派 298
 蔗段洗 148
 蔗黄 154
 鹁鸽斑 155

针刻、锥刻 245
 枕骨 3
 枕峦廊 53
 珍妃井 43
 珍贵的历史文物 6
 珍珠 170
 珍珠地 158
 鸩杀 113
 真标本 6
 真迹 204, 206
 真觉寺金刚宝座（五塔寺塔）
 364
 真人 345
 真言字 161
 砭青 154
 振笔直书 181
 瑱（充耳） 172
 镇国公 64
 镇墓（辟邪） 13
 镇纸 176
 征伐 131
 征集道德 351
 钲（丁宁） 124
 钲 301
 整饬营伍 109
 整理化石 6
 整体设计和规划 20
 整装 205
 正（大）吻 29
 正（后）房 24
 正（立）视图 20
 正（旁）门 358
 正（配）殿 24
 正 97
 正八品 98
 正白旗 95
 正笔 194
 正德（武宗朱厚照） 386
 正典经籍 334
 正丁 106

正二品	98	芝麻皴	197
正供稻米	105	知不足斋	43
正宫	61	知春堂	58
正红旗	95	知府、府尹	96
正黄旗	94	知客僧	335
正脊	28	知县（县令）	97
正九品	98	知鱼桥	58, 60
正蓝旗	95	知州	97
正六品	98	肢骨	3
正龙纹	222, 258	织结	235
正七品	98	织金彩	157
正三品	98	织金朝衣	108
正史	305	织金绸	218
正始石经（三体石经）	185	织金缎	219
正四品	98	织金锦	218
正统（英宗朱祁镇）	386	织锦缎	219
正统道藏	347	织锦画	233
正途出身	104	织品、织物	218
正五品	98	织绣	221
正项钱粮	104	织绣画	233
正阳门	48	织银锦	218
正一道（五斗米道、天师道）	343	织造技艺	235
	343	祗树林	57
正一品	98	执壶	151
正折	71	执政	66
“正大光明”匾	67	执钟	124
郑成功墓	374	直（横）出戟	152
郑韩故城遗址	370	直（间）接征集	351
郑和航海图	321	直（曲）内戈	133
郑乙伯簠	132	直柄盖	76
郑州商代遗址	369	直尺	127
政变	69	直殿监	78
政权	66	直幅	191
政权更迭	66	直观教育	355
卮	123	直口	146
支钉痕	143	直立人（猿人）	2
支架	354	直梁	25
支梁	26	直椽	263
支摘窗（竖绞链窗）	32	直纽（柱纽）	295
支座	26	直腿	263

直纹	163	中国共产党第一次全国代表大会	
直线纹	129	会址	376
直形搭脑	263	中国社会主义青年团中央机关旧	
直髹	244	址	375
直牙条券口	262	中国文物保护技术协会	10
直凿纹	131	中国文物法规	11
职方司	94	中国文物交流服务中心	10
职贡图	242	中国文物流通协调中心	11
职官印	292	中国文物学会	10
职衔	102	中国猿人（北京猿人，北京人）	
植物标本	352		2
植秀轩	51	中国自然科学博物馆协会	359
止念	348	中和殿	37
纸（绢）本	180	中和韶乐	303
纸	188	中华民国	387
纸裱	205	中华全国总工会旧址	376
纸槌瓶	150	中华人民共和国	387
指画	194	中华人民共和国文物保护法	11
指路牌	355	中口	119
指南车	320	中论广释	334
志	305	中美合作所集中营旧址	378
制胎	246, 268	中年用笔细秀，略近文、仇画法，	
制胎挂釉	23	晚年变为粗厚苍劲，自成一家	
质粗而松	145		208
质地	234	中山古城遗址	370
质地分析	352	中山靖王墓	373
厝置	234	中山陵	379
质细而坚	145	中山王方壶	132
治镜阁	59	中上	97
治印	298	中石器时代	1
治印人	298	中石器文化	4
致斋	107	中书科	87
智慧海	55	中书科中书	87
智人	2	中书舍人	87
智行佛母	328	中祀	75, 106
厝	122	中堂	79, 180, 191
中共中央中原局旧址	378	中条	191
中观宗	326	中鞠袜	231
中国博物馆学会	359	中下	97
中国的传统建筑	22	中心微凹	147

中庸	306	重檐歇山顶	28
中中	97	重檐攒尖顶阙亭	29
中装	225	重阳立教十五论	347
忠臣烈士	108	重阳祖师	346
钟（表）面、表盘	285	重杖	112
钟	122, 123, 283, 301	舟式洗	241
钟摆	285	州（县）训导	97
钟摆轴承	285	州	96
钟表读数	284	州判	97
钟表检验仪器	286	州儒学学正	97
钟表匠	286	州同	97
钟表零部件	284	周壁较深	147
钟表世家	286	周壁上丰下削	147
钟表指针	285	周臣《春山游骑图》轴	215
钟表制造学	286	周恩来故居	379
钟表专家（技师）	286	周昉《挥扇仕女图》卷	210
钟表装置	284	周口店“北京人”遗址	381
钟粹宫	40	周口店遗址	369
钟离权（汉钟离）	344	周原遗址	369
钟楼	25, 49	轴	191
钟碗	285	轴杆	205
钟搥起线珞琅五伦图屏风	270	轴头	205
众香界	57	绉	220
重（单）檐	28	籀文	177
重臣	79	朱标	190
重唇瓦	22	朱奎《河上花图》卷	216
重翠亭	55	朱德故居	379
重点保护陵墓	19	朱点	71
重犯	114	朱红	201
重华宫	44	朱记	292
重环纹	129, 243	朱批	71
重台钩栏	34	朱漆	239
重新开放	359	朱漆大门	25
重新摄政	67	朱漆柱	23
重新掌权	68	朱圈	71
重修（修复）	22	朱雀	131, 345
重修护国寺感应塔碑	367	朱砂	189
重檐楼阁	286	朱榻	298
重檐叠顶殿	29	朱文	295
重檐庑殿顶	28	朱印时期	298

朱谕	71	竹丝编嵌文竹龙戏珠纹笔筒	273
珠宝	280	竹胎	244
珠宝饰物	280	竹筒	271
珠串	173	竹叶描	197
珠饰带	229	烛台	128, 337
珠饰鞋	231	逐斥	103
珠纹(团花)	162	主藏臣宝	338
珠绣	221	主椽	26
株连受累	112	主敬殿	43
诸佛法印	341	主谋	113
诸葛拜斗石	48	主体	118
诸真玄奥集成	347	主尊说法	341
竹(藤)榻	255	煮酒器	121
竹编纹	131	瞩新楼	58
竹雕东方朔	273	祝	302
竹雕勾莲纹提梁花篮	272	助祭	107
竹雕寒蝉葡萄式洗	272	住持	349
竹雕和合二仙乘舟	272	住俸	103
竹雕荷花图香筒	272	注茶半托迦尊者	330
竹雕荷叶式杯	272	注销	352
竹雕夔龙纹活环提梁扁壶	272	驻防	95
竹雕兰花图臂搁	272	柱(门)廊	24
竹雕留青携琴访友图笔筒	272	柱础	23
竹雕松树形笔筒	271	柱基	27
竹雕松树形小壶	272	柱瓶(罐)	150
竹根	271, 297	柱头	27
竹根雕卷心式刘海戏蟾图笔筒	272	柱头铺作	27
竹根雕麻姑献寿槎	272	祝寿	74
竹根雕寿星	272	著名的宫殿群	22
竹根雕松树罗汉	272	铸件	118
竹节纽	295	铸模(范)	143
竹节洗	148	铸器记名	131
竹林七贤图	243	铸胎珐琅	267
竹木牙角鼻烟壶	278	铸铜技术	117
竹箐寺(四川,藏传佛教寺院)	337	铸冶工人名	131
竹雀	161	铸造	118
竹石纹	224	爪柱	27
竹书	177	专门博物馆学	350
竹丝	271	专题报告(讲座)	355
		砖工	116

砖石结构	20	桌	253
砖石墓	12	桌档	261
转八宝	285	桌面	263
转花	159, 285	桌面嵌瘿木	263
转经筒	339	桌面饰漆心	263
转轮藏	56	桌前沿	263
转世	340	着色	193
转世活佛	335	琢磨	171
转天鹅（鸭）	285	琢器	141
转心瓶	150	琢玉砂	171
篆刻	298	资本主义社会	1
篆刻刀法	298	资阳人	3
篆刻流派	298	资治通鉴	309
篆书	177, 295	资治通鉴纲目	309
庄士敦（今译雷金纳德·弗莱明·约翰斯顿）	85	子母印（大小两印套合而成）	293
庄严肃穆	21	子午仪	321
庄子	310	子玉	171
妆花缎	219	梓潼帝君	345
装潢志	316	紫	154
装配	118	紫斑	156
装饰	286	紫翠房	53
装饰技法	275	紫翠玉（金绿宝石）	169
装窑	142	紫粉	190
壮丁	106	紫光阁	51
壮锦	219	紫毫（兔毫）	175
状元	100	紫红	202
撞门	114	紫金	154
幢（佛像前的珠顶绸饰立柱）	339	紫金土	141
追	194	紫金釉	154
锥	127	紫晶（紫石英）	170
锥工	142	紫晶	297
锥花（刻花）	158	紫晶瓜形鼻烟壶	279
锥画	245	紫口铁足	157
锥画纹	243	紫罗兰	154, 202
锥足	146	紫玛瑙	170
坠角	230	紫漆	239
缀	235	紫气东来	58
拙政园	362	紫砂	144
		紫杉	251

紫檀	251	宗人	80
紫檀雕勾莲纹长桌	265	宗人府	77, 88
紫檀雕荷花纹宝座	264	宗人府府丞	80
紫檀雕松竹梅嵌玉如意	290	宗人府理事官	88
紫檀龙纹香几	265	宗人府主事	88
紫檀木雕荷叶枕	273	宗人令（正卿）	88
紫檀木雕会昌九老图笔筒	273	宗人令	80
紫檀木楼阁式大更钟	286	总兵	95
紫檀木嵌宝石花果笔筒	274	总督	96
紫檀嵌珐琅九龙榻	266	总管	80
紫檀嵌玉八卦如意	291	总管内务府大臣	79, 88
紫檀嵌玉花卉纹宝座	265	总管太监	90
紫檀藤心矮圈椅	264	总论	305
紫檀条桌	265	总目	305
紫檀云龙纹海棠式凳	265	总体设计	353
紫外线过滤器	353	综合博物馆	350
紫外线检验器	353	综合陈列	354
紫微北极大帝	345	棕毫	175
自创新格，笔力浑厚，气势豪健， 对后世影响颇为深远	207	棕眼	144
自动化空调系统	353	棕竹	271
自尽	113	棕竹雕题诗七佛钵	272
自开门	286	棕竹水浪莲纹盒	272
自鸣钟	284	棕竹丝嵌文竹方匣盒	272
自然史博物馆	350	槩毫	175
自认不讳	112	走时	284
自首免罪	113	走兽肖形印	293
自刎	113	奏乐	286
自缢	113	奏片	71
自在庄	55	奏事处	77, 87
字（号）章	203	奏事官	80, 87
字体传神	179	奏疏（奏折）	70
字帖	180	奏折制度	70
纵横交错	21	租税	105
纵横牵连的构架	25	足（底）边长	146
纵系梁	26	足	120, 146
宗伯	80	足部横档	262
宗喀巴佛	328	足底外露白胎	157
宗庙	79	足径长	146
宗人（正丞）	88	足距	146
		族名	131

鍤	126	左右（用在年代前）	7
诅楚文	184	“左祖右社”制	20
俎	121	佐领	95
祖庚作司母戊方鼎	132	作	78
祖师（鼻祖）	346	作策论	111
（钻、凿）灼痕	8	作明佛母	328
钻	127	作器时间	131
钻石	169	作器媵女	131
钻犀	246	作器者名	131
嘴	120	作者不详	204
最高大的宫殿建筑	22	作者签名盖章	204
尊	122	作钟处	78
尊号	66, 107	坐禅	341
尊胜佛母	328	坐床	335
尊溢	107	坐墩	152
尊者（阿梨耶）	334	坐佛	341
遵义会议会址	377	坐骨	3
遵义门内的琉璃照壁	47	坐忘	348
樽	122	座表	284
左（右）开叉长	234	座面独板	263
左（右）旋白螺	338	座屏、插屏	241
左春坊庶子	88	座钟	284
左春坊赞善	88	做佛事	342
左春坊中允	88	做钟	286
左下撇（“丿”，如犀角、象牙之 锋利	178		

编后记

POSTSCRIPT

书后附索引以正文各条目（不包括各级标题）首字的汉语拼音声母排序。重复出现的条目是由于其所属内容的需要，如英文释文重复则将其中一则处理为参见另一则。

此外，本书得到北京师范大学外语系李长兰教授的审阅，美国耶鲁大学学生 Jeri Xu（徐家玲）同学担任了主要的校对工作。在此一并表示诚挚的谢意！

冯印淙
二〇〇五年八月